

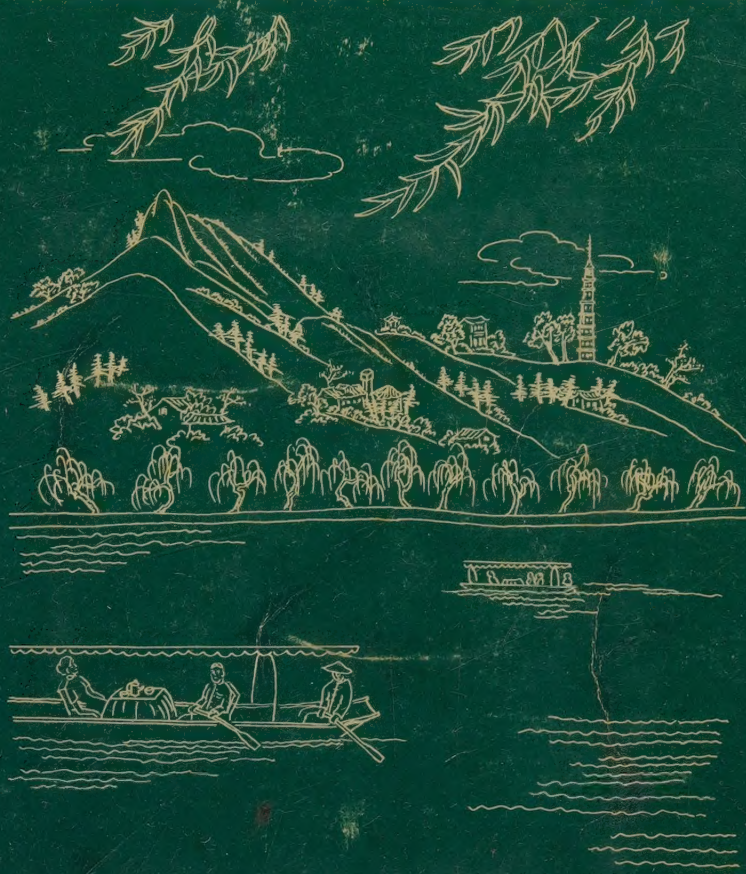
---

# BEGINNING CHINESE

Revised Edition

JOHN DeFRANCIS

---



---

## 初級漢語課本

Chūjī Hànyǔ Kèběn

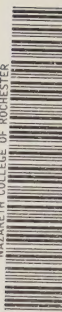
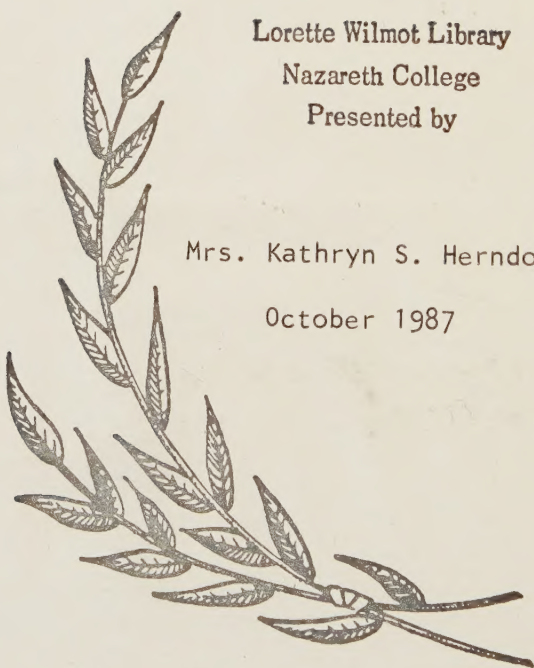
---



Lorette Wilmot Library  
Nazareth College  
Presented by

Mrs. Kathryn S. Herndon

October 1987



495.1 DeF  
DeFrancis.  
Beginning Chinese.

**The Lorette Wilmot Library  
Nazareth College of Rochester**






*Yale Linguistic Series, 1*

EDITORIAL COMMITTEE

Bernard Bloch

William S. Cornyn

Isidore Dyen



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2022 with funding from  
Kahle/Austin Foundation

Kathryn S. Herndon

# BEGINNING CHINESE

*by John DeFrancis*

REVISED EDITION

*New Haven and London, Yale University Press*

LORETTE WILMOT LIBRARY  
MAZARETH COLLEGE



Copyright © 1963 by Yale University.  
Fourth printing, December 1966.  
Set in IBM Documentary and  
printed in the United States of America by  
The Carl Purington Rollins Printing-Office of  
the Yale University Press, New Haven, Connecticut.  
All rights reserved. This book may not be  
reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form  
(except by reviewers for the public press),  
without written permission from the publishers.  
Library of Congress catalog card number: 63-19959

495-1  
De F

TO KAY





## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

In the first edition of this book I was happy to acknowledge my indebtedness for the help and guidance of two men, Leonard Bloomfield and George A. Kennedy. Although both of these scholars are now no longer living, their influence persists, and I should like to record my continued indebtedness to them both in this revised edition.

The revision would not have been possible without the extensive support provided by Seton Hall University. I wish particularly to express my appreciation for the encouragement and help of Dr. John B. Tsu, Director of the Institute of Far Eastern Studies, who saw to it that I was provided with all the facilities and assistance I needed.

Dr. Tsu was also helpful in discussing many points regarding presentation of material. He deserves special credit for initiating the decision to base the Chinese work at Seton Hall University on the transcription used in this text.

Other Seton Hall personnel whose assistance I gratefully acknowledge are Dr. John C. H. Wu, Mr. C. S. Fu, Mrs. Teng Chia-yee, Mrs. Aileen Wei, and Mrs. Lucy Chao Ho. The assistance rendered by Mrs. Teng was particularly extensive. She was most active in the preparation of the dialogues, contributed largely to the various exercises, and helped me constantly at almost every step of the work.

Miss Diana Y. Ma is to be thanked for drawing the delightful illustrations.

I am grateful to my wife for taking on the appalling task of putting my scrawl into typewritten form.

I am indebted to David Horne of Yale University Press for seeing the book through the press, and to Elinor Horne for her expert and painstaking editorial revision.

J. De F.

Madison, Connecticut  
March 1963

I should like to thank the various students and teachers who by their kindness in drawing my attention to a number of misprints and other errors have enabled me to make some needed corrections in the third printing.

J. De F.

Madison, Connecticut  
September 1965



## CONTENTS

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS . . . . .	vii
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	xv
To the Reader . . . . .	xv
Language and Writing . . . . .	xvii
The Sounds of Chinese . . . . .	xviii
SETTING THE STAGE . . . . .	xxxi
UNIT I . . . . .	1
Lesson 1. Greeting Friends . . . . .	3
Dialogue . . . . .	3
Vocabulary . . . . .	3
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	4
Pattern Drills . . . . .	5
Substitution Tables . . . . .	7
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	8
Boy Meets Girl . . . . .	9
Notes . . . . .	9
Lesson 2. Meeting People . . . . .	12
Dialogue . . . . .	12
Vocabulary . . . . .	13
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	13
Pattern Drills . . . . .	15
Substitution Tables . . . . .	17
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	18
Snatches of Conversation . . . . .	19
To Be or Not To Be? . . . . .	19
Putting On an Act . . . . .	20
Notes . . . . .	20
Lesson 3. Shopping at a Bookstore (1) . . . . .	22
Dialogue . . . . .	22
Vocabulary . . . . .	23
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	24
Pattern Drills . . . . .	27
Substitution Tables . . . . .	29
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	30
Questions and Answers . . . . .	30
True or False . . . . .	31
What Would You Say? . . . . .	31
Notes . . . . .	32
Lesson 4. Shopping at a Bookstore (2) . . . . .	35
Dialogue . . . . .	35
Vocabulary . . . . .	37
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	38
Substitution Tables . . . . .	40
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	41
Number Practice . . . . .	41



Lesson 4. Shopping at a Bookstore (2) [continued]	
Multiplication Table . . . . .	42
Boom! . . . . .	42
Numbers and Measures . . . . .	42
A Charge Account . . . . .	43
Information Please! . . . . .	43
Notes . . . . .	44
Lesson 5. Receiving a Phone Call . . . . .	46
Dialogue . . . . .	46
Vocabulary . . . . .	47
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	48
Pattern Drills . . . . .	50
Substitution Tables . . . . .	52
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	52
Clock Time . . . . .	53
Pidgin Chinese . . . . .	53
Listening In . . . . .	54
Brain-Twister . . . . .	55
Notes . . . . .	55
Lesson 6. Review . . . . .	57
Pronunciation Review . . . . .	57
Analogy Drill . . . . .	58
Single Replacement Drill . . . . .	60
Double Replacement Drill . . . . .	61
Insertion Drill . . . . .	61
Raise You One . . . . .	62
Answering Questions . . . . .	63
Questioning Answers . . . . .	64
Dialogue I . . . . .	65
Dialogue II . . . . .	65
Narrative . . . . .	66
UNIT II . . . . .	67
Lesson 7. Inquiring about Places . . . . .	69
Dialogue . . . . .	69
Vocabulary . . . . .	70
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	71
Pattern Drills . . . . .	75
Substitution Tables . . . . .	79
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	80
Definite vs. Indefinite . . . . .	81
Say Where . . . . .	81
Relativity Problems . . . . .	82
Notes . . . . .	83
Lesson 8. Exchanging Information . . . . .	86
Dialogue . . . . .	86
Vocabulary . . . . .	87
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	88
Pattern Drills . . . . .	92
Substitution Tables . . . . .	97
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	98
Checkerboard Problem . . . . .	99
Notes . . . . .	100

Contents	xi
Lesson 9. Asking Directions . . . . .	103
Dialogue . . . . .	103
Vocabulary . . . . .	104
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	105
Pattern Drills . . . . .	109
Substitution Tables . . . . .	114
Just the Opposite . . . . .	115
Take Your Pick . . . . .	116
Checking Up . . . . .	116
Notes . . . . .	117
Lesson 10. Conversing with a Ticket Seller . . . . .	119
Dialogue . . . . .	119
Vocabulary . . . . .	121
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	122
Pattern Drills . . . . .	127
Substitution Tables . . . . .	131
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	132
What's in a Name? . . . . .	133
Frère Tiger . . . . .	134
Match and Finish . . . . .	134
Notes . . . . .	135
Lesson 11. Discussing Travel . . . . .	138
Dialogue . . . . .	138
Vocabulary . . . . .	140
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	141
Pattern Drills . . . . .	144
Substitution Tables . . . . .	147
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	148
Questions and Answers . . . . .	149
Let's Be Reasonable . . . . .	151
Double Jeopardy . . . . .	151
Notes . . . . .	151
Lesson 12. Review . . . . .	154
Pronunciation Review . . . . .	154
Analogy Drill . . . . .	155
Replacement Drill . . . . .	157
Insertion Drill . . . . .	159
Answering Questions . . . . .	159
Narrative . . . . .	161
Dialogue . . . . .	162
Questionnaire . . . . .	163
UNIT III . . . . .	165
Lesson 13. Getting Acquainted . . . . .	165
Dialogue . . . . .	165
Vocabulary . . . . .	167
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	168
Pattern Drills . . . . .	174
Substitution Tables . . . . .	181
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	182
Expansion Drills . . . . .	183
Questions and Answers . . . . .	184

Lesson 13. Getting Acquainted [continued]	
Monologue . . . . .	185
Setting Things Right . . . . .	186
What Would You Say? . . . . .	186
Notes . . . . .	187
Lesson 14. Discussing School Work . . . . .	191
Dialogue . . . . .	191
Vocabulary . . . . .	194
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	195
Pattern Drills . . . . .	200
Substitution Tables . . . . .	211
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	212
The Topic-Comment Construction . . . . .	213
Monologue . . . . .	214
Checking Up . . . . .	215
Notes . . . . .	215
Lesson 15. Studying and Traveling . . . . .	221
Dialogue . . . . .	221
Vocabulary . . . . .	224
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	225
Pattern Drills . . . . .	229
Substitution Tables . . . . .	234
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	235
Expansion Drills . . . . .	236
A Little Variety . . . . .	237
Answering Questions . . . . .	238
Notes . . . . .	239
Lesson 16. Visiting Friends . . . . .	244
Dialogue . . . . .	244
Vocabulary . . . . .	248
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	249
Pattern Drills . . . . .	254
Substitution Tables . . . . .	262
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	263
Answering Questions . . . . .	265
Notes . . . . .	265
Lesson 17. Playing 'Guess-Fingers' . . . . .	270
Dialogue . . . . .	270
Vocabulary . . . . .	274
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	275
Pattern Drills . . . . .	280
Substitution Tables . . . . .	286
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	287
Expansion Drills . . . . .	290
Sentence Conversion . . . . .	291
Answering Questions . . . . .	291
Notes . . . . .	292
Lesson 18. Review . . . . .	295
Pronunciation Review . . . . .	295
Analogy Drill . . . . .	296
Replacement Drill . . . . .	300



Lesson 18. Review [continued]	
Insertion Drill . . . . .	300
Transformation Drill . . . . .	301
Miscellaneous Sentences . . . . .	302
Dialogue . . . . .	304
Narrative . . . . .	305
Answering Questions . . . . .	305
Crossword Puzzle . . . . .	307
UNIT IV . . . . .	309
Lesson 19. Eating Family Style . . . . .	311
Dialogue . . . . .	311
Vocabulary . . . . .	315
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	316
Pattern Drills . . . . .	321
Substitution Tables . . . . .	327
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	328
Sentence Conversion . . . . .	330
Answering Questions . . . . .	330
What Would You Say? . . . . .	331
Notes . . . . .	332
Lesson 20. Calling a Friend . . . . .	336
Dialogue . . . . .	336
Vocabulary . . . . .	339
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	340
Pattern Drills . . . . .	344
Substitution Tables . . . . .	348
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	349
A Conversation . . . . .	350
English to Chinese . . . . .	351
Answering Questions . . . . .	352
Notes . . . . .	352
Lesson 21. Eating in a Restaurant . . . . .	355
Dialogue . . . . .	355
Vocabulary . . . . .	358
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	359
Pattern Drills . . . . .	364
Substitution Tables . . . . .	369
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	370
Chinese Menu . . . . .	372
Answering Questions . . . . .	374
What Would You Say? . . . . .	374
Notes . . . . .	375
Lesson 22. Discussing Chinese . . . . .	378
Dialogue . . . . .	378
Vocabulary . . . . .	384
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	385
Pattern Drills . . . . .	389
Substitution Tables . . . . .	391
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	392
Combining Forms . . . . .	394
Monologue . . . . .	396

Lesson 22. Discussing Chinese [continued]	
Answering Questions . . . . .	396
Notes . . . . .	397
Lesson 23. Leaving China . . . . .	401
Dialogue . . . . .	401
Vocabulary . . . . .	406
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	407
Pattern Drills . . . . .	411
Substitution Table . . . . .	413
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	414
Miscellaneous Sentences . . . . .	416
Monologue . . . . .	418
Answering Questions . . . . .	419
Notes . . . . .	419
Lesson 24. Review . . . . .	422
Pronunciation Review . . . . .	422
Pattern Review . . . . .	423
Foreign Correspondence . . . . .	427
Dialogue Summaries . . . . .	429
UNIT V . . . . .	441
Lesson 25. Introduction to Chinese Characters . . . . .	443
Lesson 26. Lesson 1 in Character Form . . . . .	454
APPENDIXES AND INDEXES . . . . .	459
Comparative Transcription Table . . . . .	461
Supplementary Vocabulary . . . . .	467
Suggested Study Guide . . . . .	479
Index of Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	487
Glossary and Index . . . . .	489

# INTRODUCTION

## TO THE READER

The study of a language generally requires the cooperative effort of at least three people: the textbook writer, the teacher, and the student. In my capacity as the first of these three I should like to address a few remarks to you, whether teacher or student, in the hope that they will help toward a more efficient utilization of this book.

My aim in writing this Chinese textbook has been to provide material that can be used at both the high-school and college levels. Its suitability will be apparent if we compare and contrast the needs of students at both levels.

One major point of similarity is that all students, of whatever age and whatever objective (whether a speaking or a reading knowledge), should start with spoken Chinese. Hence this book is primarily oriented toward helping you speak the language.

A second point of similarity is that high-school and college students have—in somewhat varying degrees, to be sure—the ability to absorb a systematic program of language study, as against the more informal approach of elementary grades with their emphasis on songs, stories, and limited subjects of conversation. In line with this, I have provided fairly extensive notes and explanations of the material. Nor have I hesitated to use a few technical terms. Actually these terms are minimal, amounting to far less than the technical terminology found in an introductory ninth-grade algebra text. In any case, technical expressions and explanations should not occupy too much of the teacher's and student's time. If a note or explanation is too hard to understand, ignore it. Don't waste time talking about Chinese when you should be talking Chinese. Much more important than the notes and explanations are the extensive drills concentrating on specific points of pronunciation or grammar. Provision of these drills reflects my confidence in the ability of high-school and college students alike to benefit from such structured material.

It may be true, however, that high-school students need more drill and review than older students. I have written the book with this requirement in mind. Units I–IV each consist of six lessons. The first five lessons of each unit introduce new material. Within each lesson, if the program set forth in the Suggested Study Guide at the end of the book is followed, the new material is studied first in repetitive patterns and then, in effect, reviewed at the end by means of the dialogues and various other exercises. The sixth and final lesson in each unit is a thoroughgoing review which introduces nothing new. Still further drill is provided in the tape recordings which accompany the text.

Extensive though this material is, it is not excessive. It is hard to conceive of too much drill material for students at any level. Extensive practice is the only road to fluency in a language; and after all, it is fluency—not agonizing translation *à la Latin* as traditionally taught—which should be the objective in studying a living language.

It is important to note that the relatively great size of this book is not due to any large amount of material. As a matter of fact, the vocabulary entries total less than 600, a comparatively small figure, and the structural patterns are by no means exhaustive. It is repetition and review which account for the bulk. With regard to the amount of material presented, it is a sobering thought

that the Dialogues, which constitute the heart of the material and the basis for the extended drills in each lesson, represent less than one hour of actual speech, and that the entire Chinese contents of the book can be spoken by a native Chinese in just a few hours.

A major difference between college and high-school students is the fact that more is usually expected of the former than of the latter. Partly this is a matter of curricular programming which permits greater concentration on fewer subjects. Partly it is a matter of relative maturity. It is doubtful, however, whether there is any substantial difference in language ability on the part of the two groups, and if there is, it may well lie with those in the younger age bracket. Nevertheless, it is probably true that the two groups cannot proceed at the same pace. In view of this, I have attempted to make the book as flexible as possible so that it can be adapted to programs varying from two or three hours a week to intensive full-time courses. As indicated in the Suggested Study Guide, the material has been broken down into bite-size morsels consisting of no more than six vocabulary items and related drills of various sorts. Any number of bites may be taken at one time, and for those whose appetites are still not satisfied, supplementary vocabulary has been provided for each of the lessons. Some college programs may be able to complete all the material in a semester of intensive study, some semi-intensive high-school classes may be able to cover it all in one year, and others may be able to cover between eighteen and twenty-four lessons. The latter would probably be normal for high-school classes which have available no more than the usual four clock hours or less of classroom time per week. In any case, the emphasis, particularly at the beginning, should be on quality rather than quantity. Better to study a little well than a lot badly.

Another possible difference between high-school and college students is that the latter can more easily put up with material presented in a dull and humorless manner. Although there is much unavoidable drudgery in repetitive drills, a language text doesn't have to be dull, and I have attempted to enliven this one a bit by throwing in an occasional game, illustration, or other type of material that would be entertaining as well as instructive. College students who feel above this sort of thing can simply ignore it.

Partly as entertainment, partly with a serious end in view, I have provided two lessons introducing Chinese characters. These lessons can be studied either after completion of the rest of the material, or simultaneously with the first lesson. In the latter case, study of the characters should not distract us from the primary objective of mastering the speech sounds of Chinese. At this stage of our study, characters should be taken as a dessert, perhaps as an appetizer, but certainly not as the main course. At a later stage, the separate volume entitled Character Text for Beginning Chinese—though designed primarily as an aid for native Chinese teachers—can also be used for further character study.

The kind of spoken Chinese which we are studying here is the Peking dialect. This bears about the same relationship to other kinds of Chinese as Parisian French has to other varieties of French. It is understood by more people than any other language in the world. Apart from introducing you to the largest speech community, it also opens the gate to the largest continuous civilization the world has ever seen.

Chinese is thus an important as well as a fascinating language. But it is not an easy one for speakers of English. In this book, I have not glossed over the difficulties but have attempted to meet them head on. By so doing I hope to have done my part in easing the task of the teacher in presenting the Chinese language and that of the student in mastering it.



## LANGUAGE AND WRITING

Man spoke long before he wrote. Writing was invented only after hundreds of thousands of years in which the sole means of communication, other than gestures, was speech; only over the past few thousand years have various systems of writing, ranging from pictographic to alphabetic, been devised. It is well to remember that even today only about half of the world's 4,000 or so languages have been reduced to writing.

The early creators of writing systems were, of course, not trained in the science of language. We cannot therefore assume that the systems they created accurately represented the languages they spoke. Furthermore, in the later evolution of these languages, what with shifts in pronunciation and other changes, the writing systems became even less reliable as indicators of the spoken word.

Changes have taken place in even so short a period as three hundred odd years in English, as is obvious to any reader of Shakespeare's plays. That English writing does a poor job of representing the sounds of the language is also well known, and is caricatured by such jokes as the one about 'fish' being spelled ghoti: gh as in tough, o as in women, and ti as in nation. It is plain that speech and writing cannot be mechanically equated.

The trouble is that the two things are commonly equated, especially when the term 'language' is loosely used in reference to both. Instead, it is preferable to adopt the practice of reserving 'language' as a term synonymous with 'speech.' This is the practice among linguists—that is, scholars engaged in the scientific study of language, not (as the term is often used) persons who speak a number of languages, more properly termed polyglots.

If we use 'language' to mean only 'speech,' then, we will avoid—or at least use with clearer understanding—such expressions as 'spoken language,' which is redundant, and 'written language,' which is a contradiction in terms. We will also avoid the confusion which results from uncritically using 'language' in reference to both speech and writing. This lack of discrimination leads to muddled ideas about the nature of language, which in turn leads to a confused approach to the teaching and learning of language.

The confusion in connection with Chinese is especially great because the term 'Chinese,' like the term 'language,' is used in more than one meaning. There is a widely held but quite erroneous idea that Chinese speak entirely in words of one syllable, that their language is ambiguous, and that they often have to resort to writing to make themselves understood. The confusion can also be illustrated by the following dialogue:

A: I hear you've begun to study Chinese.

B: Yes.

A: It's a tough language, isn't it?

B: Sure is.

A: What's this Chinese character mean?

B: I don't know.

A: I thought you said you were studying Chinese.

B: I mean I'm learning how to speak Chinese.

Here A uses a catch-all expression 'Chinese' in the meaning of 'Chinese writing' and assumes that to study the Chinese language is to study Chinese writing.

Linguists are unanimously agreed, however, that since language is speech, to study a language is to study the speech of a given community. Even if the ultimate and main objective is to read, this objective is most quickly and most

efficiently reached by starting with speech. Such an approach is all the more necessary in the case of Chinese. The traditional Chinese system of writing has been from the beginning an exceedingly poor device for indicating the sounds of the language. Today the gap between writing and speech is greater in China than in any other country in the world.

In view of all this, it is not desirable to start the study of Chinese with the traditional script. We begin instead by representing Chinese speech with an alphabetic system, called pīnyīn 'spelling,' which is widely used on the mainland of China. This orthography is the basis of education in the first few years of elementary school. It is also used in a variety of ways in dictionaries, journals, and other publications. Our use of the system provides not only a serviceable pedagogical tool but also an introduction to a great deal of material published in China.

It is likely that this orthography will have wider and wider application in the future in view of the current attempt to promote a single national language in China. In this connection it is worth noting that the catch-all term 'Chinese,' which we saw above was ambiguous because it failed to distinguish between speech and writing, also leads to confusion even when the term is applied only to speech. There are in fact many forms of speech in China, often called 'dialects'; and the situation is further confused by the fact that some so-called dialects of Chinese are as far apart as English is from Dutch, or Italian from Spanish.

Of the approximately two-thirds of a billion people who speak Chinese, some three-fourths of them speak Mandarin Chinese and the remainder speak mutually unintelligible forms of Chinese. The non-Mandarin 'dialects,' which include Cantonese, Wu (Shanghai), Hakka, Amoy-Swatow, and Foochow, are spoken by about 150,000,000 people. Mandarin Chinese, spoken by about half a billion people, is not intelligible to the rest of the population unless it has been learned as another language. Mandarin Chinese is subdivided into a number of genuine dialects—that is, mutually intelligible variants. Of these, the most important is the Peking dialect. An approximation of this dialect has for many years been the socially most acceptable form of speech.

The Peking dialect is the basis of what is being promoted in China as the standard national language. It is this dialect which is used here in beginning the study of Chinese.

## THE SOUNDS OF CHINESE

### 1. Syllable Structure

The syllable in Chinese is made up of three parts: an initial, a final, and a tone. For example, in mǎ the m represents the initial, a the final, and ˊ the tone.

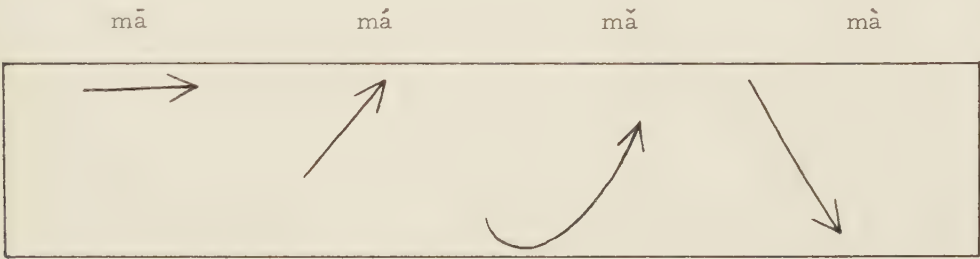
### 2. Tones

Although tones are a distinctive feature of Chinese, we have something akin to them in English. Thus the word 'yes' can convey many different shades of meaning according to just how it is uttered. Rudy Vallée once presented a radio skit in which he demonstrated a dozen or more ways of saying 'yes.' Varying his intonation, he expressed anger by 'Yes!,' inquiry by 'Yes?,' doubt

by 'Y-e-s,' and so on, concluding the catalogue with the Sweet Young Thing's 'No.'

What makes Chinese tones unlike the expressive intonation of English is that they are an integral part of a syllable and help to distinguish quite different words, in much the same way as the vowels a and u do in English hat and hut. Thus Chinese mā means 'mother,' while mǎ means 'horse.'

There are four basic tones in the Peking dialect. The accompanying Tone Chart demonstrates these, in relation to the range of a speaker's voice.



TONE CHART

The first tone starts near the top of a speaker's voice range and continues on that level until the end. The second tone starts at mid-range and rises rapidly to the top of the range. The third tone starts below mid-range, dips to the lowest pitch, and rises above mid-range. The fourth tone starts near the top of the range and falls very rapidly toward the bottom.

The four tones are represented by the following marks:

- |                               |             |
|-------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. first tone, high level:    | mā 'mother' |
| 2. second tone, high rising:  | má 'hemp'   |
| 3. third tone, low dipping:   | mǎ 'horse'  |
| 4. fourth tone, high falling: | mà 'scold'  |

The tone mark is placed over a vowel letter. If there are three vowels in a syllable, it is written over the middle vowel. If there are two vowels, it is placed over the first, unless this is i or u:

āi, āo, ēi, ōu	iā, iē, iū	uā, uē, uī, uō
----------------	------------	----------------

3. Simple Initials

The following are the simple initials:

- b like the p in spy (not like the b in buy; see description below)
- p as in pie, but with a much stronger aspiration, as described below
- m as in might
- f as in fight
- d like the t in sty (not like the d in die)
- t as in tie, but with a much stronger aspiration
- n as in night
- l as in light
- g like the k in sky (not like the g in guy)
- k as in kite, but with a much stronger aspiration
- h like the ch in German nach—that is, much rougher than English h

No two languages have the same speech sounds, and one of the first tasks of the language learner is to discover in what ways he must modify the pronunciation patterns of his native language in order to reproduce words in the new

language—perfectly if possible, but in any event enough like the original to be understood. The new speech sounds do not “come naturally”; they must be learned and practiced.

Of the simple initials listed above, for example, six require special attention; they are like English sounds in some respects but different in others. These are the so-called STOP SOUNDS, represented by these pairs of letters:

b	p
d	t
g	k

The Chinese sounds represented by b, d, g differ from the corresponding English sounds (as in bay, day, gay) in this way: they are VOICELESS, which means they are not accompanied by voice sound, or vibration of the vocal cords. (You can hear this vibration as a loud buzzing if you pronounce “zzzzz” while pressing your hands over your ears. Now pronounce “sssss” and notice the absence of buzzing or “voicing”; s is a voiceless sound, while z is VOICED.)

Chinese b, d, g, then, are unlike English b, d, g in that they are voiceless. They are not, however, identical with English p, t, k. When English speakers say p, t, k (often spelled “c”) at the beginning of words, our speech habits force us to pronounce them with a puff of breath (ASPIRATION) after them: you can feel this by holding the back of your hand to your lips while you pronounce pare, tear, care.

After “s” at the beginning of words, however, we pronounce p, t, k without aspiration: test this with your hand to your lips while you say spare, stare, scare. Now try out the contrast more strikingly by pronouncing pare, spare; tear, stare; care, scare. (The louder you speak, the more noticeable the difference.)

We say, then, that Chinese b is like the p sound of spy (unaspirated and voiceless) rather than like the b of buy (also unaspirated; but voiced). Similarly, Chinese d and g resemble the unaspirated, voiceless t and k sounds of sty and sky. Where English has three separate sounds in the b-p range, Chinese has only two, and similarly for d-t and g-k:

	Aspirated	Unaspirated	Voiced
English	<u>p</u> as in <u>pie</u>	<u>p</u> as in <u>spy</u>	<u>b</u> as in <u>buy</u>
Chinese	<u>p</u> as in <u>pie</u> (represented by <u>p</u> )	<u>p</u> as in <u>spy</u> (represented by <u>b</u> )	[no equivalent]
English	<u>t</u> as in <u>tie</u>	<u>t</u> as in <u>sty</u>	<u>d</u> as in <u>die</u>
Chinese	<u>t</u> as in <u>tie</u> (represented by <u>t</u> )	<u>t</u> as in <u>sty</u> (represented by <u>d</u> )	[no equivalent]
English	<u>k</u> as in <u>kite</u>	<u>k</u> as in <u>sky</u>	<u>g</u> as in <u>guy</u>
Chinese	<u>k</u> as in <u>kite</u> (represented by <u>k</u> )	<u>k</u> as in <u>sky</u> (represented by <u>g</u> )	[no equivalent]

The aspirated consonants of Chinese (represented by p, t, k) differ from their English counterparts (as in pie, tie, kite) mainly in that the aspiration is much stronger in Chinese. Hold a lighted match a few inches from your lips while saying pie. If you can make the flame go out, you are saying a good Chinese p sound.

#### 4. Group-a Finals

a	as in <u>father</u>
an	between the <u>an</u> in <u>can</u> and the <u>on</u> in <u>con</u>
ang	<u>a</u> as in <u>father</u> and <u>ng</u> as in <u>sing</u>
ai	as in <u>aisle</u>
ao	like the <u>au</u> 's in <u>sauerkraut</u>



5. Combinations of Simple Initials with Group-a Finals\*

Initials	Finals				
	a	an	ang	ai	ao
∅ *	ā	ān	āng	ài	ǎo
b	bā	bān	bāng	bái	bào
p	pà	pān	páng	pái	pào
m	mā	mān	máng	mǎi	mào
f	fā	fān	fāng		
d	dá	dān	dāng	dài	dào
t	tā	tān	tāng	tài	tào
n	ná	nān	náng	nài	nào
l	lā	lán	láng	lài	lǎo
g	gā	gān	gāng	gài	gào
k	kǎ	kān	kāng	kāi	kào
h	hā	hān	hāng	hài	hǎo

6. Group-o/e Finals

- o    like the wa in wall  
e    begins as the e of error and passes quickly into the o in of  
en   like the en in chicken  
eng like the ung in lung  
ei   as in eight  
ou   as in soul  
ong like the ung in German jung or, roughly, u as in put plus ng as in sing

\* It is convenient to speak of a syllable that consists only of a final as having a “zero initial,” indicated in the table by the symbol ∅. Note that no combinations of f plus ai or ao occur.



## 7. Combinations of Simple Initials with Group-o/e Finals

Initials	Finals						
	o	e	en	eng	ei	ou	ong
∅		è	ēn	ēng		ǒu	
b	bō		bèn	bēng	bēi		
p	pō		pén	péng	péi	pōu	
m	mō		mén	mèng	méi	mǒu	
f	fó		fēn	féng	féi	fǒu	
d		dé		děng	děi	dōu	dōng
t		tè		téng		tōu	tóng
n			nèn	néng	nèi	nòu	nóng
l		lè	lèn	lěng	lèi	lǒu	lóng
g		gē	gēn	gèng	gěi	gǒu	gōng
k		kè	kěnn	kēng	kēi	kǒu	kōng
h		hē	hěnn	héng	hēi	hòu	hóng

## 8. Group-u Finals

- u as in rule, but with more lip-rounding and with the tongue drawn farther back
- ua like the wa in wander
- uo like the wa in waltz
- uai like the wi in wide
- ui between we and weigh in the first and second tones, like weigh in the third and fourth tones.
- uan starts with a w-sound and ends like the an in the group-a finals
- un somewhat like the wen in Owen
- uang starts with a w-sound and ends like the ang in the group-a finals
- ueng starts with a w-sound and ends like the ung in lung

9. Combinations of Simple Initials with Group-u Finals\*

Initials	Finals								
	u	ua	uo	uai	ui	uan	un	uang	ueng
Ø	wū	wá	wǒ	wài	wèi	wān	wèn	wáng	wēng
b	bù								
p	pù								
m	mù								
f	fū								
d	dù		duō		duì	duān	dūn		
t	tù		tuō		tuì	tuán	tún		
n	nú		nuó			nuǎn			
l	lù		luó			luàn	lún		
g	gǔ	guā	guó	guài	guì	guǎn	gǔn	guāng	
k	kū	kuā	kuò	kuài	kuì	kuǎn	kūn	kuāng	
h	hū	huà	huó	huài	huì	huān	hūn	huāng	

10. Retroflex and Sibilant Initials

Retroflex

- zh like the ch in chew, but unaspirated and with the tongue tip curled far back
- ch like the zh above, but aspirated, as the ch-h in teach history
- sh like the sh in shoe, but with the tongue tip curled far back
- r like the r in crew, but with the tongue tip curled far back

Sibilant

- z like the t's in it's Al (not the dds of adds), but with the tongue farther forward
- c like the t's h in it's Hal, but with much more breath and with the tongue farther forward
- s as in soon, but with the tongue farther forward

\* The group-u finals can all occur by themselves (that is, with zero initial), but in this occurrence they are written with a w initial; note also the other spelling modifications in the Ø row.

The four retroflex initials represent sounds made by curling the tongue far back, farther even than in pronouncing the  $\underset{-}{j}$  of English *joy*. The retroflex consonants are spoken by themselves with a sort of  $\underset{-}{j}$ -sound final, so that Chinese *sh*, for example, sounds somewhat like English *shr* in *shrill*. Similarly, the sibilant consonants are pronounced by themselves with a sort of buzzing sound like a prolonged  $\underset{-}{z}$  in *buzz*. These final sounds of both groups of consonants are written with the letter  $\underset{-}{j}$ . The sounds represented by this  $\underset{-}{j}$  are quite different from those of the group- $\underset{-}{i}$  sounds discussed below. When referring to the former we shall write "i" in quotation marks to avoid confusion with the  $\underset{-}{j}$ -sounds as pronounced in other positions.

# 11. Combinations of Retroflex and Sibilant Initials with "i" and Group- $\underset{-}{a}$ Finals

Initials	Finals					
	"i"	s	sh	sh $\underset{-}{j}$	si	si
sh	sh $\underset{-}{i}$	sh $\underset{-}{s}$	sh $\underset{-}{sh}$	sh $\underset{-}{shj}$	sh $\underset{-}{si}$	sh $\underset{-}{si}$
ch	ch $\underset{-}{i}$	ch $\underset{-}{s}$	ch $\underset{-}{sh}$	ch $\underset{-}{shj}$	ch $\underset{-}{si}$	ch $\underset{-}{si}$
zh	zh $\underset{-}{i}$	zh $\underset{-}{s}$	zh $\underset{-}{sh}$	zh $\underset{-}{shj}$	zh $\underset{-}{si}$	zh $\underset{-}{si}$
r	r $\underset{-}{i}$		r $\underset{-}{sh}$	r $\underset{-}{shj}$		r $\underset{-}{si}$
z	z $\underset{-}{i}$	z $\underset{-}{s}$	z $\underset{-}{sh}$	z $\underset{-}{shj}$	z $\underset{-}{si}$	z $\underset{-}{si}$
c	c $\underset{-}{i}$	c $\underset{-}{s}$	c $\underset{-}{sh}$	c $\underset{-}{shj}$	c $\underset{-}{si}$	c $\underset{-}{si}$
s	s $\underset{-}{i}$	s $\underset{-}{s}$	s $\underset{-}{sh}$	s $\underset{-}{shj}$	s $\underset{-}{si}$	s $\underset{-}{si}$

# 12. Combinations of Retroflex and Sibilant Initials with Group- $\underset{-}{o}$ Finals

Initials	Finals						
	o	o	oi	oi $\underset{-}{j}$	oi	oi	oi $\underset{-}{j}$
sh		sh $\underset{-}{o}$	sh $\underset{-}{oi}$	sh $\underset{-}{oij}$	sh $\underset{-}{oi}$	sh $\underset{-}{oi}$	sh $\underset{-}{oij}$
ch		ch $\underset{-}{o}$	ch $\underset{-}{oi}$	ch $\underset{-}{oij}$		ch $\underset{-}{oi}$	ch $\underset{-}{oij}$
zh		zh $\underset{-}{o}$	zh $\underset{-}{oi}$	zh $\underset{-}{oij}$	zh $\underset{-}{oi}$	zh $\underset{-}{oi}$	
r		r $\underset{-}{o}$	r $\underset{-}{oi}$	r $\underset{-}{oij}$		r $\underset{-}{oi}$	r $\underset{-}{oij}$
z		z $\underset{-}{o}$	z $\underset{-}{oi}$	z $\underset{-}{oij}$	z $\underset{-}{oi}$	z $\underset{-}{oi}$	z $\underset{-}{oij}$
c		c $\underset{-}{o}$	c $\underset{-}{oi}$	c $\underset{-}{oij}$		c $\underset{-}{oi}$	c $\underset{-}{oij}$
s		s $\underset{-}{o}$	s $\underset{-}{oi}$	s $\underset{-}{oij}$		s $\underset{-}{oi}$	s $\underset{-}{oij}$

13. Combinations of Retroflex and Sibilant Initials  
with Group-u Finals

Initials	Finals							
	u	ua	uo	uai	ui	uan	un	uang
zh	zhū	zhuā	zhuō	zhuāi	zhuī	zhuān	zhūn	zhuāng
ch	chū		chuò	chuǎi	chuī	chuān	chūn	chuáng
sh	shū	shuā	shuō	shuāi	shuǐ	shuàn	shùn	shuāng
r	rù		ruò		ruǐ	ruǎn	rùn	
z	zū		zuò		zuì	zuān	zūn	
c	cū		cuò		cuì	cuàn	cùn	
s	sú		suǒ		suì	suàn	sūn	

14. Group-i Finals

- i as in machine
- ia like the ya in yacht
- iao like the yow in yowl
- ie like the ye in yet (note that e after i is not the same as e in the group-o/e finals)
- iu in the first and second tones, close to u in union; in the third and fourth tones, close to yo in yoke
- ian like the i in machine plus a sound between the an of man and the en of men in English (note that an after i is not the same as the an in the group-a finals)
- in like the ine in machine
- iang like i in machine plus ang as in the group-a finals
- ing like i in machine plus ng as in sing
- iong like i in machine plus ong as in the group-o/e finals

## 15. Combinations of Simple Initials and Group-i Finals\*

Initials	Finals									
	i	ia	iao	ie	iu	ian	in	iang	ing	iong
∅	yī	yá	yào	yě	yǒu	yán	yīn	yáng	yīng	yòng
b	bǐ		biǎo	bié		biān	bīn		bīng	
p	pí		piāo	piě		piān	pīn		píng	
m	mǐ		miào	miè	miú	mián	mín		míng	
d	dì		diào	diē	diū	diān			dīng	
t	tí		tiāo	tiē		tiān			tīng	
n	nǐ		niǎo	niè	niǔ	nián	nín	niáng	níng	
l	lǐ	liǎ	liáo	liè	liǔ	lián	lín	liáng	líng	

## 16. Palatal Initials

- j like the tch in itching (not voiced, like the j in jeep); made by pressing the flat part of the tongue against the palate or front roof of the mouth
- q like the ch in cheap, but with much more breath, as for the ch-h in each house; tongue position as for j
- x between the s in see and the sh in she; tongue position as for j

17. Combinations of Palatal Initials  
with Group-i Finals

Initials	Finals									
	i	ia	iao	ie	iu	ian	in	iang	ing	iong
j	jī	jiā	jiāo	jiē	jiǔ	jiān	jīn	jiāng	jīng	jiǒng
q	qī	qià	qiāo	qiē	qiū	qiān	qīn	qiāng	qīng	qióng
x	xī	xiā	xiāo	xiè	xiū	xiān	xīn	xiāng	xīng	xiōng

\* The group-i finals can all occur by themselves—that is, with a zero initial—though they are written with a y initial in this occurrence, and with the spelling modifications shown. Note again that the i sound is altogether different from the “i” sound. Since they never occur after the same initials, it is unambiguous to use the same letter to represent both sounds; but learners must take special pains to differentiate their pronunciation. (See the Pronunciation Drills in Lesson 5.)

18. Group-ü Finals

- ü like the French u in rue or the German ü in über; made by pronouncing the i of machine with the lips rounded as for the oo of ooze
- üe ü as above plus e as in ie in the group-i finals (not like the e of the group-o/e finals)
- üan ü as above plus an as in ian in the group-i finals (not like the an of the group-a finals)
- ün ü as above followed by a final n

19. Combinations of Palatal and Other Initials  
with Group-u Finals \*

Initials	Finals			
	ü	üe	üan	ün
Ø	yú	yuè	yuǎn	yún
j	jū	jué	juǎn	jūn
q	qù	què	quǎn	qún
x	xù	xué	xuǎn	xún
n	nǚ	nǚè		
l	lù	lǚè		

20. Group-r Finals

Final r occurs as part of the syllable er and as a suffix attached to many of the finals listed in the previous tables.

The syllable er is pronounced like the ur of fur in the first and second tones, and between -ur and are in the third and fourth. This syllable is widely used in other dialects as well as in that of Peking.

The suffix r modifies the spelling of a preceding final in various ways, as follows:

\* The group-ü finals can all occur by themselves. Although spoken with a zero initial, they are written with a y initial and modified in spelling as indicated above. Note further that the two dots in ü are written only after n and l, where they are needed to distinguish lü from lǚ and nu from nǚ. Be careful not to confuse the sound of un in zhun with the un in jün, or the uan in chuan with the uan in quan; the form un represents different sounds after different initials, just as the letter i does (above, p. xxiv).



- I. a, o, e, u, ng: add r. Examples: gē, gēr; fēng, fēngr.
- II. ai, an, en: drop final letter and add r. Examples: hái, hár, wán, wár; fēn, fēr.
- III. i, ü after consonants: add er. Examples: jī, jīer; yú, yuēr.
- IV. "i," in, un: drop final letter and add er. Examples: shì, shèr; xìn, xièr; zhǔn, zhuǐr.

The suffix r is common to all speakers of the Peking dialect. Educated speakers, however, are aware that it is a substandard form in some other dialects, and so tend to limit their use of it, particularly in formal and public speech. For the same reason, the r suffix is generally minimized when the Peking dialect is being taught—whether as the National Language (to Chinese who speak other dialects natively) or to foreigners.

## 21. Juncture

Although the syllable is an important unit of sound in Chinese, it is by no means correct (as we pointed out above) to speak of the language as mono-syllabic. Some syllables can never stand alone but are always joined closely with others in speech. We say that these are in "close juncture" and write the syllables together as one word, as in tàitai. In the joining of syllables, unless there are special reasons for doing otherwise, we comply with the practices followed in other literature which uses the same writing system.

n before a vowel in the middle of a word is read as part of the following syllable. If ng occurs before a vowel in the middle of a word, n is read as part of the preceding syllable and g as part of the following. Exceptions to these rules are marked by an apostrophe.

yínán = yí + nán

yīn'àn = yīn + àn

míngē = mín + gē

míng'é = míng + é

We use hyphens to join two or more syllables which can under some conditions be separated by a pause or by the insertion of additional elements, but which in the specific case before us are spoken without a pause: mài-shū, nǐ-tàitai.

We use blank space to mark places where it is possible in slow speech to hesitate briefly or stop to catch one's breath: Nèiběn-shū yě-kànwán-le.

We use commas and periods to mark places where phrases or sentences are often separated by longer pauses: Wòmen-yǒu-shū. méi-yǒu-huàr.

## 22. Stress

In a phrase or sentence, the last syllable with a tone mark on it usually receives the chief stress, that is, is spoken most loudly. If the chief stress is elsewhere, we mark it by a stress symbol or, more rarely, by a single underline (double if the sentence is already underlined):

Wáng-Tàitai (stress on Tài); 'Wáng-Tàitai (stress on Wáng)

Wǒ-shuō-jīntiān-qu (stress on tiān)

In Chinese, as in English, a word which is strongly emphasized or strongly contrasted with something is spoken louder than the rest of the sentence. By

shifting the stress from one word to another we can create differences in meaning within the same string of words. Note how this is done in the following English sentences:

He is leaving tomorrow.

He is leaving tomorrow.

He is leaving tomorrow.

He is leaving tomorrow.

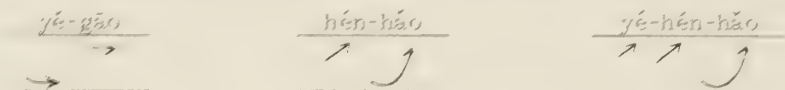
### 23. Modification of Tones

A third tone (low dipping) has its full contour only when it is followed by a pause. Before any other tone, it is pronounced as a low tone without its final rise in pitch. We do not indicate this change of a full third tone to a 'half third tone,' as it is easily learned and quickly becomes automatic in connected speech.

If two third-tone syllables are spoken in uninterrupted succession, the first changes to a second tone. Thus hén plus hǎo becomes hén-hǎo. We do indicate this change.

If three third tones occur in uninterrupted succession, the first two change to second tone. Thus yě plus hén plus hǎo becomes yé-hén-hǎo. We mark these changes.

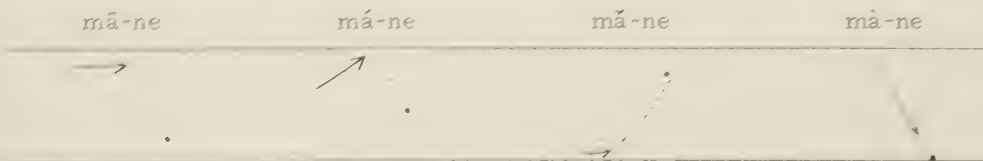
The above three changes in a third tone are illustrated in the accompanying chart, in which all syllables (except gāo) are original third tones.



If four or more third-tone syllables occur together, various combinations of the changes noted above are possible.

Stressed syllables always have one of the four tones. The same syllables sometimes occur unstressed, in which case the tone often disappears. Some syllables never have stress. Such unstressed syllables are said to have neutral tone or to be toneless or neutral syllables and are written without tone marks.

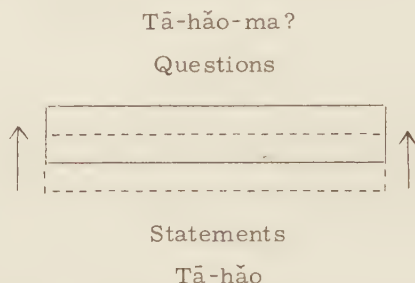
If a neutral tone stands at the beginning of an utterance, as in bu-gāo, it is pronounced at about the mid-range of the speaker's voice. If a neutral tone comes at the end of an utterance, it is affected by the tone of the preceding syllable. The pitch of a neutral syllable after each of the four tones is indicated by the heavy dot in the accompanying chart.



### 24. Intonation

In addition to the tones appearing on individual syllables, there are tone patterns (intonations) accompanying sentences: some statements, for example, have a different intonation from some types of questions. With certain

questions—especially those asked out of genuine curiosity and interest and not merely from politeness—the whole pitch level is likely to be shifted slightly upward. This is illustrated by the following chart, in which the dotted figure represents the normal range for statements and the solid figure represents the range for questions.



It is essential to bear in mind that questions in Chinese do not have the same intonation patterns as questions in English. In English, questions which anticipate a "yes" or "no" answer normally end on a high pitch ("Is it raining?" "Are you happy?"), while questions asking for supplemental information are pronounced like statements, with dropping pitch at the end ("What time is it." "Where are you going. "). In Chinese, on the contrary, it is the entire sentence which is uttered on a higher pitch—not merely the last word or some other part of it—regardless of the kind of answer expected.

## 25. Marking of Sounds

In the lessons which follow, we seek to provide all the information you need to pronounce the material correctly. We mark the required shift of a third tone to second before another third tone, together with a few other required tonal changes; we also indicate juncture and stress. Note that there are often several different ways of pronouncing the same sentence; different speakers may interpret the same sentence in different ways, for example in determining which part of the sentence should be stressed. Do not be disturbed if you hear native speakers pronounce a sentence differently from what we have indicated. It is always safe to imitate the native speaker.

SETTING THE STAGE

Cast of Characters

- Bái Wénshān: Vincent White, an American college student spending his junior year in China.
- Gāo Měiyīng: A middle-school student, daughter of Mr. and Mrs. Gao.
- Mr. Gao : Manager of the Three Friends Bookstore.
- Mrs. Gao : Wife of Mr. Gao.
- Mr. Mao : A clerk in the Three Friends Bookstore.
- Mr. Qian : Friend and neighbor of the Gaos.
- Mr. Wan : Professor Wanamaker, a specialist in Chinese.
- Ticket-seller on the No. 3 bus.
- Waiter in the Ten Thousand Years Restaurant.

Place

A city in China

Time

September 7	Lesson 1	June 5	Lesson 20
September 10	Lesson 2	June 7	Lesson 21
September 14	Lesson 3	August 1	Lesson 22
September 16	Lesson 4	August 25	Lesson 23
January 22	Lessons 5-19		



# UNIT I





## Lesson 1 GREETING FRIENDS



" 'Gāo-Xiānsheng, nín-hǎo-a? "

Dialogue: Mr. White and Mr. Gao exchange greetings when they meet on the street. (Mr. White is younger than Mr. Gao and therefore uses more polite forms in addressing him.)

Bái: 'Gāo-Xiānsheng, nín-hǎo-a?	Mr. Gao, how are you?
Gāo: Wó-hén-hǎo. Nǐ-ne?	I'm fine. And you?
Bái: Hǎo, xièxie-nín. Gāo-Tàitai Gāo-Xiǎojie yě-hǎo-ma?	Fine, thank you. And how are Mrs. Gao and Miss Gao?
Gāo: Tāmen-'dōu-hǎo, xièxie.	5 They're both well, thanks.
Bái: Zàijiàn, 'Gāo-Xiānsheng.	Good-bye, Mr. Gao.
Gāo: Zàijiàn, zàijiàn.	See you again.

### VOCABULARY \*

(For the abbreviations used below, see the list at the beginning of the Glossary and Index)

a	(question particle: Note 14)
bái	white (SV) (also, a surname)

\* In all English translations of Chinese material, square brackets enclose more literal renderings of idiomatic equivalents; parentheses are used for English words with no equivalent in the Chinese but necessary for smoother English, as well as other explanatory material.

dōu	all, both, entirely (AD)
gāo	tall, high (SV) (also, a surname)
hǎo	good, well, fine, O.K. (SV)
hěn	very (AD)
ma	(question particle: Note 13)
men	(pluralizing suffix: Note 3)
ne	(question particle: Note 15)
nǐ	you (singular) (PR)
nín	you (polite form) (PR) (Note 3)
tā	he, him; she, her (PR)
tàitai	married lady (N); Mrs. (Note 7)
wǒ	I, me (PR)
xiānsheng	gentleman, husband (N); Mr. [lit. first born] (Note 7)
xiǎojie	young (unmarried) lady, daughter (N); Miss [lit. little sister] (Note 7)
xièxie	thank; thanks, thank you (TV)
yě	also, too (AD)
zàijiàn	good-bye [lit. again see]

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| nǐ                             | you (singular)               |
| hǎo                            | well                         |
| 1. Ní-hǎo?                     | How are you?                 |
| nín                            | you (polite form)            |
| 2. Nín-hǎo?                    | How are you?                 |
| nǐ                             | you (singular)               |
| nǐmen                          | you (plural)                 |
| 3. Nǐmen-hǎo?                  | How are you?                 |
| hǎo-a?                         | well (question form)         |
| 4. Ní-hǎo-a?                   | How are you?                 |
| hǎo-ma?                        | well (question form)         |
| 5. Nín-hǎo-ma?                 | How are you?                 |
| bái                            | white (also, a surname)      |
| Xiānsheng                      | gentleman; Mr.               |
| 'Bái-Xiānsheng                 | Mr. White                    |
| 6. 'Bái-Xiānsheng, ní-hǎo-ma?  | How are you, Mr. White?      |
| gāo                            | tall, high (also, a surname) |
| 'Gāo-Xiānsheng                 | Mr. Gao                      |
| 7. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng, nín-hǎo-ma? | How are you, Mr. Gao?        |

Xiǎojié

'Gāo-Xiǎojié

8. 'Gāo-Xiǎojié, nǐ-hǎo-ma?

young lady; Miss

Miss Gao

Miss Gao, how are you?

Tàitai

'Gāo-Tàitai

9. 'Gāo-Tàitai, nín-hǎo-ma?

married lady; Mrs.

Mrs. Gao

How are you, Mrs. Gao?

xièxie

10. Xièxie-nǐ.

thank; thanks, thank you

Thank you.

wǒ

wǒmen

11. Wǒmen-xièxie-nǐ.

I

we

We thank you.

tā

tāmen

12. Tāmen-xièxie-nǐ.

he, him; she, her

they

They thank you.

hěn

hěn-hǎo

13. Wó-hén-hǎo.

very

very well

I'm very well.

yě

yě-hén-hǎo

14. Tā-yě-hén-hǎo.

also

also very well

He's also very well.

dōu

dōu-gāo

15. Tāmen-dōu-gāo-ma?

all

all tall

Are all of them tall?

wó-hǎo

nǐ-ne?

16. Wó-hǎo. Nǐ-ne?

I'm fine

how about you?

I'm fine. And you?

zàijiàn

17. Zàijiàn, 'Gāo-Tàitai.

good-bye

Good-bye, Mrs. Gao.

# PATTERN DRILLS \*

Pattern 1.1. Statements with Stative Verbs

(Notes 8 and 11, below, p. 10)

S	AD	SV
Subject	Adverb	Stative Verb
Tā	hěn	hǎo.
'He's very well.'		

\* Each pattern is numbered by lesson and drill; Pattern 1.1, then, is the pattern demonstrated in Lesson 1, Drill 1.

1. Hǎo.	Fine.
2. Hén-hǎo.	Very well.
3. Yě-hǎo.	(Someone) is also well.
4. Wǒ-hǎo.	I'm fine.
5. Wǒ-hén-hǎo.	I'm very well.
6. Yě-hén-gāo.	(Someone) is also very tall.
7. Tāmen-dōu-hǎo.	They're all well.
8. Tāmen-dōu-hén-gāo.	They're all quite tall.
9. 'Gāo-Xiǎojiě yě-hǎo.	Miss Gao is also well.
10. 'Bái-Xiānsheng 'Bái-Tàitai dōu-hén-gāo.	Mr. and Mrs. Bai are both very tall.

Pattern 1.2. Statements with Transitive Verbs  
(Notes 9 and 10, below, p. 10)

S	V	O
Subject	Verb	Object
Wǒ	xièxie	nǐ.
'I thank you.'		
1. Wǒ-xièxie-tā.		I thank him.
2. Tā-xièxie-wǒ.		He thanks me.
3. Tā-xièxie-nǐ.		He thanks you.
4. Wǒ-yě-xièxie-tā.		I also thank him.
5. Tāmen-dōu-xièxie-nǐ.		They all thank you.

Pattern 1.3. Questions Formed with the Particle ma  
(Note 13, below, p. 11)

S	(AD)	SV	<u>ma</u>
Subject	(Adverb)	Stative Verb	Question Particle
Nǐ	yě	hǎo	ma?
'Are you also well?'			
1. Nǐ-hǎo-ma?			How are you?
2. Tāmen-dōu-gāo-ma?			Are all of them tall?
3. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yě-hǎo-ma?			Is Mr. Bai also well?
4. 'Bái-Tàitai 'Bái-Xiǎojiě dōu-hǎo-ma?			Are Mrs. Bai and Miss Bai both well?
5. Nǐmen-dōu-hǎo-ma?			Are you (plural) all well?



SUBSTITUTION TABLES

Substitution tables are a device for rapid drill, as either individual study or classroom work. They enable the student to construct a number of different sentences on the same structural pattern, by substituting a variety of appropriate vocabulary items into a given sentence known to be grammatically correct. The number of sentences or phrases which can be formed from a table is indicated at the top of the table.

A break in a solid line above a substitution table indicates a place where it is possible to divide a table into two or more parts. Thus Table IV below can be divided into two parts and each part can be worked on separately, especially as a preliminary to forming the longer and more complicated sentences of the whole table.

A long dash in a column indicates you have the choice of selecting nothing from that column.

Taking Table IV, for example, you can get 48 sentences from the small vocabulary of Lesson 1 by varying only one item at a time. Half of these are statements formed by selecting nothing from the final column, and the other 24 are questions formed by adding ma to the sentences already created. One way to produce the first half of these sentences would be like this:

Bái Xiānsheng yé hǎo	Bái Xiānsheng hěn hǎo
Gāo " " "	Gāo " " "
Bái Tàitai " "	Bái Tàitai " "
Gāo " " "	Gāo " " "
Bái Xiǎojie " "	Bái Xiǎojie " "
Gāo " " "	Gāo " " "
Bái Xiānsheng yě gāo	Bái Xiānsheng hěn gāo
Gāo " " "	Gāo " " "
Bái Tàitai " "	Bái Tàitai " "
Gāo " " "	Gāo " " "
Bái Xiǎojie " "	Bái Xiǎojie " "
Gāo " " "	Gāo " " "

Substitution tables have varied uses. One of the simplest—the build-up drill or fluency drill—is performed by having the student repeat increasingly long sentences in direct imitation of the Chinese speaker, as follows:

<u>Teacher</u>	<u>Student</u>
Hǎo	Hǎo
Yé-hǎo	Yé-hǎo
Xiānsheng-yé-hǎo	Xiānsheng-yé-hǎo
Gāo-Xiānsheng-yé-hǎo	Gāo-Xiānsheng-yé-hǎo

Another useful exercise, the substitution drill, is performed by having the student substitute into a given sentence pattern, one by one, different vocabulary items called off by the teacher, as:

<u>Teacher</u>	<u>Student</u>
Gāo-Xiānsheng-yé-hǎo	Gāo-Xiānsheng-yé-hǎo
Tàitai	Gāo-Tàitai-yé-hǎo
Xiǎojie	Gāo-Xiǎojie-yé-hǎo

Each table should be used as the basis of as many drills as the teacher's ingenuity can invent.

I: 9 sentences (Notes 3, 14, 16)

nǐ	hǎo	—
nín		a
nǐmen		ma

II: 54 sentences (Notes 3, 4, 16)

Bái	Xiānsheng	—	hǎo	—
Gāo	Tàitai	nǐ	、	a
	Xiǎojie	nín		ma

III: 36 sentences (Notes 7, 9, 10)

Bái	Xiānsheng	xièxie	wǒ	—
Gāo	Tàitai		nǐ	men
	Xiǎojie		tā	

IV: 48 sentences (Notes 12-13)

Bái	Xiānsheng	yě	hǎo	—
Gāo	Tàitai	hěn	gāo	ma
	Xiǎojie			

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## I. The Unaspirated-Aspirated Contrast

(a) bà pà	(c) bái pái	(f) bǎo pǎo
(b) dā tā	(d) dài tài	(g) dào táo
	(e) gāi kāi	(h) gǎo kǎo

## II. Contrasts in Tones

Read the following pairs first downward by columns, then across by rows, with pauses between syllables. (Digits indicate tone sequences.)

1, 1 mā, mā	2, 1 má, mā	3, 1 mǎ, mā	4, 1 mà, mā
1, 2 mā, má	2, 2 'má, má	3, 2 mǎ, má	4, 2 mà, má
1, 3 mā, mǎ	2, 3 má, mǎ	3, 3 mǎ, mǎ	4, 3 mà, mǎ
1, 4 mā, mà	2, 4 má, mà	3, 4 mǎ, mà	4, 4 mà, mà

## III. Combinations of Tones

Read the following phrases first down, then across. (The asterisked phrase involves a change of third tone to second tone.)

1, 1 tā-bān	2, 1 hái-gāo	3, 1 mǎi-dāo	4, 1 tài-gāo
1, 2 tā-ná	2, 2 hái-lái	3, 2 mǎi-táng	4, 2 tài-máng
1, 3 tā-mǎi	2, 3 hái-hǎo	3, 3 mǎi-mǎ*	4, 3 tài-hǎo
1, 4 tā-pà	2, 4 hái-kàn	3, 4 mǎi-bào	4, 4 tài-dà

IV. Changes in Third Tones  
(See The Sounds of Chinese, 23)

A. Full Third Tone to Half Third Tone

wǒ gāo > wǒ-gāo  
wǒ máng > wǒ-máng  
wǒ dà > wǒ-dà

B. Third Tone to Second Tone

wǒ hǎo > wó-hǎo      wǒ hěn hǎo > wó-hén-hǎo  
nǐ hǎo > ní-hǎo      nǐ hěn hǎo > ní-hén-hǎo  
hěn hǎo > hén-hǎo      wǒ yě hǎo > wó-yé-hǎo  
yě hǎo > yé-hǎo      nǐ yě hǎo > ní-yé-hǎo

V. Intonation Contrast  
(See The Sounds of Chinese, 24)

Tā-yé-hǎo.	He's also well.
Tā-yé-hǎo-ma?	Is he also well?
Tāmen-hěn-gāo.	They're very tall.
Tāmen-hěn-gāo-ma?	Are they very tall?

BOY MEETS GIRL

State in English who says what to whom.

Bái: 'Gāo-Xiáojie, ní-hǎo?  
Gāo: Hǎo. Nín-hǎo-ma?  
Bái: Hén-hǎo. Gāo-Xiānsheng Gāo-Tàitai dōu-hǎo-ma?  
Gāo: Dōu-hǎo, xièxie-nín.  
Bái: Zàijiàn, zàijiàn.  
Gāo: Zàijiàn, 'Bái-Xiānsheng.

NOTES

1. Chinese has parts of speech which we speak of as nouns, pronouns, verbs, adverbs, etc. These do not always have the same characteristics as the English parts of speech with the same names. In the English sentence 'All are well,' for example, 'all' is a noun or pronoun or perhaps an adjective, but in the corresponding Chinese sentence the word meaning 'all' is an adverb.

2. Chinese pronouns, unlike those of English, are not inflected for case or gender. Thus tā can mean 'he,' 'him,' 'she,' or 'her,' according to context.

3. Chinese personal pronouns are made plural by adding the suffix men:

wǒ 'I, me'	wǒmen 'we, us'
nǐ 'you' (singular)	nǐmen 'you' (plural)
tā 'he, him, she, her'	tāmen 'they, them'
nín 'you' (polite singular)	nínmen 'you' (polite plural)

Nín is also used without men as a polite plural form.

4. Chinese surnames generally consist of only one syllable. As in English, some of them are ordinary words, such as bái 'white.'
5. When foreigners take on Chinese names, they attempt to represent either the meaning or the sound of their original name. Thus someone with the surname 'White' would most likely call himself Bái in Chinese, translating the meaning; on the other hand, the name 'Gowan' would probably become Gāo, as a representation of the sound.
6. In the English translations of all Chinese material, we give the foreign equivalent of Chinese names which refer to non-Chinese; untranslated names will then be understood as referring to Chinese people.
7. A Chinese title follows the surname: Bái-Xiānsheng 'Mr. White.'
8. Chinese verbs, like English verbs, name actions (eat, come, are, etc.); unlike English verbs, they are not inflected for person, number, tense, or mood. Verbs may serve as grammatically complete sentences in Chinese: the subjects are often omitted if they can be inferred from the context. This is different from English; we say 'I'm fine' or 'Fine,' but not 'Am fine.'
9. Transitive verbs—those which take objects—are normally used (as in English) in the pattern Subject-Verb-Object: Wǒ-xièxie-ni. 'I thank you.'
10. Pronouns in object position often lose their tones, as with ni 'you' in the example in Note 9. However, if the sentence is spoken slowly, or if nǐ is stressed, the tone is retained.
11. Stative verbs are verbs which can be preceded by a word meaning 'very.' They describe a state of being and thus in meaning resemble adjectives in English: hǎo '(to be) good, (to be) well.' A statement containing a subject and a stative verb most often contains an adverb as well: Wó-yé-hǎo. 'I'm also well.'
12. Adverbs are words which can stand only before a verb or another adverb. The two adverbs appearing in Lesson 1 are hěn 'very,' as in Hěn-gāo '(Someone) is very tall' and dōu 'all,' as in Dōu-hǎo '(They) are all well.' Chinese adverbs are much more restricted than English adverbs, which can appear in various parts of a sentence. 'All' in the English sentence 'All of them are very well' is expressed in Chinese by the adverb dōu: Tāmen-dōu-hén-hǎo. It is impossible to translate 'all of them' by placing dōu before tāmen, since Chinese adverbs occur only before verbs.

13. A statement is often turned into a yes-or-no question (a question that can be answered by 'yes' or 'no') without any change in word order, by the addition of a question particle at the end—the most common is ma. This form of question is nearly always used when the verb of the sentence is preceded by an adverb: Tā-hǎo-ma? 'Is he well?' Tā-yé-hǎo-ma? 'Is he also well?'
14. The particle a added to a statement changes it to a polite command, suggestion, or presumption. It often suggests that the speaker presumes his listener agrees with him; thus the Chinese sentence Ni-hǎo-a? is like English 'You are well, I suppose?' or 'How are you?' spoken as a greeting rather than as a real question.
15. The question particle ne makes questions from portions of speech which are less than a full sentence: Nǐ-ne? 'And you?' as a return greeting.
16. Conventional greetings are also expressed without a question particle. Three of the nine possible sentences from Substitution Table I, on page 7, for example, though they have the form of statements, would be understood in a conversational setting as questions:
- |            |                            |
|------------|----------------------------|
| Ní-hǎo?    | How are you? (singular)    |
| Nín-hǎo?   | How are you? (polite form) |
| Nǐmen-hǎo? | How are you? (plural)      |
17. The vast majority of Chinese words consist of one or more syllables each of which has meaning. Syllables have varying degrees of freedom. Some stand alone, like English 'Fine!' Others sometimes stand alone and sometimes combine with other syllables, like 'rail' and 'road' in 'rail-road.' Still others, though they have meaning, never stand alone, like the suffix -er 'one who...' in 'teacher.' As it is sometimes helpful in memorizing words of more than one syllable to know how they are made up, we give meanings for individual syllables in the Vocabulary when it seems useful to do so. But be careful not to use the syllables in the meanings indicated unless you are sure the Chinese use them that way; some are combining forms rather than full words, and their use is restricted.
18. Coordinate items in succession are usually listed without intervening conjunctions, and with or without pauses between them:

Gāo-Xiānsheng Gāo-Tàitai dōu-hǎo-ma?

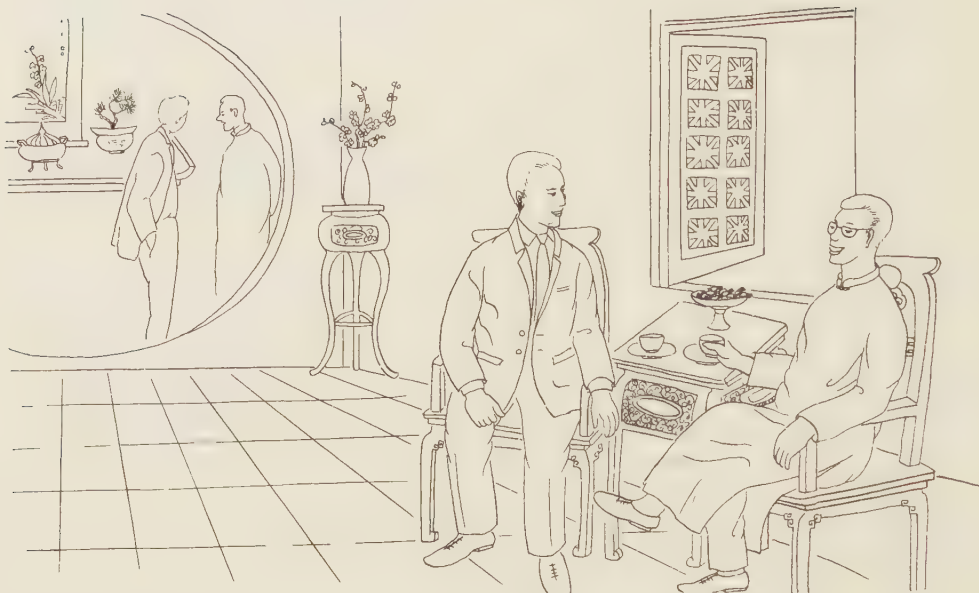
or

Gāo-Xiānsheng, Gāo-Tàitai dōu-hǎo-ma?

'Are Mr. (and) Mrs. Gao both well?'



## Lesson 2 MEETING PEOPLE



“Nín-guìxìng?”

Dialogue: Mr. White, at a party, introduces himself to a Chinese gentleman.

Bái : Qǐng-wèn Xiānsheng, 'nín-guìxìng?

May I ask your name, Sir?

Qián: Wǒ-xìng-Qián. Nín-shi 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-ba?

My name is Qian. I take it you're Mr. King?

Bái : Bú-shi. Wǒ-xìng-Bái.

5

No, my name is White.

Qián: Oh, nín-shi 'Bái-Xiānsheng. Nín-shi 'Yīngguo-rén-ma?

Oh, you're Mr. White. Are you English?

Bái : Bú-shi. Wǒ-shi 'Měiguó-rén. Qǐng-wèn, nín-huì-shuō-'Yīngguo-huà-bu-huì?

10

No, I'm American. [May I ask,] do you speak English?

Qián: Wǒ-'bú-huì. 'Jiù-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà.

No. I can only speak Chinese.

VOCABULARY

ba	(final particle) (Note 7)
bù, bú, bu	not; no (AD)
guìxìng?	What is your name? [lit. Honorable surname?]
guó	country, nation (N) (Note 1)
huà	speech, language (N)
huì	able to, can (V)
jiù	only, merely (AD)
Měiguó	America, United States (PW) [lit. beautiful country]
qián	money (N) (also, a surname)
qǐng	invite, request, ask; please (TV)
qǐng-wèn	May I ask?
rén	person, man, people (N)
shì, shi	be, am, is, are (EV) (Notes 3-6)
shuō	speak, talk, say (TV)
wáng	king (N) (also, a surname)
wèn	inquire, ask (TV)
xìng	have such-and-such a surname, be called, be named (EV)
Yīngguó	England (PW) [lit. brave country]
Zhōngguó	China (PW) [lit. middle country]

SENTENCE BUILD-UP

Wáng	King (a surname)
'Wáng-Xiānsheng	Mr. King
1. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng, 'nín-hǎo-ma?	Mr. King, how are you?
xìng	be called
xìng-Wáng	be called King
2. Wǒ-xìng-Wáng.	My name is King.
xìng-Bái	be called White
'bú-xìng-Bái	not be called White
3. Tā-'bú-xìng-Bái-ma?	His name isn't White?

- |                                              |                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| shì<br>bú-shì                                | be, am, are, is<br>not be; am not, are not, is<br>not                             |
| 4. Tā-bú-shì 'Wáng-Xiānsheng.                | He isn't Mr. King.                                                                |
| Zhōngguo<br>rén<br>'Zhōngguo-rén             | China<br>person<br>Chinese person                                                 |
| 5. Tā-shì-'Zhōngguo-rén.                     | He's Chinese.                                                                     |
| Yīngguo<br>'Yīngguo-rén                      | England<br>Englishman                                                             |
| 6. Wǒ-bú-shì 'Yīngguo-rén.                   | I'm not an Englishman. <u>or</u><br>I'm not English.                              |
| Měiguó<br>'Měiguó-rén                        | America<br>American person                                                        |
| 7. Wǒmen-dōu-shì 'Měiguó-rén.                | We're all Americans.                                                              |
| shuō<br>tā-shuō                              | say, speak<br>he says, he speaks                                                  |
| 8. Tā-shuō tā-xìng-Bái.                      | He says his name is White.                                                        |
| huà<br>'Zhōngguo-huà                         | language<br>Chinese language                                                      |
| 9. Tāmen-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà-ma?              | Are they speaking Chinese?                                                        |
| shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà<br>shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà-ba! | speak Chinese<br>speak Chinese!                                                   |
| 10. Wǒmen-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà-ba!             | Let's speak Chinese! [lit. We,<br>speak Chinese!]                                 |
| huì<br>'huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà               | know how to, be able to<br>know how to speak Chinese,<br>be able to speak Chinese |
| 11. Wǒ-'bú-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà.           | I can't speak Chinese.                                                            |
| 'Yīngguo-huà<br>'huì-shuō 'Yīngguo-huà       | English language<br>know how to <u>or</u> be able to<br>speak English             |
| 12. Nǐ-'huì-shuō 'Yīngguo-huà-ma?            | Can you speak English?                                                            |
| jiù<br>'jiù-huì                              | only<br>only be able to, can only                                                 |
| 13. Wǒ-'jiù-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà.          | I can only speak Chinese.                                                         |
| Qián<br>'Qián-Xiānsheng                      | Qian<br>Mr. Qian                                                                  |
| 14. 'Qián-Xiānsheng shì-'Yīngguo-rén-ma?     | Is Mr. Qian English?                                                              |

- |                                           |                                                                             |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| shì<br>bú-shì                             | be, am, are, is<br>not be; am not, are not, is<br>not                       |
| shì-bu-shi?                               | is or is not?                                                               |
| 15. Tā-shì-bu-shi 'Yīngguo-rén?           | Is he English?                                                              |
| shi-'Yīngguo-rén                          | be an Englishman, be Eng-<br>lish                                           |
| bú-shi                                    | is not                                                                      |
| 16. Tā-shi-'Yīngguo-rén-bu-shi?           | Is he English?                                                              |
| huì<br>'bú-huì<br>'huì-bu-huì?            | able to<br>not be able to<br>be able to or not be able to?<br>can or can't? |
| 17. Nǐ-'huì-bu-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà?    | Can you speak Chinese?                                                      |
| huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà<br>'bú-huì         | able to speak Chinese<br>not able to                                        |
| 18. Nǐ-'huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà-bu-huì?    | Can you speak Chinese?                                                      |
| qǐng<br>qǐng-ta                           | request, ask<br>request him, ask him                                        |
| 19. Qǐng-ta-shuō 'Yīngguo-huà.            | Ask him to speak English.                                                   |
| wèn<br>tā-wèn-wo                          | inquire, ask<br>he asked me                                                 |
| 20. Tā-wèn-wo: "Nín-shi-'Yīngguo-rén-ma?" | He asked me: "Are you English?"                                             |
| qǐng-wèn                                  | may I ask                                                                   |
| 21. Qǐng-wèn, nín-shi-'Yīngguo-rén-ma?    | May I ask, are you English?                                                 |
| guìxìng<br>'nín-guìxìng?                  | honorable name<br>(what is) your [honorable]<br>name?                       |
| 22. Qǐng-wèn, 'nín-guìxìng?               | [May I ask,] what is your name?                                             |

## PATTERN DRILLS

## Pattern 2.1. Sentences with Equational Verbs (Note 3 below)

S	EV	C
Subject	Equational Verb	Complement
Tā	shì	'Yīngguo-rén.
'He is an Englishman.'		

- |                                                       |                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Wǒ-xìng-Wáng.                                      | My name is King.                    |
| 2. Tā-shi ' Qián-Xiáojie-ma?                          | Is she Miss Qian?                   |
| 3. Tāmen 'dōu-xìng-Wáng-ma?                           | Are they all named King?            |
| 4. 'Wáng-Tàitai shi-'Yīngguo-rén.                     | Mrs. King is English.               |
| 5. Tā-'yě-xìng-Qián-ba?                               | I take it he's also called Qian?    |
| 6. Tā-shi-'Měiguó-rén, bú-shi-'Yīngguo-rén.           | He's American, not English.         |
| 7. Tā-bú-xìng-Bái-ma?                                 | Isn't his name White?               |
| 8. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng 'Wáng-Tàitai 'dōu-shi-Yīngguo-rén. | Mr. and Mrs. King are both English. |
| 9. 'Gāo-Tàitai 'yě-shi-Zhōngguo-rén-ba?               | I suppose Mrs. Gao is also Chinese? |
| 10. Qǐng-wèn, nín-shi-'Yīngguo-rén-ma?                | May I ask, are you English?         |

Pattern 2.2. Sentences with Auxiliary Verbs (Note 9 below)

S	AV	MV	O
Subject	Auxiliary Verb	Main Verb	Object
Tā	huì	shuō	'Yīngguo-huà.
'He can speak English.'			

- |                                                          |                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Tā-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà-ma?                         | Can he speak Chinese?                |
| 2. Tāmen-'bú-huì-shuō 'Yīngguo-huà.                      | They can't speak English.            |
| 3. 'Qián-Xiānsheng 'jiù-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà.          | Mr. Qian can only speak Chinese.     |
| 4. Wǒ-huì-shuō 'Yīngguo-huà, 'bú-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà. | I can speak English but not Chinese. |
| 5. Tāmen-'dōu-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà.                    | They can all speak Chinese.          |

Pattern 2.3. Choice-type Questions (Notes 4 and 6 below)

S	V	<u>bu</u> V	(O or C)
Subject	Verb	Negative Verb	(Object or Complement)
Tā	shì	bu shì	'Yīngguo-rén?
'Is he an Englishman?'			

- |                                                    |                         |
|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Tā - 'hǎo - bu - hǎo?                           | Is he well?             |
| 2. Nǐ - shì - bu - shì 'Qián - Tàitai?             | Are you Mrs. Qian?      |
| 3. Nǐ - 'huì - bu - huì - shuō 'Zhōngguo - huà?    | Can you speak Chinese?  |
| 4. 'Wáng - Xiáojie shì - bu - shì - 'Měiguó - rén? | Is Miss King American?  |
| 5. Tāmen - 'huì - bu - huì - shuō 'Yīngguo - huà?  | Can they speak English? |

Pattern 2.4. Split Choice-type Questions (Notes 5 and 6 below)

S	V	O or C	<u>bu</u> V
Subject	Verb	Object or Complement	Negative Verb
Nǐ	shì	'Yīngguo-rén	bu shì?
'Are you English?'			

- |                                                          |                             |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Tā - shì - 'Bái - Xiānsheng - bu - shì?               | Is he Mr. White?            |
| 2. Tāmen - 'huì - shuō - Zhōngguo - huà - bu - huì?      | Can they speak Chinese?     |
| 3. Tāmen - shì - 'Yīngguo - rén - bu - shì?              | Are they English?           |
| 4. 'Gāo - Tàitai huì - shuō - 'Yīngguo - huà - bu - huì? | Can Mrs. Gao speak English? |
| 5. 'Wáng - Xiáojie shì - 'Měiguó - rén - bu - shì?       | Is Miss King American?      |

SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 36 sentences (Note 3)				
wǒ	—	xìng	Bái	—
nǐ	bu		Gāo	ma
tā			Wáng	



II: 36 sentences (Note 3)

wǒ	—	—	shi	Měiguó	rén
nǐ	men	bú		Yīngguó	
tā				Zhōngguó	

III: 18 sentences (Notes 4-6)

wǒ	—	shì - bu - shì	Měiguó	rén?
nǐ	men		Yīngguó	
tā			Zhōngguó	

IV: 18 sentences (Notes 5-6)

wǒ	—	shì	Měiguó	rén	bu - shì?
nǐ	men		Yīngguó		
tā			Zhōngguó		

V: 12 sentences (Notes 5-6)

wǒ	—	huì	shuō	Yīngguó	huà	bu - huì?
nǐ	men			Zhōngguó		
tā						

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

I. The e-en, e-eng Contrast  
(See The Sounds of Chinese, 6)

- |            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| (a) gē gēn | (d) gè gèng |
| (b) kě kěn | (e) hé héng |
| (c) hè hèn | (f) lè lèng |

II. Lip-rounding versus No Lip-rounding  
(See The Sounds of Chinese, 9)

- |           |            |           |              |                |
|-----------|------------|-----------|--------------|----------------|
| (a) gù gè | (d) guò gè | (g) bō bā | (j) guǎn gǎn | (m) guāng gān  |
| (b) kù kè | (e) kuò kè | (h) pò pà | (k) kuǎn kǎn | (n) kuàng kàng |
| (c) hú hé | (f) huó hé | (i) mó má | (l) huàn hàn | (o) huáng háng |
- 
- |              |               |             |
|--------------|---------------|-------------|
| (p) guài gài | (r) gòng gèng | (t) kǔn kěn |
| (q) huài hai | (s) hóng héng |             |

## SNATCHES OF CONVERSATION

Imagine that you overhear the following bits of conversation. Translate the excerpts and invent some concrete situations in which they might be said.

1. Xiānsheng-guìxǐng?  
Wǒ-xìng-Wáng.  
Oh! 'Wó-yě-xìng-Wáng.
2. Tā-shì-'Yīngguó-rén-bu-shì?  
Bú-shì. Tā-shì-'Měiguó-rén.
3. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng, zàijiàn.  
Zàijiàn, zàijiàn.
4. Qǐng-wèn-Xiǎojie, 'nín-guìxǐng?  
Wǒ-xìng-Gāo. Nín-ne?
5. Nǐmen-hǎo-ma?  
Wǒmen-'dōu-hǎo, xièxie.
6. Ní-hǎo?  
Hǎo.  
Tàitai-'yé-hǎo-ma?  
Yé-hǎo, xièxie-ni.
7. Nǐ-'huì-shuō-Zhōngguó-huà-bu-huì?  
Bú-huì. 'Jiù-huì-shuō 'Yīngguó-huà.
8. Tā-bu-xìng-Bái-ma?  
Tā-'bú-xìng-Bái. Tā-xìng-Wáng.
9. Wǒ-wèn-ta: "Nǐ-shì-'Měiguó-rén-ma?"  
Tā-shuō: "Bú-shì. Wǒ-shì-'Yīngguó-rén."
10. Nǐ-shì-'Gāo-Tàitai-ma?  
Bú-shì. Wǒ-xìng-Qián.
11. 'Nǐ-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguó-huà-ma?  
'Wǒ-bú-huì. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-huì.
12. Nǐ-shì-Wáng-Xiǎojie-ba?  
Bú-shì. Wǒ-shì-Wáng-Tàitai.
13. Qǐng-ta-shuō-'Yīngguó-huà.  
Tā-shuō-tā-'bú-huì.

## TO BE OR NOT TO BE?

Translate the following into Chinese. Be careful to translate 'is' with shì only when it is appropriate to do so.

1. He is very well.
2. He is Chinese.

3. He is able to speak Chinese.
4. He is named White.

### PUTTING ON AN ACT

Act out the following conversation in Chinese, with each person taking turns in the roles of A and B. For individual practice, have one person take both parts.

- A: May I ask, what is your name?  
 B: My name is King.  
 A: Mr. King, are you English?  
 B: No. I'm American.  
 A: Can you speak Chinese?  
 B: No.

### NOTES

1. Chinese names of countries are formed most often, though not always, with the syllable guo or guó 'country.' Zhōngguó 'China' is made up of the two syllables zhōng 'middle' and guó 'country' or 'kingdom' (with the second syllable appearing in the neutral tone)—a reflection of the ancient notion that China was at the center of the universe. In Yīngguó 'England,' the syllable yīng is an approximation of the sound Eng., and the měi of Měiguó 'America' is also a representation of sound, probably of the syllable -mer-.\*
2. Titles are used as polite forms in address as the equivalent of 'you.' Thus one might say Xiānsheng, nín-hǎo-ma? 'Sir, are you well?' or simply Xiānsheng-hǎo-ma? 'Is the gentleman well?'—that is, 'Are you well?' or 'How are you?'; Tàitai-hǎo-ma? 'How are you, madam?' Titles are also used in referring to persons who are not present: Tàitai-hǎo-ma? when addressing a husband would mean 'How is your wife?'
3. Equational verbs are verbs which connect or equate two nominal expressions on either side of the verb, like English 'is' in the sentence 'He is a man'; here, 'is' equates 'he' with 'man.' The verb shì (often pronounced shi, with neutral tone) is the most common equational verb: Tā-shì-rén 'He is a man.' Remember that shì 'be' is used only to connect nominal expressions; it is not used in a sentence like Wó-hǎo 'I am well,' for hǎo is not a noun—it is a verb, meaning 'be well.'
4. Choice-type questions are formed by stating the affirmative and negative forms of a verb in rapid succession. For example, Tā-shì-bu-shì 'Yīngguó-ren?' '[lit.] He is/is not an Englishman?' is answered by choos-

---

\* In addition to representing sounds, the syllables yīng and měi have complimentary connotations: yīng means 'brave' and měi means 'beautiful.'

ing either shì 'is' or bú-shì 'is not.' These forms can be used by themselves as an answer, or they can form part of fuller replies, such as:  
Tā-'shì-'Yīngguo-rén. 'He is an Englishman.'  
Tā-'bú-shì-'Yīngguo-rén. 'He is not an Englishman.'

- 5. Split choice-type questions are formed by placing the negative form of the verb at the end: Tā-shì-'Yīngguo-rén-bu-shì? 'Is he an Englishman or not?' They are identical in meaning with the forms described in Note 4.
- 6. Stress in choice-type questions is on the first syllable: 'shì-bu-shì? Nǐ-'huì-bu-huì?
- 7. The final particle ba changes a statement to a request or suggestion, or adds a note of compliance or supposition:  
Tā-shì-'Měiguó-rén-ba. 'I suppose he's an American.'  
Wǒmen-shuō 'Zhōngguó-huà-ba. 'Let's talk Chinese.'  
Hǎo-ba. 'It's all right (with me).' 'Fine!'

- 8. English 'yes' and 'no' are used as answers to questions containing all sorts of verbs, such as:  
Are you well? Yes.  
Can you speak English? Yes.  
Are you an American? Yes.  
Is your name King? Yes.  
Do you have a notebook? Yes.  
Do you want a pen? Yes.

Chinese does not answer these questions with any single word meaning 'yes' or 'no.' Instead, it answers them with the affirmative or negative form of the verb used in the question, much as if we said in English:  
Can you speak English? Can.  
Do you have a notebook? Have.

Since the six questions listed above would all be expressed with different verbs in Chinese, there would be six different ways of saying 'yes.' Here are the Chinese questions and possible 'yes' answers for the first three questions:

- Ní-'hǎo-bu-hǎo? Hǎo.
- Nǐ-'huì -shuō-Yīngguó-huà-bu-huì? Huì.
- Nǐ-shì-'Měiguó-rén-bu-shì? Shì.

Be careful not to use shì and bú-shì for 'yes' and 'no' except when the question has shì or bú-shì as the main verb.

- 9. In Chinese, as in English, the auxiliary verb precedes the main verb:  
Tā-huì-shuō 'Yīngguó-huà. 'He can speak English.'

# Lesson 3 SHOPPING AT A BOOKSTORE (1)



"Wǒ-yào-mǎi-shū."

Dialogue: A clerk, Mr. Mao, helps Mr. White make his purchases.

Máo: Xiānsheng, nín-mǎi-shénmo?

What will you have, sir?

Bái: Wǒ-yào-mǎi-shū. 'Nèiběn-shū 'duōshao-qián?

I'd like to buy (some) books. (Points to a book.) How much is that book?

Máo: 'Néiběn?

5

Which one?

Bái: Nèiběn-'Zhōngguo-shū.

That Chinese book.

Máo: 'Zhèiběn-shū shì-liǎng-kuài-èrmáo-qián.

This book is two dollars and twenty cents.

Bái: Hǎo, wó-mǎi-'liángběn.

Fine, I'll buy two copies.

Máo: Nín-'hái-yào mǎi-shénmo-ne?

10

What else do you want to buy?

Bái: Nǐmen-mài-'bǐ-bu-mài?

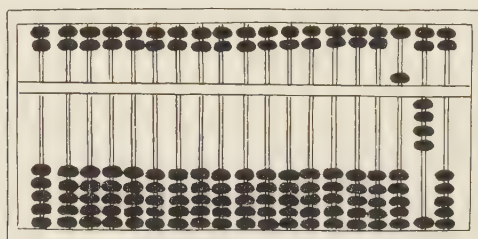
Do you sell pens?

Máo: Mài. Wǒmen-mài 'Zhōngguo-bǐ, yě-mài 'wàiguó-bǐ.

15

Yes. We sell Chinese pens, and also foreign pens.

Bái : Yìzhī-máobǐ 'duōshao-qián?		How much for a Chinese writing brush?
Máo: Yìzhī liǎngmáo-qián. Nín-yào mái-'jǐzhī?		They're twenty cents each. How many do you want to buy?
Bái : Sān-sìzhī. Bù. Wó-mái-'wǔzhī.	20	Three or four. No. I'll buy five.
Máo: Wǔzhī yíkuài-qián.		Five—one dollar.
Bái : Yígòng 'duōshao-qián?		How much altogether?
Máo: Liángběn-shū, sìkuài-sì máo-qián. Wǔzhī-máobǐ, yíkuài-qián. Yígòng wǔ-kuài-sì.	25	Two books, four dollars and forty cents. Five Chinese writing brushes, a dollar. Altogether, five-forty.



“wǔkuai-sì”

## VOCABULARY

běn	volume, copy (M)
bǐ	pen, pencil (N)
duōshao	how many? how much? [lit. many few <u>or</u> much little]
èr	two (NU) (Note 10)
hái	additionally, in addition, still, more (AD)
jǐ	how many? (NU) (Note 9)
kuài	lump; dollar* (M)

---

\* An earlier form of money in China consisted of silver chunks or lumps of varying sizes. This use of kuài was extended to minted silver dollars and still later to paper currency.



liǎng	two, a couple (NU) (Note 10)
mǎi	buy (TV)
mài	sell (TV)
máo	hair (N); feather (also, a surname)
máo	dime (M) (Note 12)
máobǐ	Chinese writing brush (N) [lit. hair pen]
nà, nèi	that (thing) (SP)
něi	which (thing)? (SP)
sān	three (NU)
shénmo	what (thing)?
shū	book (N)
sì	four (NU)
wàiguó	foreign country (PW) [lit. outside country]
wǔ	five (NU)
yào	want (TV)
yī, yí, yì	one (NU) (Note 15)
yígòng	altogether, in all (MA) [lit. one together]
zhè, zhèi	this (thing) (SP)
zhī	(measure for long, slender objects)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| zhè                | this (thing)    |
| shénmo?            | what (thing)?   |
| 1. Zhè-shi-shénmo? | What is this?   |
| zhèi               | this (thing)    |
| shū                | book            |
| 2. Zhèi-shi-shū.   | This is a book. |
| nà                 | that (thing)    |
| shì-shénmo?        | is what?        |
| 3. Nà-shi-shénmo?  | What is that?   |

	bǐ Zhōngguo-bǐ	pen Chinese pen
4.	Nà-shi-'Zhōngguo-bǐ.	That's a Chinese pen.
	nèi nèi-yě-shi	that (thing) that also is
5.	Nèi-'yě-shi-Zhōngguo-bǐ.	That's a Chinese pen, too.
	máo máobǐ	hair Chinese writing brush
6.	Zhèi-shi-'máobǐ.	This is a writing brush.
	qián 'Qián-Tàitai	money (also, a surname) Mrs. Qian
7.	'Qián-Tàitai-hǎo-ma?	Is Mrs. Qian well?
	máo 'Máo-Xiānsheng	hair (also, a surname) Mr. Mao
8.	'Máo-Xiānsheng, 'nín-hǎo-ma?	How are you, Mr. Mao?
	máobǐ shi-máobǐ	Chinese writing brush is a writing brush
9.	Zhèi-shi-'máobǐ-bu-shi?	Is this a writing brush?
	yào yào-shénmo?	want want what?
10.	Tā-yào-'shénmo?	What does he want?
	běn zhèiběn-shū	volume (also, measure for books) this book
11.	Wǒ-yào 'zhèiběn-shū.	I want this book.
	zhī zhèizhī-bǐ	(measure for long objects) this pen
12.	Wǒ-yào 'zhèizhī-bǐ.	I want this pen.
	nèiběn-shū	that book
13.	Tā-yào 'nèiběn-shū.	He wants that book.
	yī máo yìmáo-qián	one dime one dime
14.	Zhèizhī-bǐ 'yìmáo-qián.	This pen (is) a dime.
	liǎng liǎngmáo-qián	two twenty cents
15.	Nèizhī-bǐ yě-shi-liǎngmáo-qián.	That pen is also twenty cents.
	sān sānmáo-qián	three thirty cents
16.	Tā-yào 'sānmáo-qián.	He wants thirty cents.

- sì  
sì máo-qian  
17. Zhèizhī-máobǐ 'sì máo-qian.

four  
forty cents  
This writing brush is forty cents.

- wǔ  
wǔ máo-qian  
18. Zhèiběn-shū 'yě-shi-wǔ máo-qian-ma?

five  
fifty cents  
Is this book also fifty cents?

- kuài  
yí kuài-qian  
19. Zhèi-shi-'yí kuài-qian.

dollar  
one dollar  
This is one dollar.

- liǎng  
liǎng kuài-qian  
20. 'Nèiběn-shū 'yě-shi-liǎng kuài-qian.

two  
two dollars  
That book is also two dollars.

- wúběn-shū  
21. Tā-yě-yào wúběn-shū.

five books  
He also wants five books.

- jǐ?  
jǐ běn-shū?  
22. Nǐ-yào-'jǐ běn-shū?

how many?  
how many books?  
How many books do you want?

- wǔkuài-qian  
èr máo-qian  
23. 'Zhèizhī-bǐ wǔkuài-èr máo-qian.

five dollars  
twenty cents  
This pen is five dollars (and) twenty cents.

- wǔkuài-èr  
24. Nèizhī-bǐ 'yě-shi-wǔkuài-èr.

five-twenty  
That pen is also five-twenty.

- něi?  
něizhī bǐ?  
25. Nǐ-yào 'něizhī-bǐ?

which (thing)?  
which pen?  
Which pen do you want?

- liǎngzhī-bǐ  
'néi-liǎngzhī-bǐ?  
26. Tā-yào 'néi-liǎngzhī-bǐ?

two pens  
which two pens?  
Which two pens does he want?

- duōshao?  
duōshao-qian?  
27. Zhèiběn-shū 'duōshǎo-qian?

how much?  
how much money?  
How much is this book?

- yí gòng  
yí gòng 'duōshao-qian?  
28. Shū, bǐ 'yí gòng-duōshao-qian?

altogether  
how much altogether?  
How much are the books and pens altogether?

- hái  
hái-yào  
29. Tā-'hái-yào-shénmo?

in addition  
want in addition  
What more does he want?

- mǎi  
mǎi-shū

30. Nǐ -yào-mǎi-shū-ma?
- mài  
mài-shū

31. Tāmen -'mài-shū-ma?
- wàiguo  
wàiguo-rén

32. Tā-shi -'wàiguo-rén-ma?
- wàiguo-huà  
shuō-wàiguo-huà

33. Wǒ -'bù-huì-shuō wàiguo-huà.
- sìběn-shū  
wúběn-shū

34. Tā-yào-mǎi 'sì-wúběn-shū.
- zhèiběn-shū  
zhèiběn

35. Zhèiběn 'yé-hén-hǎo.
- buy  
buy books

Do you want to buy some books?
- sell  
sell books

Do they sell books?
- foreign country  
foreign person

Is he a foreigner?
- foreign language  
speak a foreign language

I can't speak a foreign language.
- four books  
five books

He wants to buy four or five books.
- this book  
this one

This one is also very good.

PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 3.1. Noun Phrases with Numbers and Measures  
(Notes 2–6 below)

NU	M	N
Number	Measure	Noun
yì	běn	shū
'one book'		

1. liǎngzhī-bǐ

2. liǎngmáo-qián

3. sānkuài-qián

4. wúběn-shū

5. 'jǐzhī-bǐ?
- two pens

two dimes; twenty cents

three dollars

five books

how many pens?

- |                                       |                                                  |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 6. 'jíbēn-shū?                        | how many books?                                  |
| 7. liǎngzhī-máobǐ                     | two Chinese writing brushes                      |
| 8. sìkuài-èrmáo-qián                  | four dollars and twenty cents                    |
| 9. Zhèi-shi-sānkuài-qián.             | This is three dollars.                           |
| 10. Wǒ-yào-wǔzhī-bǐ.                  | I want five pens.                                |
| 11. Tā-yào sìkuài-sānmáo-qián.        | He wants four dollars and thirty cents.          |
| 12. Yìzhī-máobǐ liǎngmáo-qián.        | One writing brush is twenty cents.               |
| 13. Tāmen-yào-sānbēn-shū.             | They want three books.                           |
| 14. Nǐ-yào-'jíbēn-shū?                | How many books do you want?                      |
| 15. Bǐ 'yíkuài-èr, shū 'liǎngkuài-èr. | The pen is a dollar twenty, the book two-twenty. |

## Pattern 3.2. Noun Phrases with Specifiers and Measures (Note 7 below)

SP	M	N
Specifier	Measure	Noun
zhèi	běn	shū
'this book'		
1. nèizhī-máobǐ		that Chinese writing brush
2. nèizhī-bǐ		that pen
3. zhèibēn-shū		this book
4. nèibēn-shū		that book
5. Tā-yào-'zhèibēn-shū-ma?		Does he want this book?
6. Zhèizhī-bǐ 'hǎo-bu-hǎo?		How's this pen?
7. Zhèizhī-bǐ 'jǐkuài-qián?		How much [lit. how many dollars] is this pen?
8. Nèizhī-bǐ 'yě-shi-sānkuài-qián.		That pen is also three dollars.
9. Zhèizhī-máobǐ 'bù-hén-hǎo.		This writing brush isn't very good.
10. Nǐ-yào-'zhèibēn-shū-ma?		Do you want this book?

## Pattern 3.3. Noun Phrases with Specifiers, Numbers, and Measures (Note 7 below)

SP	NU	M	N
Specifier	Number	Measure	Noun
zhèi	sān	běn	shū
'these three books'			
1. nèi-liǎngkuài-qián			those two dollars
2. 'nèi-sānzhī-bǐ?			which three pens?
3. zhèi-wǔmáo-qián			this fifty cents
4. 'nèi-sìbēn-shū?			which four books?

5. zhèi-liǎngzhī-máobǐ	these two Chinese writing brushes
6. Nǐ-yào 'néi-liángběn-shū?	Which two books do you want?
7. Zhèi-'sìzhī-bǐ 'yígòng-duōshao-qián?	How much altogether are these four pens?
8. Nèi-sānzhī-máobǐ 'dōu-hén-hǎo.	Those three writing brushes are all very good.
9. Zhèi-sānběn-shū 'yígòng-wǔ-kuài-qián.	These three books are five dollars in all.
10. 'Wáng-Tàitai-shuō tā-yào-'zhèi-liǎngzhī-máobǐ.	Mrs. Wang says she wants these two writing brushes.

SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 20 sentences

zhè	shi	shénmo?
zhèi		shū
nà		bǐ
nèi		máobǐ
		qián

II: 30 sentences

wǒ	—	yào	shénmo?
nǐ	men		shū
tā			bǐ
			máobǐ
			qián

III: 12 phrases (Note 7)

zhè	-zhī bǐ
zhèi	-běn shū
nà	-zhī máobǐ
nèi	

IV: 75 phrases (Notes 2-6, 10)

yí	-kuài	yī	—
liǎng		èr	máo
sān		sān	máo-qián
sì		sì	
wǔ		wǔ	

V: 72 Sentences  
(Notes 2-6)

zhèi shi	yì	-běn shū
wǒ yào	liǎng	-zhī bǐ
tā yào	sān	-kuài qián
	sì	-máo qián
	wǔ	
	jǐ	



## VI: 72 phrases

zhèi	—	-běn shū
nèi	yī	-zhī bǐ
něi	liǎng	-máo qián
	sān	-kuài qián
	sì	
	wǔ	

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## I. Non-Palatals versus Palatals

(a) bǎo	biǎo	(e) bàn	biàn
(b) pào	piào	(f) pān	piān
(c) máo	miáo	(g) mǎn	miàn
(d) dào	diào	(h) dàn	diàn
(i) náng	niáng	(k) dé	dié
(j) láng	liáng	(l) tè	tiè

II. The *i*-in, *i*-ing Contrast

(See The Sounds of Chinese, 14)

(a) lí	lín	(d) ní	nín	(g) dì	dìng
(b) bì	bìn	(e) mǐ	mǐn	(h) tí	tíng
(c) pǐ	pǐn	(f) lì	lìn	(i) mì	mìng

## QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. Zhèiběn-'Zhōngguo-shū 'duōshao-qián?<br/>'Nèiběn-shū wǔkuài-sì.</p> <p>2. Zhèi-shi-shénmo?<br/>Nà-shi-máobǐ.</p> <p>3. Nǐmen mài-'shū-bu-mài?<br/>Wǒmen-'jiù-mài 'Zhōngguo-shū.<br/>'Bú-mài 'wàiguó-shū.</p> <p>4. 'Wáng-Tàitai huì-shuō-'wàiguó-huà-ma?<br/>Tā-'bú-huì.</p> <p>5. Tā-yào 'duōshao-qián?<br/>Tā-yào 'sānkuài-qián.</p> | <p>How much is this Chinese book?</p> <p>That book is five-forty.</p> <p>What's this?</p> <p>That's a Chinese writing brush.</p> <p>Do you sell books?</p> <p>We only sell Chinese books.</p> <p>We don't sell foreign books.</p> <p>Can Mrs. Wang speak a foreign language?</p> <p>No. [lit. She can't.]</p> <p>How much money does he want?</p> <p>He wants three dollars.</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

6. Nǐ-yào-mǎi jǐzhī-bǐ?  
Qǐng-wèn, duōshao qián-yìzhī?

How many pens do you want to buy?  
(May I ask,) how much for one?
7. Zhè-'yígòng 'duōshao qián?  
'Yígòng sānkuài-yī.

How much is this altogether?  
Altogether (it's) three-ten.
8. Zhè-shi-'Měiguó-bǐ-bú-shi?  
Bú-shi. Shi-'Yīngguó-bǐ.

Is this an American pen?  
No. It's an English pen.
9. Zhèizhī-bǐ 'duōshao qián?  
Sìkuài qián. Zhèizhī-bǐ hén-hǎo.

How much is this pen?  
Four dollars. This pen is very fine.
10. Tàitai-yào-mǎi-shénmo?  
Tā-yào-mǎi-shū.

What does the lady want to buy?  
She wants to buy some books.
11. Zhèizhī-bǐ wǔkuài qián. Ní-mǎi-yìzhī-ma?  
Xièxie, wǒ-bù-mǎi.

This pen is five dollars. Are you buying one?  
(No) thanks, I'm not [buying].

TRUE OR FALSE

Read each of the following statements aloud, then tell whether it is true or false.

1. Yìběn-shū sānkuài qián. Yìzhī-máobǐ liǎngmáo qián. 'Yígòng-wǔkuài qián.
2. Wǒ-yào-mǎi liǎngzhī-'Zhōngguó-bǐ, yìzhī-'wàiguó-bǐ. Wǒ-'yígòng mǎi-'sānzhī-bǐ.
3. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō tā-yào-mǎi sānběn-'Zhōngguó-shū.
4. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-shuō tāmen-mǎi 'wàiguó-bǐ.
5. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō tā-yào-mǎi-shū, 'bú-yào-mái-bǐ.
6. Wó-mǎi-'yìběn-shū. Ní-mǎi-'liángběn-shū. Wǒmen-'yígòng mǎi-'sìběn-shū.
7. 'Bái-Xiānsheng xìng-Wáng.

WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

Put yourself in the role of both customer and clerk and make up (either orally or in written form) a dialogue appropriate for the following situation:

A clerk in a store greets you by name as Mr. White and asks what you want to buy. You ask if they sell foreign books. The clerk answers that they don't, and adds that they only sell Chinese books. You ask if they sell foreign pens. He says they sell foreign pens, and also Chinese pens. You say you want to

buy a foreign pen, point to one, and ask how much it is. He mentions a price. You tell him that that's fine and that you'll buy one. The clerk thanks you and says good-bye.

## NOTES

1. The first five Chinese numbers, plus the interrogation number, are:

yī 'one'	sān 'three'	wǔ 'five'
èr 'two'	sì 'four'	jǐ 'how many?'

2. A grammatical element that follows a number is a MEASURE: in yíkuài 'one lump,' for example, kuài is a measure.

3. An element that can occur directly after a measure is a NOUN: the expression yíkuài-qián 'one dollar' [lit. 'one lump (of) money'] consists of the number yī 'one' plus the measure kuài 'lump' plus the noun qián 'money.'

4. Often, specific measures are used with certain nouns: zhī with the names of long slender objects, běn 'volume, copy' with shū 'books,' and so on. It is advisable to memorize the appropriate measure for each noun you learn.

5. The number or quantity of a Chinese noun is expressed not by a change in the noun itself but by the use of different expressions of amount before the noun: compare English 'three head of cattle,' 'four head of cattle.' Examples:

sānkuài-qián 'three dollars' [lit. 'three lumps money']  
 sìkuài-qián 'four dollars' [lit. 'four lumps money']  
 sānběn-shū 'three (volumes) books'  
 sìběn-shū 'four (volumes) books'

A measure must always intervene between a number and a noun (as, sānběn-shū); a number cannot precede a noun directly.

6. Different measures are often used with the same noun, just as with English 'one grain of rice,' 'two bowls of rice,' 'three pounds of rice.' The measures kuài 'lump; dollar' and máo 'dime' are both used before qián 'money':

sānkuài-qián 'three dollars'  
 sānmáo-qián 'three dimes'  
 sānkuài-sānmáo-qián 'three dollars (and) thirty cents'

7. A SPECIFIER is a word which can precede or replace a number before a measure. Examples include zhèi 'this,' nèi 'that,' and the question word něi 'which?':

zhèiběn-shū 'this book'  
 nèiběn-shū 'that book'  
 něiběn-shū 'which book?'  
 zhèi-sānběn-shū 'these three books'

The alternate forms zhè for zhèi and nà for nèi are used as subjects in expressions not containing a number or measure:

Zhè-shi-shū. 'This is a book.'

8. Question words are used to form questions which cannot be answered by 'yes' or 'no.' In this, they resemble English 'how many?' 'who?' etc. Unlike these English expressions, however, they do not change the order of words in the sentence: Chinese question words occupy the same position in the sentence as the word which replaces them in the answer.

9. There are two differences between the question words duōshao 'how many? how much?' and jǐ 'how many?'. First, duōshao is used as either a noun or a measure, whereas jǐ 'how many?' is used only before a measure. Second, duōshao suggests either an indefinite amount or a large number, whereas jǐ suggests less than ten:

duōshao-qián? 'how much money?' (an indefinite, or large, amount)  
jǐkuài-qián? 'how many dollars?' (this question anticipates an answer of only a few dollars)

10. The number for 'two' before a measure is most often liǎng 'two, a couple.' The number èr is used in compound numbers (see next lesson), before máo 'dime,' and (optionally) when there is more than one measure:

liǎngkuài èrmáo-qián 'two dollars (and) twenty cents'

11. A noun may be omitted after a measure if it can be understood from the context:

Nǐ-yào jǐběn-shū? 'How many books do you want?'  
Wǒ-yào sānběn. 'I want three.'

The measure, on the other hand, may NOT be omitted.

12. The measure máo 'dime' may be omitted from money expressions when they are compound: 'three dollars and forty cents,' for example, is either sānkuài-sīmáo-qián or sānkuài-sīmáo or simply sānkuài-sì. With 'two,' however, máo may be omitted only after èr, not after liǎng; for example, sānkuài-liǎngmáo-qián can only be abbreviated as sānkuài-èr.

13. English expressions like 'three or four' require no connecting form in Chinese: sān-sìběn-shū 'three (or) four books.'

14. The question words duōshao 'how many? how much?' and shénmo 'what?' are used either before a noun or independently:

Tā-yào shénmo-shū? 'What book does he want?' [lit. 'He wants what book?']  
Tā-yào-shénmo? 'What does he want?'  
Tā-yào-duōshao-qián? 'How much money does he want?'  
Tā-yào-duōshao? 'How much does he want?'

15. The number 'one' is pronounced yī in isolation, yí before a fourth tone (yíkuài), and yì before other tones. When it is unstressed, it often becomes neutral in tone; if it is attached to an expression in object position, it may even disappear completely.

16. Some Chinese sentences occur without verbs:

Zhèiběn-shū wǔkuài-qían. 'This book (is) five dollars.'

17. The particle ne often expresses the continuation of an action, especially if the sentence also contains the adverb hái 'still':

Tā-hái-shuō-huà-ne. 'He's still talking.'

## Lesson 4 SHOPPING AT A BOOKSTORE (2)



“ 'Yígòng-duōshao-qián? ”

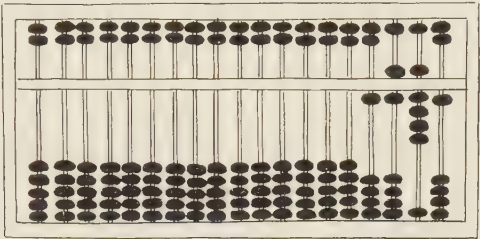
Dialogue: Mr. Mao helps Mr. White make some further purchases.

- |                                                            |                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Máo : Xiānsheng, nín-mǎi-shénmo?                           | Sir, what will you have?                                         |
| Bái : Wó-mǎi-yíge-běnzǐ. Zhèige-běnzǐ 'duōshao-qián-yìběn? | I'd like to buy a notebook. How much for one of these notebooks? |
| Máo : 'Nèige-běnzǐ liùmáo-wǔfēn-qián-yìběn.                | That notebook is sixty-five cents.                               |
| Bái : Wó-mǎi-'yìběn.                                       | I'll buy one.                                                    |
| Máo : Hǎo. Nín-'hái-mǎi-shénmo?                            | Fine. What else will you have?                                   |
| Bái : Yǒu-'mòshuǐ -ma?                                     | Do you have any ink?                                             |
| Máo : Nín-mǎi 'shénmo-yánse-mòshuǐ ?                       | What color ink do you want?                                      |
| Bái : Yǒu-'hóng-mòshuǐ -ma?                                | Do you have red ink?                                             |
| Máo : 'Méi-yǒu. Yǒu-'hēi-mòshuǐ, 'lán-mòshuǐ.              | No. We have black ink and blue ink.                              |
| Bái : Yǒu-'qiānbǐ-méi-you?                                 | Do you have pencils?                                             |
| Máo : Qiānbǐ, gāngbǐ, máobǐ—wǒmen-'dōu-yǒu.                | Pencils, fountain pens, writing brushes—we have them all.        |
| Bái : 'Qiānbǐ duōshao-qián-yì zhī ?                        | How much [each] are the pencils?                                 |



Máo :	'Jiǔfēn-qían-yìzhī.		Nine cents each.
Bái :	Wó-mǎi-'liùzhī-qīānbǐ.		I'll buy six [pencils].
Máo :	Liùzhī-qīānbǐ: 'liù-jiú-wumáo-sì.	20	Six pencils: six nines (are) fifty-four cents.
Bái :	Gāngbǐ duōshao-qían-yìzhī?		How much are the fountain pens?
Máo :	Nín-mǎi-'něizhī?		Which are you buying?
Bái :	'Zhèizhī.		This one.
Máo :	'Zhèizhī liǎngkuài-bāmáo-liù. Nín-mǎi-'máobǐ-ma?	25	This one is two dollars (and) eighty-six cents. Would you like to buy some writing brushes?
Bái :	Bù-mǎi, wó-yǒu. Nǐmen-yǒu-dìtú-ma?		No, I have some. Do you have any maps?
Máo :	Yǒu. 'Zhōngguo-dìtú, 'Měiguó-dìtú, wǒmen-'dōu-yǒu. Nín-mǎi 'něiguó-dìtú?	30	Yes. We have both Chinese [maps] and American maps. What country do you want a map of? [lit. What country map do you buy?]
Bái :	Wó-mǎi-'Zhōngguo-dìtú.		I'd like to buy a map of China.
Máo :	'Zhèige-dìtú-hén-hǎo. Nín-'mǎi-yìzhāng-ba.	35	This map is excellent. [I suggest you buy one.]
Bái :	'Duōshao-qían-yìzhāng?		How much for one?
Máo :	Liǎngkuài-jiǔmáo-qī-yìzhāng.		Two dollars (and) ninety-seven cents.
Bái :	Oh, wǒ-'hái-yào-mǎi. Wǒ-hái-mǎi 'wúshízhāng-zhǐ. 'Duōshao-qían?	40	Oh, I want to buy something more. I'd also like to buy fifty sheets of paper. How much (are they)?
Máo :	Sìmáo-jiǔfēn-qían.		Forty-nine cents.
Bái :	Yǒu-'zìdiǎn-ma?		Do you have any dictionaries?
Máo :	Yǒu.		Yes.
Bái :	Wǒ-yào-yìběn-'Zhōngwén-zìdiǎn. 'Duōshao-qían?	45	I'd like a Chinese dictionary. How much is it?
Máo :	Yíkuài-bāmáo-qían.		A dollar (and) eighty cents.
Bái :	Yìběn-'Yīngwén-zìdiǎn 'duōshao-qían?		How much for an English dictionary?
Máo :	Liǎngkuài-jiǔmáo-qían.	50	Two dollars and ninety cents.
Bái :	Zhōng-Yīng-zìdiǎn-ne?		How about a Chinese-English dictionary?
Máo :	Zhōng-Yīng-zìdiǎn sìkuài-qīmáo-qían.		A Chinese-English dictionary is four dollars and seventy cents.
Bái :	'Yígòng-duōshao-qían?		How much altogether?

Máo :	Běenzi liù máo-wǔ, 'qiānbǐ wǔ máo-sì, 'gāngbǐ liǎngkuài-bā máo-liù, dìtú liǎngkuài-jiǔ máo-qī, zhǐ sī máo-jiǔ, 'Zhōngwén-zìdiǎn yíkuài-bā, 'Yīngwén-zìdiǎn liǎngkuài-jiǔ, 'Zhōng-Yīng-zìdiǎn sīkuài-qī . . . 'Yí gòng shí liùkuài-jiǔ máo-yí fēn-qian.	55	Notebook 65 cents, pencils 54 cents, fountain pen \$2.86, map \$2.97, paper 49 cents, Chinese dictionary \$1.80, English dictionary \$2.90, Chinese-English dictionary \$4.70. (Mao checks up each item on his abacus as he speaks, so he is now ready to announce immediately.) Altogether \$16.91.
Bái :	Hǎo.	60	O. K.
Máo :	'Xièxie-nin, 'zài jiàn.	65	Thank you, good-bye.
Bái :	Zài jiàn, zài jiàn.		Good-bye.



“Shí liùkuài-jiǔ máo-yí fēn-qian”

VOCABULARY

bā	eight (NU)
běenzi	notebook (N)
dìtú	map (N) [lit. land chart]
fēn	part; cent (M) (Note 7 below)
gāngbǐ	pen (fountain pen or pen with detachable point) (N) [lit. steel pen]
ge	(general measure: see Notes 3 and 4 below)
hēi	black (SV)
hóng	red (SV)
jiǔ	nine (NU)
lán	blue (SV)
liù	six (NU)

méi	not (AD) (Note 8 below)
mòshuǐ	ink (N) [lit. ink water]
qī	seven (NU)
qiānbǐ	pencil (N) [lit. lead pencil]
shí	ten (NU) (Notes 5-6 below)
wén	language, literature (N) (Notes 1-2 below)
yánse, yánshar	color (N)
Yīngwén	English language and literature (N)
yǒu	have (V) (Note 8 below)
zhāng	(measure for flat objects; also, a surname)
zhǐ	paper (N)
Zhōngwén	Chinese language and literature (N)
zìdiǎn	dictionary (N) [lit. character book]

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                                         |                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| yǒu<br>yǒu-shū                          | have<br>have a book                                       |
| 1. Ní-yǒu-shū-ma?                       | Do you have a book?                                       |
| méi-yǒu<br>méi-yóu-bǐ                   | not have<br>not have a pen                                |
| 2. Wó-'yě-méi-yóu-bǐ.                   | I don't have a pen either [lit. I also don't have a pen]. |
| qiānbǐ                                  | pencil                                                    |
| 3. Ní-yóu-'jǐzhī-qiānbǐ?                | How many pencils do you have?                             |
| gāngbǐ                                  | [steel] pen                                               |
| 4. Zhèizhī-'gāngbǐ yíkuài-qián.         | This pen is one dollar.                                   |
| liǎngge<br>nèi-liǎngge-rén              | two of something<br>those two people                      |
| 5. Nèi-liǎngge-rén 'dōu-shi-wàiguo-rén. | Both of those people are foreigners.                      |
| běnzì<br>sānge-běnzì                    | notebook<br>three notebooks                               |
| 6. Wó-yǒu-'sānge-běnzì.                 | I have three notebooks.                                   |
| wén<br>Zhōngwén                         | language and literature<br>Chinese language               |
| 7. Tāmen-'jiù-mài 'Zhōngwén-shū.        | They sell only Chinese books.                             |
| Yīngwén                                 | English language                                          |

- Yīngwén-shū

8. Zhèiběn-'Yīngwén-shū 'duōshao-qíán?

zìdiǎn

Zhōngwén-zìdiǎn

9. Nǐmen-mài-'Zhōngwén-zìdiǎn-bu-mài?

Zhōng-Yīng

Zhōng-Yīng-zìdiǎn

10. Zhèiběn-Zhōng-Yīng-zìdiǎn 'duōshao-qíán?

dìtú

Zhōngguo-dìtú

11. Zhè-shi-'Zhōngguo-dìtú.

zhāng

sānzhāng-dìtú

12. Sānzhāng-dìtú 'yíkuài-wǔ.

'Zhāng-Xiānsheng

13. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng, nín-hǎo-a?

zhǐ

yìzhāng-zhǐ

14. Wǒ-'jiù-yǒu-yìzhāng-zhǐ.

mòshuǐ

15. Zhèige-mòshuǐ-'hén-hǎo.

hēi

hēi-mòshuǐ

16. Wǒ-'méi-yǒu hēi-mòshuǐ.

hóng

hóng-mòshuǐ

17. Ní-yǒu-'hóng-mòshuǐ-méi-yǒu?

lán

lán-mòshuǐ

18. Wǒmen-yé-yǒu-'lán-mòshuǐ.

yánse

shénmo-yánse?

19. Zhèige-mòshuǐ shi-'shénmo-yánse?

fēn

wǔfēn-qíán

20. Yìzhī-qíānbǐ 'wǔfēn-qíán.
- book in English

How much is this English-language book?

dictionary

Chinese dictionary

Do you sell Chinese dictionaries?

Chinese-English

Chinese - English dictionary

How much is this Chinese-English dictionary?

map

map of China

This is a map of China.

(measure for flat objects)

three maps

Three maps are a dollar fifty.

Mr. Zhang

How are you, Mr. Zhang?

paper

one sheet of paper

I have only one sheet of paper.

ink

This ink is excellent.

black

black ink

I don't have any black ink.

red

red ink

Do you have any red ink?

blue

blue ink

We also have blue ink.

color

what color?

What color is this ink?

cent

five cents

One pencil is five cents.

- liù  
liùběn-shū  
21. Wó-yǒu-liùběn-'Zhōngwén-shū.

six  
six books  
I have six Chinese books.

- qī  
qīzhī-bǐ  
22. Qīzhī-bǐ 'sānmáo-qían.

seven  
seven pens  
Seven pens are thirty cents.

- bā  
bākuài-qían  
23. Wó-yǒu 'qī-bākuài-qían.

eight  
eight dollars  
I have seven or eight dollars.

- jiǔ  
sānmáo-jiǔ  
24. Sìzhāng 'sānmáo-jiǔ.

nine  
thirty-nine cents  
Four sheets are thirty-nine cents.

- shí  
shíyī  
25. Tā-'jiù-yǒu-shíyīkuài-qían.

ten  
eleven  
He has only eleven dollars.

- èrshí  
èrshíyī  
26. Shū-'yígòng-èrshíyīkuài-qían.

twenty  
twenty-one  
The books are twenty-one dollars in all.

- 'něiguó?  
'něiguó-rén?  
27. 'Zhāng-Tàitai shì-'něiguó-rén?

which country?  
a native of which country?  
What nationality is Mrs. Johnson?

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 64 phrases

yī	-zhāng zhǐ
liǎng	-zhāng dìtú
sān	-ge běnzi
sì	-ge rén
zhèi	-ge Zhōngguó rén
nèi	-zhī gāngbǐ
něi	-zhī qiānbǐ
jǐ	-zhī máobǐ

II: 81 phrases

—	-shì-	yī
èr		èr
sān		sān
sì		sì
wǔ		wǔ
liù		liù
qī		qī
bā		bā
jiǔ		jiǔ

III: 60 phrases

yí	-kuài	liù	-máo	yī
liǎng		qī		èr
sān		bā		sān
sì		jiǔ		
wǔ				

PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

I. Contrast of Retroflexes and Sibilants

(a) zhā	zā	(d) zhé	zé	(g) zhài	zài
(b) chā	cā	(e) chè	cè	(h) chāi	cāi
(c) shā	sā	(f) shè	sè	(i) shài	sài
(j) zhōu	zōu	(m) zhèng	zèng	(p) zhōng	zōng
(k) chòu	còu	(n) chéng	céng	(q) chóng	cóng
(l) shōu	sōu	(o) shēng	sēng		

II. Practice on Initial r

rào	rè	ràng	ròu
rán	rén	rēng	róng

NUMBER PRACTICE

yī	1	shíyī	11	èrshí	20	èrshiyī	21
èr	2	shí'èr	12	sānshí	30	èrshi'èr	22
sān	3	shísān	13	sìshí	40	èrshijiǔ	29
sì	4	shísì	14	wǔshí	50	sānshiyī	31
wǔ	5	shíwǔ	15	liùshí	60	sìshisì	44
liù	6	shíliù	16	qīshí	70	wǔshiliù	56
qī	7	shíqī	17	bāshí	80	liùshiwǔ	65
bā	8	shíbā	18	jiǔshí	90	qīshibā	78
jiǔ	9	shíjiǔ	19			bāshisì	84
shí	10					jiǔshijiǔ	99



## MULTIPLICATION TABLE

(See Note 6 below)

yī yī dé yī	èr yī dé èr	sān yī dé sān
yī èr dé èr	èr èr dé sì	sān èr dé liù
yī sān dé sān	èr sān dé liù	sān sān dé jiǔ
yī sì dé sì	èr sì dé bā	sān sì shí'èr
yī wǔ dé wǔ	èr wǔ yīshí	sān wǔ shíwǔ
yī liù dé liù	èr liù shí'èr	sān liù shíbā
yī qī dé qī	èr qī shísì	sān qī èrshiyī
yī bā dé bā	èr bā shíliù	sān bā èrshisì
yī jiǔ dé jiǔ	èr jiǔ shíbā	sān jiǔ èrshiqī

The rest of the tables can be made up on the model of the 3 table. Practice extending the table until you feel at ease with the numbers.

## BOOM!

Practice numbers by playing 'Boom!' Count off in Chinese—one student says '1,' the next '2,' and so on—but the word 'Boom!' must be substituted for four and for every number containing or divisible by four. Play the game through the number 99. Those who survive the first round without forgetting to say an appropriate 'Boom!' can sit out the next round. Switch the taboo number from time to time.

## NUMBERS AND MEASURES

A. Answer the following questions, using 'one' in the first sentence, 'two' in the second, and so on.

1. Ní-yóu-'jǐmáo-qián?
2. Tā-yóu-'jǐzhī-bǐ?
3. Ní-mái-'jǐzhāng-dìtú?
4. Nǐmen-'yígòng yóu-'jǐkuài-qián?
5. Nín-yóu-'jǐběn-shū?
6. Tāmen-yào-mái-'jǐzhāng-dìtú?
7. Tā-yóu-'jǐfēn-qián?
8. Tāmen-'yígòng shì-'jǐge-rén?
9. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yào-'jǐzhī-qiānbǐ?
10. Wáng-Xiānsheng, Wáng-Tàitai 'yígòng-yóu-'jǐge-běnzǐ?

B. Answer the following questions, using 'eleven' in the first sentence, 'twelve' in the second, and so on, taking care to use an appropriate measure in each case.

1. Ní-yǒu-shū-ma?
2. Tā-yào-dìtú-ma?
3. Nǐmen-mài-bǐ-ma?
4. Ní-yóu-zhǐ-ma?
5. Tāmen-yào-mái-běnzǐ-ma?
6. Nín-yǒu-'gāngbǐ-ma?
7. Nǐmen-yǒu-qián-ma?
8. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng mǎi-zìdiǎn-ma?
9. 'Máo-Xiǎojie yǒu-'máobǐ-ma?
10. Tāmen-yào-qián-ma?

### A CHARGE ACCOUNT

Suppose a Chinese bookstore which you patronize sends you the following bill at the end of the month. Translate the bill, state how much one of each item costs, add the figures, and tell how much change you would get back if you paid for the bill with a twenty-dollar check.

Zhōng-Yīng-zìdiǎn, liángběn	bákuài	qīmáo	liùfēn	qián
běnzǐ, sìběn	yíkuài	liùmáo		"
Zhōngguo-dìtú, yìzhāng		jiǔmáo	jiǔfēn	"
máobǐ, sānzhī	yíkuài	èrmáo		"
qiānbǐ, shí'èrzhī		bāmáo	sìfēn	"
gāngbǐ, yìzhī	liǎngkuài	liùmáo	bāfēn	"
zhǐ, qīshíwǔzhāng		qīmáo	wǔfēn	"

### INFORMATION PLEASE!

(Answer in Chinese)

1. Nǐ-shì-'něiguó-rén?
2. Nǐ-shì-'Měiguó-rén-ma?
3. Ní-'yǒu-méi-yóu-běnzǐ?
4. Ní-yǒu-'duōshao-qián?
5. Nǐ-xìng-Wáng-ma?
6. Ní-yǒu-'Zhōngguo-dìtú-méi-yǒu?

7. Nǐ-yào-bu-yào-mǎi yìběn-'Zhōng-Yīng-zìdiǎn'?
8. Nǐ-yǒu-'lán-mòshuǐ'-ma?
9. Nǐ-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguó-huà-bu huì'?
10. Nǐ-quìxìng?
11. Nǐ-yóu-'jǐge-běnzǐ'?
12. Nǐ-shì-'Bái-Xiānsheng'-ma?

## NOTES

1. Zhōngwén-shū refers specifically to a book in the Chinese language, as contrasted with Zhōngguó-shū, which might mean simply a book produced in China.
2. Many Chinese expressions occur sometimes in full form, sometimes in abbreviated form, the latter being especially common in combinations. Zhōngguó 'China' and Yīngguó 'England,' for example, are abbreviated in the combination Zhōng-Yīng 'Chinese-English, Sino-British.' Zhōngwén 'Chinese language' and Yīngwén 'English language' are also abbreviated in combination to Zhōng-Yīng, so that out of context this expression is ambiguous. In Zhōng-Yīng-zìdiǎn 'Chinese-English dictionary,' however, the combination is clearly an abbreviation of Zhōngwén and Yīngwén. Other similar abbreviations are Zhōng-Měi 'Sino-American' and Yīng-Měi 'British-American.'
3. The most widely used measure in Chinese is ge. If you do not know or cannot remember the appropriate measure for a noun, use ge.
4. Note the distinction in the Dialogue between the use of ge as a general measure for běnzǐ and of běn when referring specifically to one item or copy or volume:  
 Wó-mǎi-yíge-běnzǐ. 'I'd like to buy a notebook.'  
 Wó-mǎi-'yìbēn. 'I'll buy one.'
5. A number following shí 'ten' is added to it; a number preceding shí multiplies it:  
 shíyī 'eleven' ('ten and one')  
 shí'èr 'twelve'  
 shíjiǔ 'nineteen'  
 èrshí 'twenty' ('two tens')  
 sānshí 'thirty'  
 jiǔshí 'ninety'  
 èrshíyī 'twenty-one'  
 jiǔshíjiǔ 'ninety-nine'
6. The multiplication table is recited in various ways in Chinese. One of the simplest is the one given on page 42. Note the following points in connection with these:

- (a) If the product contains only one syllable, the word dé 'get' is used,\* as in yī-sān dé-sān 'one (times) three is three.'
- (b) 'Two fives' and 'five twos' have the special form yìshí 'one ten' in order to retain the rhythm.
- (c) The stress is on the first of the multipliers: 'qī-jiǔ liùshisān.'
7. Qián 'money' and fēn 'cent' are often omitted at the end of an expression referring to dimes and cents or to dollars, dimes, and cents (cf. Note 12 in Lesson 3, page 33):
- sānmáo-wǔ 'thirty-five cents'  
sānkuài-liǎngmáo-sì 'three dollars and twenty-four cents'
8. The special negative prefix méi is used with the verb yǒu 'have':
- Wǒ-'méi-yǒu-qián. 'I don't have any money.'
- 'Ní-yǒu-méi-yǒu-qián?  
or  
'Ní-yǒu-qián-méi-yǒu? } 'Do you have any money?'
9. In něizhī-bǐ? 'which pen?' the syllable zhī, of course, is a measure. In něiguó-dìtú? 'which country map?'—i.e. 'a map of what country?'—the syllable guó 'country' has the same function as zhī and is therefore also classified as a measure. This flexibility of function is one of the special characteristics of the Chinese language.
10. The object of a verb is frequently transposed to the beginning of the sentence, especially for emphasis: Wǒ-jiù-mǎi-bǐ. Shū wǒ-bù-mǎi. 'I'm just buying a pen. (As for) books, I'm not buying (them).'
11. A number-plus-measure expression (like yìběn 'one volume') following a money expression means 'apiece' or 'per unit of that measure':
- sānkuài-qián-yìběn 'three dollars apiece'  
sānmáo-qián-yìzhī 'thirty cents each' (referring to pens or other long objects)
- When yíge is used in this way, the last syllable is pronounced with a falling tone:
- sānmáo-qián-yígè 'thirty cents each' (referring to notebooks or other objects)
12. The syllables qī 'seven' and bā 'eight' change to qí and bá (i.e. second tone) before ge and (optionally) before a fourth tone:
- |            |                                                   |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| qī 'seven' | qíge rén 'seven people'                           |
|            | qīkuài qián <u>or</u> qīkuài qián 'seven dollars' |
| bā 'eight' | báge rén 'eight people'                           |
|            | bākuài qián <u>or</u> bákuài qián 'eight dollars' |

\* Dé is introduced here just for the multiplication table. Other uses are presented in Lesson 23, so do not attempt any further usage of it at this time.

## Lesson 5 RECEIVING A PHONE CALL



“Shi-'Bái-Xiānsheng-jiā-ma?”

Dialogue: Mr. White receives a phone call from Mr. Gao.

- |                                                                                           |    |                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Gāo: Wai! wai! Ní-nǎr? Shi-'Bái Xiānsheng-jiā-ma?                                         |    | Hello, hello. Who's this? Is this Mr. White's home?                                  |
| Bái: Shì. Nín-zháo-'něiwèi-shuō-huà?                                                      |    | Yes. Who are you calling?                                                            |
| Gāo: Qǐng-'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō-huà.                                                        | 5  | I'd like to speak to Mr. White.                                                      |
| Bái: Wǒ-jiù-shì. Qǐng-wèn, 'nín-shí-shéi?                                                 |    | Speaking. Who's calling, please?                                                     |
| Gāo: Wǒ-xìng-Gāo.                                                                         |    | This is Gao.                                                                         |
| Bái: Oh, 'Gāo-Xiānsheng, 'háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn. 'Nín-hǎo-ma?                                   | 10 | Oh, Mr. Gao, (I) haven't seen you for a long time. How are you?                      |
| Gāo: 'Hén-hǎo. 'Ní-hǎo-ma?                                                                |    | Very well. How are you?                                                              |
| Bái: Wó-hén-hǎo. Gāo-Tàitai Gāo-Xiǎojie 'dōu-hǎo-ma?                                      |    | I'm fine. Are Mrs. Gao and Miss Gao both well?                                       |
| Gāo: 'Dōu-hǎo, xièxie-ni. 'Jīn-tian-wǎnshàng nǐ-yǒu-gōng-fu-ma? Wó-xiǎng qíng-nǐ-chī-fàn. | 15 | They're both well, thanks. Are you free this evening? I'd like to ask you to dinner. |

Bái : Hǎo. Xièxie-nin. 'Jídiǎn-zhōng?	20	(How) nice. Thank you. At what time?
Gāo: 'Qīdiǎn-zhōng-kéyi-ma?		Can (you manage it) at seven o'clock?
Bái : Qǐng-wèn, xiànzài-shi-'shénmo-shíhou?		Could you tell me, please, what time is it now?
Gāo: Xiànzài-'sìdiǎn-zhōng.		It's now four o'clock.
Bái : Kéyi.	25	I can (manage it).
Gāo: Wǒ-hái-qǐng yíwèi-'Yīng-guo-péngyou. Yě-shi-wó-'hén-hǎode-péngyou.		I'm also asking an English friend. He's a very good friend of mine too.
Bái : Hǎo, hǎo.		Very nice.
Gāo: Qīdiǎn-zhōng-jiàn.	30	See you at seven o'clock.
Bái : Qīdiǎn-zhōng-jiàn.		See you at seven.



“sìdiǎn-zhōng”



“qīdiǎn-zhōng”

VOCABULARY

chī	eat (TV)
de	(subordinating particle: Notes 2-4 below)
diǎn	dot, hour (of the clock) (M) (Note 5 below)
fàn	rice, food (N)
gōngfu	(leisure) time (N)
'Háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn	Haven't seen you for a long time
jiā	home, house (N)
jiàn	see, meet (people) (TV)
jīntian	today (TW) [lit. today day]
jiù	definitely, indeed, precisely (AD)
kéyi, kéyǐ	may, can (AV)
nǎr?	where? (PW)



péngyou	friend (N)
shéi	who?
shíhou(r)	time (by calendar or clock) (N)
wai	Hello! (on phone)
wǎnshang	evening (TW)
wèi	(polite measure for persons)
xiànzài	now (TW) [lit. present at]
xiǎng	think (of), think to, plan to (TV)
zhǎo	seek, look for, visit (TV)
zhōng	clock (N)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                                          |                                 |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| chī                                      | eat                             |
| chī-shénmo?                              | eat what?                       |
| 1. Nǐ-chī-shénmo?                        | What will you eat?              |
| ràn                                      | food                            |
| Zhōngguo-fàn                             | Chinese food                    |
| 2. Wǒ-yào-chī 'Zhōngguo-fàn.             | I want to eat Chinese food.     |
| gōngfu                                   | leisure time                    |
| yǒu-gōngfu                               | have the time (to do something) |
| 3. Nín-yǒu-'gōngfu-méi-you?              | Do you have time?               |
| jīntian                                  | today                           |
| 4. Wǒ-jīntian 'méi-yǒu-gōngfu.           | I don't have time today.        |
| wǎnshang                                 | evening                         |
| jīntian-wǎnshang                         | this evening                    |
| 5. Nǐmen-jīntian-wǎnshang yǒu-gōngfu-ma? | Do you have time this evening?  |
| shíhou                                   | time                            |
| 'shénmo-shíhou?                          | what time?                      |
| 6. Wǒmen-'shénmo-shíhou-chī-fàn?         | What time do we eat?            |
| zhōng                                    | clock                           |
| yǒu-zhōng                                | have clocks                     |
| 7. Nǐmen-yǒu-zhōng-ma?                   | Do you have any clocks?         |
| yìdiǎn-zhōng                             | one o'clock                     |
| 8. Wǒmen-'yìdiǎn-zhōng-chī-fàn.          | We eat at one o'clock.          |

9. Wǒmen-'jídǎn-zhōng?  
what o'clock? what hour?  
At what time do we eat?
10. Wǒmen-wǎnshang-'jídǎn-zhōng  
chī-fàn?  
what hour in the evening?  
When are we having dinner this evening?
11. Xiànzài-'jídǎn-zhōng?  
now  
What time is it now?
12. Tā-shi-shéi?  
who?  
Who is he?
13. Zhè-shi-'wǒde-shū.  
my  
my book  
This is my book.
14. Zhèiběn-shū shi-nǐde.  
your or yours  
This book is yours.
15. Tāmen-shi-wǒmende-péngyou.  
friend  
our friend or our friends  
They are our friends.
16. Ní-zhǎo-shénmo?  
seek  
seek what?  
What are you looking for?
17. 'Nèiwèi-tàitai-shi-shéi?  
(measure for people)  
that lady  
Who is that lady?
18. Ní-xiáng-mǎi 'jíbēn-shū?  
think of, plan to  
plan to buy books  
How many books do you plan to buy?
19. Nà-shi-Qián-jia-ma?  
jiā  
Qíán-jia  
home  
the Qian home  
Is that the Qian home?
20. Tā-shi-wǒde-hǎo-péngyou.  
hǎo-péngyou  
wǒde-hǎo-péngyou  
good friend  
a good friend of mine  
He's a good friend of mine.
21. Tā-yě-shi wó-'hén-hǎode-péngyou.  
hén-hǎode-péngyou  
wó-hén-hǎode-péngyou  
very good friend  
a very good friend of mine  
He also is a very good friend of mine.
22. Hǎode-shi-nǐde.  
nǐde  
hǎode  
your(s)  
good one  
The good one is yours.

- sānkuài-qián  
sānkuài-qiándè-bǐ  
23. Sānkuài-qiándè-bǐ 'yé-hén-hǎo.

three dollars  
a three-dollar pen  
A three-dollar pen is also very good.

- yíkuài-qiándè  
'bù-hén-hǎo  
24. 'Yíkuài-qiándè 'bù-hén-hǎo.

a dollar one  
not very good  
A dollar one isn't very good.

- lándè  
Bái-Xiānshengde  
25. Lándè shi-'Bái-Xiānshengde.

the blue one  
Mr. White's  
The blue one is Mr. White's.

- hēide  
shéide?  
26. Hēide-shi-shéide?

the black one  
whose?  
Whose is the black one?

- kéyi  
kéyi-shuō-huà  
27. Wǒmen-kéyi-shuō-huà-ma?

can or may  
may speak  
May we speak?

- wai  
ní-nǎr?  
28. Wai, ní-nǎr?

hello!  
who's this?  
Hello, who's this?

- jiù  
jiù-shi  
29. 'Tā-jiù-shi 'Qián-Tàitai.

definitely  
indeed is  
She is (indeed) Mrs. Qian.

- jiàn  
30. Jīntian-wǎnshang-jiàn!

see (people)  
See you this evening!

- háo-jiǔ  
bú-jiàn  
31. 'Háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn.

a good while  
not see  
Haven't seen you for quite a while.

- něiwèi-Xiáojie  
'Zhāng-Xiáojie  
32. Něiwèi-Xiáojie shi-'Zhāng-Xiáojie?

which young lady?  
Miss Johnson  
Which young lady is Miss Johnson?

## PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 5.1. Subordination of Nouns and Pronouns with de  
(Note 2 below)

N or P	-de	N
Noun or Pronoun	-de	Noun
Wáng-Xiānsheng	-de	shū
'Mr. King's book(s)'		

1. tāmende-shū	their books
2. wǒde-běnzi	my notebook
3. wǒmende-máobǐ	our Chinese writing brushes
4. nǐde-zhǐ	your paper
5. 'shéide-jiā?	whose home?
6. 'sānkuài-qiánde-bǐ	a three-dollar pen
7. 'Wáng-Xiānshengde 'Zhōngguo-péngyou	Mr. King's Chinese friends
8. 'nèige-xiáojiède-zìdiǎn	that young lady's dictionary
9. Zhèi-shi-'shéide-shū?	Whose book is this?
10. 'Wǔmáo-qiánde-bǐ bù-hén-hǎo.	A fifty-cent pen isn't very good.
11. Tāde-běnzi shi-'bāmáo-qián.	His notebook is eighty cents.
12. Tāde-Yīngguo-péngyou xìng-Wáng.	His English friend is called King.
13. Zhèi-shi-'tāde-qián, bú-shi-nǐde.	This is his money, not yours.
14. Wǒde-'yé-hén-hǎo.	Mine is also very good.
15. Zhè-shi-'nǐde-bu-shi?	Is this yours?

Pattern 5.2. Subordination of Stative Verbs with de  
(Note 2 below)

AD	SV	- <u>de</u>	N
Adverb	Stative Verb	-de	Noun
hěn	hǎo	-de	shū
'a very good book'			
1. 'bù-hǎode-zìdiǎn	a poor dictionary		
2. hěn-'gāode-xiānsheng	a quite tall gentleman		
3. hěn-'báide-zhǐ	very white paper		
4. 'bù-hén-hǎode-bǐ	pens which aren't very good		
5. hěn-'bù-hǎode-bǐ	pens which are very bad		
6. Zhèi-shi-'hén-hǎode-zìdiǎn.	This is an excellent dictionary.		
7. 'Hǎode-shi-wǒde, 'bù-hǎode 'yě-shi-wǒde.	The good one is mine, (and) the bad one is also mine.		
8. Tāmen-dōu-shi hěn-'gāode-rén.	They are all very tall people.		
9. Báide shi-yíkuài-qián, lán de shi-liǎngkuài-qián.	The white one is a dollar, (and) the blue one is two dollars.		
10. Tāmende 'dōu-shi-hén-hǎode-bǐ.	Theirs are all very good pens.		

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 16 phrases (Notes 6-7)

——	jǐ	diǎn zhōng
wǎnshang	liù	
	qī	
	bā	
	jiǔ	
	shí	
	shíyì	
	shí'èr	

II: 48 phrases (Notes 2-3)

Wáng	Xiānsheng	-de	——
Bái	Tàitai		shū
Qián	Xiáojie		péngyou
Gāo			zìdiǎn

III: 12 phrases (Notes 2-3)

bù	hǎo	-de	——
hěn	gāo		rén
			xiānsheng

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## I. Contrast of Retroflexes and Palatals

(a) zhā	jiā	(d) zhào	jiào	(g) zhàn	jiàn
(b) chà	qià	(e) chǎo	qiǎo	(h) chán	qián
(c) shā	xiā	(f) shào	xiào	(i) shān	xiān
(j) zhāng	jiāng	(m) zhǒng	jiǒng	(o) zhǒu	jiǔ
(k) cháng	qiáng	(n) chóng	qióng	(p) shòu	xiù
(l) shāng	xiāng				

## II. Some Sibilant-Retroflex-Palatal Contrasts

(a) sā	shā	xiā	(d) sāng	shāng	xiāng
(b) sāo	shāo	xiāo	(e) sǒu	shǒu	xiǔ
(c) sān	shān	xiān			

CLOCK TIME

1. Xiànzài-'jǐdiǎn-zhōng? Xiànzài-'yìdiǎn-zhōng.	What time is it now? It's now one o'clock.
2. Wǒmen-'jǐdiǎn-zhōng chī-fàn? Wǒmen-'liù-qīdiǎn-zhōng chī-fàn.	At what time do we eat? We eat at 6:00 or 7:00.
3. Jīntiān-wǎnshang 'bādiǎn-zhōng-hǎo-ma? Bādiǎn-zhōng 'hén-hǎo.	Is this evening at 8:00 all right? Eight o'clock is fine.
4. 'Jiúdiǎn-zhōng-hǎo-ma? Jiúdiǎn-zhōng 'hén-hǎo. 'Shídiǎn-ne? 'Shídiǎn-zhōng 'yé-hǎo.	Is nine o'clock all right? Nine o'clock is fine. How about ten o'clock? Ten o'clock is also fine.
5. Xiànzài-shi-'shénmo-shíhou? Xiànzài-shí 'yìdiǎn-zhōng.	What time is it now? It's now eleven o'clock.
6. Wǒmen-'qīdiǎn-zhōng-chī-fàn 'hǎo-bu-hǎo? Chī-'shénmo-fàn? Wǒmen-chī-'wàiguó-fàn-ba.	Is it all right to eat at 7:00?  What (kind of) food shall we eat? Let's eat foreign food.

PIDGIN CHINESE

As you have probably noticed, a Chinese sentence that is translated into English word for word is likely to result in an intelligible but queer-sounding pattern—like Pidgin English. To express the meaning adequately, you must shape the Pidgin construction into a normal English pattern, which we might call the SITUATIONAL EQUIVALENT, as distinguished from the literal rendering.

The reverse translation process involves a similar problem. Literally translated English sentences make Pidgin Chinese. It is not enough to know the Chinese for each individual English word; you must then learn their proper groupings into Chinese patterns, so that your sentences are in fact Chinese and not Pidgin Chinese.

The examples below illustrate this dual process in proceeding from Chinese to English. Practice the opposite procedure by making up English sentences on the same patterns and putting them into smooth Chinese.

<u>Chinese</u>	<u>Pidgin English</u>	<u>Situational Equivalent</u>
Ní-nǎr?	You where?	Who's this?
Nín-zhǎo-'shéi-shuō-huà?	You looking for who talk?	Who are you calling?
Qǐng-'Wáng-Tàitai-shuō-huà.	Invite Mrs. King talk.	I'd like to speak to Mrs. King.



<u>Chinese</u>	<u>Pidgin English</u>	<u>Situational Equivalent</u>
Wǒ-jiù-shì.	I indeed am.	Speaking.
Wǒ-xìng-Gāo.	I name Gao.	This is Gao.
'Háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn.	Good long-time no see.	Haven't seen you for a long time.
Ní-yǒu-'gōngfu-ma?	You have leisure time huh?	Are you free?
Nèige-rén-hěn-gāo.	That piece man very tall.	That man's very tall.
Ní-yóu-'bǐ-méi-yǒu?	You have pen not have?	Do you have a pen?

## LISTENING IN

Imagine that you are a Chinese telephone operator eavesdropping on the following conversation between Mrs. Wang and Mrs. Qian. Relate what you heard.

Wáng: Wai, wai. Ní-nǎr? Shì-Qián-jia-ma?

Qián: Shì. Nín-zhǎo-'shéi-shuō-huà?

Wáng: Wó-qǐng 'Qián-Tàitai-shuō-huà.

Qián: Wǒ-jiù-shì.

Wáng: Oh, 'nín-jiù-shì-Qián-Tàitai. Wǒ...

Qián: Qǐng-wèn, 'nín-shì-něiwèi?

Wáng: Wǒ-xìng-Wáng.

Qián: Oh, 'Wáng-Tàitai, nín-hǎo-ma? Wáng-Xiānsheng 'yé-hǎo-ma?

Wáng: Wǒmen-'dōu-hǎo. Nín-ne?

Qián: Hǎo.

Wáng: Qián-'Xiānsheng-hǎo-ma?

Qián: Hǎo, xièxie-nín.

Wáng: Nǐmen-'jīntian-wǎnshang yǒu-'gōngfu-méi-you? Wǒmen-xiǎng 'qíng nǐmen-chī-fàn.

Qián: Xièxie-nín. 'Shénmo-shíhou?

Wáng: 'Qī-bādiǎn-zhōng-kéyi-ma?

Qián: 'Bādiǎn-zhōng-kéyi.

Wáng: Wǒmen-hái-qíng-liǎngwèi 'Měiguó-péngyou. Yě-shì-wǒmende-'hǎo-péngyou.

Qián: Hén-hǎo.

Wáng: Bādiǎn-zhōng-jiàn.

Qián: Bādiǎn-zhōng-jiàn.

## BRAIN-TWISTER

Find the answer to the question at the end.

Wó-yǒu liǎngzhī-'wàiguo-bǐ. Yìzhī shì-'Měiguo-bǐ, yìzhī shì-'Yīngguo-bǐ. Yīngguo-bǐ shì-hēide, Měiguo-bǐ shì-hóngde. Hēide shì-'bākuài-qiánde-bǐ, hóngde shì-'bāmáo-qiánde. 'Bākuài-qiánde-bǐ 'bù-hǎo. 'Bāmáo-qiánde hǎo. Nǐ-shuō, 'bù-hǎode-shì-'něiguó-bǐ?

## NOTES

1. A general principle of word order in Chinese is that modifiers precede what they modify. We have seen this principle in compounds like Zhōngguo-rén 'a Chinese (person)' [lit. 'China man']. The relationship of Zhōngguo to rén is here one of subordination: Zhōngguo, the modifier, is subordinate to rén, the main word of the construction.
2. Another construction of subordination is formed with the particle de. In a phrase A-de B, the A element modifies and is subordinate to the B element. The A element may be a pronoun, a noun, a time word, a stative verb, or (as we shall see later) a more complicated expression. The following are some examples of subordination with de:
 

wǒde-shū	'my book'
hǎode-shū	'good book'
jīntiānde-fàn	'today's food'
3. The construction A-de (that is, the same construction as in Note 2 but without the modified element B) is often used when B can be understood from the context. Thus 'Zhèiběn-shū shì-wǒde 'This book is mine' is more common than 'Zhèiběn-shū shì-wǒde-shū 'This book is my book.'
4. It is important to distinguish between the constructions Noun-de Noun and Noun-Noun (both subordinate relationships), for they often have different meanings. For example, Zhōngguo-péngyou means 'Chinese friends,' but Zhōngguode-péngyou means 'friends of China.'
5. The particle de is often omitted under certain circumstances. One of these is when a pronoun is subordinated to a noun expressing personal relationship or itself closely followed by de, as:

nǐ-tàitai	'your wife'
wó-bǐde-yánsè	'the color of my pen'

Less often, de is omitted after a noun in certain fixed patterns:

Qián-jia	'the Qian home'
----------	-----------------

It is regularly omitted after some frequently occurring combinations that contain certain unmodified stative verbs of one syllable, as in hǎo-rén 'a good person'—but not in an expression like hén-hǎode-rén 'a very good man,' where hǎo is itself preceded by a modifier, in this instance the adverb hěn 'very.'

6. The clock hours are expressed by the numbers one through twelve followed by the measure diǎn 'dot' and the noun zhōng 'clock':

yì diǎn-zhōng	'one o'clock'
liǎng diǎn-zhōng	'two o'clock'
shí'èr diǎn-zhōng	'twelve o'clock'

7. If more than one time expression is used in a phrase, the longer time precedes the shorter: jīntiān-wǎnshàng shí diǎn-zhōng 'ten o'clock this evening' — lit. 'today evening, ten o'clock.'
8. We saw in Lesson 2 (Note 7, page 21) that the final particle ba after a phrase can convey the idea of a suggestion or command, as in: Wǒmen-shuō 'Zhōngguó-huà-ba 'Let's talk Chinese.' Similarly, the following forms are also used after a phrase:

kéyì-ma	'is it possible to [do the foregoing]?'
'kéyì-bu-kéyì	'is it possible to [do the foregoing]?'
hǎo-ma	'is it all right to [do the foregoing]?'
'hǎo-bu-hǎo	'is it all right to [do the foregoing]?'

Examples:

Wǒmen-'liù diǎn-zhōng-chī-fàn kéyì-ma?	Can we [ <u>or</u> Will we be able to] eat at six?
Wǒmen-'liù diǎn-zhōng-chī-fàn hǎo-ma?	Is it all right to eat at six?

## Lesson 6 REVIEW

### PRONUNCIATION REVIEW

#### I. Review of the Four Tones

This exercise includes only vocabulary introduced in Unit I, so that it also serves as a vocabulary review.

Read down by columns and across by rows.

1	2	3	4
dōu	bái	hǎo	huà
gāo	nín	hěn	huì
tā	qián	nǐ	jiù
shuō	rén	qǐng	shì
zhāng	Wáng	běn	wèn
Yīng	hái	bǐ	xìng
yī	máo	wǔ	èr
sān	guó	jiǔ	sì
qī	lán	jǐ	liù
bā	méi	liǎng	kuài
shū	shí	mǎi	mài
zhī	wén	něi	nà
fēn	shéi	yǒu	nèi
hēi	hóng	zhǐ	zhè
zhōng		diǎn	zhèi
chī		nǎr	fàn
jiā		xiǎng	jiàn
		zhǎo	wèi

#### II. Review of the Neutral Tone

This exercise also includes only vocabulary introduced in Unit I. Digits indicate tone sequences.

Read down by columns and across by rows.

10	20	30	40
xiānsheng	xiáojie	běnzǐ	tàitai
gōngfu	shénmo?	wǒmen	xièxie
tāmen	yánse	nǐmen	mài-ma?
sānge	yíge	liǎngge	fàn-ne?
hēide	shíhou	wǒde	
tāde	péngyou	hǎo-ma?	
shū-ne?	shéide?	nǐ-ne?	
chī-ma?	lándè	mǎi-ma?	

## ANALOGY DRILL

The teacher asks each student a pair of questions. The student answers both questions on the model of the first, but adds the word yě 'also' to his second answer. For example:

- (1) Teacher asks: Tā-yǒu-shū-ma?  
 You answer : Tā-yǒu-shū.  
 Teacher asks: Nǐ-ne?  
 You answer : Wó-yě-yǒu-shū.
- (2) Teacher asks: Nǐ-méi-yǒu-shū-ma?  
 You answer : Wǒ-méi-yǒu-shū.  
 Teacher asks: Bǐ-ne?  
 You answer : Wó-yě-méi-yǒu-bǐ.

1. Tā-huì-shuō Zhōngguo-huà-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
2. Tā-yǒu-gāngbǐ-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
3. Ní-mái-běnzǐ-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
4. Ní-mǎi-mòshuǐ-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
5. Ní-mǎi-dìtú-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
6. Nèige-xiānsheng xìng-Wáng-ma? . . . Xiáojie-ne? . . .
7. Ní-yǒu-qián-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
8. Tā-shì-'Měiguó-rén-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
9. Tā-yǒu-zìdiǎn-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
10. Ní-yǒu-'Zhōngguo-péngyou-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
11. Ní-hǎo-ma? . . . 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-ne? . . .
12. Nǐ-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
13. Ní-yǒu-lán-mòshuǐ-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
14. Tā-shì-'Zhōngguo-rén-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .

15. Tā-qīng-Wáng-Xiānsheng chī-fàn-ma? . . . Wáng-Tàitai-ne? . . .
16. Ní-yǒu-máobǐ-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
17. Nǐ-yào-zhǐ-ma? . . . Dìtú-ne? . . .
18. Ní-yǒu-zhǐ-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
19. Tāde-'gāngbǐ-shi 'sānkuài-qián-ma? . . . Nǐde-ne? . . .
20. Ní-mǎi-'hóng-yánse-mòshuǐ-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
21. Ní-yǒu-'Měiguó-dìtú-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
22. Tā-yào-'Zhōngguó-dìtú-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
23. Ní-yǒu-'Yīngguó-bǐ-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
24. Jīntian nǐ-yǒu-gōngfu-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
25. Tā-yǒu-'Zhōngguó-zhǐ-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
26. Nèiwèi-xiǎojie mǎi-shū-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
27. Nèiwèi-xiānsheng xīng-Gāo-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
28. Tā-yǒu-péngyou-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
29. Tā-shuō-'Yīngguó-huà-ma? . . . Nín-ne? . . .
30. Tā-mǎi-qiānbǐ-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
31. Ní-zhǎo 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
32. Tā-zhǎo 'Wáng-Tàitai-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
33. Ní-yǒu-tàitai-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
34. Ní-yǒu-shū-ma? . . . Bǐ-ne? . . .
35. Ní-yǒu-mòshuǐ-ma? . . . Zhǐ-ne? . . .
36. Tā-yǒu-gāngbǐ-ma? . . . Máobǐ-ne? . . .
37. Tā-yǒu-gōngfu-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
38. Tā-yóu-běnzǐ-ma? . . . Zìdiǎn-ne? . . .
39. Tā-yǒu-qián-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
40. Tā-shi-'Zhōngguó-rén-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
41. Ní-mǎi-dìtú-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
42. Tāmen-chī-'Zhōngguó-fàn-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
43. Tā-shi-'wàiguó-rén-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
44. Tā-yǒu-'Yīngguó-péngyou-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
45. Nǐ-shi-'Měiguó-rén-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
46. Ní-yóu-běnzǐ-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
47. Ní-yǒu-qián-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
48. Wáng-'Tàitai-hǎo-ma? . . . Wáng-'Xiǎojie-ne? . . .
49. Nǐ-méi-yǒu-qián-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
50. Nǐ-méi-yǒu 'Zhōngguó-péngyou-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .



51. Tā-méi-yǒu-zìdiǎn-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
52. Tā-méi-yǒu-tàitai-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
53. Tāmen-mǎi-shū-ma? . . . Dìtú-ne? . . .
54. 'Wáng-Xiǎojié méi-yǒu-zhǐ-ma? . . . Qiānbǐ-ne? . . .
55. Nǐ-méi-yǒu 'Yīngguo-dìtú-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
56. Tā-huì-shuō 'Yīngguo-huà-ma? . . . 'Zhōngguo-huà-ne? . . .
57. Nǐ-huì-shuō 'Yīngguo-huà-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
58. Ní-xiǎng-chī-Zhōngguo-fàn-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
59. Ní-zhǎo Wáng-Xiānsheng-ma? . . . Wáng-Tàitai-ne? . . .
60. Nǐ-jǐntiān-mǎi-shū-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .

## SINGLE REPLACEMENT DRILL

The teacher pronounces the sentence and the student repeats it. The teacher then pronounces an expression which can replace something in the original sentence; the student pronounces the sentence again, making the replacement. For example:

Teacher says: Tā-shi-'Měiguó-rén.  
 You say : Tā-shi-'Měiguó-rén.  
 Teacher says: Yīngguó  
 You say : Tā-shi-'Yīngguó-rén.

- |                                    |         |
|------------------------------------|---------|
| 1. Tā-yǒu-wǔkuài-qián.             | wǒ      |
| 2. Ní-yǒu-máobǐ-ma?                | tā      |
| 3. Tāmen-yǒu-běnzǐ-ma?             | nǐmen   |
| 4. Ní-yǒu-yìběn-zìdiǎn.            | tā      |
| 5. Wó-yǒu-gāngbǐ.                  | qiānbǐ  |
| 6. Tā-yǒu-mòshuǐ.                  | yào     |
| 7. Wó-yǒu-sānge 'Zhōngguo-péngyou. | sìge    |
| 8. Tā-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà.      | Yīngguó |
| 9. Wó-mǎi-shū.                     | zìdiǎn  |
| 10. Wǒ-yào-qiānbǐ.                 | gāngbǐ  |
| 11. Tā-yǒu-zhǐ.                    | bǐ      |
| 12. Wǒ-yào-dìtú.                   | zìdiǎn  |
| 13. Nǐ-shi-'Yīngguo-rén-ma?        | Měiguó  |
| 14. Wǒ-méi-yǒu 'Zhōngguo-péngyou.  | wàiguó  |
| 15. Tāmen-dōu-shi-'Měiguó-rén.     | Yīngguó |
| 16. Zhèi-shi-'hóng-yánse.          | lán     |

17. Wǒ-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà.

Yīngguo
18. Zhège-shi-nǐde.

nège
19. Hǎode-shi-tāde.

wode
20. Nège-shi-tāde?

nège

DOUBLE REPLACEMENT DRILL

This exercise is to be conducted like the preceding one, except that the student must make whatever additional changes are required so that the replacement item can be used. For example:

Teacher says: Wó-yǒu-sānběn-shū.

You say : Wó-yǒu-sānběn-shū.

Teacher says: zhǐ

You say : Wó-yǒu-sānzhāng-zhǐ.

1. Wó-yě-bú-yào.

yǒu
2. Wó-yǒu-yìběn-shū.

zhǐ
3. Wǒ-yào-'yíge-běnzǐ.

bǐ
4. Wó-yǒu-yìzhāng-zhǐ.

shū
5. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng yǒu-wǔkuài-qián.

shū
6. 'Wáng-Xiǎojie yǒu-yìzhī-máobǐ.

běnzǐ
7. 'Gāo-Tàitai mǎi-yìběn-shū.

běnzǐ
8. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie mǎi-liùzhī-qiānbǐ.

shū
9. 'Bái-Xiānsheng mǎi-yìzhāng-dìtú.

zìdiǎn
10. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng mǎi-wúběn-shū.

máobǐ
11. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie mǎi-yìběn-zìdiǎn.

bǐ
12. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng jiù-yǒu-'yìběn-shū.

qián
13. Tāmen-'yígòng yǒu-qīshízhāng-zhǐ.

shū
14. Tā-'jiù-yào-sānmáo-qián.

bǐ
15. Wǒ-méi-yǒu-qián.

yào

INSERTION DRILL

The teacher pronounces a sentence and then gives an expression which you are to insert in the sentence at some appropriate place. For example:

Teacher says: Tā-yǒu-qián.

You say : Tā-yǒu-qián.

Teacher says: duōshao

You say : Tā-yǒu 'duōshao-qián?

- |                                   |          |
|-----------------------------------|----------|
| 1. Tā-shi-'Zhōngguo-rén.          | yě       |
| 2. Wǒ-jīntian-bù-chī-fàn.         | wǎnshang |
| 3. Tā-shuō-'Yīngguo-huà.          | huì      |
| 4. Nǐ-shi-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-ma?     | jiù      |
| 5. Nǐ-chī-'shénmo-fàn?            | xiǎng    |
| 6. Zhèizhī-hén-hǎo.               | máobǐ    |
| 7. Tā-yào-qían.                   | hái      |
| 8. Xiànzài-'shénmo-shíhou?        | shì      |
| 9. Zhèi-shi-shū.                  | wǒde     |
| 10. Tāmen-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà. | dōu      |
| 11. Nǐ-xièxie-ta-ma?              | bú       |
| 12. 'Lánde-yé-hǎo.                | mòshuǐ   |
| 13. Zhèi-shi-'Bái-Xiānsheng.      | jiā      |
| 14. Sānkuài-qiánde yé-hén-hǎo.    | bǐ       |
| 15. Zhǐ, bǐ 'yígong-duōshao-qían? | shū      |
| 16. Zhèiběn-'duōshao-qían?        | zìdiǎn   |
| 17. Wó-yǒu-'bā-jiǔshikuài-qían.   | jiù      |
| 18. Wǒ-'jiù-yǒu 'qībēn-shū.       | liù      |
| 19. Mòshuǐ-duōshao-qían?          | hóng     |
| 20. Wǒ-yào-mǎi-dìtú.              | hái      |
| 21. Wó-yóu-liǎngge-péngyou.       | hǎo      |
| 22. Tā-shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà.        | huì      |
| 23. Tāmen-'bù-mǎi-zìdiǎn.         | yě       |
| 24. Nín-mǎi-shénmo?               | yào      |
| 25. Tā-yě-shi-hǎo-péngyou.        | wǒde     |

### RAISE YOU ONE

Answer the following questions using the number next larger to the one mentioned in the immediately preceding sentence.

1. Wó-yóu-jiǔshikuài-qían. Nín-ne?
2. Wó-wǎnshang bādiǎn-zhōng-chī-fàn. Nín-ne?
3. Wó-yǒu liángběn-shū. Nín-ne?
4. Wó-yǒu liùkuài-qiánde-zhǐ. Nín-ne?
5. Wǒde-shū shi-sìkuài-qían. Nǐde-ne?
6. Wǒ-yào-mǎi wǔshiwǔzhāng-zhǐ. Nín-ne?

7. Wó-yǒu-sānge wàiguo-péngyou. Nín-ne?
8. Wǒde-bǐ-shi-wǔfēn-qián. Nǐde-ne?
9. Wǒ-'jiù-yǒu-yìzhāng-dìtú. Nín-ne?
10. Wǒ-péngyou yǒu-'liǎngzhī-bǐ. Nǐ-ne?
11. Wó-qǐng-'bāge-péngyou-chī-fàn. Nín-ne?
12. Wó-yóu-jiùshibākuài-qián. Nín-ne?

### ANSWERING QUESTIONS

If the student has difficulty in answering, the two statements before the question may be repeated after the question.

1. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng shi-'Zhōngguo-rén. 'Qián-Xiānsheng shi-'wàiguo-rén.  
'Zhōngguo-rén xìng-shénmo?
2. 'Bái-Xiǎojie huì-shuō 'Yīngguo-huà. 'Bái-Tàitai huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà.  
'Shéi-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà?
3. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng shi-'Zhōngguo-rén. 'Máo-Xiānsheng shi-'Yīngguo-rén.  
Shéi-shi-'wàiguo-rén?
4. Gāo-Xiǎojie yǒu-liùzhāng-zhǐ. Gāo-Tàitai yǒu-sìzhī-bǐ. 'Shéi-yǒu-zhǐ?
5. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà. 'Bái-Xiānsheng shuō-'Yīngguo-huà.  
Shéi-shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà?
6. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-mǎi-shū. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-bù-mǎi-shū. Shéi-mǎi-shū?
7. 'Wáng-Xiǎojie yǒu-'Měiguó-dìtú. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie yǒu-'Zhōngguo-dìtú.  
Shéi-yǒu-Měiguó-dìtú?
8. 'Sānge-Zhōngguo-rén. 'Yíge-Yīngguo-rén. 'Jǐge-wàiguo-rén?
9. 'Bái-Xiǎojie yǒu-'Měiguó-bǐ. 'Máo-Xiǎojie yǒu-'Yīngguó-bǐ. 'Bái-Xiǎojie yǒu-'něiguó-bǐ?
10. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng yǒu-'hóng-mòshuǐ. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yǒu-'lán-mòshuǐ.  
'Lán-mòshuǐ-shi-shéide?
11. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-yǒu-shū. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-yǒu-bǐ. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-yǒu-shénmo?
12. 'Wáng-Tàitai-yǒu-zhǐ. 'Bái-Tàitai-yǒu-shū. 'Shéi-yǒu-zhǐ?
13. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie-yǒu-zìdiǎn. 'Wáng-Xiǎojie-méi-yǒu-zìdiǎn. Shéi-yǒu-zìdiǎn?
14. Gāo-Tàitai yǒu-liùkuài-qián. Gāo-Xiānsheng yǒu-liùshikuài-qián. Gāo-Tàitai yǒu-'duōshao-qián?

15. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-yǒu-gāngbǐ. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-yǒu-qiānbǐ. 'Shéi-yǒu-gāngbǐ?
16. 'Yíge-Zhōngguo-rén. 'Liǎngge-Měiguó-rén. 'Yígòng-jǐge-rén?
17. 'Bái-Xiānsheng chī-'Měiguó-fàn. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng chī-'Zhōngguó-fàn. Shéi-chī-'Měiguó-fàn?
18. Zhèige-'Yīngguo-rén xìng-Máo. Zhèige-'Měiguó-rén xìng-Bái. Zhèige-'Yīngguo-rén xìng-shénmo?
19. Nèiwèi-'xiáojie xìng-Gāo. Nèiwèi-'tàitai xìng-Wáng. Nèiwèi-'xiáojie xìng-shénmo?
20. Tā-yǒu-'máobǐ. Wó-yǒu-'gāngbǐ. 'Máobǐ-shi-shéide?
21. Gāo-'Tàitai-mǎi-dìtú. Gāo-'Xiáojie-mǎi-zhǐ. Gāo-'Tàitai-mǎi-shénmo?
22. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng mǎi-sìběn-shū. 'Bái-Xiānsheng mǎi-liángběn-shū. 'Bái-Xiānsheng mǎi-'jíbēn-shū?
23. Wó-yǒu-'Zhōngwén-shū. Tā-yǒu-'Yīngwén-shū. Shéi-yǒu-'Zhōngwén-shū?
24. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-yóu-běnzǐ. 'Qián-Xiānsheng-yǒu-zìdiǎn. 'Shéi-yǒu-zìdiǎn?
25. 'Bái-Xiáojie-yǒu-zìdiǎn. 'Wáng-Xiáojie-yǒu-dìtú. 'Bái-Xiáojie-yǒu-shénmo?

### QUESTIONING ANSWERS

This exercise is the opposite of the usual type: here, you are asked to supply the questions for which the given statements would be appropriate answers. There may be several possibilities: a choice-type question, a split-choice-type question, a question with the particle ma or with a question word. Give all the questions you can think of which might elicit the given statement. For example:

Teacher says:	Tā-shi-Měiguó-rén.	'He is an American.'
You say	: Tā-shi-Měiguó-rén-ma?	'Is he an American?'
	Tā-shì-bu-shi-Měiguó-rén?	'Is he an American?'
	Tā-shì-'Měiguó-rén-bu-shi?	'Is he an American?'
	Tā-shi-'něiguó-rén?	'What nationality is he?'

After each question suggested by the student, the teacher should respond by repeating the initial statement.

1. Bú-shi, wǒ-shi-'Měiguó-rén.
2. Wǒ-xìng-Bái. Nín-ne?

3. Wǒ-'bù-huì. 'Jiù-huì-shuō 'Yīngguo-huà.
4. Xiànzài-shi-'bādiǎn-zhōng.
5. Wǒ-jīntian-wǎnshang méi-yǒu-gōngfu.
6. Wǒmen-'bú-mài-wàiguó-shū. Jiù-mài-'Zhōngguó-shū.
7. Shū, bǐ 'yígòng-sānkuài-qián.
8. Tāmen-'dōu-hǎo, xièxie-ni.
9. Bù-dōu-shi-'Yīngguó-rén. Yíwèi-shi-'Měiguó-rén. Yíwèi-shi-'Yīngguó-rén.
10. Wǒ-méi-yǒu-qián.

## DIALOGUE I

Read aloud and translate into English.

M: Qǐng-wèn, nín-guìxìng?

W: Wǒ-xìng-Wáng. Nín-ne?

M: Wǒ-xìng-Máo.

W: Nín-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguó-huà-ma?

M: Wǒ-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguó-huà.

W: Nín-shi-'Měiguó-rén-ma?

M: Shì, wǒ-'shì-Měiguó-rén.

W: Qǐng-wèn-nín, 'xiànzài-shi-shénmo-shíhou? Wó-xiáng-zhǎo-yíge-péng-you.

M: Xiànzài-'sāndiǎn-zhōng.

W: Xièxie-nín.

## DIALOGUE II

Read aloud and translate into English.

A: Qǐng-wèn-nín, 'nèige-rén shi-'Měiguó-rén-ma?

B: 'Něige-rén?

A: 'Nèige-rén.

B: Oh, 'nèige-rén. Tā-'bú-shi-Měiguó-rén. Tā-shi-'Yīngguó-rén.

A: Tā-xìng-shénmo?

B: Tā-xìng-Bái.

A: Oh! Tā-'bú-xìng-Wáng-a?

B: Tā-'bú-xìng-Wáng. Tā-xìng-Bái.



## NARRATIVE

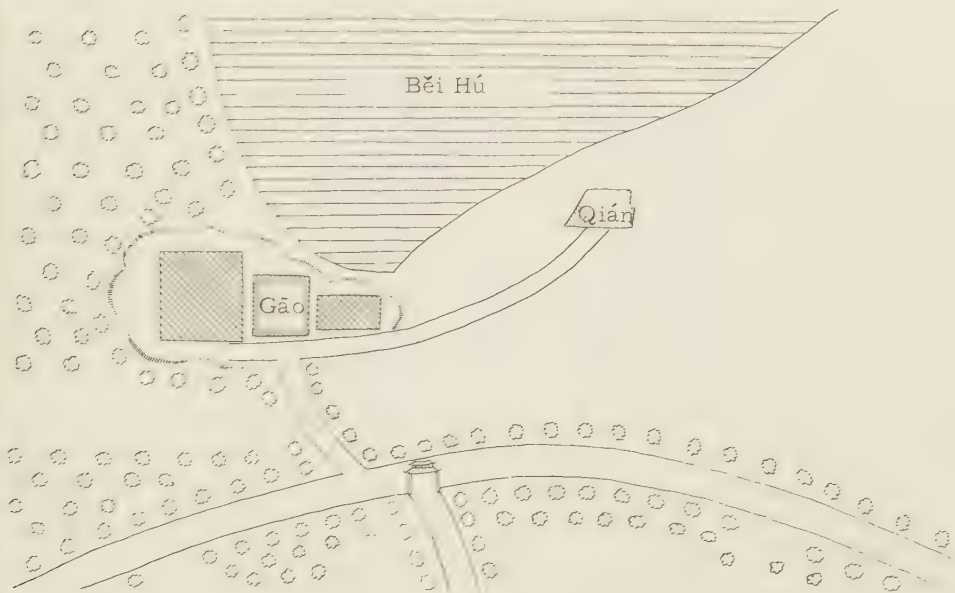
Read aloud and translate into English.

Jīntian wó-mǎi-shū. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng yé-mǎi-shū. 'Tā-hái-mǎi-qiānbǐ, máobǐ, zhǐ, běnzi. Wó-mǎi-yìběn-zìdiǎn, yìběn-Yīngwén-shū, yìzhāng-dìtú, yìzhī-gāngbǐ—yígòng-sìkuài-jiǔmáo-qián. Nèige-shíhou shì-liùdiǎn-zhōng. Wó-qǐng-Wáng-Xiānsheng-chī-fàn.

## UNIT II



## Lesson 7 INQUIRING ABOUT PLACES



"Gāo-Xiānsheng jiā zài yí ge xiǎo shān shang."

Dialogue: Mr. White is given a detailed answer to his inquiry about where Mr. Gao lives.

Máo: 'Bái-Xiānsheng, nín hǎo ma?  
Nín yào mǎi shū ma?

Mr. White, how are you? Do you want to buy some books?

Bái: Jīntiān wǒ bù mǎi shū. Wó-  
zhǎo 'Gāo-Xiānsheng. 'Gāo-  
Xiānsheng jīntiān wǎnshang 5  
qíng wǒ chī fàn. Nǐ 'zhīdào-  
bù zhīdào shì zài zhèr ne  
háishi zài tā jiā ne? \*

I'm not buying books today. I'm looking for Mr. Gao. Mr. Gao asked me to dinner this evening. Do you know whether it's here or at his home? \*

Máo: Zài tā 'jiā chī fàn.

The dinner is at his home.

Bái: Tā jiā zài nǎr? Shì zài 10  
chéng lǐ tóu háishi zài chéng-  
wàitóu?

Where is his home? Is it inside the city or outside the city?

\* It is a common practice among Chinese to entertain guests at their place of business (many business establishments have dining facilities) or at restaurants, as well as in their homes.

- Máo: Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā zài-chéng-wàitou, jiù-zài-zhèitiáo-lùde-běibiar, yíge-xiǎo-shān-shang. 15 Mr. Gao's home is outside the city, north of this road, on a small hill.
- Bái: Zài-nèige-shānshang yǒu-'jísuǒr-fángzi? How many houses are there on the hill?
- Máo: Nèr-yígòng jiù-yǒu-'sānsuǒr-fángzi. Xībiar yǒu-yìsuǒr-'dà-fángzi. Dōngbiar yǒu-yìsuǒr-'xiǎo-fángzi. Zhōng-jiārde-fángzi jiù-shi-Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā. Nánbiar-shānxià shi-Zhōngshān-Lù. 20 There are only three houses [in all] there. To the west there's a big house. To the east is a small house. The house in between is Mr. Gao's home. To the south below the hill is Sun Yatsen Road. In front of Sun Yatsen Road is a big park. Behind the hill is a small lake.
- 25 Zhōngshān-Lù-qiánbiar yǒu-yíge-dà-gōngyuán. Shān-hòutou yǒu-yíge-xiǎo-hú.
- Bái: Nèige-shi-'Běi-Hú-ma? Is it North Lake?
- Máo: 'Shì-Běi-Hú. Húde-yòubiar shi-'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā. 30 [Yes] it's North Lake. To the right of the lake is Mr. Qian's home. To the left of the lake there is also a small park.
- Húde-zuǒbiar hái-yǒu-yíge-xiǎo-gōngyuán.
- Bái: Oh, wǒ-zhīdao, wǒ-zhīdao. 35 Oh, I know, I know. Thank you.
- Xièxie-nì.

## VOCABULARY

běi	north (PW)
biān, biār	side (PW)
chéng	city (N)
dà	big (SV)
dōng	east (PW)
Dōngběi	Manchuria (PW) [lit. east north] (Note 11 below)
fángzi	house (N)
gōngyuán	park (N) [lit. public yard]
háishi	or [lit. still is] (Note 12 below)
hòu	rear (PW)
hú	lake (N)
Húběi	Hupei province (PW) [lit. lake north] (Note 11 below)
Húnán	Hunan province (PW) [lit. lake south] (Note 11 below)
lǐ	inside (PW)
lù	road (N)

nán	south (PW)
nèr	there (PW)
qián	front (PW)
shān	hill, mountain (N)
Shāndong	Shantung province (PW) [lit. mountains east] (Note 11 below)
Shānxi	Shansi province (PW) [lit. mountains west] (Note 11 below)
shàng	top (PW)
suǒ, suǒr	(measure for buildings)
tiáo	(measure for roads)
tou	(substantive suffix)
wài	outside (PW)
xī	west (PW)
xià	bottom, below (PW)
xiǎo	small (SV)
yòu	right [as opposed to left] (PW)
zài	occupy, be at (V) (Notes 1, 8, 9 below) at, in, on (CV) (Notes 3, 4, 7 below)
zhèr	here (PW)
zhīdao	know (that . . .) (V) (Note 13 below)
zhōngjiǎn	middle (PW) [lit. middle interval]
Zhōngshān	Sun Yatsen [lit. middle mountain] (Note 10 below)
zuǒ	left [as opposed to right] (PW)

SENTENCE BUILD-UP

zài	at
zài-jia	at home
1. Tā-zài-jia-ma?	Is he at home?
zhèr	here
zài-zhèr	here, at this place
2. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng bú-zài-zhèr.	Mr. Gao isn't here.
nèr	there
zài-nèr	(at) there
3. Tāmen dōu-zài-nèr-ma?	Are they all there?
qiántou	front
zài-qiántou	be in front
4. Tāmen-zài-qiántou.	They're in front.



- |                                           |                                    |
|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| hòutou<br>zài-hòutou                      | rear, back<br>in the rear          |
| 5. 'Shéi-zài-hòutou?                      | Who's in back?                     |
| qiánbian<br>hòubian                       | front<br>rear                      |
| 6. Wǒ-zài-qiánbian, tā-zài-hòubian.       | I'm in front, he's in back.        |
| qiánbiar<br>hòubiār                       | front<br>back                      |
| 7. Tā-zài-qiánbiar, bú-zài-hòubiār.       | He's in front, not in back.        |
| lǐtou<br>zài-lǐtou                        | inside<br>be inside                |
| 8. Tāmen-dōu-zài-lǐtou.                   | They're all inside.                |
| wàibiār<br>zài-wàibiār                    | outside<br>be outside              |
| 9. 'Gāo-Tàitai zài-wàibiār.               | Mrs. Gao is outside.               |
| shàngtou<br>xiàtou                        | above<br>below                     |
| 10. 'Yíge-zài-shàngtou, 'yíge-zài-xiàtou. | One is above, one is below.        |
| fángzi<br>'shéide-fángzi?                 | house<br>whose house?              |
| 11. Zhèi-shi-'shéide-fángzi?              | Whose house is this?               |
| shān<br>'shénmo-shān?                     | hill<br>what hill?                 |
| 12. Nà-shi-'shénmo-shān?                  | What hill is that?                 |
| dōng<br>dōngbian                          | east<br>east (side)                |
| 13. Wǒ-jia zài-dōngbian.                  | My house is to the east.           |
| xī<br>xībiār                              | west<br>west (side)                |
| 14. Xī-Shān zài-xībiār.                   | The Western Hills are in the west. |
| nán<br>nánbiār                            | south<br>south (side)              |
| 15. Shénmo-zài-nánbiār?                   | What's in the south?               |
| běi<br>běibiār                            | north<br>north (side)              |
| 16. Tā-jia yě-zài-běibiār.                | His home is also in the north.     |

gōngyuán  
'shénmo-gōngyuán?  
17. Zhèi-shi-'shénmo-gōngyuán?

park  
what park?  
What park is this?

hú  
Dōng-Hú  
18. Dōng-Hú-zài-nǎr?

lake  
East Lake  
Where is East Lake?

dà  
'dà-bu-dà?  
19. Nèige-shān 'dà-bu-dà?

big  
big or not?  
Is that mountain big?

xiǎo  
xiǎo-fángzi  
20. Xiǎo-fángzi yě-shi-tāde-  
ma?

small  
small house  
Is the small house also his?

zuǒ  
zuǒbiar  
21. Dà-gōngyuán zài-zuǒbiar.

left  
left (side)  
The big park is on the left.

yòu  
yòubiār  
22. Xiǎo-gōngyuán zài-yòubiār.

right  
right (side)  
The small park is on the right.

jiā  
zài-jiāli  
23. Tāmen dōu-zài-jiāli.

home  
be in the house  
They're all in the house.

chéng  
chéng-lǐtōu  
chéng-wàitōu  
24. Wǒ-jiā -zài-chéng-lǐtōu,  
bú-zài-chéng-wàitōu.

city  
inside the city  
outside the city  
My home is inside the city, not  
outside the city.

zài-shānshang  
25. Tā-jiā zài-nèige-dà-shān-  
shang.

be on a hill  
His home is on that big hill.

zài-shānxià  
26. Shéide-fángzi-zài-shānxià?

below the hill  
Whose house is below the hill?

Shāndong  
Shānxi  
27. Tāmen-zài-Shāndong, bú-  
zài-Shānxi.

Shantung (province)  
Shansi (province)  
They're in Shantung, not Shansi.

Húběi  
Húběi rén  
28. Tā-shi-Húběi-rén.

Hupeh (province)  
a native of Hupeh  
He's a native of Hupeh.

- |                                                                                                                |                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Húnán<br/>Húnán-huà<br/>29. Tā-jiù-huì-shuō Húnán-huà.</p>                                                  | <p>Hunan (province)<br/>Hunan dialect<br/>He can only speak Hunan dialect.</p>                 |
| <p>Dōngběi<br/>Dōngběi-rén<br/>30. 'Máo-Xiānsheng shì-Dōngběi-rén.</p>                                         | <p>the Northeast, Manchuria<br/>a native of Manchuria<br/>Mr. Mao is from Manchuria.</p>       |
| <p>zhīdao<br/>bu-zhīdào<br/>31. Tā-zài-nǎr, nǐ-'zhīdao-bu-zhīdào?</p>                                          | <p>know<br/>not know<br/>Where is he, do you know?</p>                                         |
| <p>suǒr<br/>zhèisuǒr-fángzi<br/>32. Zhèisuor-fángzi duōshao-qián?</p>                                          | <p>(measure for houses)<br/>this house<br/>How much is this house?</p>                         |
| <p>zhōngjiàr<br/>liángsuǒr-dà-fángzide-zhōngjiàr<br/>33. Xiǎo-fángzi zài-liángsuǒr-'dà-fángzide-zhōngjiàr.</p> | <p>middle<br/>between two big houses<br/>The little house is between two big houses.</p>       |
| <p>tiáo<br/>lù<br/>34. Nèitiáo-lù 'hǎo-bu-hǎo?</p>                                                             | <p>(measure for roads)<br/>road<br/>How's that road?</p>                                       |
| <p>Zhōngshān<br/>Zhōngshān-Lù<br/>35. Qǐng-wèn, Zhōngshan-Lù zài-nǎr?</p>                                      | <p>Sun Yatsen<br/>Sun Yatsen Avenue<br/>May I ask, where is Sun Yatsen Avenue?</p>             |
| <p>zài-lǐtou<br/>zài-lǐtou-chī-fàn<br/>36. Tāmen-zài-lǐtou-chī-fàn.</p>                                        | <p>be inside<br/>eat inside<br/>They're eating inside.</p>                                     |
| <p>fángzide-dōngbiar<br/>37. Xiǎo-hú zài-fángzide-dōngbiar.</p>                                                | <p>east of the house<br/>The little lake is east of the house.</p>                             |
| <p>dōngbiarde-fángzi<br/>38. Dōngbiarde-fángzi shì-'Wáng-Xiānshengde.</p>                                      | <p>the house to the east<br/>The house to the east is Mr. Wang's.</p>                          |
| <p>zài-fángzi-wàitou<br/>zài-fángzi-wàitoude-nèige-rén<br/>39. Zài-fángzi-wàitoude-nèige-rén shì-shéi?</p>     | <p>outside the house<br/>that man outside the house<br/>Who is that man outside the house?</p> |
| <p>dà-gōngyuán</p>                                                                                             | <p>big park</p>                                                                                |

- zài-chéng-wàitou

40. Dà-gōngyuán dōu-zài-chéng-wàitou.

zài-chéng-lǐtou

41. Zài-chéng-lǐtou yóu-xiǎo-gōngyuán.

jiāli

42. Jiāli -méi-yǒu-rén.

zài-Húnán

43. Tāmen-zài-Húnán hái-shì-zài-Húběi?
- outside the city

The big parks are all outside the city.

inside the city

there are some small parks

There are some small parks inside the city.

at home

there isn't anybody

There isn't anyone at home.

in Hunan

or in Hupeh

Are they in Hunan or in Hupeh?

PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 7.1. Location at a Place (Note 1 below)

S	<u>zài</u>	P
Subject	is/are (at)	Place word
Rén	zài	lǐtou.
'The people are inside.'		
1. Qiānbǐ-zài-nèr.		The pencil is there.
2. Máobǐ-zài-zhèr-ma?		Is the writing brush here?
3. Lán-mòshuǐ-zài-nǎr?		Where's the blue ink?
4. Tāmen-zài-lǐtou.		They're inside.
5. Tāmen-zài-fángzi-lǐtou.		They're inside the house.
6. Tāmen-zài-fángzili.		They're in the house.
7. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng zài-jiā-ma?		Is Mr. King at home?
8. Wǒ-péngyoude-jiā zài-chéng-wài.		My friend's home is outside the city.
9. Tāmen-bú-zài-jiā-ma?		Aren't they at home?
10. Tàitai-zài-jiā-ma?		Is the lady of the house at home?
11. Qíng-nǐ-wèn tā-jiā-zài-nǎr..		Please ask where his house is.
12. Tāde-jiā zài-Shāndong.		His home is in Shantung.
13. Tāde-fángzi zài-shānshang.		His house is on the hill.
14. Hóng-mòshuǐ-zài-nǎr, nǐ-zhīdao-ma?		Where's the red ink, do you know?

15. Dà-shān dōu-zài-dōngbiān.

The big mountains are all in the east.

## Pattern 7.2. The Coverb of Location (Notes 2-3 below)

S	CV	P	MV	O
Subject	Coverb	Place word	Main Verb	Object
Rén	zài	lǐtōu	chī	fàn.
'The people are eating inside.'				
1. Wǒ-jīntiān bú-zài-jīā-chī-fàn.			I'm not eating at home today.	
2. Wǒmen-'kéyì-bu-kéyì zài-zhèr-chī-fàn?			Can we eat here?	
3. Wǒmen-zài-zhèr-chī-fàn kéyì-ma?			Can we eat here?	
4. Wǒ-bù-xiǎng zài-nèr-mǎi-shū.			I'm not going to buy books there.	
5. Nín-yào-zài-'nár-mǎi-zhōng?			Where do you want to buy a clock?	
6. Tā-bú-zài-zhèr mǎi-mòshuǐ-ma?			Isn't he buying the ink here?	
7. Nǐ-bú-zài-jīā chī-fàn-ma?			Aren't you eating at home?	
8. Tāmen-zài-zhèr-mài-shénmo?			What do they sell here?	
9. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng zài-'nǎr-shuō-huà?			Where is Mr. King speaking?	
10. Tāmen dōu-zài-Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiāli-chī-fàn.			They're all eating at Mr. Gao's home.	

## Pattern 7.3. Existence at a Place (Note 8 below)

(zài)	P	yǒu	N
(at)	Place	there is/are	Noun
(Zài)	lǐtōu	yǒu	rén.

'There are people inside.'

- |                                 |                                             |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 1. Jiāli-yǒu-rén-ma?            | Is there anybody at home?                   |
| 2. Zài-Húnán méi-yǒu-dà-shān.   | There are no big mountains in Hunan.        |
| 3. Chéng-wàitōu méi-yǒu-fángzi. | There are no houses outside the city.       |
| 4. Zài-shānshang méi-yǒu-dà-lù. | There are no big highways on the mountains. |

5. Zài-Shāndong yǒu-dà-'hú-méi-yǒu?	Are there any big lakes in Shan-tung?
6. Nèisuǒr-fángzishang yǒu-shén-mo?	What's on top of that house?
7. Zài-Měiguó yé-yǒu-Zhōngguó-rén.	There are also Chinese in America.
8. Fángzili yǒu-méi-yǒu-rén?	Is there anyone in the house?
9. Zài-shānshang yǒu-fángzi-ma?	Are there any houses on the mountain?
10. Zài-Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiā yǒu-dìtú-ma?	Is there a map at Mr. King's house?

Pattern 7.4. Subordination of Place Words (Notes 6-7 below)

(zài)	P-de	N
(at)	Place-de	Noun
(zài)	lǐtode	rén
'the people (who are) inside'		
1. nèrde-rén	the people there	
2. wàitode-rén	the people outside	
3. zài-wàitode-rén	the people who are outside	
4. fángzi-wàitode-rén	the people outside the house	
5. zài-fángzi-wàitode-rén	the people who are outside the house	
6. zài-Dōngběide-dà-shān	the big mountains in Manchuria	
7. fángzi-qiántode-nèiwèi-xiānsheng	that gentleman in front of the house	
8. zài-shānshangde-fángzi	the houses on the hill	
9. zài-lùshangde-rén	the people on the road	
10. zài-Měiguode-dà-hú	the big lakes in America	
11. Zài-dōngbiarde-fángzi yě hén-hǎo.	The houses in the east are also very nice.	
12. Wáng-Xiānsheng-yòubiār-de-nèiwèi-xiǎojie shì-shéi?	Who is that young lady to the right of Mr. King?	
13. Zài-nánbiarde-nèitiáo-lù shì-Zhōngshān-Lù-ma?	Is the road on the south Sun Yat-sen Avenue?	
14. Fángzi-hòutode-shān bù-hěngāo.	The hill behind the house isn't very high.	
15. Fángzi-qiántode-lù hěn-bu-hǎo.	The road in front of the house is very bad.	

- |                                              |                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 16. Zìdiǎnshangde-nèiběn-shū<br>shì-nǐde-ma? | Is that book on the dictionary<br>yours?         |
| 17. Běnzishangde-nèizhī-bǐ yě-<br>shì-wǒde.  | That pen on the notebook is also<br>mine.        |
| 18. Chéng-lǐtoudeshān dōu-hén-<br>xiǎo.      | The hills inside the city are all<br>very small. |
| 19. Chéng-xībiāndenèitiáolù yě-<br>bù-hǎo.   | That road west of the city is also<br>no good.   |
| 20. Shānhòudefángzi yě-shì-tāde-<br>ma?      | Are the houses behind the hill<br>also his?      |

Pattern 7.5. Disjunctive Questions with Transitive Verbs  
(Note 12 below)

S	V <sub>1</sub> (ne)	<u>háishi</u>	V <sub>2</sub> (ne)
Subject	Verb 1 (ne)	háishi	Verb 2 (ne)
Nǐmen	'mǎi-shū	háishi	'mài-shū?
'Do you buy books or sell books?'			
1. Tāmen-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn háishi-chī-'wàiguó-fàn?	Are they eating Chinese food or foreign food?		
2. Tāmen-shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà-ne háishi-shuō-'Yīngguó-huà-ne?	Are they speaking Chinese or English?		
3. Tāmen-'mǎi-shū háishi-'mài- shū?	Do they buy books or sell books?		
4. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng zài-Zhōngguo- ne háishi-zài-wàiguó-ne?	Is Mr. King in China or abroad?		
5. Tāmen-zài-lǐtōu háishi-zài- wàitōu?	Are they inside or outside?		
6. Tā-shì-'Měiguó-rén shì-'Yīng- guó-rén, nǐ-zhīdao-ma?	Is he American or English, do you know?		
7. Nín-shì-zhǎo-Wáng-Tàitai-ne, háishi-zhǎo-Wáng-Xiǎojie?	Are you looking for Mrs. King or Miss King?		
8. Wǒmen-zài-tā-jia-chī-fàn hái- shì-zài-tā-péngyoude-jia-chī- fàn-ne?	Are we eating at his home or at his friend's home?		
9. Wai, nǐ-shì-Wáng-Xiǎojie hái- shì-Wáng-Tàitai-ne?	Hello, is this Miss King or Mrs. King?		
10. Nín-shì-zài-'jiā-chī-fàn hái-shì- zài-'wàitōu-chī-fàn?	Are you eating at home or out- side?		
11. Nín-de-fángzi zài-shānshàng háishi-zài-shānxià-ne?	Is your home on the mountain or at the foot of [lit. below] the mountain?		



- |                                                                 |                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 12. Nín-de-jiā zài-chéng-lǐ-tou<br>háishi-zài-chéng-wài-tou-ne? | Is your home inside the city or<br>outside the city?     |
| 13. Wǒ-jīntiān-'mǎi-shū háishi-<br>'bù-mǎi-shū-ne?              | Shall I or shall I not buy books<br>today?               |
| 14. Tā-shi-tàitai háishi-xiáojie?                               | Is she [a] married [woman] or<br>[an] unmarried [woman]? |
| 15. Tā-mǎi-shū háishi-mái-bǐ?                                   | Is he buying books or pens?                              |

# SUBSTITUTION TABLES

## I: 54 sentences (Note 1)

wǒ	zài	qián	-tou
nǐ		hòu	-biar
tā		lǐ	-bian
		wài	
		shàng	
		xià	

## II: 60 sentences (Note 1)

fángzi	zài	dōng	-biar
shān		xī	-bian
gōngyuán		nán	
dà-shān		běi	
xiǎo-hú		zuǒ	
		yòu	

## III: 72 sentences (Note 1)

wǒ	—	—	zài	chéngwài
nǐ	jiā	bú		chéng-wàitōu
tā				shānshang
				shānxià
				Shāndong
				Shānxi

## IV: 64 sentences (Note 1)

wǒ	—	—	zài	dōng	-nán
nǐ	jiā	bú		xī	-běi
tā					

## V: 64 sentences (Notes 2-3)

shéi	zài	qián	-tou	chī-fàn
tā		hòu	-biar	mǎi-shū
		lǐ		shuō-huà
		wài		mái-bǐ

VI: 72 phrases (Notes 1, 5)

—	fángzi	—	dōng	-biar
zài	gōngyuán	-de	xī	
	nèitiáo-lù		nán	
			běi	
			zuǒ	
			yòu	

VII: 72 phrases

dōng	-biar	-de	fángzi
xī	-bian		shān
nán			gōngyuán
běi			lù
zuǒ			xiǎo-hú
yòu			dà-shān

VIII: 64 phrases (Note 6)

—	wǒ-jia	qián	-tou	-de	nèiwèi	xiānsheng
zài	fángzi	hòu	-biar			tàitai
		lǐ				
		wài				

IX: 60 sentences (Notes 8, 9)

—	fángzi-wàitou	—	yǒu	—	rén
zài	jiāli	méi		Zhōngguo	
	shānshang			wàiguó	
	gōngyuán-lǐtou				
	lùshang				

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

I. The i - ü Contrast

(a) nǐ	nǚ	(d) lǐ	lǚ	(g) lì	lù
(b) lí	lǔ	(e) jí	jú	(h) xī	xū
(c) jǐ	jū	(f) qī	qū	(i) xǐ	xǔ

II. The ie - üe Contrast

(a) liè	lüè	(c) jié	jué	(e) xiě	xuě
(b) niè	nüè	(d) qiē	quē	(f) xié	xué

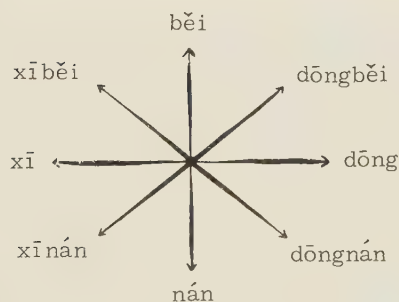
III. The in - ün Contrast

(a) yín	yún	(c) jīn	jūn	(e) qín	qún	(g) xìn	xùn
(b) yìn	yùn	(d) jìn	jùn	(f) xīn	xūn		

## DEFINITE vs. INDEFINITE (Note 9)

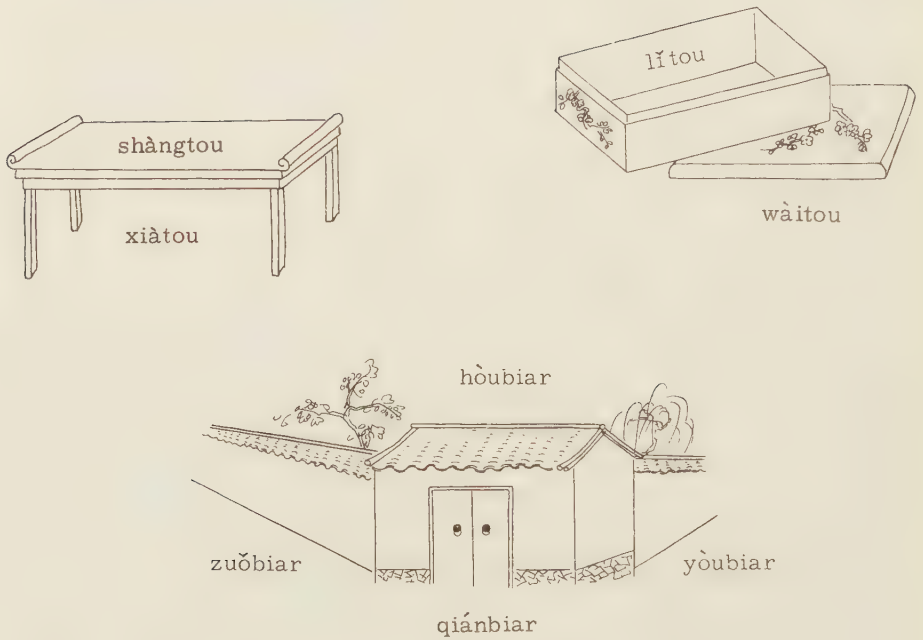
- |                                                            |                                                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Shān-zài-nǎr?                                           | Where are the mountains?                                     |
| 2. 'Nár-yǒu-shān?                                          | Where are there (any) mountains?                             |
| 3. Rén-zài-fángzili.                                       | The people are in the house.                                 |
| 4. Fángzili-yǒu-rén.                                       | There are (some) people in the house.                        |
| 5. Liángsuǒr-fángzi zài-shān-shang.                        | The two houses are on the hill.                              |
| 6. Zài-shānshang yǒu-liángsuǒr-fángzi.                     | There are two houses on the hill.                            |
| 7. Sānge-rén-zài-lǐtou, wǔge-rén-zài-wàitou.               | Three (of the) persons are inside, five persons are outside. |
| 8. Lǐtou-yǒu-sānge-rén, wàitou-yǒu-wǔge-rén.               | There are three people inside and five people outside.       |
| 9. Rén-zài-nèr-ma?                                         | Are the people there?                                        |
| 10. Nèr-yǒu-rén-ma?                                        | Are there any people there?                                  |
| 11. Dà-fángzi zài-liǎngge-xiǎo-fángzide-zhōngjià.          | The big house is between the two small houses.               |
| 12. Zài-liǎngge-xiǎo-fángzide-zhōngjià yǒu-yíge-dà-fángzi. | Between the two small houses is a big house.                 |

## SAY WHERE



On a flat surface (such as the floor or a piece of cardboard on a desk) mark out the compass points as on the drawing on the left, but without writing down the Chinese names. Improvise a compass pointer and take turns spinning it and calling out the compass direction at which the pointer stops.

Copy the three figures at the top of page 82, omitting the Chinese, and practice identifying the locations without referring to the Chinese names.



## RELATIVITY PROBLEMS

The teacher makes a statement about a positional relationship and then asks you to comment on it from some other point of view. Here is an example:

Teacher says: Wǒ-zài-tā-qiántou. Tā-zài-nǎr?  
'I am in front of him. Where is he?'

You answer : Tā-zài-nǐ-hòutou.  
'He is behind you.'

1. Tā-zài-nǐ-yòubiān. Nǐ-zài-nǎr?
2. Tā-jiā zài-nǐ-jiāde-běibiān. Nǐ-jiā-zài-nǎr?
3. Tāde-běnzi zài-nǐ-běnzide-shàngtou. Nǐde-běnzi-zài-nǎr?
4. Zhèitiáo-lù zài-nèitiáo-lùde-dōngbiān. Nèitiáo-lù-zài-nǎr?
5. Wǒde-zìdiǎn zài-nǐde-zìdiǎn-xiàbiān. Nǐde-zìdiǎn-zài-nǎr?
6. Húnán zài-Húběide-nánbiān. Húběi-zài-nǎr?
7. Shānxi zài-Shāndongde-xībiān. Shāndong-zài-nǎr?
8. Dà-chéng zài-xiǎo-chéngde-dōngbiān. Xiǎo-chéng-zài-nǎr?

9. Xiǎo-zhōng zài-dà-zhōngde-hòubiār. Dà-zhōng-zài-nǎr?
10. Zhōngshān-Lù zài-Běi-Húde-nánbiār. Běi-Hú-zài-nǎr? <sup>de</sup>
11. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng zài-Bái-Xiānshengde-zuǒbiār. Bái-Xiānsheng-zài-nǎr?
12. Běnzǐ zài-zìdiǎnde-shàngtōu. Zìdiǎn-zài-nǎr?

## NOTES

1. Location at a place is expressed in Chinese by the construction N zài P 'N is at P':

Shū-zài-zhèr. 'The book is here.'

Tāmen-zài-lǐtōu. 'They are inside.'

2. COVERBS are transitive verbs which precede the main verb of the sentence. Some coverbs, such as zài '(be) at,' are sometimes used as full verbs; a few are never anything but coverbs. All can be translated as prepositions in English.

3. The verb zài is used as a coverb indicating where the action of the main verb takes place:

Tāmen-zài-lǐtōu chī-fàn. 'They are eating inside.'

4. If a sentence contains a coverb, then the negative adverb bu, other adverbs, and auxiliary verbs usually appear directly before the coverb, rather than before the main verb:

Tā-bú-zài-jiā chī-fàn. 'He is not eating at home.'

Tā-yě-zài-jiā chī-fàn. 'He is also eating at home.'

Tā-yào-zài-jiā chī-fàn. 'He wants to eat at home.'

5. Nouns usually precede place words without an intervening de, especially in frequently used phrases:

fángzi-lǐtōu 'inside (of) the house'

In the same type of phrase, the place word often appears in the short form:

fángzili 'in the house'

shānshang 'on the hill'

shānxià 'below the hill'

6. The verb zài is often omitted before place words which are subordinated to nouns:

zài-shānshangde-nèige-rén 'that man who is on the hill'

shānshangde-nèige-rén 'that man on the hill'

7. Place words are usually followed by de when subordinated to a following noun:

lǐtōude-rén 'the people inside'

8. We have seen that the verb yǒu means 'have' when it is preceded by a subject:

Wó-yǒu-qián. 'I have money.'

When it is not preceded by a subject, and none is to be inferred from the context, yǒu means 'there is' or 'there are':

Yǒu-qián. 'There is some money (at some understood place).'

The location of the object of yǒu is indicated by a place word before the verb—sometimes with zài, but frequently without it:

Zài-Shāndong méi-yǒu-dà-hú. or

Shāndong méi-yǒu-dà-hú.

'There are no big lakes in Shantung.'

9. Chinese of course has no word corresponding to English 'the' for making nouns specific, but it has a grammatical device that serves a similar function—namely, the position the noun occupies in the sentence. A noun that occurs either in subject position or after a coverb usually refers to a definite person or thing (cf. English 'the'), as:

Liǎngge-rén zài-jiāli. 'The two persons (whom we were talking about) are in the house.' or 'Two of the persons (we were talking about) are in the house.'

In contrast, nouns in object position usually are indefinite, especially if a place word precedes the verb, as:

Jiāli yǒu-liǎngge-rén. 'There are two (unspecified) people in the house.'

10. Sun Yatsen, who founded the Chinese Republic in 1911, is also known as Sun Zhongshan. The latter part of his name—literally 'Middle Mountain'—is frequently used to name streets and so on, just as the name Washington is often used for this purpose in the United States.
11. Chinese place names, like those in other countries, are often based on geographical features: mountains, lakes, and so on. The provinces of Húnán 'Hunan' and Húběi 'Hupeh,' which mean 'South of the Lake' and 'North of the Lake' respectively, are named from their positions relative to Tungting Lake. Similarly, one of the names for Manchuria is Dōngběi, literally 'The Northeast.' The names of places as they appear on maps have long been standardized, unfortunately in a form which is different from the transcription used in this book.
12. The basic pattern for disjunctive questions—e.g. 'Are you eating Chinese food or (are you eating) foreign food?'—is simply to state the alternatives:

Nǐ-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn chī-'wàiguó-fàn?

The pattern can be varied by the optional insertion of hái (lit. 'still') or háishi (lit. 'still is') before the verbs and/or inserting ne at the end of one or both phrases. The most common form is the following:

Subject	(shì)	Verb <sub>1</sub>	<u>háishi</u>	Verb <sub>2</sub>
Tāmen		mài-shū	<u>háishi</u>	mǎi-shū?
'Do they sell books or buy books?'				

Note that if the verb is itself shi, the pattern usually has the following form:

Subject	<u>shi</u>	Noun <sub>1</sub>	<u>háishi</u>	Noun <sub>2</sub>
Tā	shi	'Yīngguo-rén	háishi	'Měiguó-rén?
'Is he an Englishman or an American?'				

13. The verb zhīdao, which has a neutral second syllable in the affirmative form, is stressed on the second syllable in the negative: bù-zhīdao.
14. The usual Chinese order of compass directions is dōng 'east,' xī 'west,' nán 'south,' běi 'north.' For compounds, the usual order is xīnán 'south-west,' xīběi 'northwest,' dōngnán 'southeast,' dōngběi 'northeast.'



# Lesson 8 EXCHANGING INFORMATION



"Oh, 'Máo-Xiānsheng, wǒ-'hái-qǐng-wèn-ni."

Dialogue: Mr. White asks Mr. Mao about a library, and Mr. Mao asks Mr. White about his studies.

Bái : Oh, 'Máo-Xiānsheng, wǒ-'hái-qǐng-wèn-ni.

Máo: Nín-'hái-wèn-wǒ-shénmo?

Bái : 'Zhèr-yǒu-túshūguǎn-méi-yǒu?

5

Máo: Yǒu. Zhèrde-túshūguǎn hěndà, shū-bù-shǎo. Měitiān yǒu-hěnduō-xuésheng zài-nèr-kàn-shū. Nín-yào-jiè-shū-ma?

10

Bái : Wó-xiǎng-jiè-shū.

Máo: Nín-xiǎng-jiè-'shénmo-shū?

Bái : Wó-xiǎng-jiè-'Zhōngwén-shū.

Máo: Nín-zài-dàxué niàn-shénmo?

15

86

Oh, Mr. Mao, I have something more to ask you.

What is it? [lit. What else are you asking me?]

Is there a library here?

Yes. The library here is pretty big and has quite a few books. Every day there are a lot of students reading there. Do you want to borrow some books?

Yes. [lit. I'd like to borrow some books.]

What books are you thinking of taking out [lit. borrowing]?

[I'm planning to take out] some Chinese books.

What are you studying in college?

Bái :	Wǒ-niàn-wénxué.		[I'm studying] literature.
Máo :	Nín-niàn 'Zhōngguo-wénxué-ma?		[Are you studying] Chinese literature?
Bái :	'Zhōngguo-wénxué, 'Yīngguo-wénxué, wǒ-dōu-niàn.	20	[I'm studying] both Chinese and English literature.
Máo :	Nín-xǐhuan 'Zhōngguo-wénxué-ma?		Do you like Chinese literature?
Bái :	Wó-hén-xǐhuan 'Zhōngguo-wénxué.		I like Chinese literature very much.
Máo :	'Zhōngguo-wénxué-róngyi háishi-'Yīngguo-wénxué-róngyi-ne?	25	Which is easier, Chinese or English literature?
Bái :	'Dōu-hěn-nán-xué.		Both are very difficult [to study].
Máo :	Yóu-hěn-duō-'wàiguó-rén néng-kàn-'Zhōngguo-shū, yě-néng-xiě-'Zhōngguo-zì. Nín-ne?	30	Quite a few foreigners can read Chinese books and also write characters. What about you?
Bái :	Wǒ-néng-shuō-Zhōngguo-huà, néng-kàn-'jiǎndānde-Zhōngguo-shū, yě-huì-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì.	35	I can speak Chinese, read simple Chinese books, and also write characters.
Máo :	Zhōngguo-zì 'tài-nán-xiě.		Chinese characters are too hard to write.
Bái :	Hěn-duì. . . . Túshūguǎn-zài-nǎr? Lí-zhèr-yuǎn-ma?		Quite right. . . . Where is the library? Is it far from here?
Máo :	Túshūguǎn hén-yuǎn.		[The library is] quite far.
Bái :	Lí-zhèr-duó-yuǎn?	40	How far (is it) from here?
Máo :	Lí-zhèr-yǒu qīlǐ-duō-lù.		(It's) seven-odd (Chinese) miles [from here].
Bái :	Oh, qī-bāli-lù bú-'tài-yuǎn.		Oh, seven or eight (Chinese) miles isn't too far.
Máo :	Yě-bú-jìn.		It's not close either.
Bái :	Túshūguǎn lí-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā 'yuǎn-bu-yuǎn?	45	Is the library far from Mr. Gao's home?
Máo :	'Hén-yuǎn.		Quite far.

## VOCABULARY

dàxué	college, university (N) [lit. big study]
duì	correct (SV)
duō	numerous, many, much; -odd (SV) (Note 7 below)
duó(mo)	how? to what degree? (AD) (Notes 5, 7 below)
jiǎndān	simple, uncomplicated (SV) [lit. simple single]

jiè	borrow (TV)
jìn	near (SV)
kàn	look at, see, read (TV)
lí	(separated) from (CV)
lǐ	Chinese mile (= $\frac{1}{3}$ English mile) (M)
měi	each, every (M)
nán	difficult (SV)
néng	able to (AV) (Note 8 below)
niàn	study, read (aloud) (TV)
róngyi	easy (SV)
shǎo	few, scarce, rare (SV) (Note 7a below)
tài	too, excessively (AD)
tiān	day (M)
túshūguǎn	library (N) [lit. chart book establishment]
wénxué	literature (N) [lit. writing study]
xiě	write (TV)
xǐhuan	like, like to (TV) [lit. joy rejoice]
xué	study (TV)
xuésheng	student (N)
yuǎn	far, a long way (off) (SV)
zì	character, word

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                                 |                                         |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| yuǎn<br>'yuǎn-bu-yuǎn?          | far<br>far or not?                      |
| 1. Nǐ-jíā 'yuǎn-bu-yuǎn?        | Is your home far away?                  |
| lí<br>lí-Měiguó                 | from<br>from America                    |
| 2. Zhōngguó-lí-Měiguó hén-yuǎn. | China is quite far from America.        |
| lǐ<br>yīlǐ-lù                   | (Chinese) mile<br>one (Chinese) mile    |
| 3. Wǒ-jíā lí-zhèr-yīlǐ-lù.      | My home is one mile from here.          |
| túshūguǎn<br>lí-túshūguǎn       | library<br>from the library             |
| 4. Tā-jíā-lí-túshūguǎn èrlǐ-lù. | His home is two miles from the library. |
| dàxué                           | university                              |

- lí-dàxué

5. Túshūguǎn-lí-dàxué sānlǐ-lù.
- duō

hěn-duō

6. Wǒde-qián bù-hěn-duō.
- duō

sānlǐ-duō-lù

7. Wǒ-jiā-lí-zhèr sānlǐ-duō-lù.
- sānshí-lǐ-lù

sānshí-duō-lǐ-lù

8. Běi-Hú-lí-Nán-Hú sānshí-duō-lǐ-lù.
- duó

'duó-yuǎn?

lí-nèr-'duó-yuǎn?

9. Dàxué-lí-nèr 'duó-yuǎn?
- 'duómo?

'duómo-yuǎn?

10. Túshūguǎn-lí-zhèr 'duómo-yuǎn?
- tài

tài-yuǎn

11. Wǒ-jiā-lí-dàxué tài-yuǎn.
- jìn

hěn-jìn

12. Wǒ-jiā-lí-dàxué hěn-jìn.
- 'jílǐ-lù?

lí-zhèr-'jílǐ-lù?

13. Xī-Shān-lí-zhèr 'jílǐ-lù?
- 'duōshao-lǐ-lù?

lí-Měiguó 'duōshao-lǐ-lù?

14. Zhōngguó-lí-Měiguó 'duōshao-lǐ-lù?
- lí-zhèr-'duó-yuǎn?

lí-zhèr yǒu-'duó-yuǎn?
- from the university

The library is three miles from the university.
- many or much

very much

I don't have very much money.
- and a little more

three miles and a little more

My home is a little over three miles from here.
- thirty miles

thirty-odd miles

North Lake is thirty-odd miles from South Lake.
- how (much, of a quality)?

how far?

how far from there?

How far is the university from there?
- how (much, of a quality)?

how far?

How far is the library from here?
- excessively

too far

My home is too far from the university.
- near

very near

My home is very near the university.
- how many miles?

how many miles from here?

How many miles from here are the Western Hills?
- how many miles?

how many miles from America?

How many miles from America is China?
- how far from here?

how far from here?

15. Měiguó-lí-zhèr 'duó-yuǎn?  
or  
 Měiguó-lí-zhèr yǒu-'duó-yuǎn?

How far is America from here?

- lí-zhèr-'jílǐ-lù?  
 lí-zhèr-yǒu-'jílǐ-lù?  
 16. Nǐ-jiā-lí-zhèr 'jílǐ-lù?  
or  
 Nǐ-jiā-lí-zhèr yǒu-'jílǐ-lù?

how many miles from here?  
 how many miles from here?  
 How far from here is your home?

- lí-Yīngguó 'duōshao-lǐ-lù?  
 lí-Yīngguó yǒu-'duōshao-lǐ-lù?  
 17. Zhōngguó-lí-Yīngguó 'duōshao-lǐ-lù?  
or  
 Zhōngguó-lí-Yīngguó yǒu-duōshao-lǐ-lù?

how many miles from England?  
 how many miles from England?  
 How many miles is China from England?

- lí-nèr-bāilǐ-lù  
 lí-nèr-yǒu-bāilǐ-lù  
 18. Wǒ-jiā-lí-nèr bāilǐ-lù.  
or  
 Wǒ-jiā-lí-nèr yǒu-bāilǐ-lù.

eight miles from there  
 eight miles from there  
 My home is eight miles from there.

- xuésheng  
 nǐde-xuésheng  
 19. Nǐde-xuésheng 'duō-bu-duō?

student  
 your students  
 Do you have many students?

- xǐhuan  
 hén-xǐhuan  
 20. Wó-hén-xǐhuan-ta.

like  
 like very much  
 I like him very much.

- kàn  
 kàn-shū  
 21. Tā-bu-xǐhuan-kàn-shū.

look at, read  
 read books  
 He doesn't like to read.

- zì  
 shénmo-zì?  
 22. Zhèi-shi-shénmo-zì?

character  
 what character?  
 What character is this?

- xiě  
 xiě-zì  
 23. Nǐ-huì-xiě 'Zhōngguó-zì-ma?

write  
 write characters  
 Do you know how to write Chinese characters?

- měi  
 měige-rén  
 24. Měige-rén yǒu-yìběn-shū.

each or every  
 each person  
 Each person has one book.

- tiān  
 měitiān  
 25. Wó-měitiān chī-Zhōngguó-fàn.

day  
 every day  
 I eat Chinese food every day.

- ní-qǐng-shéi?  
'shéi-chī-fàn?  
26. Ní-qǐng-'shéi-chī-fàn?
- méi-you-xiáojie  
xiáojie-xǐhuan-ta  
27. Méi-you-xiáojie xǐhuan-ta.
- hǎo  
hǎo-kàn  
28. Nèige-xiáojie hén-hǎo-kàn.
- nán  
nán-kàn  
29. Nèisuǒr-fángzi hěn-nán-kàn.
- róngyi  
bu-róngyi-mǎi  
30. Xiànzài hǎo-fángzi bu-róngyi-mǎi.
- niàn  
tài-nán-niàn  
31. Zhèiběn-shū tài-nán-niàn.
- niàn-shū  
zài-dàxué-niàn-shū  
32. Tā-zài-'shénmo-dàxué-niàn-shū?
- xué  
xué-Zhōngguo-huà  
33. Wó-hén-xǐhuan xué-Zhōngguo-huà.
- shǎo  
hén-shǎo  
34. 'Zhèrde-rén hén-shǎo.
- jiè  
jiè-zhèiběn-shū  
35. Wó-xiǎng-jiè 'zhèiběn-shū.
- néng  
'néng-xiě Zhōngguo-zì  
36. Wǒ-bù-néng-xiě Zhōngguo-zì.
- jiǎndān  
jiǎndānde-zì  
37. Wǒ-'jiù-néng-xiě jiǎndānde-zì.
- wénxué
- whom are you inviting?  
who is eating?  
Whom have you invited to eat?
- there are no girls  
girls like him  
No girls like him.
- good  
good to look at, pretty  
That young lady is very pretty.
- difficult  
ugly  
That house is very ugly.
- easy  
not easy to buy  
Nowadays it's not easy to buy  
good houses.
- read, study  
too hard to read  
This book is too hard to read.
- study  
study at a university  
At what university is he study-  
ing?
- study  
study Chinese  
I enjoy studying Chinese very  
much.
- few  
very few  
There are very few people here.
- borrow  
borrow this book  
I'd like to borrow this book.
- able to  
able to write Chinese char-  
acters  
I can't write Chinese characters.
- simple  
simple characters  
I can only write simple charac-  
ters.
- literature

Yīngguó-wénxué  
38. Yīngguó-wénxué nán-niàn-  
ma?

English literature  
Is English literature hard to  
study?

duì  
hěn-duì  
39. Nǐde-huà hěn-duì.

correct  
quite correct  
Your statement is quite correct.

xiě-Zhōngguó-zì  
hěn-nán  
40. Xiě-Zhōngguó-zì hěn-nán.

write Chinese characters  
very hard  
Writing Chinese characters is  
very hard.

shì-zhèige-hǎo  
háishi-nèige-hǎo  
41. Shì-'zhèige-hǎo háishi-'nèige  
hǎo-ne?

is this good?  
or is that good?  
Which is better, this or that?

## PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 8.1. Distance between Places (Notes 3-5 below)

Pattern 8.1 a.

S	<u>lí</u>	P	<u>yuǎn/jìn</u>
Subject	'from'	Place	'far'/'close'
Túshūguǎn	lí	zhèr	yuǎn.
'The library is far from here.'			

Pattern 8.1 b.

S	<u>lí</u>	P	( <u>yǒu</u> )	D
Subject	'from'	Place		Distance
Túshūguǎn	lí	zhèr	yǒu	sānlǐ lù.
'The library is three (Chinese) miles from here.'				

1. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-jia lí-zhèr-jìn.
2. Húběi-lí-zhèr 'hén-yuǎn.
3. Tā-jia-lí-zhèr hěn-jìn.
4. Gōngyuán-lí-wǒ-jia 'tài-yuǎn.
5. Dàxué-lí-zhèr hěn-jìn-ma?
6. Zhōngshān-Lù-lí-zhèr hén-yuǎn-ma?
7. 'Zuǒbiarde-fángzi lí-'yòubiarde-fángzi 'duómo-yuǎn?

Mr. Johnson's home is near here.  
Hupei is far from here.  
His home is very near here.  
The park is too far from my home.  
Is the college very near here?  
Is Sun Yatsen Avenue very far from here?  
How far is the house on the left from the house on the right?



8. Měiguó-lí-Yīngguó yǒu-'duó-yuǎn?  
How far is America from England?
9. Wǒ-bu-zhīdào tā-jiā-lí-zhèr-'duó-yuǎn.  
I don't know how far his home is from here.
10. Tā-jiā-lí-zhèr 'jǐlǐ-lù?  
How many miles from here is his home?
11. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-zhèr-yǒu-'jǐlǐ-lù?  
How many miles from here is Mr. Gao's home?
12. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-zhèr-'duōshao-lǐ-lù?  
How many miles from here is Mr. White's home?
13. Túshūguǎn-lí-gōngyuán yǒu-qīlǐ-lù.  
The library is seven miles from the park.
14. Shān-'qiántoude-fángzi lí-shān-'hòutoude-fángzi yǒu-èrlǐ-lù.  
The house in front of the hill is two miles from the house behind the hill.
15. Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā-lí-zhèr shí-liùlǐ-lù.  
Mr. Gao's house is sixteen miles from here.
16. Xī-Shān-lí-zhèr bālǐ-duō-lù.  
The Western Hills are eight or so miles from here.
17. Túshūguǎn-lí-gōngyuán bu-yuǎn-ma?  
Isn't the library far from the park?
18. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-túshūguǎn-yuǎn-ma?  
Is Mr. King's home far from the library?
19. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-'Máo-Xiānsheng-jiā jìn-ma?  
Is Mr. White's home close to Mr. Mao's home?
20. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-nèr-'duōshao-lǐ-lù?  
How far is Mr. White's home from there?
21. 'Dàxué-lí-túshūguǎn 'jǐlǐ-lù?  
How many miles is the college from the library?
22. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiā hén-yuǎn-ma?  
Is Mr. Mao's home very far from Mr. King's home?
23. Yīngguó-lí-Měiguó bù-hén-yuǎn-ma?  
Isn't England a long way from America?
24. Nín-jiā-lí-túshūguǎn 'yuǎn-bu-yuǎn?  
Is your home far from the library?
25. 'Nánbiarde-shān lí-'běibiarde-shān yǒu-wúshi-duō-lǐ-lù.  
The mountains on the south are fifty-odd miles from the mountains on the north.

## Pattern 8.2. Nouns Shared as Objects and Subjects (Note 2)

<u>yǒu</u>	N	V
there is/are	Noun	Verb
Yǒu	rén	kàn-shū.

'There are people reading.'

- |                                                                                                   |                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. 'Bú-yào-shuō-huà. Yǒu-rén-kàn-shū.                                                             | Don't talk. There are people reading.                                                            |
| 2. Měitiān-yǒu-xuésheng zài-zhèr-kàn-shū.                                                         | Every day there are students reading here.                                                       |
| 3. Túshūguǎn jīntian-méi-yǒu-rén-kàn-shū.                                                         | There isn't anyone reading in the library today.                                                 |
| 4. Méi-yǒu-xiǎojie-xǐhuan-ta.                                                                     | No girls like him.                                                                               |
| 5. Jīntian méi-yǒu-rén-mǎi-shū-ma?                                                                | Isn't anyone buying books today?                                                                 |
| 6. Xiànzài yǒu-hěn-duō-'wàiguó-rén yào-xué-'Zhōngguó-huà.                                         | Now there are a lot of foreigners who want to study Chinese.                                     |
| 7. Yǒu-hěn-duō-xuésheng zài-nèr-kàn-shū.                                                          | There are a lot of students reading there.                                                       |
| 8. Yǒu-rén-zhǎo 'Wáng-Xiānsheng.                                                                  | There's someone looking for Mr. King.                                                            |
| 9. Méi-yǒu-xiānsheng xǐhuan-nèige-xuésheng.                                                       | There are no teachers who like that student.                                                     |
| 10. Méi-yǒu-rén bù-xǐhuan-chī-Zhōngguó-fàn.                                                       | Everyone likes to eat Chinese food.                                                              |
| 11. Fángzili yǒu-rén-chī-fàn.                                                                     | There are some people eating in the house.                                                       |
| 12. Yǒu-hěn-duō-'Zhōngguó-rén huì-shuō-'Yīngguó-huà.                                              | There are lots of Chinese who can speak English.                                                 |
| 13. Měitiān-yǒu-rén zài-zhèr-chī-fàn.                                                             | Every day there are people eating here.                                                          |
| 14. Xiànzài méi-yǒu-'wàiguó-rén zài-nèige-dàxuéli-niàn-shū.                                       | There aren't any foreigners studying in that college now.                                        |
| 15. Méi-yǒu-rén bù-xǐhuan-'Gāo-Xiānsheng.                                                         | There isn't anyone who doesn't like Mr. Gao.                                                     |
| 16. Tā-kàn-wǒ-chī-fàn.                                                                            | He is watching me eat.                                                                           |
| 17. Nǐ-bu-qǐng 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-chī-fàn-ma? . . . Wǒ-bù-qǐng-Wáng-Xiānsheng. Wó-qǐng-Wáng-Xiǎojie. | Aren't you inviting Mr. Wang to dinner? . . . I'm not inviting Mr. Wang, I'm inviting Miss Wang. |
| 18. Wó-hén-xǐhuan kàn-ta-xiě-Zhōngguó-zì.                                                         | I like very much to watch him write Chinese.                                                     |

19. Qíng-nǐ-kàn wó-xiě-'zhèige-zì.

Please watch me write this character.
20. Tā-zài-'nǎr-chī-fàn? Wó-qǐng-ta zài-'zhèr-chī-fàn.

Where is he eating? I've invited him to eat here.

Pattern 8.3. Compound Descriptive Phrases (Note 1 below)

S	SV	TV
Subject	Stative Verb	Transitive Verb
Zhōngguo zì	nán	xiě.
'Chinese characters are hard to write.'		

1. Zhōngguo-fàn-hǎo-chī.

Chinese food is delicious.
2. Zhōngguo-shū hěn-nán-niàn.

Chinese books are very hard to read.
3. Zhōngguo-huà-nán-shuō.

Chinese is hard to speak.
4. Zhōngguo-zì tài-nán-xiě.

Chinese characters are too hard to write.
5. Zhèiběn-shū róngyi-niàn.

This book is easy to read.
6. Zhōngguo-huà bù-róngyi-xué.

Chinese isn't easy to study.
7. Fángzi-shǎo róngyi-mài, fángzi-duō róngyi-mǎi.

(If) houses are scarce (they) are easy to sell; (if) houses are plentiful they're easy to buy.
8. Zhèiběn-shū hén-shǎo, bù-róngyi-mǎi.

This book is quite rare; it's not easy to buy.
9. Nèige-gōngyuán-hěn-dà, hěn-róngyi-zhǎo.

That park is very large; it's very easy to find.
10. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie hén-hǎo-kàn.

Miss Gao is very pretty.
11. Wó-yǒu 'hén-hǎo-kànde-bǐ.

I have a very pretty pen.
12. Zhèige-fàn bù-hǎo-chī.

This food is unpalatable.
13. Nèige-zì bù-róngyi-xiě.

That character isn't easy to write.
14. Zhèiběn-shū bù-róngyi-niàn.

This book isn't easy to read.
15. Hǎo-kànde shi-wǒde, bù-hǎo-kànde shi-tāde.

The pretty one is mine, the ugly one is his.

## Pattern 8.4. Disjunctive Questions with Stative Verbs (Note 6 below)

<u>shi</u>	N <sub>1</sub>	SV (ne)	<u>háishi</u>	N <sub>2</sub>	SV (ne)
(is)	Noun <sub>1</sub>	Stative Verb	or is	Noun <sub>2</sub>	Stative Verb
Shi	gāngbǐ	hǎo	háishi	máobǐ	hǎo?

'Which is better, a fountain pen or a writing brush?'

<u>shi</u>	V <sub>1</sub>	SV (ne)	<u>háishi</u>	V <sub>2</sub>	SV (ne)
(is)	Verb <sub>1</sub>	Stative Verb	or is	Verb <sub>2</sub>	Stative Verb
Shi	shuō Zhōngguó huà	hǎo	háishi	shuō Yīngguó huà	hǎo?

'Is it better to speak Chinese or to speak English?'

- |                                                                          |                                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. 'Wáng-Xiǎojié-gāo háishi-'Bái-Xiǎojié-gāo?                            | Who is taller, Miss Wang or Miss Bai?                                             |
| 2. Shi-'zhèr-hǎo háishi-'nèr-hǎo?                                        | Which is better, here or there?                                                   |
| 3. 'Zhōngwén-nán shi-'Yīngwén-nán?                                       | Which is harder, Chinese or English?                                              |
| 4. 'Zhōngwén-róngyì háishi-'Yīngwén-róngyì? . . . 'Yīngwén-róngyì.       | Which is easier, Chinese or English? . . . English is easier.                     |
| 5. 'Dōngbiarde-shān-yuǎn háishi-'xībiarde-shān-yuǎn?                     | Which are farther away, the mountains to the east or those to the west?           |
| 6. Zhōngshān-Lù-jìn háishi-túshū-guǎn-jìn?                               | Which is closer, Sun Yatsen Avenue or the library?                                |
| 7. 'Měiguó-rén-duō háishi-'Yīngguó-rén-duō?                              | Which are more numerous, Americans or Englishmen?                                 |
| 8. Shānshàngde-fángzi-hǎo háishi-shānxiàde-fángzi-hǎo?                   | Which is better, a house on a hill or a house at the foot of [lit. below] a hill? |
| 9. Zhèr-'xiānsheng-duō háishi-'tàitai-duō?                               | Which are there more of here, gentlemen or ladies?                                |
| 10. Shi-'zhèige-zìdiǎn-hǎo-ne, shi-'nèige-zìdiǎn-hǎo-ne?                 | Is this or that dictionary better?                                                |
| 11. Shi-'hóng-mòshuǐ-hǎo háishi-'lán-mòshuǐ-hǎo?                         | Which is better, red ink or blue ink?                                             |
| 12. 'Zhèige-túshūguǎn-hǎo háishi-'nèige-túshūguǎn-hǎo?                   | Which is better, this library or that library?                                    |
| 13. Chéng-'lǐtode-rén-duō háishi-chéng-'wàitode-rén-duō?                 | Are there more people inside the city or outside the city?                        |
| 14. Shi-'zhèitiáo-lù-hǎo shi-'nèitiáo-lù-hǎo? . . . Shi-'nèitiáo-lù-hǎo. | Which is better, this road or that road? . . . That road is better.               |

15. Yǒu-péngyou-hǎo háishi-'méi-yǒu-péngyou-hǎo?	Which is better, to have friends or not to have friends?
16. Yǒu-qián-hǎo háishi-'méi-yǒu-qián-hǎo?	Which is better, to have money or not to have money?
17. Niàn-shū-hǎo háishi-'bù-niàn-shū-hǎo?	Which is better, to study or not to study?
18. Shi-'jiè-shū-hǎo-ne, háishi-'mǎi-shū-hǎo-ne?	Which is better, to borrow books or to buy books?
19. 'Qīdiǎn-zhōng-chī-fàn-hǎo háishi-'bādiǎn-zhōng-chī-fàn-hǎo?	Is it better to eat at seven o'clock or at eight o'clock?
20. Xiě-'Zhōngguo-zì-róngyǐ háishi-xiě-'Yīngguo-zì-róngyǐ?	Is it easier to write Chinese or English?
21. Shi-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn-jiǎndān háishi-chī-'wàiguó-fàn-jiǎndān?	Is it simpler to eat Chinese food or to eat foreign food?
22. 'Zhèrde-fángzi-shǎo háishi-'nèrde-fángzi-shǎo?	Are houses here scarcer than houses there?
23. Shi-'Yīngguo-rén-shǎo háishi-'Měiguó-rén-shǎo?	Which are there fewer of, Englishmen or Americans?
24. Shi-kàn-'péngyou-hǎo háishi-niàn-'shū-hǎo? . . . Wó-xiǎng háishi-niàn-shū-hǎo.	Which is better, to see friends or to study? . . . I think it's better to study.
25. Wǒ-bù-zhīdào shi-zài-'jiā-niàn-shū-hǎo háishi-zài-'túshūguǎn-niàn-shū-hǎo-ne? . . . Háishi-zài-'túshūguǎn-niàn-shū-hǎo.	I don't know whether it's better to study at home or at the library. . . . It's better to study at the library.

SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 20 phrases (Notes 4, 7 b)

yì	-lǐ	—	lù
èr		duō	
sān			
.			
.			
.			
shí			

II: 18 phrases (Notes 4, 7 b)

—	shi	—	lǐ	lù
èr		duō		
sān				
.				
.				
.				
jiǔ				

## III: 72 sentences (Notes 4, 7b)

dà-fángzi	lí	Zhōngshān-Lù	—	yì	-lǐ	—	lù
wǒ-jiā		gōngyuán	yǒu	èr		duō	
dàxué		túshūguǎn					

## IV: 80 sentences (Notes 3, 5)

Húnán	lí	zhèr	duó	yuǎn
Húběi		nèr	duómo	jìn
Shāndong			hěn	
Shānxī			bu	
			tài	

## V: 36 sentences (Note 2)

—	yǒu	xiānsheng	kàn-shū	—
méi		xuésheng	chī-fàn	ma
		rén	mǎi-shū	

## VI: 72 sentences (Note 6)

—	wǒ	*			*
shì	nǐ	hǎo	shì	xiānsheng	hǎo
		gāo	háishi	tàitai	gāo
		dà		tā	dà

(The asterisk \* indicates that the same word must be chosen from both columns.)

## x PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

I. The ü - ü Contrast

(See The Sounds of Chinese, 19)

(a) wū	yū	(e) nǚ	nǚ	(i) zhū	jū
(b) wú	yú	(f) lú	lǔ	(j) zhú	jú
(c) wǔ	yǔ	(g) lǚ	lǔ	(k) zhǔ	jǔ
(d) wù	yù	(h) lù	lǔ	(l) zhù	jù
(m) chū	qū	(q) shū	xū		
(n) chú	qú	(r) shú	xú		
(o) chǔ	qǔ	(s) shǔ	xǔ		
(p) chù	qù	(t) shù	xù		

II. The un - ün Contrast  
(See The Sounds of Chinese, 19)

- (a) wén yún

(b) wěn yǔn

(c) wèn yùn
- (d) zhūn jūn

(e) chún qún

(f) shùn xùn

III. The uan - üan Contrast  
(See The Sounds of Chinese, 19)

- (a) wán yuán

(b) luǎn lǚǎn

(c) zhuān juān

(d) zhuǎn juǎn

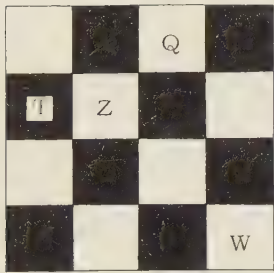
(e) zhuàn juàn
- (f) chuān quān

(g) chuǎn quǎn

(h) chuàn quàn

(i) shuān xuān

CHECKERBOARD PROBLEM



Suppose the accompanying figure represents a city laid out in a checkerboard pattern, in squares measuring one Chinese mile on each side. The white squares are residential blocks, while the black squares contain business establishments and public institutions, such as the library (T). In the blocks indicated by initials are residences occupied by Mr. Zhang, Mr. Wang, and Mr. Qian.

Answer the following questions based on straight-line distances (not diagonals) between the library and the residences, and between pairs of residences.

1. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-túshūguǎn 'jílǐ-lù?
2. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-túshūguǎn 'duó-yuǎn?
3. Qián-jia-lí-Wáng-jia yǒu-'duó-yuǎn?
4. Túshūguǎn-lí-Qián-jia èrlǐ-lù. 'Duì-bu-duì?
5. 'Shéide-jiā lí-túshūguǎn yǒu-'sānlǐ-lù?
6. Qíng-nǐ-shuō, 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā 'duōshao-lǐ-lù?
7. Túshūguǎn lí-'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā yǒu-'duó-yuǎn?
8. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā yǒu-'duó-yuǎn?
9. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-jiā yǒu-'duó-yuǎn?



10. Nǐ-shuō, túshūguǎn lí-'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-jiā 'jǐlǐ-lù?
11. 'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-jiā yóu-'jǐlǐ-lù?
12. Túshūguǎn lí-'shéi-jiā-jìn, lí-'shéi-jiā-yuǎn?
13. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā-jìn-ne, háishi-lí-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiā-jìn?
14. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-túshūguǎn-yuǎn háishi-lí-'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā-yuǎn?
15. Túshūguǎn lí-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiā 'duōshao-lǐ-lù?

## NOTES

1. Compound descriptive phrases are formed by using a stative verb before a transitive verb:

hǎo-chī 'good to eat, tasty'  
róngyi-xiě 'easy to write'

2. Note the following types of sentences which we have already encountered:

- (a) A full sentence used as the object of the verb shuō 'say,' as:

Tā-shuō 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-zài-jiā. 'He says (that) Mr. King is at home.'

Here shuō introduces the full sentence 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-zài-jiā 'Mr. Wang is at home.' Tā is the subject of shuō and 'Wáng-Xiānsheng is the subject of zài.

- (b) A sentence with a noun in the middle serving a double function, as:

Tā-qǐng-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-chī-fàn. 'He is inviting Mr. King to dinner.'

This can be split into two sentences: Tā-qǐng-'Wáng-Xiānsheng 'He is inviting Mr. King' and 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-chī-fàn 'Mr. King eats.' The noun phrase 'Wáng-Xiānsheng serves double duty as the object of qǐng 'invite' and as the subject of chī-fàn 'eat.' A very frequent occurrence of this type of sharing is with the verb yǒu 'there is' or 'there are': Yǒu-rén-zhǎo-ni 'There's someone looking for you'—with rén 'person' as the pivotal noun.

3. Separation of one place from another is expressed with the coverb lí '(separated) from' in sentences on this pattern: S lí P yuǎn 'S is separated from P far'—that is, 'S is far from P.' Qualifying adverbs, if any, are placed before the stative verb:

Wǒ-jiā lí-túshūguǎn hěn-jìn. 'My home is very close to the library.'

4. Expressing the distance separating one place from another involves the use of three elements: (1) the coverb lí 'from'; (2) a measure of distance (e.g. lǐ '[Chinese] mile'); and (3) the noun lù 'road':

Wǒ-jiā lí-túshūguǎn sānlǐ-lù. 'My home is three miles from the library.'

The verb yǒu may be inserted before the expression for distance:

Wǒ-jiā lí-túshūguǎn yǒu-sānlǐ-lù.

5. Questions about distance are asked in the following ways:

S lí P yuǎn-ma? 'Is S far from P?'

S lí P 'yuǎn-bu-yuǎn? 'Is S far from P?'

S lí P (yǒu) 'duó-yuǎn? 'How far is S from P?'

S lí P (yǒu) 'duómo-yuǎn? 'How far is S from P?'

S lí P (yǒu) 'jǐlǐ-lù? 'How many miles is S from P?'

S lí P (yǒu) 'duōshao-lǐ-lù? 'How many miles is S from P?'

6. Disjunctive questions with stative verbs (e.g. 'Which is better, A or B?') are usually expressed by stating the alternatives, often with shì before the first alternative and shì or háishi before the second. A and B are either noun expressions or verb expressions. Examples:

Shì-'zhèige-hǎo shì-'nèige-hǎo?	} 'Which is better, this or that?'
Shì-'zhèige-hǎo háishi-'nèige-hǎo?	
	[lit. Is this good (or) is that good?]

Shì-'qǐng-ta-hǎo háishi-'bù-qǐng-ta-hǎo? 'Is it better to invite him or not to invite him?

In the answer, one alternative or the other is selected, with or without shì or (for greater emphasis) háishi. For example:

'Zhèige-hǎo. 'This is better.'

Shì-'nèige-hǎo. 'That is better.'

Háishi-'zhèige-hǎo. 'This is better.'

Háishi-'qǐng-ta-hǎo. 'It would be better to invite him.'

Note that Zhèige-hǎo out of context might be ambiguous. Context will determine whether it is to be interpreted as 'This is good' or 'This is better.'

7. Note the distinctions in tone and in usage between duō and duó:

(a) duō is a stative verb which is used as a predicate:

Wǒde-qián-bù-duō. 'My money isn't much'—that is, 'I don't have very much money.'

This construction is much more common than the word-for-word equivalent with the natural English corresponding to it (that is, 'I don't have very much money'). Similarly with shǎo 'few, little':

Wǒde-qián hén-shǎo. 'I have very little money.'

(b) duō is used in the sense of '-odd' or 'and a little more.' With the numbers from one to ten, it comes right after the measure:

yíkuài-duō-qián 'one dollar and a little more'

shíkuài-duō-qián 'ten-odd dollars'

With ten and multiples of ten (twenty, thirty, etc., to ninety), duō is placed just before the measure:

shí-duō-kuài-qián 'ten-odd dollars'

èrshí-duō-kuài-qián 'twenty-odd dollars'

jiǔshí-duō-kuài-qián 'ninety-odd dollars'

With shí 'ten,' thus, there is a choice of two positions.

- (c) duó (or duómo) is an adverb used before a stative verb to ask a question involving degree:

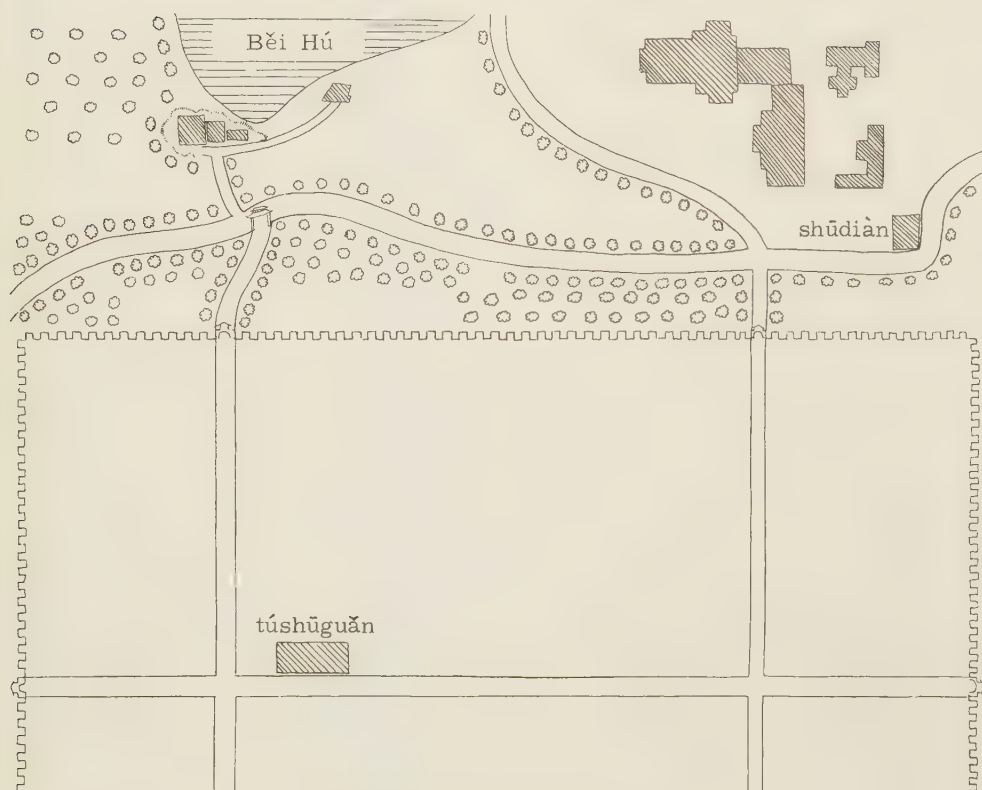
Nèige-běnzǐ-'duó-dà? 'How big is that notebook?'

8. The words néng, huì, and kéyǐ all mean 'can,' though sometimes in various senses, as follows:

- (a) néng refers to a physical ability and might therefore be used in the sense of 'be able to' or 'strong enough to';  
(b) huì refers to an acquired ability and might therefore be translated as 'know how to';  
(c) kéyǐ asks for or grants permission, like 'may.'

These distinctions are by no means rigidly adhered to, however, just as 'can' and 'may' are often used interchangeably in English; néng and huì in particular are apt to fall together.

## Lesson 9 ASKING DIRECTIONS



"Cóng-shūdiàn dào-túshūguǎn 'zěnmó-zǒu?"

Dialogue: Mr. White asks how to get to the library and to Mr. Gao's home.

'Bái-Xiānshèng-xiǎng 'xiān-dào-túshū-  
guǎn, 'hòu-dào-Gāo-Xiānshèng-jia-qu.  
Tā-wèn-'Máo-Xiānshèng túshūguǎn-zài  
nǎr, 'zěnmó-zǒu, cóng-túshūguǎn dào-  
Gāo-Xiānshèng-jia 'zěnmó-zǒu. 5

Bái : Wǒ-hái-yào-wèn-ni, cóng-shū-  
diàn dào-túshūguǎn 'zěnmó-  
zǒu?

Máo: Nín-cóng-zhèr wàng-nán-yì-  
zhíde-zǒu, wàng-xī-guǎi, 10  
guò-báge-lù-kǒu, jiù-shi-  
túshūguǎn.

Mr. White plans to go to the li-  
brary first and then to Mr. Gao's  
home. He asks Mr. Mao where  
the library is, how to get there,  
and how to go from the library to  
Mr. Gao's home.

I'd also like to ask you, how do I  
get from the bookstore to the li-  
brary?

You go straight south from here,  
turn west, pass eight intersec-  
tions, and there's the library.

- Bái : Cóng-zhèr-dào-túshūguǎn-nèr  
yǒu-'shénmo-chē-kéyì-zuò-ne?
- Máo: Gōnggòng-qìchē diànchē 'dōu- 15  
yǒu. Nín-xiǎng-zuò 'shénmo-  
chē-ne?
- Bái : Wó-xiǎng-zuò gōnggòng-qì-  
chē-qu. Gōnggòng-qìchē-zhàn  
zài-nǎr? 20
- Máo: Lí-shūdiàn-bù-yuǎn. Nín-  
cóng-zhèr wàng-xī-zǒu, guò-  
yíge-lù-kǒur, jiù-shì-gōng-  
gòng-qìchē-zhàn.
- Bái : Zuò-'jǐhào-chē-ne? 25
- Máo: Zuò-'sānhào-chē. Yìzhíde-  
jiù-dào-túshūguǎn.
- Bái : Cóng-túshūguǎn dào-'Gāo-  
Xiānsheng-jiā 'zěnmó-zǒu?  
Yǒu-gōnggòng-qìchē-ma? 30
- Máo: Yǒu. Nín-cóng-túshūguǎn  
wàng-xī-zǒu, guò-liǎngge-  
lù-kǒur, jiù-shì-gōnggòng-  
qìchē-zhàn. Nín-shàng-chē  
dào-Zhōngshān-Lù. Zài-  
gōngyuán-mén-kǒur-xià-chē,  
shàng-xiǎo-shān, jiù-shì-  
'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā. 35
- Bái : Zuò-'jǐhào-chē-ne?
- Máo: Nín-zuò-'jiǔhào-chē, 'liù-  
hào-chē 'dōu-kéyì. 40
- Bái : Xièxie-ni.
- Máo: Nín-míngtiān 'lái-bu-lái?
- Bái : Huòzhě wǒ-míngtiān 'hái-  
lái-mǎi-shū. 45
- Máo: Míngtiān-jiàn.

From here to the library what  
car can I take?

There are both busses and  
streetcars. What would you like  
to take?

I'd like to go by bus. Where's  
the bus stop?

Not far from the bookstore. You  
go west from here, pass one in-  
tersection, and you're at the bus  
stop.

What number bus do I take?

Take a No. 3 bus. It goes di-  
rectly to the library.

How do I go from the library to  
Mr. Gao's home? Is there a  
bus?

There is. You go west from the  
library, pass two intersections,  
and there's the bus stop. You  
get on the bus and go to Sun Yat-  
sen Avenue. Get off the bus at  
the park gate, go up the little  
hill, and you come to Mr. Gao's  
home.

What number bus do I take?

You can take either a No. 9 or a  
No. 6 bus.

Thanks.

Are you coming tomorrow?

Perhaps I'll come again tomor-  
row to buy some books.

See you tomorrow.

## VOCABULARY

chē	vehicle (N)
cóng	from (CV)
dào	go to (TV) arrive (at) (IV) to (CV)
diànchē	streetcar (N)

guò	pass (TV)
guǎi	turn (IV)
gōnggòng	public
hào	number (M)
hòu	afterwards (AD)
huòzhě	perhaps (MA)
kǒu, kǒur	mouth, opening (N)
lái	come (IV)
mén	door, gate (N)
míngtiān	tomorrow (TW)
qìchē	motor vehicle (N)
qù	go (IV)
shàng	ascend; go to (TV) to (CV)
shūdiàn	bookstore (N)
wàng, wǎng	toward (CV)
xià	descend (TV)
xiān	first (AD)
yìzhí(de)	straight (AD)
zài	again (AD)
zěnmó	how? how come (that . . .)? (AD)
zhàn	stop, station (N)
zǒu	walk, travel, depart, go (V)
zuò	ride (on a vehicle) (TV) by means of (a vehicle) (CV)

SENTENCE BUILD-UP

lái 'lái-bu-lái?	come come or not?
1. Tā-jīntiān 'lái-bu-lái?	Is he coming today?
qù 'shídiǎn-zhōng-qù	go go at ten o'clock
2. Wó-xiǎng 'shídiǎn-zhōng-qù.	I plan to go at ten o'clock.
dào 'shénmo-shíhou-dào?	arrive (at a place) arrive at what time?
3. 'Bái-Xiānsheng 'shénmo-shíhou-dào?	When will Mr. White arrive?

- dào  
dào-túshūguǎn  
4. Nǐ-'shénmo-shíhou dào-  
túshūguǎn?

- shūdiàn  
dào-shūdiàn  
5. Nǐ-'shénmo-shíhou dào-shū-  
diàn?

- dào  
dào-shūdiàn-lái  
6. Qǐng-nín 'sìdiàn-zhōng-dào-  
shūdiàn-lái.

- dào  
dào-shūdiàn-qu  
7. Nǐ-'shénmo-shíhou dào-  
shūdiàn-qu?

- míngtiān  
míngtiān-wǎnshàng  
8. Tā-míngtiān-wǎnshàng dào-  
nèr-qu.

- wǒ-míngtiān-lái  
mǎi-shū  
9. Wǒ-míngtiān-lái-mǎi-shū.

- wǒ-míngtiān-mǎi-shū  
10. Wǒ-míngtiān-mǎi-shū-lai.

- dào-shūdiàn-qu  
mǎi-shū  
11. Wǒ-dào-shūdiàn-qu mǎi-  
shū.

- cóng-Yīngguó-lái  
12. Tā-míngtiān cóng-Yīngguó-  
lái.

- cóng-Yīngguó  
dào-Zhōngguó  
13. Cóng-Yīngguó-dào-Zhōngguó  
'duó-yuǎn?

- zěnmó?  
'zěnmó-shuō?  
14. Zhèige 'Zhōngguó-huà-zěnmó-  
shuō?

go to a place  
go to the library  
When are you going to the libra-  
ry?

bookstore  
go to the bookstore  
When are you going to the book-  
store?

to (a place)  
come to the bookstore  
Please come to the bookstore at  
four o'clock.

to (a place)  
go to the bookstore  
When are you going to the book-  
store?

tomorrow  
tomorrow evening  
He will go there tomorrow.

I'll come tomorrow  
buy books  
I'll come tomorrow to buy some  
books.

I'll buy some books tomor-  
row  
I'll come tomorrow to buy some  
books.

go to the bookstore  
buy books  
I'm going to the bookstore to buy  
some books.

come from England  
He will come from England to-  
morrow.

from England  
to China  
How far is it from England to  
China?

how?  
say how?  
How does one say this in Chi-  
nese?



zǒu

'zěnmō-zǒu

15. Dào-shūdiàn 'zěnmō-zǒu?

zǒu

zǒu-lù

16. Wó-hén-xǐhuan-zǒu-lù.

sānlǐ-lù

zǒu-sānlǐ-lù

17. Wó-měitiān zǒu-sānlǐ-lù.

wàng

wàng-xī

18. Wàng-xī-zǒu-ba!

wàng-dōng-zǒu

bānlǐ-lù

19. Wàng-dōng-zǒu bānlǐ-lù.

guǎi

wàng-nán-guǎi

20. Bú-yào-wàng-nán-guǎi.

chē

'shénmō-chē

21. Zhèi-shi-'shénmō-chē?

chē

qìchē

22. Zhèi-bú-shi-'Zhōngguó-qì-chē.

diànchē

23. Zhèr-yǒu-diànchē-ma?

gōnggòng

gōnggòng-qìchē

24. Zhèr-'méi-yǒu-gōnggòng-qìchē.

zuò

zuò-diànchē

25. Wǒ-'bù-xǐhuan zuò-diànchē.

zuò-diànchē

zuò-'diànchē-lái

26. Qǐng-nín-zuò-'diànchē-lái.

shàng

shàng-chē

27. Wǒ-zài-'nǎr-shàng-chē?

walk, travel, depart

how does one go?

How do you get to the bookstore?

travel

walk (along a road)

I like walking very much.

three miles

walk three miles

I walk three miles every day.

toward

toward the west

Go west!

go east

eight miles

Go east for eight miles.

turn

turn toward the south

Don't turn south.

vehicle

what vehicle?

What vehicle is this?

vehicle

motor vehicle

This is not a Chinese car.

streetcar

Are there streetcars here?

public

bus

There are no busses here.

ride (on a vehicle)

ride a streetcar

I don't like to ride streetcars.

ride a streetcar

come by streetcar

Please come by streetcar.

ascend, get on

board a car

Where do I board the car?

- xià  
xià-shān  
28. Tāmen-jīntian xià-shān-ma?
- xiān  
'xiān-niàn-shū  
29. Wó-xiǎng 'xiān-niàn-shū.
- hòu  
hòu-kàn-péngyou  
30. Wǒ-'xiān-niàn-shū, 'hòu-kàn-péngyou.
- zài  
'zài-shuō  
31. Qǐng-nín-'zài-shuō.
- mén  
chéng-mén  
32. Wǒ-jiā lí-chéng-mén-hěn-jìn.
- kǒur  
mén-kǒur  
33. Mén-kǒur bù-róngyi-zhǎo.
- lù-kǒur  
lí-lù-kǒur-bù-yuǎn  
34. Shūdiàn lí-lù-kǒur-bù-yuǎn.
- guò  
guò-lù-kǒur  
35. Nǐ-xiān-guò sānge-lù-kǒur.
- zhàn  
diànchē-zhàn  
36. Qǐng-wèn, diànchē-'zhàn-zài-nǎr?
- yì zhí  
yì zhí-wàng-běi  
37. Nǐ-yì zhí wàng-béi-zǒu.
- hào  
bāhào-chē  
38. Xiān-zuò-'bāhào-chē.
- huòzhě  
huòzhě-'bù-néng-qù  
39. Tā-míngtian huòzhě-'bù-néng-qù.

descend, get off  
descend the mountain  
Are they descending the mountain today?

first  
first study  
I plan to study first.

afterwards  
afterwards see friends  
I'll study first, and see friends afterwards.

again  
say again  
Please repeat.

door, gate  
city gate  
My home is very close to the city gate.

opening  
doorway, gateway  
The doorway isn't easy to find.

street intersection  
not far from the intersection  
The bookstore is not far from the intersection.

pass  
pass an intersection  
First you pass three intersections.

stop, station  
streetcar stop  
May I ask, where is the streetcar stop?

straight  
straight toward the north  
Go straight north.

number  
Number Eight car  
First take car No. 8.

perhaps  
perhaps can't go  
Perhaps he can't go tomorrow.

- yǒu-'shénmo-xuésheng?  
kéyi-zài-zhèr-niàn-shū

40. Yǒu-'shénmo-xuésheng kéyi-  
zài-'zhèr-niàn-shū?
- yǒu-'shénmo-fàn?  
kéyi-chī

41. Yǒu-'shénmo-fàn kéyi-chī?
- yǒu-'shénmo-chē?  
kéyi-zuò

42. Yǒu-'shénmo-chē kéyi-zuò?
- what students are there?  
can study here

What students [are there who]  
can study here?
- what food is there?  
can eat

What food is there to eat?
- what car is there?  
it is possible to ride

What car can you take?

PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 9.1. Motion to a Place (Note 1 below)

S	<u>dào</u>	P	<u>lái/qu</u>
Subject	to	Place	come/go
Wǒ	dào	shūdiàn	qu.

'I'm going to the bookstore.'

1. Tā-dào-'Měiguo-lái.

2. Tā-dào-'Měiguo-qu.

3. Tā-dào-nǎr-qu?

4. 'Qián-Xiānsheng 'bú-dào-Měiguo-lái.

5. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng dào-shū-diàn-qu-ma?

6. Jīntian-wǎnshang 'Máo-Xiānsheng dào-túshūguǎn-qu.

7. Tā-dào-wǒ-jia-lái.

8. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie dào-Wáng-jia-qu.

9. Wǒ-míngtian bú-dào-'Bái-Xiānsheng-jia-qu.

10. Wǒ-dào-'wàitou-qu, tā-dào-'lǐtou-lái.

11. Tā-xǐhuan dào-'shūdiàn-lái-ma?

12. 'Qián-Xiānsheng dào-Húběi-qu, 'Gāo-Xiānsheng dào-Húnán-lái.
- He is coming to America.

He is going to America.

Where is he going?

Mr. Qian isn't coming to America.

Is Mr. King going to the bookstore?

This evening Mr. Mao is going to the library.

He's coming to my home.

Miss Gao is going to the King home.

I'm not going to Mr. White's home tomorrow.

I'm going outside, he's coming inside.

Does he like to come to the bookstore?

Mr. Qian is going to Hupeh, Mr. Gao is coming to Hunan.

13. Jīntian-wǎnshang nǐ-dào-  
'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā-qu-ma? Are you going to Mr. Gao's home  
this evening?
14. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng 'hén-xǐhuan-  
dào-zhèr-lái. Mr. Gao likes coming here very  
much.
15. Wǒ-míngtian dào-chéng-lǐtou-  
qu. I'm going into town tomorrow.

Pattern 9.2. Purpose with lái and qù (Note 6 below)

Pattern 9.2 a.

S	<u>qù</u>	V	O
Subject	go	Verb	Object
Wǒ	qù	kàn	péngyou.
'I'm going (in order) to see some friends.'			

Pattern 9.2 b.

S	V	O	<u>qu</u>
Subject	Verb	Object	go
Wǒ	kàn	péngyou	qu.
'I'm going (in order) to see some friends.'			

- |                                         |                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Wǒ-lái-zhǎo-'Wáng-Xiānsheng.         | I've come to find Mr. King.                                |
| 2. Wǒ-jīntian 'bù-qù-mǎi-shū.           | I'm not going (to some place or other) to buy books today. |
| 3. Tā-qù-niàn-shū.                      | He's going (somewhere) to study.                           |
| 4. Wǒ-'bù-qù-mǎi-qiānbǐ.                | I'm not going (there) to buy pencils.                      |
| 5. Tā-lái-mǎi-shénmo?                   | What's he come to buy?                                     |
| 6. Tā-jīntian 'bù-kàn-shū-qu.           | He's not going (there) today to read.                      |
| 7. Wǒ-míngtian jiè-shū-lái.             | I'll come tomorrow to take out some books.                 |
| 8. Wǒ-xiáng-mǎi-shū-qu.                 | I plan to go and buy some books.                           |
| 9. Tā-jīntian lái-jiè-shū-ma?           | Is he coming today to borrow the books?                    |
| 10. Wǒ-xǐhuan dào-túshūguǎn kàn-shū-qu. | I like going to the library to read.                       |
| 11. Wǒ-míngtian 'hái-lái-mǎi-shū.       | I'll come again tomorrow to buy some books.                |
| 12. Tā-'bù-dào-shūdiàn mǎi-zìdiǎn-qu.   | He's not going to the bookstore to buy a dictionary.       |

13. Ní-'yé-xǐhuan dào-túshūguǎn-qu kàn-shū-ma?

Do you also like going to the library to read?
14. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie méi-yǒu-'lán-mòshuǐ.

Miss Gao doesn't have any blue ink.
15. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng méi-yǒu-bēnzi. Tā-jīntian-bù-qu-mǎi-ma?

Mr. King doesn't have a notebook. Isn't he going to buy one today?
16. 'Bái-Xiānsheng méi-yǒu-Zhōngwén-shū. Tā-jīntian-lái-jie.

Mr. White doesn't have any Chinese books. He's coming today to borrow (some).
17. Wǒ-qù-chéng-wàitou kàn-péngyou.

I'm going outside the city to see some friends.
18. Tā-bù-dào-Yīngguo-qu niàn-shū.

He's not going to England to study.
19. Tā-dào-'Měiguó-lái niàn-shū-ma?

Is he coming to America to study?
20. Xiànzài 'jídīǎn-zhōng? Wǒ-qu-kàn-péngyou.

What time is it now? I'm going to see some friends.

Pattern 9.3. Motion To and From Places (Notes 2-3 below)

Pattern 9.3 a.

S	<u>cóng</u>	P	<u>lái</u>
Subject	from	Place	come
Tā	cóng	Měiguó	lái.
'He is coming from America.'			

Pattern 9.3 b.

S	<u>cóng</u>	P <sub>1</sub>	<u>dào</u>	P <sub>2</sub>	<u>lái</u>
Subject	from	P <sub>1</sub>	to	P <sub>2</sub>	come
Tā	cóng	Měiguó	dào	Zhōngguó	lái.
'He is coming to China from America.'					

1. Nǐ-cóng-'nǎr-lái?

Where are you coming from?
2. Nǐ-cóng-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā-lái-ma?

Are you coming from Mr. Gao's house?
3. Tā-cóng-'Yīngguó-lái-ma?

Is he coming from England?
4. Wǒ-cóng-'dàxué-lái.

I'm coming from the university.
5. 'Qián-Xiānsheng míngtiān-'wú-diǎn-zhōng cóng-'Měiguó-lái.

Mr. Qian will come from America tomorrow at 5:00.

- |                                                                      |                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 6. Wǒ-cóng-nèr dào-túshūguǎn-qu.                                     | I'm going to the library from there.                     |
| 7. 'Máo-Tàitai cóng-túshūguǎn dào-gōngyuán-qu.                       | Mrs. Mao is going from the library to the park.          |
| 8. 'Máo-Xiānsheng jīntian-sìdiǎn-zhōng cóng-túshūguǎn dào-'zhèr-lái. | Mr. Mao will come here from the library today at 4:00.   |
| 9. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng cóng-Měiguó-dào-Yīngguó-qu.                      | Mr. Johnson is going from America to England.            |
| 10. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng cóng-'Máo-Xiānsheng-jia dào-túshūguǎn-qu.         | Mr. Gao is going from Mr. Mao's home to the library.     |
| 11. 'Qián-Xiānsheng cóng-'nǎr-lái? Dào-'nǎr-qù?                      | Where is Mr. Qian coming from? Where is he going?        |
| 12. Cóng-zhèr-dào-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jia 'zěnmò-qù?                      | How does one go from here to Mr. Gao's home?             |
| 13. Nǐ-cóng-zhèr-dào-tā-jia 'zěnmò-qù?                               | How are you going from here to his home?                 |
| 14. Tāmen-bù-cóng-tā-ner dào-'zhèr-lái-ma?                           | Aren't they coming here from his place there?            |
| 15. 'Gāo-Tàitai-yǒu-péngyou cóng-Měiguó-dào-'Zhōngguó-lái-ma?        | Does Mrs. Gao have friends coming from America to China? |
| 16. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-bù-cóng-shū-diàn dào-túshūguǎn-qu.                | Mr. Mao isn't going to the library from the bookstore.   |
| 17. Cóng-zhèr-dào-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jia 'zěnmò-zǒu?                     | How do you get from here to Mr. Gao's home?              |
| 18. Cóng-nǐ-nèr dào-túshūguǎn 'zěnmò-zǒu?                            | How does one get from your place there to the library?   |
| 19. Tāmen-dōu-cóng-zhèr dào-gōngyuán-qu-ma?                          | Are they all going from here to the park?                |
| 20. Cóng-chéng-lǐtōu dào-chéng-wàitōu 'zěnmò-qù?                     | How do you get from inside the city to outside the city? |

## Pattern 9.4. Motion Toward a Place (Note 4 below)

wàng	P	zǒu
toward	Place	go
Wàng	nán	zǒu.
'Go south!'		

- |                                  |                               |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Cóng-shūdiàn wàng-zuó-guǎi.   | From the bookstore turn left. |
| 2. Cóng-túshūguǎn wàng-yòu-guǎi. | Turn right at the library.    |

3. Cóng-Zhōngshān-Lù wàng-xī-guǎi.

From Sun Yatsen Avenue turn west.
4. Cóng-zhèr wàng-xī-zǒu.

Go west from here.
5. Cóng-'Máo-Xiānsheng-jīa wàng-béi-zǒu.

Go north from Mr. Mao's home.
6. Wàng-'dōng-guǎi hái-shì-wàng-'xī-guǎi?

Does one turn east or west?
7. Cóng-nǎr wàng-dōng-zǒu?

From where do you go east?
8. Cóng-zhèr wàng-dōng-zǒu.

Go east from here.
9. Cóng-zhèr-dào-shūdiàn wàng-béi-zǒu.

Go north from here to the book-store.
10. Cóng-zhèr-dào-túshūguǎn-qu, wàng-béi-guǎi.

To go from here to the library, turn north.

Pattern 9.5. Coverb of Conveyance (Note 5 below)

(S)	<u>zuò</u>	N	<u>qù</u>
(Subject)	by	Noun	go
Wǒ	zuò	chē	qù.
'I go by car.'			

1. Zuò-'diànchē-lái.

Come by streetcar.
2. Tā-jīntian zuò-'gōnggòng-qìchē-lái.

He's coming by bus today.
3. Nǐ-míngtian zuò-'shénmo-chē-qù?

What sort of vehicle are you taking tomorrow?
4. 'Bái-Xiáojie bú-zuò-'qìchē-lái-ma?

Isn't Miss Bai coming by automobile?
5. Nǐmen dōu-zuò-'gōnggòng-qìchē-qu.

All of you go by bus.
6. Wǒ-cóng-gōngyuán zuò-qìchē-qu.

I'm taking a car from the park.
7. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng zuò-gōnggòng-qìchē dào-túshūguǎn-lái.

Mr. Gao is coming to the library by bus.
8. Wó-xiǎng-cóng-zhèr zuò-diànchē dào-Gāo-jia-qu.

I plan to go by streetcar to the Gao home from here.
9. Nǐmen-cóng-zhèr dōu-zuò-qìchē dào-gōngyuán-qu-ma?

Are you all going from here to the park by car?
10. Wǒ-cóng-Gāo-jia zuò-diànchē dào-túshūguǎn-qu.

I'm going from the Gao home to the library by streetcar.



## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 72 sentences (Note 1)

wǒ	dào	túshūguǎn	lái
nǐ		gōngyuán	qù
tā		dàxué	
shéi		shūdiàn	

II: 64 sentences (Note 1)

tā	shénmo-shíhou	dào	túshūguǎn	lai
tāmen	míngtiān		gōngyuán	qu
	wǎnshang		dàxué	
	sāndiǎn-zhōng		shūdiàn	

III: 72 sentences (Note 6)

(The asterisk \* indicates positions in either of which lái or qù may be used.)

wǒ	—	*		*
nǐ	men	lái	kàn-'Gāo-Xiānsheng	lái
tā		qù	zhǎo-péngyou	qù
			mǎi-dìtú	

IV: 72 sentences (Note 6)

(The asterisk \* indicates that only words on the same line may be selected from these two columns.)

		*		*
wǒ	dào	túshūguǎn	lái	jiè-shū
nǐ		shūdiàn	qù	mǎi-dìtú
tā		Gāo-jia		kàn-'Gāo-Xiānsheng
wǒmen		gōngyuán		zhǎo-péngyou
nǐmen		dàxué		niàn-shū
tāmen		túshūguǎn		kàn-shū

V: 72 sentences (Note 2)

wǒ	cóng	túshūguǎn	lái	—
nǐ		gōngyuán	zǒu	ma?
tā		dàxué		
		shūdiàn		
		nèr		
		Dōngběi		

VI: 64 sentences (Note 3)

cóng	zhèr	dào	túshūguǎn	'zěnmò-zǒu?
	nèr		gōngyuán	yǒu-sānlǐ-lù
	tā-jia		dàxué	'duó-yuǎn?
	Wáng-jia		shūdiàn	yóu-'jílǐ-lù?

## VII: 70 sentences (Note 4)

cóng	túshūguǎn	wàng	dōng	zǒu
	gōngyuán		xī	guǎi
	dàxué		nán	
	shūdiàn		béi	
	Wáng-jia		yòu	
			zuó	
			nár	

## VIII: 72 sentences (Note 5)

wǒ	zuò	chē	_____
nǐ		qìchē	lái
tā		diànchē	qù
		gōnggòng-qìchē	dào-shūdiàn
		shénmo-chē	
		tāde-chē	

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## I. Contrast of "i" after Retroflexes and "i" after Sibilants

(a) zhī zī	(d) zhì zì
(b) chí cí	(e) chì cì
(c) shǐ sǐ	(f) shì sì

II. Contrast of "i" and i

(a) zhī jī	(d) zī jī
(b) chí qí	(e) cí qí
(c) shī xī	(f) sī xī

## JUST THE OPPOSITE

Change each of the following sentences to a sentence of opposite meaning by substituting one new word. For example, change Wàng-zuǒbiar-zǒu 'Go toward the left' to Wàng-yòubiār-zǒu 'Go toward the right.'

1. Cóng-zhèr wàng-běibiār-guǎi.
2. Tā-míngtian dào-shūdiàn-lái.
3. Wǒ-zài-'nǎr-shàng-chē?
4. Wó-xiǎng-'xiān-kàn-shū.
5. Wǒmen-túshūguǎnde-shū hěn-duō.

6. Dàxué-lí-zhèr hén-yuǎn.
7. Tāmen-dōu-zài-lǐtou chī-fàn.
8. Zhège-běnzǐ bú-tài-xiǎo-ma?
9. 'Yīngguo-huà hěn-róngyì-xué.
10. Fángzi-qiántou méi-yǒu-rén.

### TAKE YOUR PICK

Answer each of the following questions by choosing one of the two alternatives. For example: Tā-zài-zhèr-'shàng-chē háishi-'xià-chē? 'Does he get on or off the car here?' can be answered by either Tā-zài-zhèr-'shàng-chē 'He gets on the car here' or Tā-zài-zhèr-'xià-chē 'He gets off the car here.'

1. Gōngyuán-mén-kǒur zài-běibiar háishi-zài-nánbiar?
2. Guò-'liǎngge-lù-kǒur háishi-guò-'sāngge-lù-kǒur?
3. Tā-'jīntian-lái háishi-'míngtian-lái?
4. Nǐ-zuò-'qìchē-qù háishi-zuò-'diànchē-qù?
5. Wàng-'dōng-guǎi háishi-wàng-'xī-guǎi?
6. Zuò-'sānhao-chē háishi-zuò-'sìhao-chē-ne?
7. Shì-zuò-'diànchē-hǎo háishi-zuò-'gōnggòng-qìchē-hǎo?
8. Shì-'zhèrde-rén-duō háishi-'nèrde-rén-duō?
9. Shì-zǒu-'lù-hǎo háishi-zuò-'chē-hǎo?
10. Tāmen-'yìzhíde-zǒu háishi-xiān-wàng-'bèi-guǎi?

### CHECKING UP

Answer the following questions based on the Dialogue.

1. 'Bái-Xiānsheng xiān-dào-nǎr-qu?
2. 'Bái-Xiānsheng xiǎng-cóng-shūdiàn dào-nǎr-qu?
3. Gōnggòng-qìchē-zhàn lí-shūdiàn-yuǎn-ma?
4. Cóng-shūdiàn dào-túshūguǎn yǒu-méi-yǒu-diànchē-kéyì-zuò?
5. Cóng-shūdiàn dào-túshūguǎn-qu dōu-yǒu-'shénmo-chē?
6. Cóng-shūdiàn guò-'jǐge-lù-kǒur jiù-shì-gōnggòng-qìchē-zhàn-ne?
7. Cóng-shūdiàn dào-túshūguǎn shì-wàng-béi-zǒu háishi-wàng-nán-zǒu?
8. Zuò-'jǐhào-chē 'yìzhí-jiù-dào-túshūguǎn-ne?
9. Cóng-shūdiàn dào-túshūguǎn yào-zuò-'jǐhào-chē?
10. 'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-'nǎr-xià-chē?

11. Dào-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiǎ 'shàng-shān hái-shì-'xià-shān?  
 12. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō tā-míngtiān 'zài-dào-shūdiàn-lái-ma?

## NOTES

1. Motion to an intended destination is expressed by the coverb dào 'to' with the verbs lái 'come' and qù 'go':

Tā-dào-zhèr-lai. 'He is coming here.'

Tā-dào-nèr-qu. 'He is going there.'

Note that lái and qù are here written without a tone, as they often become neutral when used after other verbs.

2. Motion from a place is expressed by the coverb cóng 'from' with the verbs lái 'come' and zǒu 'walk, travel, depart':

Tā-cóng-nèr-lai. 'He is coming from there.'

Tā-cóng-nèr-zǒu. 'He is leaving from there.'

3. Motion from one place to another is expressed by the coverbs cóng 'from' and dào 'to'—always in this order—followed by a verbal phrase.

Cóng-zhèr-dào-nèr 'zěnmò-zǒu? 'How does one go from here to there?'

4. Motion in the direction of a place which is not one's final destination is expressed by the coverb wàng 'toward' with the verbs zǒu 'travel' and guǎi 'turn':

Wàng-dōng-zǒu. 'Go east.'

Wàng-yòu-guǎi. 'Turn right.' or 'Make a right turn.'

To indicate the place where (or from where) this direction is to take effect, use a cóng ('from') phrase followed by a wàng ('toward') phrase:

Cóng-shūdiàn wàng-yòu-guǎi. 'Turn right from the bookstore.' or  
 'Turn right at the bookstore.'

5. The verb zuò 'sit' as a main verb also means 'ride in a conveyance':

Wǒ-bu-xǐhuan zuò-diànchē. 'I don't like to ride streetcars.'

As coverb it introduces the means of conveyance:

Tā-zuò-diànchē-qu. 'He's going by streetcar.'

Occasionally zuò is used between the coverbs cóng 'from' and dào 'to':

Wǒ-cóng-zhèr zuò-chē-dào-tā-jia-qu. 'I'm going from here to his home by car.'

6. Lái and qù express purpose when followed immediately by another verb:

Wǒ-lái-jie-shū. 'I've come to borrow some books.'

Wǒ-qù-jie-shū. 'I'm going (in order) to borrow some books.'

Less commonly they are used in this meaning at the end of a sentence:

Wǒ-jiè-shū-lai. 'I've come to borrow some books.'

7. The noun-sharing construction shown in Pattern 8.2 (above, p. 94) demonstrated the use of a noun as the object of the preceding verb and the subject of the following one:

Wǒ-qǐng-ta chī-fàn. 'I'm inviting him to dinner.'

Another type of noun-sharing is illustrated in this sentence:

Wǒ-méi-yǒu-shū kéyì-kàn. 'I don't have any books (which I) can read.'

Here, the noun shū 'book' is simultaneously the object of the two verbs kàn 'read' and yǒu 'have.'

8. The particle ne is often used at the end of a sentence containing a question word, particularly when the question is emphatic:

Nǐ-bú-dào-nèr-qu-ma? Dào-nǎr-qu-ne? 'You're not going there?  
Where are you going?'

9. Movable adverbs, like other adverbs, must come before the verb. Unlike other adverbs, which must be placed immediately before the verb, movable adverbs can occur before or after the subject:

Wǒ huòzhě míngtiān qu. or Huòzhě wǒ míngtiān qu. 'Perhaps I'll go tomorrow.'

Lesson 10 CONVERSING WITH A TICKET SELLER



“Xiānsheng, qíng-mǎi-piào.”

Dialogue: Mr. White boards a bus and gets to talking with the ticket seller.

'Bái-Xiānsheng, màipiàoyuán liǎngge-rén zài-gōnggòng-qìchēshang tán-huà.

MPY: Xiānsheng, qíng-mǎi-piào.

Bái : 'Duōshao-qián?

MPY: Nín-dào-nǎr-qu?

Bái : Wǒ-dào-túshūguǎn-qu.

MPY: Dào-túshūguǎn 'liǎngmáo-qián. Nín-Zhōngguo-huà shuōde-'zhēn-hǎo.

Bái : Wǒ-shuōde-'bù-hǎo. Shuōde-tài-màn. Yóu-hěn-duō-wàiguó-rén shuōde-bí-wǒ-hǎode-duō.

MPY: Nín-shi-'něiguó-rén-ne?

Bái : Wǒ-shi-'Měiguó-rén.

Mr. White and the ticket seller converse on the bus.

Sir, get your ticket here. [lit. Please buy a ticket.]

How much?

Where are you going?

To the library.

To the library (is) twenty cents. You speak Chinese very well.

I don't speak (it) well. I speak too slowly. There are lots of foreigners who speak much better than I do.

What country are you from?

I'm an American.

- MPY : Nín-zài-zhèr niàn-shū  
háishi-zuò-shì-ne? Are you studying or working here?
- Bái : Wǒ-niàn-shū-ne. I'm studying.
- MPY : Nín-zài-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué  
niàn-shū-ma? 20 Are you studying at Far Eastern University?
- Bái : Shì. Wǒ-zài-Yuǎn-Dà-  
niàn-shū. Yes. I'm studying at Far Eastern.
- MPY : Yuǎndōng-Dàxué wàiguó-  
xuésheng-duō-ma? Are there many foreign students at Far Eastern University?
- Bái : Hěn-duō. 25 Quite a few.
- MPY : Zài-Měiguode-dàxué yé-  
yǒu-'wàiguó-xuésheng-ma? Are there also foreign students at American universities?
- Bái : Měiguó-dàxué-lǐtōu wàiguó-  
xuésheng-'gèng-duō... There are even more foreign students in American universities... How long does it take from here to the library?
- Zhèr-dào-túshūguǎn yào-  
'duōshao-shíhou? 30
- MPY : Gōnggòng-qìchē bǐ-diànchē  
zǒude-'kuài-yìdiǎr. Chàbu-  
duō-'èrshífēn-zhōng jiù-  
kěyi-dào. 35 The bus is a little faster than the streetcar. We can get there in about twenty minutes.
- Bái : Xiànzai-'jídíǎn-zhōng? What time is it now?
- MPY : Chà-yíké-wúdiǎn. Bù.  
Chà-shífēn-wúdiǎn. Nín-  
dào-túshūguǎn qu-kàn-shū-  
ma? 40 A quarter of five. No, it's ten of five. Are you going to the library to read?
- Bái : Wǒ-qù-'jiè-shū. I'm going to check out some books.
- MPY : Nín-jiā-zài-zhèr-ma? Is your home here?
- Bái : Bú-zài-zhèr. Wǒ-jiā-zài-  
Měiguó. No. My home is in America.
- MPY : Nín-jiāli dōu-yǒu-'shénmo-  
rén? 45 What family do you have?
- Bái : Wǒ-jiāli-yǒu-fùqīn-mǔqīn,  
hái-yǒu-yíge-dìdi, yíge-  
mèimei. In my family there's my father and mother, and also a younger brother and a younger sister.
- MPY : Dìdi-dà háishi-mèimei-dà-  
ne? 50 Which is older, (your) younger brother or (your) younger sister?
- Bái : Dìdi-bǐ-mèimei-dà. My [younger] brother is older than my [younger] sister.
- MPY : Tāmen-dōu-niàn-shū-ma? Are they both studying?
- Bái : Tāmen-dōu-niàn-shū. Dìdi-  
zài-'zhōngxué-niàn-shū. 55 They both are. My brother is studying in high school, and my sister is studying in elementary school.
- Mèimei-zài-'xiǎoxué-niàn-  
shū.



MPY :	Nín-fùqin-zuò-'shénmo-shì ?		What does your father do?
Bái :	Wǒ-fùqin shì-'zhōngxué-jiàoyuán. Mǔqin shì-'xiǎoxué-jiàoyuán. 'Nǐ-jiāli dōu-yǒu-'shénmó-rén?	60	My father's a high-school teacher. (My) mother is a grade-school teacher. Who's in <u>your</u> family?
MPY :	Wó-yǒu-tàitai, hái-yóu-liǎngge-háizi.	65	I have a wife and two children.
Bái :	Nán-háizi hái shì-nǚ-háizi-ne?		Boys or girls?
MPY :	Yíge-'nán-háizi, yíge-'nǚ-háizi.	70	One boy, one girl.
Bái :	Tāmen-duó-dà?		How old are they?
MPY :	Nán-háizi-qīsuì, nǚ-háizi-liǎngsuì. Zhēn-qíguài. Zhèige-nǚ-háizi 'yīsuì-jiù-huì-zǒu-lù. Tā-xiàn-zài-huì-pǎo, yé-pǎode-hěnkuài.	75	The boy is seven, the girl two. It's really amazing. This girl could walk at one year of age. Now she can run, and runs very fast, too.
Bái :	Tāmen-míngzi dōu-jiào-shénmo?		What are their names?
MPY :	Nán-háizi-jiào-Láohu. Nǚ-háizi-jiào-Xiǎomèi.	80	The boy is called Tiger. The girl is called Little Sister.
Bái :	Nán-háizi-niàn-shū-ma?		Does the boy go to school?
MPY :	Niàn-shū. Zài-xiǎoxué-niàn-shū.		Yes. He goes to grade school.
Bái :	Nǐ-tàitai-yě-zuò-shì-ma?	85	Does your wife work too?
MPY :	Tā-bú-zuò-shì . . . . Xiānsheng, nín-kàn, qián-tou jiù-shì-túshūguǎn.		No, she doesn't . . . . Sir, see, up ahead is the library.
Bái :	Hǎo, wǒ-xià-chē. Zàijiàn.		Fine. I'll get off. Good-bye.
MPY :	Zàijiàn, zàijiàn.	90	Good-bye.

VOCABULARY

bǐ	compared to (CV)
chà	differ, fall short, lack (V)
chàbuduō	almost [lit. differ not much]
dìdi	younger brother (N)
fēn	(measure for minutes)
fùqin	father (N) [lit. father relative]

gèng	(still) more (AD)
háizi	child (N)
jiào	be called (EV) name, call; call, summon (TV)
jiàoyuán	teacher (N) [lit. teach person]
jiù	immediately, then (AD)
kè	quarter (of an hour) (M)
kuài	fast (SV)
láo hu	tiger (N) [lit. old tiger]
màipiàoyuán	ticket seller (N) [lit. sell-ticket person]
màn	slow (SV)
mèimei	younger sister (N)
míngzi	name (N)
mǔqin	mother (N) [lit. mother relative]
nán	male
nǚ	female
pǎo	run (IV)
piào	ticket (N)
qíguài	amazing; amazed (SV) [lit. strange queer]
shì	affair, matter, work (N)
suì	year (of age) (M)
tán	converse, talk (IV)
xiǎoxué	elementary school (N) [lit. small school]
yìdiǎr	a little [lit. one dot]
Yuǎndōng	Far East (PW)
zhēn	really (AD)
zhōngxué	middle school (in China), high school (in America) (N)
zuò	do, make (TV)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- bǐ  
bǐ-hóngde  
1. Lán-de-bǐ-hóngde-hǎo.

compared to  
compared to a red one  
A blue one is better than a red one.

bǐ-nèige-hǎo  
bǐ-nèige-hǎo-yìdiǎr

better than that  
a little better than that

2. Zhèige-bǐ-nèige hǎo-yìdiǎr.  
  
bǐ-diànchē-hǎo  
bǐ-diànchē-háo-diar

This is a little better than that.  
  
better than streetcars  
somewhat better than streetcars
3. Qìchē-bǐ-diànchē háo-diar.  
  
bǐ-nèige-hǎo  
bǐ-nèige-hǎode-duō

Autos are somewhat better than streetcars.  
  
better than that  
a lot better than that
4. Zhèige-bǐ-nèige hǎode-duō.  
  
bǐ-nèige-hǎo  
bǐ-nèige-'gèng-hǎo

This is a lot better than that.  
  
better than that  
even better than that
5. Zhèige-bǐ-nèige 'gèng-hǎo.  
  
jiàoyuán  
bǐ-jiàoyuán-duō

This is even better than that.  
  
teacher  
more numerous than teachers
6. Xuésheng-bǐ-jiàoyuán-duō.  
  
láo hu  
bǐ-nèige-láo hu-dà

There are more students than teachers.  
  
tiger  
bigger than that tiger
7. 'Zhèige-láo hu bǐ-'nèige-dà.  
  
bǐ-Máo-Tàitai-dà  
bǐ-Máo-Tàitai-dà-yìdiǎr

This tiger is bigger than that one.  
  
older than Mrs. Mao  
a little older than Mrs. Mao
8. 'Gāo-Tàitai bǐ-'Máo-Tàitai-dà-yìdiǎr.  
  
bí-xiě-zì  
bí-xiě-zì-róngyì

Mrs. Gao is a little older than Mrs. Mao.  
  
compared to writing  
easier than writing
9. Shuō-huà bí-xiě-zì-róngyì.  
  
kuài  
zǒude-kuài

Speaking is easier than writing.  
  
fast  
walk fast
10. Tā-yé-zǒude-kuài.  
  
zǒude-kuài  
zǒude-'kuài-bu-kuài ?

He also walks fast.  
  
walk fast  
walk fast or not ?
11. Tāmen-dōu-zǒude 'kuài-bu-kuài?  
  
chīde-duō  
chīde-tài-duō

Are they all walking fast?  
  
eat a lot  
eat too much
12. Nèige-xuésheng chīde-tài-duō.  
  
chīde-shǎo  
chīde-tài-shǎo

That student eats too much.  
  
eat little  
eat too little
13. Nèiwèi-xiǎojie chīde-tài-shǎo.  
  
chīde-shǎo  
chīde-tài-shǎo

That young lady eats too little.  
  
eat little  
eat too little

- pǎo  
pǎode-kuài  
14. Láo hu yé-pǎode-hěn-kuài.

run  
run fast  
Tigers also run fast.

- màn  
zǒude-hěn-màn  
15. Diànchē-zǒude-hěn-màn.

slow  
travel very slowly  
Streetcars go very slowly.

- fùqin  
bí-wǒ-fùqin  
16. Wó-bí-wǒ-fùqin gāo-yìdiǎr.

father  
compared to my father  
I'm a little taller than my father.

- mǔqin  
Zhāng-Xiānshengde-mǔqin  
17. Zhāng-Xiānshengde-mǔqin shì  
Zhōngguó-rén.

mother  
Mr. Johnson's mother  
Mr. Johnson's mother is Chi-  
nese.

- bǐ-tā  
shuōde-hǎo  
18. Nǐ-bǐ-tā-shuōde-hǎo.

compared to him  
speak well  
You speak better than he does.

- bǐ-tā-hǎo  
19. Nǐ-shuōde-bǐ-tā-hǎo.

better than he  
You speak better than he does.

- bǐ-tā-hǎo  
bǐ-tā-hǎode-duō  
20. Nǐ-shuōde bǐ-tā-hǎode-duō.

better than he  
a lot better than he  
You speak a lot better than he  
does.

- mài-Zhōngwén-shū  
màide-hěn-duō  
21. Tāmen-mài-Zhōngwén-shū  
màide-hěn-duō.

sell Chinese books  
sell a lot  
They sell a lot of Chinese books.

- zuò  
zuò-shénmo?  
22. Tā-zuò-shénmo?

do  
do what?  
What's he doing?

- shì  
zuò-shì  
23. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng zuò-'shén-  
mo-shì?

task or job  
work at something  
What sort of work does Mr. King  
do?

- nán  
nánrén  
24. Nǐmende-jiàoyuán dōu-shì-  
nánrén-ma?

male  
man or men  
Are all your teachers men?

- nǚ  
nǚ-péngyou  
25. Tāde-nǚ-péngyou-bù-shǎo.

female  
girl friend  
He has quite a few girl friends.

háizi  
xuéde-tài-màn

child  
learn too slowly

26. Nèige-háizi xué-Yīngguo-huà  
xuède-tài-màn.

xiě-Zhōngguo-zì  
xiěde-bí-wó-hǎo

27. Tā-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì xiěde-bí-  
wó-hǎo.

xiěde-bí-wó-hǎo  
bí-wó-xiěde-hǎo

28. Tā-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì bí-wó-  
xiěde-hǎo.

zhēn  
xiěde-zhēn-hǎo

29. Nǐde-háizi-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì  
xiěde-zhēn-hǎo.

dìdi  
chīde-duō

30. Dìdi-chīde-bí-wǒ-duō.

mèimei  
mèimei-xuède-hǎo

31. Shì-'dìdi-xuède-hǎo háishi-  
'mèimei-xuède-hǎo?

jiào

32. Jiào-tā-lái.

jiào  
jiào-shénmo?

33. Zhèige-jiào-shénmo?

míngzi  
jiào-'shénmo-míngzi?

34. Zhèige-jiào-'shénmo-míngzi?

míngzi  
míngzi-jiào-shénmo?

35. Mèimei míngzi-jiào-shénmo?

fēn  
shísānfēn

36. Liùdiǎn-shísānfēn.

chà  
chà-sānkuài-qían

37. Bù-néng-mǎi, wǒ-chà-sānkuài-  
qían.

chà-sānfēn

38. Xiànzài bādiǎn-chà-sānfēn.

chà-sānfēn

39. Xiànzài chà-sānfēn-bādiǎn.

That child is learning English  
too slowly.

write Chinese characters  
write better than I do

He writes Chinese characters  
better than I do.

write better than I do  
write better than I do

He writes Chinese characters  
better than I do.

real or really  
write really well

Your child writes Chinese char-  
acters really well.

younger brother  
eat a lot

(My) younger brother eats more  
than I do.

younger sister  
younger sister learns well

Who learns better, younger  
brother or younger sister?

call or summon

Tell him to come.

be called  
called what?

What's this called?

name  
called by what name?

What's the name of this?

name  
called by what name?

What's (your) younger sister's  
name?

(measure for minutes)  
thirteen minutes

Six thirteen.

lack, be short  
be short three dollars

I can't buy it; I'm short three  
dollars.

lacking three minutes  
It's now three of eight.

lacking three minutes  
It's now three of eight.

guò  
guò-sānfēn  
40. Xiànzài bādiǎn-guò-sānfēn.

pass  
three minutes after  
It's now three after eight.

kè  
yíkè  
41. Tā-qīdiǎn-yíkè-lái.

quarter hour  
one quarter hour  
He's coming at quarter after seven.

chàbuduō  
42. Xiànzài-chàbuduō liùdiǎn-sānkè.

almost  
It's now almost 6:45.

sù  
shíliùsù  
43. Nèige-nǚ-xuésheng shíliùsù.

year of age  
sixteen years of age  
That girl student is sixteen years old.

Yuǎndōng  
44. Zhōngguo-zài-Yuǎndōng.

Far East  
China is in the Far East.

piào  
mǎi-piào  
45. Wǒ-zài-'nár-mǎi-piào?

ticket  
buy a ticket  
Where do I buy a ticket?

mài-piào  
màipiàoyuán  
46. Màipiàoyuán shì-'sānshí-duō-suìde-rén.

sell tickets  
ticket seller  
The ticket seller is a little over thirty years old.

xiǎoxué  
zài-xiǎoxué-niàn-shū  
47. Wǒ-dìdi zài-xiǎoxué-niàn-shū.

elementary school  
study in elementary school  
My younger brother goes to elementary school.

zhōngxué  
'zhōngxuéde-xuésheng  
48. Wǒmen-dōu-shì 'zhōngxuéde-xuésheng.

middle school  
middle-school student  
We are all middle-school students.

tán  
tán-huà  
49. Tāmen-zài-jiāli-tán-huà.

converse  
converse  
They're having a chat in the house.

qíguài  
qíguàide-shì  
50. Zhèi-shì-hěn-qíguàide-shì.

amazing, strange  
amazing matter  
This is quite a strange affair.

qíguài  
wó-hěn-qíguài  
51. Wó-hěn-qíguài. Sānsuìde-háizi néng-kàn-shū!

amazed  
I'm amazed  
I'm amazed! A three-year-old child can read!

- jiù

52. Wǒ-'jiù-zǒu.
- immediately

I'm leaving immediately.
- shì

yǒu-shì

53. Nǐ-xiànzài-yǒu-shì-ma?
- task, job

have something to do

Are you busy now?
- duì

shuōde-duì

54. Nǐ-shuōde-hěn-duì.
- correct, true, right

speak correctly

You're quite right in what you say.

PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 10.1. Comparison (Note 1 below)

A	<u>bǐ</u>	B	SV
A	compared to	B	is/are more SV
Zhèige	bǐ	nèige	hǎo.
'This is better than that.'			
1. 'Ní-bí-wǒ-gāo.		You are taller than I.	
2. Ní-bí-wǒ-gāo-diar.		You are a bit taller than I.	
3. Ní-bí-wǒ-'gāo-yìdiǎr.		You're a little taller than I.	
4. Ní-bí-wǒ-gāode-duō.		You're a lot taller than I.	
5. Nèige-xuésheng bǐ-xiānsheng 'gāo-yìdiǎr.		That student is a little taller than the teacher.	
6. Nèige-fángzi bǐ-zhèige-fángzi 'dà-yìdiǎr.		That house is a little bigger than this house.	
7. Tā-bí-wǒ-dàde-duō.		He is a lot older than I.	
8. Nèige-láohu bǐ-zhèige 'dà-yìdiǎr.		That tiger is a little bigger than this one.	
9. Gōngyuán bǐ-túshūguán-yuǎn.		The park is farther away than the library.	
10. Wǒ-jiā bí-nǐ-jiā-jìn.		My home is closer than your home.	
11. Gāngbǐ bǐ-qiānbí-hǎo.		A pen is better than a pencil.	
12. Tāde-dìtú bí-wǒde-hǎo. Nǐde-bǐ-tāde 'gèng-hǎo.		His map is better than mine. Yours is still better than his.	
13. 'Qián-Xiǎojie bǐ-'Máo-Xiǎojie 'dà-yìdiǎr.		Miss Qian is a little older than Miss Mao.	
14. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie bǐ-'Máo-Xiǎojie 'xiǎo-yìdiǎr.		Miss Gao is a little younger than Miss Mao.	



- |                                                                                  |                                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15. Nǐde-qián bǐ-wǒde-qián 'duō-yìdiǎr. Tāde-qián bǐ-nǐde-qián 'gèng-duō-yìdiǎr. | You have a little more money than I. He has a little more even than you. |
| 16. 'Wàitōude-rén bǐ-'lǐtōude-rén duō-yìdiǎr.                                    | There are a few more people outside than inside.                         |
| 17. Zhèige-jiàoyuán bǐ-nèige-hǎo.                                                | This teacher is better than that one.                                    |
| 18. Niàn-shū bǐ-xiě-zì-róngyì.                                                   | Reading is easier than writing.                                          |
| 19. Shuō-huà bǐ-niàn-shū-nán.                                                    | Speaking is harder than reading.                                         |
| 20. Mǎi-shū bǐ-jiè-shū-hǎo.                                                      | It's better to buy books than to borrow books.                           |

## Pattern 10.2. Adverbs of Manner (Note 2 below)

S	V	-de	SV
Subject	Verb	-de	Stative Verb
Tā	chī	-de	kuài.
'He eats fast.'			

- |                                                                |                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Tā-shuōde-kuài-ma?                                          | Does he talk fast?                                      |
| 2. Tā-chīde-tài-màn.                                           | He eats too slowly.                                     |
| 3. Tā-xuéde-bù-kuài.                                           | He learns slowly.                                       |
| 4. Láo-hu pǎode-'kuài-bu-kuài?                                 | Do tigers run fast?                                     |
| 5. Tā-mǔqīn xiěde-hǎo. Tā-fùqīn xiěde-'gèng-hǎo.               | His mother writes well. His father writes even better.  |
| 6. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-zǒude-màn. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-zǒude-hěn-kuài.   | Mr. Wang walks slowly. Mr. Bai walks very fast.         |
| 7. Nèige-xuésheng niànde-hén-hǎo. 'Wáng-Xiǎojie niànde-bù-hǎo. | That student studies well. Miss Wang is a poor student. |
| 8. Tāmen-màide-hěn-duō.                                        | They sell a lot.                                        |
| 9. Tāmen dōu-chīde-tài-shǎo.                                   | They all eat too little.                                |
| 10. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng shuōde-'hǎo-bu-hǎo?                        | Does Mr. Wang speak well?                               |

## Pattern 10.3. Comparison with Adverbs of Manner (Note 3 below)

## Pattern 10.3 a.

S	bǐ	O	V	-de	SV
Subject	compared to	Object	Verb	-de	Stative Verb
Tā	bǐ	wǒ	shuō	-de	hǎo.
'He speaks better than I do.'					

Pattern 10.3 b.

S	V	-de	bǐ	O	SV
Subject	Verb	-de	compared to	Object	Stative Verb
Tā	shuō	-de	bǐ	wó	hǎo.
'He speaks better than I do.'					
1. Tā-bí-wó-xiěde-hǎo.	He writes better than I do.				
2. Nǐ-fùqin bí-wǒ-fùqin shuōde-hǎo.	Your father speaks better than my father does.				
3. 'Xiáo-láohu bǐ-'dà-láohu-chī-de-gèng-duō.	Young tigers eat even more than old tigers.				
4. Ní-bǐ-tā niànde-'gèng-hǎo.	You study even better than he does.				
5. Zhèiwèi-jiàoyuán bǐ-nèiwèi-jiàoyuán xiěde-hǎo.	This teacher writes better than that teacher.				
6. Tā-bí-wó-zǒude-màn.	He walks more slowly than I do.				
7. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng xiěde-bí-wó-hǎode-duō.	Mr. Gao writes a lot better than I do.				
8. Tā-bí-wǒ-chīde-duō.	He eats more than I do.				
9. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng shuōde-bí-wǒ-'kuài-yìdiǎr.	Mr. Johnson talks a little faster than I do.				
10. Dìdi-bǐ-mèimei zǒude-kuàidiar.	My (younger) brother walks a little faster than my (younger) sister.				

Pattern 10.4. Objects with Adverbs of Manner (Note 4 below)

S	(V)	O	V	-de	SV
Subject	(Verb)	Object	Verb	-de	Stative Verb
Tā	(shuō)	Zhōngguo huà	shuō	-de	hǎo.
'He speaks Chinese well.'					
1. Nǐ-Zhōngguo-huà shuōde-hén-hǎo.	You speak Chinese very well.				
2. Ní-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì xiěde-hén-hǎo.	You write Chinese characters very well.				
3. Tā-chī-fàn chīde-'duō-bu-duō?	Does he eat a lot?				
4. Tā-niàn-shū niànde-tài-shǎo.	He studies too little.				
5. Bái-Xiānsheng-kàn-shū kànde-duō.	Mr. Bai reads a lot.				

- |                                                     |                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 6. Tā-kàn-shū kànde-tài-duō.                        | He reads too much.                          |
| 7. 'Gāo-Xiáojie-mǎi-shū mǎide-hěn-duō.              | Miss Gao buys a lot of books.               |
| 8. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-chī-fàn chīde-tài-kuài.           | Mr. White eats too fast.                    |
| 9. 'Qián-Xiānsheng-shuō-Yīngguó-huà shuōde-bù-kuài. | Mr. Qian speaks English slowly.             |
| 10. 'Zhèige-shūdiàn 'Zhōngwén-shū mǎide-duō.        | This bookstore sells lots of Chinese books. |
| 11. Shūdiàn gāngbǐ-mǎide-shǎo.                      | The bookstore sells few fountain pens.      |
| 12. Xuésheng-mái-běnzǐ mǎide-tài-duō.               | Students buy too many notebooks.            |
| 13. Tāmen-qǐng-péngyou qǐngde-hěn-duō.              | They invite lots of friends.                |
| 14. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng Zhōngwén-shū niànde-duō.        | Mr. King reads lots of Chinese books.       |
| 15. Wǒ-fùqīn-zǒu-lù zǒude-hěn-duō.                  | My father walks quite a bit.                |

Pattern 10.5. Objects with Comparisons and Stative Verbs (Note 4 below)

Pattern 10.5 a.

S	(V <sub>1</sub> )	O <sub>1</sub>	<u>bǐ</u>	O <sub>2</sub>	V <sub>1</sub>	<u>-de</u>	SV
Subject	(Verb)	Object	compared to	Object	Verb	<u>-de</u>	Stative Verb
Tā	mǎi	shū	bí	wó	mǎi	-de	duō.
'He buys more books than I do.'							

Pattern 10.5 b.

S	(V <sub>1</sub> )	O <sub>1</sub>	V <sub>1</sub>	<u>-de</u>	<u>bǐ</u>	O <sub>2</sub>	SV
Subject	(Verb)	Object	Verb	<u>-de</u>	compared to	Object	Stative Verb
Tā	mǎi	shū	mǎi	-de	bí	wǒ	duō.
'He buys more books than I do.'							

- |                                            |                               |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Ní-mǎi-shū bí-wó-mǎide-duō.             | You buy more books than I do. |
| 2. Ní-mǎi-shū mǎide-bí-wǒ-duō.             | You buy more books than I do. |
| 3. Tā-zuò-chē zuòde-bí-wǒ-duō.             | He rides more than I do.      |
| 4. Tā-zuò-chē bí-wǒ-zuòde-duō.             | He rides more than I do.      |
| 5. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-kàn-shū bí-wǒ-kànde-duō. | Mr. Gao reads more than I do. |

6. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-kàn-shū kànde-bí-wǒ-duō.	Mr. King reads more than I do.
7. 'Bái-Xiǎojie-shuō-huà bǐ-'Gāo-Xiǎojie-shuōde-shǎo.	Miss Bai speaks less than Miss Gao does.
8. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-shuō-huà shuōde-bǐ-'Bái-Xiānsheng-duō.	Mr. King talks more than Mr. White does.
9. Nǐ-Zhōngguo-huà shuōde-bǐ-tā-hǎo.	You speak Chinese better than he does.
10. Tā-Zhōngguo-huà bí-wǒ-shuōde-hǎo.	He speaks Chinese better than I do.
11. Gāo-'Xiānsheng-chī-fàn bǐ-Gāo-'Tàitai-chīde-kuài.	Mr. Gao eats faster than Mrs. Gao does.
12. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-xiě-zì xiěde-bǐ-'Bái-Xiānsheng-hǎo.	Mr. Mao writes better than Mr. Bai does.
13. Tā-niàn-shū niànde-bí-wǒ-duō.	He reads more than I do.
14. Tā-zǒu-lù bí-wó-zǒude-duō.	He walks more than I do.
15. 'Zhège-shūdiàn Zhōngwén-shū màide-bǐ-'nèige-shūdiàn-duō.	This bookstore sells more Chinese books than that bookstore does.

SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 96 sentences (Note 1)

nèiwèi-xiānsheng	bǐ	wǒ	hǎo	—
wode-péngyou		tā	gāo	diar
nèige-xuésheng			dà	yìdiǎr
nèiwèi-jiàoyuán				-de-duō

II: 80 sentences (Note 2)

wǒ	shuō	-de	—	kuài
nǐ	zǒu		hěn	màn
	xué		bú	
	pǎo		tài	
			gèng	

III: 96 sentences (Note 3)

(The asterisk \* indicates columns either one of which may be chosen.)

	*			*		
wó	bí-nǐ	shuō	-de	bí-nǐ	kuài	—
	bǐ-tā	chī		bǐ-tā	màn	yìdiǎr
		zǒu				-de-duō
		xué				

IV: 80 sentences (Notes 2, 4)

In columns A, B, and C, only items in the same row may be taken together. Column A may be omitted altogether.

	A	B	C			
tā	shuō	Yīngguo-huà	shuō	-de	——	kuài
	chī	Zhōngguo-fàn	chī		hěn	màn
	zuò	shì	zuò		bú	
	xiě	Zhōngguo-zì	xiě		tài	
					gèng	

V: 96 sentences (Notes 2-4)

In columns A, B, and C, only items in the same row may be taken together. Column A may be omitted altogether. Either (but not both) of the asterisked columns may be used.

	A	B	*	C		*	
tā	shuō	Yīngguo-huà	bí-wǒ	shuō	-de	bí-wǒ	kuài
tāmen	xiě	Zhōngguo-zì	bí-nǐ	xiě		bí-nǐ	màn
	chī	Zhōngguo-fàn		chī			

VI: 54 sentences (Note 5)

yì	-diǎn	——	shíyīfēn
liǎng		chà	èrshíjiǔfēn
sān		guò	yíké
sì			
shí			
shí'èr			

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

I. Contrast of "i" and e after Retroflexes

- |             |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| (a) zhī zhē | (d) zhǐ zhě | (h) zhì zhè |
| (b) chī chē | (e) chǐ chě | (i) chì chè |
| (c) shí shé | (f) shǐ shě | (j) shì shè |
|             | (g) rì rè   |             |

II. Contrast of "i" and e after Sibilants

- |           |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| (a) zì zè | (b) cì cè | (c) sì sè |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|

WHAT'S IN A NAME?

1. Nín-guìxìng?  
Wǒ-xìng-Wáng.  
Nín-míngzi-jiào-shénmo?  
Wǒ-míngzi-jiào-Dōngshēng.

What is your [sur-]name?  
My [sur-]name is Wang.  
What is your given name?  
My given name is Dongsheng.
2. Tā-xìng-shénmo?  
Tā-xìng-Wáng.  
Míngzi-jiào-shénmo?  
Míngzi-jiào-Dōngshēng.

What is his surname?  
His surname is Wang.  
What is his given name?  
His given name is Dongsheng.
3. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng, qǐng-wèn,  
nín-de-míngzi-jiào-shénmo?

Mr. Wang, may I ask, what is  
your given name?
4. Wó-xiǎng-zhīdao tāmen-jiào-  
shénmo.  
Wǒ-bù-zhīdao tāmen-jiào-  
shénmo.

I'd like to know what their names  
are.  
I don't know what their names  
are.
5. Nín-yǒu-'Zhōngguo-míngzi-  
méi-yǒu?  
Yǒu. Wǒ-de-'Zhōngguo-míngzi  
jiào-Wáng-Dōngshēng.

Do you have a Chinese name?  
  
Yes. My Chinese name is Wang  
Dongsheng.
6. Zhèige-jiào-shénmo?  
Zhèige-jiào-máobǐ.

What's this called?  
This is called a writing brush.
7. Zhèige-jiào-shénmo-míngzi?  
Zhèige-jiào-máobǐ.

What's the name of this?  
This is called a writing brush.
8. Nèige-jiào-shénmo?  
Nèige-méi-yǒu-míngzi.

What's that called?  
That doesn't have a name.
9. Zhèiběn-shū jiào-shénmo-  
míngzi?  
Nèiběn-shū jiào-Zhōngguo-  
Wénxué.

What's the title of this book?  
  
That book is entitled Chinese  
Literature.
10. Zhèige Zhōngguo-huà-jiào-  
shénmo?

What's this called in Chinese?
11. Láohu Yīngguo-huà-jiào-  
shénmo-míngzi?

What's the English word for  
láohu?
12. 'Tiger' Zhōngguo-huà-zěn-  
mo-shuō?

How do you say 'tiger' in Chi-  
nese?
13. 'Tiger' Zhōngguo-huà-shi-  
láohu-ma?

Is 'tiger' láohu in Chinese?

## FRÈRE TIGER

This round can be sung to the tune of Frère Jacques.

Sānge-láohu,  
Sānge-láohu,  
Pǎode-kuài,  
Pǎode-kuài.

Yíge-méi-you-wěiba,\*  
Yíge-méi-you-wěiba,  
Zhēn-qíguài,  
Zhēn-qíguài.



"Yíge-méi-you-wěiba"

## MATCH AND FINISH

Below are ten Chinese sentences. For each, an incomplete English translation appears, but not opposite the corresponding Chinese sentence. First, match the Chinese and the English by inserting the letters of the appropriate Chinese sentence after the numbers of the English sentences; then complete the translations.

a. Xiànzài-chàbuduō shíyīdiǎn-  
sānkè.

b. Xiǎomèi zài-xiǎoxué-niàn-  
shū-ma?

c. Zhōngxuéde-xuésheng bǐ-  
dàxuéde-duō. Xiǎoxuéde-  
xuésheng bǐ-zhōngxuéde  
'hái-duō.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Is his father in the Far East  
or \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_ Who learns faster, \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_ It's now almost \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

\* Wěiba 'tail.'



- d. Piào-'duōshao-qián-yìzhāng,  
nǐ-zhīdao-ma?

4. \_\_\_\_\_ What's the English word for  
\_\_\_\_\_
- e. Xiànzài-chà-shífēn-yì-  
diǎn.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ Does Little Sister study \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- f. Shì-nán-háizi-xuéde-kuài  
háishi-nǚ-háizi-xuéde-  
kuài?

6. \_\_\_\_\_ Are they carrying on a con-  
versation or \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- g. Diànchē, gōnggòng-qìchē  
dōu-yǒu-màipiàoyuán-  
ma?

7. \_\_\_\_\_ There are more middle-  
school students than \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- h. Tāmen-zài-nèr-tán-huà  
háishi-niàn-shū?

8. \_\_\_\_\_ How much is one \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- i. Tā-fùqin zài-Yuǎndōng-ne  
háishi-zài-Měiguó-ne?

9. \_\_\_\_\_ Do both streetcars and \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- j. Láohu Yīngwén-jìào-shén-  
mo-míngzi?

10. \_\_\_\_\_ It's now ten \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

NOTES

1. The coverb bǐ 'compared to' is used in comparisons of two things:  
Ní-bí-wǒ-gāo. 'You're taller than I am.' [lit. 'You, compared with  
me, are tall.']  
Often yìdiǎr 'a bit' (or its shortened form diar) is added after the verb;  
if yìdiǎr is stressed, it means 'just a little.'  
Ní-bí-wǒ-'gāo-yìdiǎr. 'You're somewhat taller than I am.'  
Ní-bí-wǒ-gāo-'yìdiǎr. 'You're just a little taller than I am.'  
The idea 'much' or 'much more' is expressed by adding de-duō to the verb:  
Ní-bí-wǒ-gāode-duō. 'You're much taller than I am.'  
If three things are compared (as in English 'B is better than C and A is  
even better than B'), hái 'still' or gèng 'still more' are used before the  
stative verb:  
Ní-bí-wǒ-gāo, tā-bí-nǐ-'gèng-gāo. 'You're taller than I, and he is  
even taller than you.'

2. To express the manner in which the action of a verb takes place, Chinese attaches the particle de to the action verb:

chīde-màn 'eat slowly'

Tā-zóude-kuài. 'He walks fast.'

Adverbs may be placed before either the action verb or the stative verb, according to which one they modify:

Tāmen-dōu-chīde-duō. 'They all eat a lot.'

Tāmen-chīde-bu-shǎo. 'They eat not a little.' (Euphemism for 'They eat quite a lot.')

3. Comparison of the manner in which two actors perform an action combines the patterns of the preceding notes, as follows:

Tā-bí-wǒ-chīde-màn. 'He eats more slowly than I do.' [lit. 'He, compared to me, eats slowly.']

The phrase expressing comparison (here bí-wǒ) may follow rather than precede the action verb:

Tā-chīde-bí-wǒ-màn. 'He eats more slowly than I do.' [lit. 'He eats, compared to me, slowly.']

4. When an action verb followed by an expression of manner has an object, the object is mentioned before the verb:

Nǐ-Yīngguó-huà shuōde-hén-hǎo. 'You speak English very well.' [lit. 'You English speak very well.']

Alternatively, the verb is said twice, first with its object and then with de:

Nǐ-shuō-Yīngguó-huà shuōde-hén-hǎo. 'You speak English very well.' [lit. 'You speak English speak very well.']

The object cannot intervene between the verb and the particle de.

5. Time before and after the even hours is expressed with the verbs chà 'lack' and guò 'pass':

yìdiǎn-chà-wǔfēn 'five minutes of one' [lit. 'one o'clock lacking five minutes']

yìdiǎn-guò-wǔfēn 'five minutes after one'

yìdiǎn-guò-yíkè '1:15'

yìdiǎn-chà-yíkè '12:45'

yìdiǎn-guò-sānkè '1:45'

Guò may be omitted before the quarter hours and before minute expressions of more than two syllables:

yìdiǎn-yíkè '1:15'

yìdiǎn-èrshífēn '1:20'

Minute expressions with chà may be placed before the hour expressions rather than after them:

yìdiǎn-chà-wǔfēn

or

chà-wǔfēn-yìdiǎn

} 'five minutes of one'

6. In comparisons involving people, the stative verbs dà 'big' and xiǎo 'little' most often have the meanings 'older' and 'younger' respectively:

Tā-bí-wǒ-dà. 'He is older than I am.'

7. A series of nouns is often followed by a summarizing expression like tāmen 'they' and/or some appropriate numerical expression:

Xiānsheng, tàitai, xiǎojie tāmen-dōu-zài-zhèr. or  
 Xiānsheng, tàitai, xiǎojie sānge-rén-dōu-zài-zhèr. or  
 Xiānsheng, tàitai, xiǎojie tāmen-sānge-rén dōu-zài-zhèr.  
 'The gentleman, the lady, and the girl are all here.'

Note that dōu 'all' is also frequently used to summarize a series or to express totality.

8. The Chinese educational system consists of six years of elementary school (xiǎoxué), six years of middle school (zhōngxué), and four years of college (dàxué). Elementary and secondary schools are divided into lower and higher schools, each three years in length.

9. Chinese expressions composed of two or more two-syllable words are often abbreviated, usually by selecting key syllables and dropping the rest:

Yuǎndōng-Dàxué 'Far Eastern University' is abbreviated to  
 Yuǎn-Dà

Běijīng-Dàxué 'Peking University' is abbreviated to  
 Běi-Dà

(The name Yuǎndōng-Dàxué was intended as fictitious. Since this book was written I find that a university with this name has indeed come into existence on Taiwan.)

10. There are two words for 'name.' Xìng means 'surname' and míngzi means either 'whole name' or 'given name,' depending on the context. Chinese often have more than one given name, one used during infancy, another used while they are growing up, and perhaps still others assumed while they are attending school or engaging in more advanced scholarly pursuits. In the Dialogue, the names 'Little Sister' and 'Tiger' are of course childhood names. A given name like Dōngshēng 'East Born,' which might be given to a child born in the eastern part of the country, could be either a childhood name or a permanent one. Parents with scholarly aspirations for their children are particularly fond of selecting names with literary connotations, such as Wénshān 'Literature Mountain.' Wénshān is a typical name for a man, suggesting two desirable qualities, learning and strength. A foreigner with the name Vincent might well be called Wénshān in Chinese, first because of its meaning connotation, and second as an approximation of the sound.

11. In asking for the name of a person, a commonly used pattern is:

N(de) míngzi-jiào-shénmo? 'What is N's name?'

For the names of things, the most usual pattern is:

N jiào-shénmo(-míngzi)? 'What is the name of N?'

## Lesson 11 DISCUSSING TRAVEL



“Oh, 'Qián-Xiānsheng, 'háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn.”

Dialogue: Mr. White encounters Mr. Qian and is asked about his travels.

Qián: 'Háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn. Hǎo-ma?

Haven't seen you for a long time.  
How are you?

Bái : Oh, 'Qián-Xiānsheng, 'háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn. Nín-hǎo-ma?

Oh, Mr. Qian, I haven't seen you  
for a long time. How are you?

Qián: Hén-hǎo. Nín-shi-lái-kàn-shū-ma?

5

Very well. Have you come  
(here) to read?

Bái : Wǒ-bú-shi-lái-'kàn-shū.  
Wǒ-lái-'jiè-shū.

No, not to read. I've come to  
take out some books.

Qián: Nín-shi-cóng-'nǎr-lái-de?

Where have you come from?

Bái : Wǒ-cóng-Sān-Yǒu-Shūdiàn\*-  
lái-de.

10

[I've come] from the Three  
Friends Bookstore.

---

\* In Sān-Yǒu-Shūdiàn 'Three Friends Bookstore,' the syllable yǒu is short for péngyou 'friend.' The expression Sān Yǒu 'Three Friends' appears in a number of literary works which have come into existence in the past 2,500 years. In one of these works—the Chinese historical novel Romance of the Three Kingdoms—the Sān Yǒu are three heroes.

- Qián: Nín-shi-zuò-'chē-lái-de-ma? Did you come by car?
- Bái: Shì. Wǒ-shi-zuò-'chē-lái-de. Yes. [I came by car.]
- Qián: Nín-zuò-'shénmo-chē-lái-de? Zuò-gōnggòng-'qìchē-lái-de hái shi-zuò-'diànchē-lái-de-ne? 15 What (sort of) car did you take? Did you come by bus or by streetcar?
- Bái: Wǒ-zuò-gōnggòng-'qìchē-lái-de. 20 I came by bus.
- Qián: Nín-cháng-dào-túshūguǎn-lái-ma? Do you come to the library often?
- Bái: Bù. Wǒ-jīntiān shì-dì-yí cì-lái. Nín-ne? No. Today is the first time [I've come]. How about you?
- Qián: 'Wó-yě-bù-cháng-lái.... 25 I don't come often either....  
Oh, 'Bái-Xiānsheng, nín-shi-'shénmo-shíhou dào-Zhōngguo-lái-de? Nín-shi-'qùnián-lái-de-ma? Oh, Mr. White, when was it that you came to China? Did you come last year?
- Bái: Shì. Wǒ-shi-qùnián-báiyue-qīhào-lái-de. 30 Yes. I came on August seventh of last year.
- Qián: Nín-yìzhí de jiù-dào-Zhōngguo-lái-de-ma? Did you come straight to China?
- Bái: Bú-shi. Wǒ-shi-qùnián líkai-Měiguó, xiān-dào-Rìběn, hòu-cóng-Rìběn dào-Zhōngguo-lái-de. 35 No. I left the United States last year, went first to Japan, and then came to China from Japan.
- Qián: Nín-zuò-'chuán-lái-de hái shi-zuò-'fēijī-lái-de? Did you come by boat or by plane?
- Bái: Wǒ-dào-Rìběn shi-zuò-chuán, cóng-Rìběn-dào-Zhōngguo shi-zuò-'fēijī-lái-de. 40 I came by boat to Japan, and by plane from Japan to China.
- Qián: 'Chuán-zǒude-hěn-màn-ba. 45 I suppose the boat traveled very slowly.
- Bái: Suǐrán-hěn-màn, kěshi-zuò-chuán hěn-yǒu-yìsi. Kéyì-rènshi hěn-duō-péng-you. [Although] it was very slow, but traveling by boat is quite interesting. One can make a lot of friends.
- Qián: Wó-yě-hén-xǐhuan zuò-chuán. Wó-xiǎng jīnnián-zuò-chuán dào-Rìběn-qu. 50 I also like to travel by boat. I plan to take a boat trip to Japan this year.
- Bái: Rìběn hén-yǒu-yìsi.... Nín-shénmo-shíhou líkai-túshūguǎn? 55 Japan is very interesting.... When are you leaving the library?
- Qián: Xiànzài-'shénmo-shíhou? What time is it now?

Bái : Xiànzài-wúdiǎn-bàn.

It's [now] 5:30.

Qián: Wó-yǒu-yìdiǎr-shì. Zuó-  
tīan yǒu-yíge-péngyou-shuō  
jīntīan-wǎnshang-liùdiǎn-  
zhōng tā-dào-wǒ-jiā-lǐtōu-  
lái. Wǒ-xiǎng xiànzài-jiù-  
zǒu. 60

I have a little matter (to attend to). Yesterday a friend told me he was coming to my home this evening at six. I think I'll leave right now.

Bái : Wǒmen-zài-jiàn.

We'll be seeing each other again.

Qián: Oh, wǒ-zài-lùshang-yùjiàn-  
'Gāo-Xiānsheng. Tā-gāosù-  
wǒ jīntīan-wǎnshang tā-  
qǐng-nín-dào-tāmen-jiā  
chī-wǎnfàn. 65

Oh, I ran into Mr. Gao on the way here. He mentioned to me that he had invited you to their home for dinner tonight.

Bái : Shì. 70

Yes.

Qián: Wǒ-nèr lí-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-  
jiā-hěn-jìn. Rúguǒ-nín-jīn-  
tīan-wǎnshang yǒu-gōngfu,  
yé-qǐng-dào-wǒ-jiā-lái  
zuòyizuò-tántan. 75

My place is very close to Mr. Gao's home. If you have time this evening I'd like to invite you to drop in at my home too [to sit a while and chat].

Bái : Hǎo. Xièxie-nín. Rúguǒ-  
wǎnshang-yǒu-gōngfu, wǒ-  
'yídìng-dào-fùshang-bàifang.

How nice. Thank you. If I have time [this evening] I'll [certainly] stop in [at your home to visit].

Qián: Xīwang-nín-wǎnshang 'yí-  
dìng-néng-lái. 80

I hope you really will [come this evening].

Bái : Hǎo, 'xièxie-nín. Yǒu-  
gōngfu wǒ-'yídìng-lái.

Fine, thanks. (If) there's time I'll certainly come.

Qián: Wǒmen-zài-tán.

Good-bye. [lit. We'll talk further.]

Bái : Zài-tán, zài-tán.\* 85

Good-bye.\*

## VOCABULARY

bàn	half (M)
bàifang	make a formal call on (someone) (TV) [lit. salute visit]
cháng	often (AD)
chuán	boat, ship (N)

\* The final exchange between Mr. Qian and Mr. White (lines 71-84) illustrates an aspect of Chinese etiquette. Since Mr. Qian lives close to Mr. Gao, social convention requires that he should invite Mr. White to drop in, and that Mr. White should express eagerness to do so, even though it is unlikely that he will.



cì	time, occasion (M)
dì	(ordinalizing prefix)
fēijī	airplane (N) [lit. flying machine]
fūshang	(your) residence (N)
gàosu, gàosong	inform (TV) [lit. tell inform]
hào	day of the month (M)
jīnnian	this year (TW) [lit. now year]
kànjian	visit, see (TV) [lit. look see]
kěshi	however, but (MA) [lit. may be]
líkai	leave, depart from (TV) [lit. leave open]
nián	year (M)
qùnian	last year (TW) [lit. go year]
rènshi	recognize, be acquainted with (TV) [lit. recognize know]
Rìběn	Japan (PW) [lit. sun source]
rúguǒ	if (MA) [lit. if result]
suírán	although (MA) [lit. even is]
wǎnfàn	dinner (N) [lit. late food]
xīwang	hope (TV) [lit. hope expect] hope (N)
yídìng	be certain (SV) [lit. one settled]
yìsi	meaning (N) [lit. thought think]
-yue	month of the year (M)
yùjian	encounter, meet (TV) [lit. meet see]
zuótiān	yesterday (TW) [lit. yesterday day]

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                             |                                  |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| hào                         | day of the month                 |
| yíhào                       | first day of the month           |
| 1. Jīntian-yíhào.           | Today is the first of the month. |
| yíyue                       | first month of the year,         |
|                             | January                          |
| yíyue-yíhào                 | January first                    |
| 2. Jīntian-shi-yíyue-yíhào. | Today is January first.          |
| jǐyue                       | which month of the year?         |
| 3. Xiànzài-shi-jǐyue?       | What month is it now?            |



- zuótian  
jǐhào?  
4. Zuótian-shi-jǐhào?
- nián  
yī-jiǔ-liù-yī-nián  
5. Yī-jiǔ-liù-yī-nián nǐ-zài-nǎr?
- nián  
jīnnian  
6. Jīnnian tā-xiǎng dào-Měiguó-lái.
- qùnian  
něinián?  
7. Qùnian-shi-něinián?
- jīnnian  
shíyue  
èrshiwǔhào  
8. Wǒ-jīnnian shíyue-èrshiwǔhào-zǒu.
- Rìběn  
dào-Rìběn-qu  
9. Tā-xiǎng jīnnian-qīyue dào-Rìběn-qu.
- kànjian  
kànjian-'Gāo-Xiānsheng  
10. Wǒ-huòzhě-èryue kànjian-'Gāo-Xiānsheng.
- yùjian  
yùjian-nèiwèi-xiānsheng  
11. Wǒ-chābudoō-měitiān yùjian-nèiwèi-xiānsheng.
- wǎnfàn  
qíng-wǒ-chī-wǎnfàn  
12. Tā-jiǔyue-qīhào qíng-wǒ-chī-wǎnfàn.
- zuótian  
shi-'zuótian-lái-de  
13. Tā-shi-'zuótian-lái-de.
- shi-'zuótian-lái-de  
'zuótian-lái-de  
14. Tā-'zuótian-lái-de.
- fēijī  
zuò-fēijī

- yesterday  
what day of the month?  
What day of the month was yesterday?
- year  
1961  
Where were you in 1961?
- year  
this year  
This year he plans to come to America.
- last year  
what year?  
What year was last year?
- this year  
October  
25th day of the month  
I'm leaving this year on the 25th of October.
- Japan  
go to Japan  
He plans to go to Japan in July of this year.
- see, visit  
see Mr. Gao  
Perhaps I'll see Mr. Gao in February.
- encounter  
encounter that gentleman  
I meet that gentleman almost every day.
- dinner  
ask me to dinner  
He asked me to dinner on the 7th of September.
- yesterday  
came yesterday  
He came yesterday.
- came yesterday  
came yesterday  
He came yesterday.
- airplane  
ride in an airplane

15. Tā-shi-zuò-'fēijī-lái-de.

chuán  
zuò-chuán

16. Tā-shi-zuò-'chuán-qù-de.

cháng  
cháng-lái

17. Tā-shi-'cháng-lái-de.

yídìng  
bù-yídìng

18. Wǒ-'bù-yídìng-qù.

yìsi  
'shénmo-yìsi?

19. Zhèige-zì shi-'shénmo-yìsi?

qián  
hén-yǒu-qián

20. Nèige-rén 'hén-yǒu-qián.

yìsi  
yǒu-yìsi

21. Zhèiběn-shū 'hén-yǒu-yìsi.

xīwang  
wó-hěnxīwang

22. Wó-hěnxīwang nín-néng-lái.

xīwang  
méi-yǒuxīwang

23. Wǒ-méi-yǒuxīwang dào-nèr-qù.

gàosu  
gàosu-ta

24. Gàosu-ta wǒ-bù-néng-qù.

líkai  
líkai-Yīngguo

25. Tā-shénmo-shíhou líkai-Yīngguo?

dì  
dì-yī  
dì-yìtiān

26. Dì-yìtiān wó-xiǎng-bú-zuò-shì.

cì  
dì-yícì  
zhèi-shi-dì-yícì

He came by plane.

boat  
take a boat

He went by boat.

often, frequently  
come frequently

He came frequently.

be certain  
not be certain

I'm not sure of going.

meaning  
what meaning?

What does this word mean?

money  
be very wealthy

That man is very wealthy.

meaning  
be interesting

This book is very interesting.

hope  
I hope very much

I hope very much that you can come.

hope  
have no hope

I have no hope of going there.

inform  
inform him

Tell him I can't go.

depart from, leave  
leave England

When will he leave England?

(ordinalizing prefix)  
the first  
the first day

I plan to do nothing the first day.

occasion, time  
the first time  
this is the first time

27. Zhèi-shi-dì-yí cì wǒ-chī-  
Zhōngguo-fàn.

This is the first time I've had  
Chinese food.

rúguǒ  
rúguó-wó-yǒu-qián  
wǒ-'yídìng-mǎi-zhèiběn-  
shū

if  
if I had money  
I'll surely buy this book

28. Rúguó-wó-yǒu-qián wǒ-'yídìng-  
mǎi-zhèiběn-shū.

If I had money I would certainly  
buy this book.

- kěshi  
kěshi-wǒ-méi-yǒu-qián  
29. Wó-xiǎng-mǎi, kěshi-wǒ-méi-  
yǒu-qián.

however  
but I don't have any money  
I'd like to buy (it), but I don't  
have any money.

- suírán  
suírán-tā-shi-wàiguó-  
rén  
30. Suírán-tā-shi-wàiguó-rén,  
kěshi-Zhōngguó-huà shuōde-  
hén-hǎo.

although  
although he's a foreigner

Although he's a foreigner, (he)  
speaks Chinese very well.

- rènshi  
rènshi-zhèige-zì  
31. Nǐ-rènshi-zhèige-zì-ma?

recognize, know  
know this character  
Do you know this character?

- fūshang  
32. Qǐng-wèn, fūshang-zài-nǎr?

(your) home  
May I ask, where is your home?

- bàifang  
bàifang-péngyou  
33. Wó-xiǎng míngtiān-qu-bàifang-  
péngyou.

make a call on  
call on a friend  
I plan to call on a friend tomor-  
row.

- bàn  
sìdiǎn-bàn  
34. Wó-xiǎng 'sìdiǎn-bàn-jiù  
zǒu.

half  
four-thirty  
I plan to leave immediately at  
four-thirty.

- yíbàn  
yíbàn-shi-nǐde  
35. Yíbàn-shi-wǒde, yíbàn-shi-  
nǐde.

one half  
half is yours  
Half is mine, half is yours.

### PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 11.1. Time Expressions with Year, Month, Day (Note 1 below)

(Year)	(Month)	(Day)
jīnnián	shíyue	bāhào
'October 8 of this year'		

- |                                                                |                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Tā-'qīhào-lái.                                              | He will come on the seventh.                             |
| 2. Tā-qīyue-'sìhào-lái.                                        | He will come on July 4th.                                |
| 3. Tā-jīnnian-qīyue-'sìhào-lái.                                | He will come on July 4th of this year.                   |
| 4. 'Máo-Xiānsheng báiyue-jiǔhào-lái.                           | Mr. Mao is coming on August 9th.                         |
| 5. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng jīnnian-wǔyue-bāhào-zǒu.                     | Mr. Gao is leaving on May 8th of this year.              |
| 6. Yī-jiǔ-sì-jiǔ-nián nǐ-hái-zài-Zhōngguo-ma?                  | Were you still in China in 1949?                         |
| 7. Jīnnian-qīyue wó-xiǎng-dào-Yīngguo-qu.                      | In July of this year I plan to go to England.            |
| 8. Wó-mǔqin jīnnian-shíyíyue zuò-chuán-lái.                    | My mother is coming by boat this November.               |
| 9. Wǒ-dìdi jīnnian-jiǔyue-niàn-shū.                            | My younger brother will (start to) study this September. |
| 10. Wǒ-fùqin jīnnian-báiyue-sānhào zuò-fēijī-lái.              | My father is coming by plane on August 3 of this year.   |
| 11. Huòzhě-wǒ-jīnnian néng-dào-'Zhōngguo-qù.                   | Perhaps I can go to China this year.                     |
| 12. Tā-tàitai-jīnnian-liùyue xiǎng-dào-zhèr-lái.               | His wife is planning to come here this June.             |
| 13. Tā-xiǎng-jīnnian-qīyue-'èrshìhào dào-Zhōngguo-lái.         | He plans to come to China on July 20th of this year.     |
| 14. Tāmen-liùyue-'sānshìhào dào-Húnán-qu.                      | They are going to Hunan on June 30th.                    |
| 15. 'Máo-Xiānsheng yī-jiǔ-wǔ-qī-nián-wǔyue zài-dàxué-niàn-shū. | Mr. Mao was studying at the university in May of 1957.   |

Pattern 11.2. The (shi) . . . V de Construction (Note 2 below)

S	(shi)	A	V	-de
Subject	(shi)	A	Verb	-de
Wǒ	(shi)	zuótian	lái	-de.

'I came yesterday.'

- |                                                    |                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| 1. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng shì-'zuótian-dào-de.            | It was yesterday that Mr. King arrived.           |
| 2. 'Bái-Xiānsheng 'shénmo-shíhou-lái-de?           | When was it that Mr. White came?                  |
| 3. 'Qián-Xiānsheng jīnnian-èryue cóng-zhèr-zǒu-de. | Mr. Qian left from here in February of this year. |

4. Wǒ-qùnián-shí 'èryuè-bāhào zuò-fēijī-lái-de.
5. Wǒ-fùqīn shì-jīnnián-èryuè èrshíwǔhào-zǒu-de.
6. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-shuō zuótian-wǎnshàng tā-cóng-Rìběn-lái-de.
7. Tā-shì-'xiān-dào-gōngyuán 'hòu-dào-túshūguǎn-qù-de.
8. Tā-jīntiān-'jiúdiǎn-zhōng dào-túshūguǎn-lái-de.
9. 'Wáng-Xiǎojie bú-shì-zuótian zuò-'fēijī-lái-de-ma?
10. 'Gāo-Tàitai yī-jiǔ-sì-wǔ-nián jiǔyuè-bāhào-lái-de.
11. Nǐ-dìdi qùnián-cóng-zhèr-zǒu-de-ma?
12. Nǐ-shì-'jīntiān-mǎi-de hái-shì-'zuótian-mǎi-de?
13. 'Bái-Xiānsheng shì-'sānhào-zǒu-de hái-shì-'sìhào-zǒu-de?
14. Tā-shì-'yìzhíde-lái-de-ma?
15. Tā-bú-shì-'yìdiǎn-bàn-lái-de. Tā-shì-'liángdiǎn-bàn-lái-de.

I came by plane on December 8th of last year.

My father left on February 25th of this year.

Mr. Gao says he came from Japan yesterday evening.

He went first to the park and then to the library.

He came to the library at nine today.

Didn't Miss King come by plane yesterday?

Mrs. Gao arrived on September 8, 1945.

Did your younger brother leave from here last year?

Did you buy it today or yesterday?

Did Mr. White leave on the 3d or the 4th?

Did he come directly?

It wasn't at 1:30 that he came. It was at 2:30.

Pattern 11.3. The (shi) . . . V de Construction with Object (Note 3 below)

Pattern 11.3a.

S	(shi)	A	V	O	de
Subject	(shi)	A	Verb	Object	de
Wǒ	shì	jīnnián	líkai	Měiguó	de.
'I left America <u>this year</u> .' (i.e. 'It was this year that I left America.')					

Pattern 11.3b.

S	(shi)	A	V	de	O
Subject	(shi)	A	Verb	de	Object
Wǒ	shì	jīnnián	líkai	de	Měiguó.
'I left America <u>this year</u> .' (i.e. 'It was this year that I left America.')					

1. Wǒ-shì-zuótian dào-Měiguó-de.

I arrived in America yesterday.

2. Tā-'jīntian-mǎi-de-shū.	He bought the books <u>today</u> .
3. 'Gāo-Xiáojie-gàosu-wǒ, tā-'jīntian-qù-mǎi-de-shū.	Miss Gao informed me that she went to buy the books <u>today</u> .
4. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-shuō tā-shi-qùnian mǎi-de-nèisuǒr-fángzi.	Mr. Gao says it was last year that he bought that house.
5. Nǐ-shi-dì-yí cì líkai-Měiguode-ma?	Is this the first time you've left America?
6. Wǒ-shi-dì-yí cì líkai-Měiguode.	This is the first time I've left America.
7. Tā-zài-Sān-Yǒu-Shūdiàn mǎi-de-shū.	He bought the books at the Three Friends Bookstore.
8. Gāo-Xiáojie-zài-nǎr xià-fēijī-de?	Where did Miss Gao get off the plane?
9. 'Wáng-Xiáojie cóng-Yīngguodào-de-Zhōngguo.	Miss King came to China from England.
10. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng shi-zuótian-mài-de-fángzi.	Mr. King sold the house yesterday.
11. Nǐ-péngyou shi-shénmo-shíhou yùjian-ta-de?	When did your friend meet him?
12. Tā-shi-'shénmo-shíhou gàosu-nǐ-de?	When was it that he told you?
13. Nǐ-shi-'jídǎn-zhōng chī-de wǎnfàn?	When did you eat dinner?
14. Nǐ-shi-'shénmo-shíhou kànjian-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-de?	When did you see Mr. King?
15. Tāmen-shi-zuótian xià-de-shān.	They went down the mountain yesterday.
16. Wǒmen-shi-zuótian guò-de-hú.	We crossed the lake yesterday.
17. Wǒ-shi-qùnian mǎi-de-zhèiběnzìdiǎn.	I bought this dictionary last year.
18. Tā-mèimei-shi-sānyue-'èrhàoshàng-de-chuán.	His younger sister boarded the boat on March 2d.
19. Wǒ-dìdi-èryue-sānhào shàng-chuán-de.	My younger brother boarded the boat on February 3d.
20. Tā-shi-zài-diànchēshang mǎi-de-piào.	He bought the ticket on the streetcar.

SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 64 phrases (Note 1)

——	yí	-yue	yí	-hào
jīnnian	wǔ		èr	
qùnian	shí		èrshiwǔ	
1962 nián	shí'èr		sānshiyī	

## II: 96 sentences (Note 2)

tā	—	qùnián	èr	-yue	wǔ	-hào	lái	de
	shì	1962 nián	sān		liù		qù	
			sì		qī			

## III: 48 sentences (Note 2)

wǒ	—	zuò	diànchē	lái	de
nǐ	shì		chuán	qù	
tā			fēijī		
			shénmo		

## IV: 72 sentences (Note 2)

wǒ	—	yìzhí(de)	lái	de
nǐ	shì	shénmo-shíhou	qù	
tā		cóng-nèr		

## V: 64 sentences (Note 3)

(The asterisks \* indicate positions either of which may be occupied by de. From columns A and B, only items in the same row may be taken together.)

			A	*	B	*
tā	—	zuótian	shàng	-de	chuán	-de
	shì	qùnián	líkai		Měiguó	
		sānyue	dào		Zhōngguó	
		jīntian	xià		shān	

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## I. The Tone-Toneless Contrast

The following pairs of syllables are distinguished in meaning by the presence or absence of tones on the second syllable.

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| (a) dōng-xī, dōngxī | (e) tā-dà, tāde    |
| (b) xíng-lǐ, xíngli | (f) mái-mǎ, mái-ma |
| (c) lǎo-mā, lǎo-ma  | (g) mǎi-má, mǎi-ma |
| (d) kuàilè, kuàile  | (h) dào-dé, dào-de |



II. Tonal Shifts in Stressed bù and yī

- (a) 'bù-dā

(b) 'bù-dá

(c) 'bù-dǎ

(d) 'bú-dà
- (e) 'bù-gāo

(f) 'bù-máng

(g) 'bù-hǎo

(h) 'bú-lèi
- (i) 'yìzhī

(j) 'yìmáo

(k) 'yìběn

(l) 'yíkuài

(m) 'yíge

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

1. Nǐ-rúguó-yǒu-qián nǐ-zuò-shénmo?  
Rúguó-wó-yǒu-qián wǒ-jiu-mǎi-fángzi.

What would you do if you had money?  
If I had money, I'd buy a house.
2. Nǐ-shi-něinián líkai-Měiguode?  
Wǒ-shi-qùnian líkai-Měiguode.

What year did you leave America?  
I left America last year.
3. Wǒmen-zài-zhèr-'zuòyizuò, 'hǎo-bù-hǎo?  
Kéyi, kéyi.

Let's sit here a while, O.K.?  
All right.
4. Nǐ-dì-yí cì -kànjian-ta shi-'shénmo-shíhou?  
Wǒ-dì-yí cì -kànjian-ta shi-jiǔ-yue-wǔhào.

When was the first time you saw him?  
The first time I saw him was September 5th.
5. Suírán-nèitiáo-lù bù-háo-zǒu, kěshi-nǐ-'yídìng-yào-qù-ma?  
Shì, wǒ-'yídìng-yào-qù.

Although that road is not good to travel on, do you insist on going?  
Yes, I insist on going.
6. Xiànzài-wǒmen kéyi-'tányitán-ma?  
Wǎnshang 'liùdiǎn-yí kè-kéyi-ma?

May we chat a while now?  
Will this evening at 6:15 be all right?
7. Nín-zhè-shi-dì-yí cì dào-Zhōngguo-lái-ma?  
Bú-shì, wǒ-shi-dì-'èr cì dào-Zhōngguo-lái.

Is this the first time you've come to China?  
No, this is my second trip to China.
8. Nín-'cháng-dào-'wàiguo-qù-ma?  
Shì. Wó-hén-xǐhuan dào-wàiguo-qu. Hén-yǒu-yì si.

Do you often go abroad?  
Yes, I like going abroad very much. It's very interesting.

9. Nǐ-shì-zài-'fēijīshang-yùjiàn-ta-de-háishi-zài-'chuánshang-yùjiàn-ta-de?  
Wǒ-shì-zài-'chuánshang-yùjiàn-ta-de.  
Did you run into him on the plane or on the boat?  
I met him on the boat.
10. Nǐ-'shénmo-shíhòu-rènshi-ta?  
Wǒ-'qùnián-jiù-rènshi-ta.  
When did you get to know him?  
I became acquainted with him just last year.
11. Nǐ-'shénme-shíhòu-zhāng-ta?  
Wǒ-xiǎng-míngtiān-bāifāng-ta.  
When are you going to look him up?  
I'm thinking of calling on him tomorrow.
12. Nín-fùshang-zài-nǎr?  
Wǒ-jīa-zài-chéng-wàitōu, lí-'Zhongshan-lù-chú-nǎr.  
Where is your residence?  
My home is outside the city, not far from Sun Yatsen Avenue.
13. Nǐ-huì-shuō-'Zhōngguó-huà-ma?  
Wǒ-huì-shuō, kěshì-shuōde-bú-tài-hǎo.  
Can you speak Chinese?  
I can, but I don't speak very well.
14. Tā-shì-sìdiǎn-'xià-lái-ma?  
Bú-shì. Tā-shì-sìdiǎn-'sān-kè-lǎide.  
Did he come at 4:15?  
No. He came at 4:45.
15. Tā-shì-cóng-'Zhōngguó-lái-de-háishi-cóng-'Rìběn-lái-de?  
Tā-shì-cóng-'Zhōngguó-lái-de.  
Did he come from China or Japan?  
He came from China.
16. Fēijī-shì-shénmo-yìsi?  
Fēijī-shì-'airplane'-de-yìsi.  
What does fēijī mean?  
Fēijī means 'airplane.'
17. Nǐ-cháng-dào-tā-jīa-qù-ma?  
Wǒ-chābúduō-měitiān-dōu-qù.  
Do you go to his home frequently?  
I go almost every day.
18. Nín-jīntiān-wǎnshang-qīdǎn-bān-dào-wǒmen-zhèr-là-tányitán-kéyi-ma?  
Jīntiān-wǎnshang-wǒ-yǒu-yídiǎr-shì.  
Would it be possible for you to come to our (place) here this evening at 7:30 (to chat a while)?  
This evening I have a little matter to attend to.
19. Wǒ-zhèige-zì-xiěde-'duì-bu-duì?  
Nǐ-nèige-zì-xiěde-bú-duì.  
Have I written this character correctly?  
You've written that character incorrectly.
20. Tā-'zěnmó-bù-lái?  
Tā-shuō-tā-méi-yǒu-gōngfú.  
How is it that he's not coming?  
He says he doesn't have time.

LET'S BE REASONABLE

Each of the following sentences contains an expression which makes the meaning absurd or unlikely. Make whatever changes are necessary to turn the sentence into a reasonable statement. For example, Wó-wǎnshang-yìdiǎn-zhōng chī-wǎnfàn 'I eat dinner at 1:00 in the evening' might be changed to Wó-wǎnshang-húdiǎn-zhōng chī-wǎnfàn 'I eat dinner at 6:00 in the evening.'

- 1. Tā-gàosu-wo zhèi-liǎngge-bēnzi yígòng-'yìfēn-qian.
- 2. Tā-shi-qùnian èryuè-sānshiyíhào dào-Zhōngguo-láide.
- 3. Wǒ-dìdi-bāsuì; tā-jīnnian-zài-'zhōngxué-niàn-shū.
- 4. Tā-shi-zuò-gōnggòng-qìchē cóng-Měiguó dào-Zhōngguo-lái-de.
- 5. Tāmen-zài-fángzishang chī-fàn.
- 6. Láohu yídìng-pǎode-hěn-màn.
- 7. 'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-chēshang mǎi-qiānbǐ.
- 8. Nèige-xuésheng cháng-dào-Sān-Yǒu-Shūdiàn-qù-mài-shū.
- 9. Shāndong-zài-Rìběn.
- 10. Tā-shuō ta-zuótian dào-gōngyuán-qu-jiè-shū.

DOUBLE JEOPARDY

Use the word on the right to replace something in the sentence to the left; doing this will require you to make one or more additional changes. Watch out! Your chances of making a mistake are doubled.

- |                                          |             |
|------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. Ní-fǔshang lí-zhèr-hěn-jìn.           | wǒ          |
| 2. Dìdi-shi-nán-háizi.                   | mèimei      |
| 3. Rìběn-lí-Zhōngguo-bù-yuǎn.            | Měiguó      |
| 4. 'Zhōngguo-rén dōu-shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà. | Měiguó-rén  |
| 5. Wǒ-zài-chēshang-mǎi-piào.             | màipiàoyuán |
| 6. Tā-zài-xiǎoxué-niàn-shū.              | wénxué      |
| 7. Xià-shān hěn-róngyì.                  | shàng       |
| 8. Zhōngguo-huà hěn-nán-shuō.            | xiě         |
| 9. Fùqin shi-nán-rén.                    | mǔqin       |
| 10. Zhèiběn-shū 'jǐkuài-qian?            | fángzi      |

NOTES

- 1. In time expressions, larger units precede smaller units: jīnnian-yíyue-sānhao wǎnshang-bāoliǎncānshíjiǎn 'this year, January third, evening, eight-twenty.'

- 2 When a sentence emphasizes the time or place of a past occurrence, rather than the occurrence itself, the following pattern is used:

S (shi) A V de. 'S did V under A time or place conditions.' or 'It was under A time or place conditions that S did V.'

For example:

Tā-shi-'zuótiān-lái-de. 'He came yesterday.' or 'It was yesterday that he came.'

Tā-shi-zuò-'chē-lái-de. 'He came by car (i.e. not on foot).'

In this pattern, shi may be omitted if it is not modified by bu or some other adverb:

Tā-'jīntiān-lái-de. 'He came yesterday'

but:

Tā-bú-shi-'jīntiān-lái-de. 'It wasn't today that he came.' or 'He didn't come today.'

- 3 If the verb of the construction described in Note 2 has a pronoun object, this must come directly after the verb:

Wǒ-shi-'jīntiān-kànjiàn-tā-de. 'It was today that I saw him.'

With the verbs mǎi 'buy,' mài 'sell,' and chī 'eat,' the preferred position for the object is at the end:

Wǒ-shi-'jīntiān-mǎi-de-shū. 'I bought the book today.'

In other cases, the object is either placed right after the verb or is separated from the verb by the particle de:

Wǒ-shi-yíyue-dào-Měiguó-de. or Wǒ-shi-yíyue-dào-de-Měiguó. 'I arrived in America in January.'

See Substitution Table V, p. 148, for further examples.

4. Note the following sentences stating the ordinal occurrence of an action:

Jīntiān-shi-dì-yí cì kànjiàn-tā. '[lit.] Today is the first time seeing him.'

Zhè-shi-dì-èr cì chī-Zhōngguó-fàn. '[lit.] This is the second time eating Chinese food.'

When a sentence on this pattern has a subject, it is normally placed at the very beginning of the sentence:

Wǒ-jīntiān-shi-dì-yí cì kànjiàn-tā. 'Today is the first time I've seen him.' [lit. '(As for) me, today is the first time seeing him.']

Wǒ-zhè-shi-dì-èr cì chī-Zhōngguó-fàn. 'This is the second time I've eaten Chinese food.'

5. It is a common device to pair introductory words of similar or complementary meanings in consecutive clauses in a sentence:

suīrán 'although' . . . . . kěshì 'nevertheless'  
rúguǒ 'if' . . . . . jiù 'then'

For example:

Suírán-tā-shi-'Zhōngguo-rén kěshi-tā-bu-huì shuō-Zhōngguo-huà.  
'Although he's Chinese, he can't speak Chinese.'

Rúguó-wó-yǒu-gōngfu, wǒ-jiù-qu-kàn-'Wáng-Xiānsheng. 'If I had  
the time, (then) I'd go see Mr. King.'

Jiù 'then' is a fixed adverb and hence comes directly before the verb; the other words in the list are movable adverbs, and can be placed either before or after the subject.

6. The doubling of a verb, with or without yì between the two forms, gives a touch of informality to the verb and suggests the idea 'for a while':

Nǐ-kànkàn. or Nǐ-'kànyikàn. 'Take a look.'

Wǒmen-tántan. or Wǒmen-'tányítán. 'Let's talk for a while.'

7. Calendar years are expressed by putting numbers in telephone style (that is, simply listing them) in front of nián 'year':

yī-jiǔ-sì-yī-nián '1941'

## Lesson 12 REVIEW

### PRONUNCIATION REVIEW

#### 1. Review of Two-Syllable Tonal Combinations

The lists in this and the following exercise use vocabulary from Units I and II. Digits indicate tone sequences: e.g. '10' means first tone followed by neutral tone. Asterisks indicate expressions in which the first syllable changes from third tone to second tone.

10	11	12	13	14
sānyue shānshang zhídào jīntiān jiāli gōngfu	shān-dōng Zhōngshān sānfēn tā-shuō gāo-shān fēiji	sānmáo Zhōngwén gōngyuán zhōngxué dōu-lái sāntiáo	dōu-hǎo sānběn qiānbǐ tā-yǒu Dōngběi gāngbǐ	sānkuài shuō-huà shùdiàn gōnggòng chī-fàn sāncì
20	21	22	23	24
xuésheng háizi zuótian chuánshang yánse míngzi	shéi-shuō nín-chī shíyī nín-shuō néng-chī nán-shuō	wénxué suírán néng-xué shéi-lái nán-xué Húnán	nín-hǎo máobǐ bái-zhǐ Húběi hái-yǒu shéi-mǎi	duó-dà yídìng shíhào lí-zhèr chéngwài shéi-mài
30	31	33	33	34
mǔqīn nēige kěshi wǔyue fǔshang zǒude	hěn-gāo wǔfēn mǎi-shū hěn-duō nēizhī Yuándōng	liǎngmáo zhǎo-shéi wǒ-lái nēiguó yǒu-qián xiǎoxué	wúlǐ * hén-shǎo * jiúsǒu * wó-zǒu * yé-xiǎo * hén-yuǎn *	wǒ-qù hěn-dà wǎnfàn xiě-zì zǒu-lù wǔhào
40	41	42	43	44
dìdi mèimei fùqīn gàosu rènshi yìsi	xìng-Gāo diànchē kàn-shū xià-shān tài-duō qìchē	dìtú jiàoyuán xìng-Bái yìzhí dàxué zài-lái	mòshuǐ tài-shǎo zìdiǎn Rìběn mài-bǐ wàng-nǎr	liùkuài shíhào guìxìng pǔ-huà zài-zhèr dào-nèr



II. Review of i and “i”

sì cì	dì di	jǐ zhī	yí cì	shí yī
yì si	sì shí	yì lǐ	shí sì	sì zhī
dì - yī	yì zhí	nǐ - chī	dì - shí	dì - qī
qī zhī	dì - sì	shí zhī	shí cì	yì shí

ANALOGY DRILL

Answer both questions affirmatively. Add yě 'also' in the answer to the second question.

- 1. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā zài-chéng-wàitou-ma? 'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā-ne?
- 2. Shānshang yǒu-yì suǒ-dà-fángzi-ma? 'Xiǎo-fángzi-ne?
- 3. Ní-qǐng-péngyou chī-wǎnfàn-ma? Tā-ne?
- 4. Nǐ-jiā zài-shānshang-ma? 'Tā-jiā-ne?
- 5. Nǐ-jīntian mǎi-běnzǐ-ma? Tā-ne?
- 6. Nǐ-jiā-zài-Húběi-ma? 'Tā-jiā-ne?
- 7. 'Qiánbiar-shi-dà-shān-ma? Hòubiār-ne?
- 8. Nǐ-dào-túshūguǎn-ma? Tā-ne?
- 9. Nǐ-jiā zài-chéng-lǐtou-ma? Nǐ-'péngyou-jiā-ne?
- 10. Nǐ-jiā zài-Zhōngshān-Lù-zuǒbiar-ma? 'Tā-jiā-ne?
- 11. Wáng-Xiānsheng shi-'Shāndong-rén-ma? Wáng-Tàitai-ne?
- 12. Nǐ-jiā-hòutou yǒu-xiǎo-hú-ma? 'Tā-jiā-ne?
- 13. Nǐde-fángzi shi-'lán-yánse-de-ma? 'Tāde-fángzi-ne?
- 14. Nǐ-yào-jiè-shū-ma? Nǐ-péngyou-ne?
- 15. Ní-xǐhuan-kàn-shū-ma? Nǐ-péngyou-ne?
- 16. Nǐ-huì-xiě 'Zhōngguo-zì-ma? Nǐ-péngyou-ne?
- 17. Nǐ-jiā-lí-zhèr hén-yuǎn-ma? 'Tā-jiā-ne?
- 18. Tāmen-dōu-shi-xuésheng-ma? Nǐmen-ne?
- 19. Gōngyuán-lí-zhèr yuǎn-ma? Túshūguǎn-ne?
- 20. Nǐ-niàn 'Zhōngguo-wénxué-ma? Tā-ne?
- 21. 'Zhōngguo-wénxué-róngyì-ma? 'Yīngguo-wénxué-ne?
- 22. Nǐ-néng-shuō Zhōngguo-huà-ma? Tāmen-ne?
- 23. Túshūguǎn lí-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā yuǎn-ma? Gōngyuán-ne?
- 24. Nǐ-néng-kàn jiǎndānde-Zhōngguo-shū-ma? Tāmen-ne?
- 25. Nǐ-zài-dàxué niàn-shū-ma? 'Bái-Xiānsheng-ne?



26. Nǐ-zuò-gōnggòng-qìchē-qù-ma? Tāmen-ne?
27. Cóng-zhèr-yìzhíde jiù-dào-nǐ-jiā-ma? 'Tā-jiā-ne?
28. Gōnggòng-qìchē-zhàn zài-nǐ-jiā-mén-kǒur-ma? 'Tā-jiā-ne?
29. Cóng-zhèr-yìzhíde-wàng-xī shì-nǐ-jiā-ma? 'Tā-jiā-ne?
30. Cóng-zhèr-dào-nǐ-jiā wàng-'dōngbiar-guǎi-ma? Nǐ-'péngyou-jiā-ne?
31. Nǐ-jiā-lí-zhèr yǒu-'bāilǐ-lù-ma? Tā-jiā-ne?
32. Nǐ-jīntian dào-shūdiàn-qu-ma? 'Bái-Xiānsheng-ne?
33. Tā-mǔqīn-shì-jiàoyuán-ma? Tā-'fùqīn-ne?
34. Tā-dìdi zài-'xiǎoxué-niàn-shū-ma? 'Nǐ-dìdi-ne?
35. Tā-shuō-huà shuōde-hěn-kuài-ma? Nǐ-ne?
36. 'Zhèige-màipiàoyuán hén-hǎo-ma? Nèige-ne?
37. Nǐ-zài-chēshang mǎi-piào-ma? Tāmen-ne?
38. Nǐ-mèimei-shísānsuì-ma? 'Tā-mèimei-ne?
39. Ní-yǒu-piào-ma? Tā-ne?
40. Tā-yǒu-háizi-ma? Nǐ-ne?
41. Tā-shì-'Měiguó-rén-ma? Nǐ-ne?
42. Nǐ-fùqīn-zuò-shì-ma? 'Tā-fùqīn-ne?
43. Tā-dìdi-zuò-shì-ma? 'Nǐ-dìdi-ne?
44. Tā-shì-zuò-'chē-láide-ma? Nǐ-ne?
45. Nǐ-míngtian bàifāng-péngyou-ma? Tā-ne?
46. Nǐ-shì-zuò-'fēijī-lái-de-ma? Tā-ne?
47. Nǐ-shì-'qùnián-lái-de-ma? Tā-ne?
48. Zhèiběn-shū yǒu-yìsi-ma? 'Nèiběn-ne?
49. Nǐ-rènshi 'Bái-Xiānsheng-ma? Tā-ne?
50. 'Bái-Xiānsheng xiǎng-dào-Rìběn-qu-ma? Nǐ-ne?
51. Nǐ-shì-zuò-'chuán-lái-de-ma? Tā-ne?
52. Tā-shì-'zuótian-lái-de-ma? Nǐ-ne?
53. Nǐ-shì-cóng-'Zhōngguó-lái-de-ma? Tāmen-ne?
54. Nǐ-rènshi-nèige-rén-ma? Tā-ne?
55. Tā-shì-sānyue-'wǔhào-lái-de-ma? Nǐ-ne?
56. Nǐ-shì-jīntian yùjian-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-de-ma? 'Bái-Xiānsheng-ne?
57. Tā-shì-zuò gōnggòng-qìchē-lái-de-ma? Nǐmen-ne?
58. Nǐ-shì-xiān-dào-Rìběn hòu-dào-'Zhōngguó-qù-de-ma? Tā-ne?
59. Tā-jiā zài-Měiguó-ma? 'Nǐ-jiā-ne?
60. Tā-shì-'qùnián-lái-de-ma? Nǐ-ne?
61. Nǐ-xīwang dào-'Zhōngguó-qù-ma? Tā-ne?

62. 'Qiānbǐ-zài-zhèr-ma? 'Gāngbǐ-ne?
63. Tāmen-zài-diànchēshang mǎi-piào-ma? Chuánshang-ne?
64. Zhèige-dàxué yǒu-'Yīngguo-xuésheng-ma? 'Měiguó-xuésheng-ne?
65. 'Chuánshangde-rén dōu-shi-'Zhōngguo-rén-ma? Fēijiāshang-ne?
66. Túshūguǎn lí-zhèr-yuǎn-ma? Shūdiàn-ne?
67. 'Zhōngguo-wénxué nán-xué-ma? 'Yīngguo-wénxué-ne?
68. Běi-Hú-lí-nèr yǒu-'bāilǐ-lù-ma? Xī-Shān-ne?
69. Ní-xǐhuan-zuò-chuán-ma? Fēijiā-ne?
70. Zài-'nèige-túshūguǎn yǒu-hěn-duō-'Zhōngguo-rén-kàn-shū-ma? 'Wàiguó-rén-ne?
71. Tā-shi-qùnian-'bāyue-lái-de-ma? Nín-ne?
72. Tā-shi-zuótian mǎi-de-shū-ma? Nǐ-ne?
73. Ní-xiǎng qīyue-sìhào-qù-ma? Tā-ne?
74. Tā-bǐ-'Bái-Xiānsheng-gāo-ma? Nǐ-ne?
75. Tā-shi-qùnian líkai-jiā-de-ma? Nǐ-ne?
76. Tā-niànde-hǎo-ma? Nǐ-ne?
77. Nǐ-lái-jiè-shū-ma? Tā-ne?
78. Tā-bǐ-'Bái-Xiānsheng xuéde-hǎo-ma? Nǐ-ne?
79. Nǐ-shi-cóng-Měiguó dào-'Zhōngguo-lái-de-ma? Tā-ne?
80. Tā-'Zhōngguo-huà shuōde-hǎo-ma? Rìběn-huà-ne?

# REPLACEMENT DRILL

Replace some element in the sentence to the left with the word to the right.

- |                                      |          |
|--------------------------------------|----------|
| 1. Tā-shi-'Rìběn-rén.                | Zhōngguo |
| 2. Tā-xǐhuan-niàn-shū.               | xiě-zì   |
| 3. Tā-yǒu-mèimei.                    | dìdi     |
| 4. Tā-'Zhōngguo-huà shuōde-hěn-kuài. | màn      |
| 5. Tā-fùqin shi-jiàoyuán.            | mǔqin    |
| 6. Tā-míngzi jiào-Láohu.             | Xiǎomèi  |
| 7. Tā-bu-mǎi-zìdiǎn.                 | běnzì    |
| 8. Tā-jiā-zài-shānshang.             | shānxià  |
| 9. Dōngbian-shi-túshūguǎn.           | shūdiàn  |
| 10. Wǒ-jiā-zài-Húnán.                | Shāndong |
| 11. Fángzi-'lǐtou-yǒu-rén.           | wàitou   |
| 12. Wǒde-fángzi zài-zhōngjiār.       | zuōbiar  |

- |                                               |          |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------|
| 13. Wǒ-zài-zhōngxué niàn-shū.                 | dàxué    |
| 14. 'Zhōngguo-zì róngyì-xiě.                  | nán      |
| 15. Wǒ-jia lí-túshūguǎn-tài-yuǎn.             | jìn      |
| 16. Wǒ-néng-shuō Zhōngguo-huà.                | huì      |
| 17. Wǒ-qu-'jiè-shū.                           | mài      |
| 18. Wǒ-dào-túshūguǎn.                         | gōngyuán |
| 19. Wǒ-huì-xiě 'Zhōngguo-zì.                  | néng     |
| 20. Dào-tā-jia cóng-zhèr-wàng-dōng-guǎi.      | xí       |
| 21. Tā-shi-zuò-'diànchē-lái-de.               | qìchē    |
| 22. Zhōngshān-Lù-hòutou yǒu-gōngyuán.         | qiántou  |
| 23. Nèige-hú shi-Běi-Hú.                      | Nán-Hú   |
| 24. Húde-yòubiar shi-'Qián-Xiānsheng-jia.     | hòubiar  |
| 25. Shānshang yǒu-yìsuǒr-fángzi.              | sānsuǒr  |
| 26. Rén-zài-fángzi-lǐtou.                     | wàitou   |
| 27. Túshūguǎn yǒu-rén-kàn-shū.                | jiè      |
| 28. Mèimei-bǐ-dìdi-dà.                        | xiǎo     |
| 29. Cóng-zhèr wàng-'bèi-guǎi shi-wǒ-jia.      | dōng     |
| 30. Zhèiběn-shū-bù-hǎo.                       | zhēn     |
| 31. Tā-dìdi-mǎi-shū.                          | zuò-shì  |
| 32. Xiànzài chàbuduō-yìdiǎn-zhōng.            | sān      |
| 33. Xiànzài chà-yíkè-sāndiǎn.                 | wǔfēn    |
| 34. Fēiji-bǐ-qìchē-kuài.                      | chuán    |
| 35. Tāde-míngzi hěn-qíguài.                   | bù       |
| 36. Tā-cháng-qu bàifang-péngyou.              | lái      |
| 37. Tā-rènshi 'Wáng-Xiānsheng.                | yùjian   |
| 38. Nèiběn-shū méi-yǒu-yìsì.                  | hén      |
| 39. Tā-yídìng-lái.                            | xǐhuan   |
| 40. Tā-xīwang-kànjian 'Gāo-Xiānsheng.         | yídìng   |
| 41. Wǒ-zhèi-shi-dì-yíci lái-Měiguó.           | sān      |
| 42. Shi-zuò-'chuán-hǎo háishi-zuò-'fēiji-hǎo? | kuài     |
| 43. Tāmen-cóng-zhèr wàng-nán-zǒu.             | bèi      |
| 44. Tāmen-dōu-xuéde-hěn-kuài.                 | zhēn     |
| 45. Nǐ-shi-'jiè-'shū-lái-de-ma?               | dìtú     |

# INSERTION DRILL

At an appropriate place in each of the following sentences, insert the word to the right of the sentence.

1. Wó-'měitiān dào-túshūguǎn-qu. dōu
2. Wǒ-yìdiǎn-bàn-zhōng-lái. zài
3. Wǒ-shi-dì-yíci lái-Zhōngguo. yě
4. Wó-zǒu-lù bǐ-tā-kuài. gèng
5. Tā-dìdi zài-zhōngxué-niàn-shū. bú
6. Jīntian wǒ-dào-túshūguǎn-qu. wǎnshang
7. Gōngyuán-qiántou yǒu-yìtiáo-lù. dà
8. Zhōngjiārde-fángzi-shi-shéide? zài
9. Rúguǒ-bú-dào-gōngyuán, dào-túshūguǎn-qu. jiù
10. Zhèizhī-bí-hǎo. zhēn
11. Zhèige-zì-jǐāndān. bù
12. 'Wáng-Xiǎojie-shuōde-kuài. yìdiǎr
13. Xiànzài-'sìdiǎn-yíkè. chà
14. Wǒ-jīnnian-shíbasuì. chàbuduō
15. Nǐmen-rènshi nèiwèi-xiānsheng-ma? dōu
16. Míngtian-wǒ-lái. zài
17. Nèiběn-shū hén-yǒu-yìsi. méi
18. Tā-bù-chī-fàn. zěnmó
19. Nèige-rén bù-chī-fàn. xǐhuan
20. 'Shísuìde-háizi yě-jiè-shū-ma? néng
21. Wǒ-sānyue-yíhào líkai-zhèr. xiǎng
22. Tā-rúguǒ-sìdiǎn-bù-lái, wǒ-jiù-zǒu. bàn
23. Nèige-háizi-jiào-shénmo? míngzi
24. Wǒ-zhèige-zì xiěde-'duì-bú-duì? qǐng-wèn
25. Cóng-zhèr wàng-dōng-zǒu. yìzhíde

## ANSWERING QUESTIONS

Read aloud and answer in Chinese.

1. Gāo-Tàitai-qu-'mǎi-shū. Gāo-Xiānsheng-qu-'jiè-shū. 'Shéi-qu-mǎi-shū?
2. 'Wáng-Xiānshengde-jiā zài-chéng-lǐtou. 'Gāo-Xiānshengde-jiā zài-chéng-wàitou. 'Shéide-jiā zài-chéng-lǐtou?

3. 'Qiántou-yǒu-gōngyuán. 'Hòutou-yǒu-hú. 'Qiántou-yǒu-shénmo?
4. Húde-zuǒbiar shi-xiǎo-gōngyuán. Yòubiār shi-'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā.  
'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā zài-nǎr?
5. Zhōngshan-Lù-zuǒbiar yǒu-dà-gōngyuán. Yòubiār yǒu-xiǎo-hú. Dà-gōngyuán-zài-nǎr?
6. 'Máo-Xiānsheng mài-shū. 'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-dàxué-niàn-shū. 'Shéi-niàn-shū?
7. 'Bái-Xiānsheng dào-túshūguǎn-qu-jiē-shū. 'Máo-Xiānsheng qu-kàn-shū.  
'Shéi-qu-jiē-shū?
8. 'Bái-Xiānsheng néng-kàn-Zhōngguo-shū. 'Máo-Xiānsheng néng-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì. Shéi-néng-kàn-Zhōngguo-shū?
9. Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-túshūguǎn-hěn-jìn. 'Qián-Xiáojie-jiā lí-túshūguǎn-hén-yuǎn. Shéi-jiā lí-túshūguǎn-hěn-jìn?
10. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-shuō Zhōngguo-zì-róngyì-xiě. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō 'bù-róngyì-xiě. Shéi-shuō-Zhōngguo-zì 'bù-róngyì-xiě?
11. Túshūguǎn-lí-zhèr 'sānlǐ-lù. Gōngyuán-lí-zhèr 'bānlǐ-lù. Túshūguǎn-lí-zhèr 'jǐlǐ-lù?
12. 'Bái-Xiānsheng shì-xuésheng. 'Qián-Xiānsheng shì-jiàoyuán. Shéi-niàn-shū?
13. 'Bái-Xiānsheng xiān-dào-túshūguǎn 'hòu-dào-Gāo-jia-qu. Tā-'xiān-dào-nǎr?
14. 'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué niàn-shū. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng zài-Měiguó-dàxué niàn-shū. 'Shéi-zài-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué niàn-shū?
15. 'Wáng-Tàitai yǒu-ge-'nǚ-háizi. 'Gāo-Tàitai yǒu-ge-'nán-háizi. 'Shéi-yǒu-'nǚ-háizi?
16. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng cóng-shūdiàn-lái. Máo-Xiānsheng cóng-gōngyuán-lái. Shéi-cóng-gōngyuán-lái?
17. 'Qián-Xiānsheng zuò-'qìchē. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng zuò-'diànchē. 'Qián-Xiānsheng zuò-'shénmo-chē?
18. 'Gāo-Xiáojie dì-'yíci-lái. 'Qián-Xiáojie dì-'sāncì-lái. 'Gāo-Xiáojie dì-'jǐcì-lái?
19. 'Bái-Xiānsheng zuò-'chuán-lái-de. 'Máo-Xiānsheng zuò-'fēijī-lái-de. 'Bái-Xiānsheng shì-zuò-'shénmo-lái-de?
20. Fēijī-kuài. Chē-màn. 'Shénmo-kuài?
21. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng 'qùnián-líkai-Měiguó. 'Máo-Xiānsheng 'jīnnián-líkai-Měiguó. 'Shéi-qùnián-líkai-Měiguó?
22. 'Qián-Xiānsheng yùjian-'Gāo-Xiānsheng. 'Máo-Xiáojie yùjian-'Bái-Xiānsheng. 'Shéi-yùjian-Qián-Xiānsheng?
23. 'Bái-Xiānsheng jiè-'Yīngwén-shū. 'Máo-Xiānsheng jiè-'Zhōngwén-shū. 'Shéi-jiè-Yīngwén-shū?
24. Dìdì zài-'zhōngxué-niàn-shū. Mèimei zài-'xiǎoxué-niàn-shū. Dìdì-zài-'nǎr-niàn-shū?

25. 'Wáng-Xiáojie xǐhuan-niàn-'Yīngwén. 'Máo-Xiáojie xǐhuan-niàn-'Zhōng-wén. 'Shéi-xǐhuan-niàn-Yīngwén?
26. 'Wáng-Xiáojie cháng-dào-túshūguǎn. 'Máo-Xiáojie bù-cháng-dào-túshūguǎn. 'Shéi-cháng-dào-túshūguǎn?
27. Gāo-Xiānsheng yǒu-tàitai. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng méi-yǒu-tàitai. 'Shéi-yǒu-tàitai?
28. Mǎipiàoyuán rènshi-'Bái-Xiānsheng. Wǒ-'bú-rènshi-Bái-Xiānsheng. 'Shéi-rènshi-Bái-Xiānsheng?
29. 'Qián-Xiáojie dào-shūdiàn-lái. 'Wáng-Xiáojie 'bú-dào-shūdiàn-lái. 'Shéi-dào-shūdiàn-lái?
30. Wǒ-qu-bàifang 'Gāo-Xiānsheng. Tā-qu-bàifang 'Wáng-Xiānsheng. 'Shéi-qu-bàifang 'Wáng-Xiānsheng?
31. 'Bái-Xiānsheng dào-Rìběn. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng dào-Yīngguo. 'Shéi-dào-Rìběn?
32. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng niàn-shū. 'Máo-Xiānsheng zuò-shi. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng zuò-shénmo?
33. Wó-xǐhuan-zuò-chuán. Tā-xǐhuan-zuò-fēijī. Tā-xǐhuan-zuò-chuán-hái-shi-xǐhuan-zuò-fēijī?
34. Nǐ-shuōde bí-wó-hǎo. Tā-shuōde-bí-nǐ-'gèng-hǎo. 'Shéi-shuōde-hǎo?
35. Dào-túshūguǎn wàng-'dōng-guǎi. Dào-shūdiàn wàng-'xī-guǎi. Dào-túshūguǎn wàng-'nár-guǎi?

## NARRATIVE

Read aloud and translate into English.

Wǒ-fùqin-mǔqin zuótian-cóng-Yīngguo dào-'Zhōngguo-lái. Tāmen-shi-'xiān-dào-Rìběn 'hòu-dào-Zhōngguo-lái-de. Tāmen-hén-xǐhuan dào-'wàiguo-qu. Tāmen-'gèng-xǐhuan dào-'Zhōngguo lái. Zuótian-wǎnshang wó-qǐng-tāmen-qu-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn. Tāmen-suírán-shi dì-yí-cì-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn, kěshi 'hén-xǐhuan-chī. Wǒ-fùqin chīde-hěn-duō. Tā-gàosu-wǒ tā-zài-Rìběn kànjiàn-hěn-duō tāde-péngyou. Tā-hái-gàosu-wǒ xiànzài-wǒ-dìdi-mèimei dōu-hěn-gāo. Wǒmen-zài-gōnggòng-qìchēshang yùjian-'Wáng-Tàitai. Tā-kànjian-wǒde-fùqin-mǔqin tā-qǐng-tāmen-míngtian dào-tā-jiā-qu-chī-fàn. Tā-wèn: "'Míngtian-wǎnshang yǒu-gōngfu-ma?" Wó-mǔqin-shuō: "Xièxie, yǒu-gōngfu." Wǒ-fùqin-shuō: "Wó-hěn-xīwang dào-yíge-'Zhōngguo-péngyou-jiā-qù."



## DIALOGUE

Read aloud, preferably with two students acting out the roles, and translate into English.

'Zhāng-Xiānsheng 'Wáng-Xiānsheng liǎngge-rén zài-gōnggòng-qìchē-shang yùjian-tán-huà.

Zhāng: Wáng-Xiānsheng, 'háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn hǎo-ma?

Wáng: 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng, nín-hǎo-ma?

Zhāng: Fǔshang-dōu-hǎo-ma?

Wáng: 'Dōu-hǎo, xièxie-nín.

Zhāng: Nín-dào-nǎr-qu?

Wáng: Wǒ-qu-bàifang yíge-péngyou. Nín-ne?

Zhāng: Wǒ-dào-túshūguǎn-qu-kàn-shū.

Wáng: Zhèr-'túshūguǎn wǒ-hái-bù-zhīdào zài-nǎr-ne. Wó-yé-hén-xǐhuan dào-'túshūguǎn-qù-kàn-shū.

Zhāng: Nín-bù-zhīdào túshūguǎn-zài-nǎr-ma?

Wáng: Wǒ-bù-zhīdào-ne.

Zhāng: Lí-Zhōngshān-Gōngyuán bù-yuǎn. Hěn-róngyi-zhǎo. Zuótian-wǎnshang wǒ-yùjian-'Qián-Xiānsheng. Tā-shuō sānyue-èrshiwǔhào tā-dào-'Rìběn-qu.

Wáng: Shì. Zuótian tā-dào-wǒ-jiā-qu. Tā-yě-gàosu-wǒ sānyue-dào-Rìběn.

Zhāng: Wó-xiǎng qǐng-ta-chī-fàn. Yé-qǐng-nín, qǐng-nín-'tàitai liǎngge-háizi dōu-lái.

Wáng: Xièxie-nín.

Zhāng: Nín-shíjiǔhào yǒu-gōngfu-ma? Wó-xiǎng-shíjiǔhào-wǎnshang-qǐng.

Wáng: Yǒu-gōngfu. Xièxie-nín.

Zhāng: Qǐng-nín-tàitai-háizi yídìng-lái.

Wáng: Wǒmen-yídìng-lái.

Zhāng: Nín-zài-nǎr-xià-chē?

Wáng: Qiántou-bù-yuǎn jiù-shi-wǒ-péngyou-jiā. Wǒ-jiù-zài-zhèige-chē-zhàn xià-chē.

Zhāng: Zài-guò-liǎngge-lù-kǒur, wàng-xī-guǎi, jiù-dào-túshūguǎn. Wǒ-zài túshūguǎn-mén-kǒur xià-chē. Zàijian. Shíjiǔhào yídìng-lái.

Wáng: Yídìng-lái, yídìng-lái.



## QUESTIONNAIRE

Assume both roles in the following oral questionnaire, to practice getting information about another person as well as providing it about yourself.

Q: May I ask, what is your [sur]name?

A: My [sur]name is King.

Q: What is your Chinese given name?

A: I don't have a Chinese given name.

Q: When did you come to China?

A: I came on February 1.

Q: You speak Chinese very well. Did you study it in America?

A: I studied in America. I speak badly.

Q: You speak really well. Who is in your family?

A: I have a father, mother, and younger brother.

Q: How old is your younger brother? Does he study?

A: My younger brother is ten. He studies in elementary school.

Q: How old [lit. ten and how many years] are you this year?

A: I'm eighteen.

Q: What does your father do?

A: He works at a university.

Q: How about your mother?

A: My mother doesn't work.

Q: Did you come by boat or by plane from America to China?

A: I came first from America to England, then from England to China. I came from America to England by boat, and from England to China by plane.

Q: Are you coming to China to study or to work?

A: I'm coming to study.

Q: At what university are you studying?

A: I'm studying at Far Eastern University.

Q: What are you studying?

A: I'm studying literature.

Q: Are you studying Chinese literature or foreign literature?

A: I'm studying English literature, and also studying Chinese literature.

Q: My home is east of Sun Yatsen Road, number 15. If you have time, I hope you will come often to my home. We'll talk a while.

A: Thank you. If I have time I will certainly go to your home to call on you.

## UNIT III



## Lesson 13 GETTING ACQUAINTED



" 'Gāo-Xiáojie, ní-hǎo-ma? "

Dialogue: Mr. White and Miss Gao meet on the bus and get further acquainted.

Bái : 'Gāo-Xiáojie, ní-hǎo-ma?  
Shàng-nǎr-qu-le?

Miss Gao, how are you? Where  
have you been?

Gāo: 'Bái-Xiānsheng, nín-hǎo-  
ma? Wǒ-shàng-xuéxiào-  
qu-le. Xiànzài-huì-jiā.

Hello, Mr. White. I've been at  
school. I'm on my way home  
now.

Bái : Nǐ-cóng-xuéxiào huí-jiā-  
hén-wǎn-ne.

You're returning home very late,  
(aren't you?)

Gāo: Yīnwei-xià-kè-yǐhòu  
wǒmen-xuéxiào-yǒu-yì-  
diǎr-shì, suǒyì-'wǎn-le-  
yìdiǎr. Nín-dào-nǎr-qu?  
Shì-dào-wǒmen-jiā-qu-  
ma?

5

After class we had something to  
do at school, so I'm a little late.  
Where are you going? [Are you  
going] to our home?

Bái : Shì.

Yes.

Gāo: Jīntian-wǎnshàng wǒ-fù-  
qīn-qīng-nín-chī-fàn,  
'duì-bu-duì?

15

My father invited you to dinner  
this evening, isn't that so?



	wǎnshang wǒmen-hái-qǐng-le yíwèi-'Yīngguo-péngyou-ne. Nín-rènshi-ma?	60	have also invited an English friend. (I take it) you're acquainted?
Bái :	Wǒ-'bú-rènshi. Shì-xiānsheng, shì-tàitai, háishi-xiǎojiē-ne?		No, I'm not. Who is it? [lit. Is it a gentleman, a married lady, or a girl?]
Gāo :	Shì-xiānsheng. Wǒ-fùqin méi-gàosu-nín-ma?	65	It's a gentleman. Didn't my father tell you?
Bái :	Tā-'méi-shuō. 'Jiù-shuō shì-yíwèi-'Yīngguo-péngyou.		He didn't say. He said only that it was an English friend.
Gāo :	Jīntian-wǎnshang nǐmen-jiù-rènshi-le.	70	You'll get acquainted this evening.
Bái :	Lǐ-fǔshang hái-yǒu-'duō-yuǎn?		How much farther is it to your home?
Gāo :	Yǐjīng-kuài-dào le. Zài-guò-'sìge-lù-kǒu jiù-dào le.	75	We'll soon be there. It's just four more blocks [lit. After passing four more intersections then we'll arrive.]
Bái :	Wǒ-dì-'yí cì-lái. Rúguǒ-méi-yujiàn-ni, hěn-nán-zhǎo-le.		(This is) the first time I've come (to your home). If I hadn't met you, it would have been hard to find.
Gāo :	'Bái-Xiānsheng, qǐng-wèn, xiànzài-'jídìǎn-zhōng-le? Wó-zǎochen-hěn-máng. Chīle-zǎofan-jiù-zǎole, wàngle-dài-biǎo-le.	80	Mr. White, [may I ask,] what time is it [lit. has it become]? I was very busy this morning. I left right after breakfast [lit. after eating breakfast I left immediately], and forgot to wear my watch.
Bái :	Xiànzài chà-yíkè-qīdiǎn.	85	It's now quarter of seven.
Gāo :	Dào-jíā jiù-chàbùduō-qī-diǎn le.		By the time we get home it will be just about seven.

# VOCABULARY

bén	stupid (SV)
biǎo	watch, timepiece (N)
biyè	graduate (IV) [lit. finish job]
cōngmíng	intelligent, clever, bright (SV) [lit. clever bright]
dài	wear (on the hands or head) (TV)
diànyǐng	motion picture, movie (N) [lit. electric shadow]
gāozhōng	higher middle school (N) [lit. high middle]



'huānyíng	welcome (TV) [lit. pleased receive]
huí	return (to) (TV)
jíle	in the extreme, extremely [lit. extremely finished] (Note 17)
kǎo	take <u>or</u> give an examination (in a subject, or for school) (TV)
kǎoshì	take <u>or</u> give an examination (IV) [lit. test try]
kè	class (N) lesson (M)
kèqi	polite, ceremonious, formal (SV) [lit. guest air]
le	(suffix indicating perfective aspect: Notes 1-8 below)
máng	busy (SV)
máfan	cause trouble to, disturb (TV) troublesome (SV)
niánjí	year of school (M) [lit. year rank]
suóyì	therefore (MA)
wǎn	late (SV)
wàng	forget (V)
xīngqī	week (N) [lit. star period] (Notes 13-14 below)
xuéxiào	school (N) [lit. study school]
yǐhòu	after, afterwards (TW) [lit. take rear] (Note 11 below)
yǐjīng	already (AD) [lit. already pass]
yǐqián	before, previously (TW) [lit. take front] (Note 11 below)
yīnwei	because, since (MA) [lit. because be]
yònggōng	work hard, be studious (V) [lit. use service]
yòu	again (AD)
zǎochen	morning, forenoon (TW) [lit. early morning]
zǎofàn	breakfast (N) [lit. early food]

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                                |                                          |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| lái                            | come                                     |
| lái-le                         | came                                     |
| 1. Tāmen-'dōu-lái-le.          | They've all come.                        |
| bìyè                           | graduate                                 |
| bìyè-le                        | graduated                                |
| 2. Tā-dìdi qùnian-jiù-bìyè-le. | His younger brother graduated last year. |

- |     |                                    |                                                         |
|-----|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
|     | zǎochen<br>zuótian-zǎochen         | morning<br>yesterday morning                            |
| 3.  | Nǐ-zuótian-zǎochen dào-nǎr-qù-le?  | Where did you go yesterday morning?                     |
|     | mǎi-shū-qu<br>mǎi-shū-qu-le        | go to buy books<br>gone to buy books                    |
| 4.  | Tā-bú-zài-jiā, mǎi-shū-qu-le.      | He's not at home, (he's) gone to buy some books.        |
|     | chī-fàn<br>chī-fàn-le              | eat food<br>have eaten                                  |
| 5.  | Nǐ-chī-fàn-le-ma?                  | Have you eaten?                                         |
|     | chī-fàn-le<br>chī-le-fàn-le        | have eaten<br>have eaten                                |
| 6.  | Nǐ-chī-le-fàn-le-ma?               | Have you eaten?                                         |
|     | dàole-túshūguǎn<br>jiù-jiè-shū     | arrived at the library<br>then take out books           |
| 7.  | Tā-dàole-túshūguǎn jiù-jiè-shū.    | When he gets to the library, he'll take out some books. |
|     | jiù-jiè-shū<br>jiù-jiè-shū-le      | then take out books<br>then took out books              |
| 8.  | Tā-dàole-túshūguǎn jiù-jiè-shū-le. | After he got to the library, he took out some books.    |
|     | huí<br>huí-jiā                     | return (to a place)<br>return home                      |
| 9.  | Nǐ-'shénmo-shíhou-huí-jiā?         | When are you returning home?                            |
|     | huí-jiā<br>huí-jiā-le              | return home<br>returned home                            |
| 10. | Tā-'mǎile-zìdiǎn jiù-huí-jiā-le.   | He returned home after buying the dictionary.           |
|     | zǎofàn<br>chīle-zǎofàn             | breakfast<br>having eaten breakfast                     |
| 11. | Wǒ-chīle-zǎofàn jiù-zǒu.           | I'll leave after [eating] breakfast.                    |
|     | biǎo<br>mǎile-biǎo                 | watch<br>bought the watch                               |
| 12. | Wǒ-mǎile-biǎo jiù-huí-jiā.         | I'll return home after I've bought the watch.           |
|     | dài<br>dài-biǎo                    | wear<br>wear a watch                                    |
| 13. | Wǒ-měitiān dōu-dài-biǎo.           | I wear a watch every day.                               |
|     | wǎn<br>wǎnle                       | late<br>become late                                     |
| 14. | Xiànzài-wǎnle, wǒ-yào-zǒu.         | It's [gotten to be] late. I must go.                    |

- cōngmíng  
cōngmíngde-xuésheng  
15. 'Gāo-Xiǎojié shì-yíge-cōng-  
míngde-xuésheng.

clever, bright  
bright student  
Miss Gao is a bright student.

- bèn  
bènde-duō  
16. Wó-bǐ-tāmen-'bènde-duō.

stupid  
much more stupid  
I'm a lot more stupid than they  
are.

- máng  
'máng-bu-máng?  
17. Nǐ-xiànzài máng-bu-máng?

busy  
busy or not?  
Are you busy now?

- kèqì  
zhēn-kèqì  
18. 'Zhōngguó-rén 'zhēn-kèqì.

polite  
really polite  
Chinese are really polite.

- jiè-yìběn-shū  
jièle-yìběn-shū  
19. Wǒ-zuótiān jièle-yìběn-shū.

borrow a book  
borrowed a book  
I borrowed one book yesterday.

- jièle-yìběn-shū  
jièle-yìběn-shū-le  
'hái-yào-jiè-yìběn  
20. Wǒ-jīntiān jièle-yìběn-shū-  
le, 'hái-yào-jiè-yìběn.

borrowed one book  
have borrowed one book  
want to borrow another one  
I've borrowed one book today  
and want to borrow another.

- yǐjīng  
yǐjīng-qǐngle  
21. Wó-yǐjīng-qǐngle 'sānge-  
péngyou-le.

already  
already invited  
I've already invited three  
friends.

- xīngqī  
yíge-xīngqī  
22. 'Yíge-xīngqī yǒu-'qītiān.

week  
one week  
A week has seven days.

- xīngqītiān  
xīngqīyī  
23. Tā-xīngqī'tiān-lái-de, xīng-  
qī'yī-zǒu-de.

Sunday  
Monday  
He arrived on Sunday and left on  
Monday.

- diànyǐngr  
kàn-diànyǐngr  
24. Wó-měi-xīngqīliù kàn-diàn-  
yǐngr.

movie  
see a movie  
I go to the movies every Satur-  
day.

- yíci  
yíci-diànyǐngr  
25. Wó-měi-xīngqī kàn-yíci-  
diànyǐngr.

one time  
one movie  
I see one movie a week.

xuéxiào  
zài-'něige-xuéxiào?

school  
at what school?

26. Nǐ-zài-'něige-xuéxiào-niàn-shū?

zǒule  
kuài-zǒule

27. 'Bái-Xiānsheng kuài-zǒule.

kǎo  
kǎo-shū

28. Wǒmen-'míngtiān-kǎo-shū.

kǎo  
kǎo-dàxué

29. Wǒmen-bìyè jiù-kǎo-dàxué.

kǎoshì  
'jiù-kǎoshìle

30. Wǒmen-xuéxiào jiù-yào-kǎo-shìle.

kè  
shàng-kè  
yào-shàng-kè-le

31. Wǒ-xiànzài yào-shàng-kè-le.

kè  
dì-sānkè

32. Wǒmen-jīntiān yào-niàn-dì-sānkè-le.

yòu  
'yòu-láile

33. Tā-'zuótiān-láile. Jīntiān tā-'yòu-láile.

Zhōngguó-zì  
nán-xiě  
nán-niàn

34. 'Zhōngguó-zì 'yòu-nán-xiě  
'yòu-nán-niàn.

máfan

35. Nǐ-bú-yào-máfan-ta.

máfan

36. Zuò-zhèige-shì hěn-máfan.

yǐqián  
shàng-chē-yǐqián

37. Shàng-chē-yǐqián yào-mǎi-piào.

At what school are you studying?

have left  
will soon have left

Mr. White will leave very soon.

take an examination  
have examinations

We have examinations tomorrow.

take an examination  
take an examination for college

After graduating we take the exams for college.

examine or be examined  
will soon have examinations

Our school is about to have exams.

class  
go to class  
will go to class

I'm going to class now.

lesson  
third lesson

We're going to study Lesson Three today.

again  
came again

He came yesterday. He came again today.

Chinese characters  
hard to write  
hard to read

Chinese characters are [both] hard to write and hard to read.

cause trouble to  
Don't disturb him.

troublesome

It's a lot of trouble to do this job.

before  
before getting on the street-car

Before you get on the car you have to buy a ticket.

- yǐhòu  
shàng-chē-yǐhòu  
38. Shàng-chē-yǐhòu yào-mǎi-piào.

after  
after getting on the car  
After you get on the car you have to buy a ticket.

- shíhou  
shàng-chē-de-shíhou  
39. Shàng-chē-de-shíhou yào-mǎi-piào.

time  
when getting on the car  
When you get on the car you have to buy a ticket.

- wǒ-méi-yǒu-qián  
suóyī  
bù-néng-mǎi-shū  
40. Wǒ-méi-yǒu-qián, suóyī-bù-néng-mǎi-shū.

I don't have any money  
therefore, so  
can't buy books  
I don't have any money, so I can't buy any books.

- yīnwei  
yīnwei-wǒ-méi-yǒu-qián  
41. Yīnwei-wǒ-méi-yǒu-qián, suóyī-bù-néng-mǎi-shū.

because, since  
since I don't have any money  
Since I don't have any money, I can't buy any books.

- yònggōng  
hěn-yònggōng  
42. Nèige-xuésheng hěn-yònggōng.

studious, hard-working  
very diligent  
That student works very hard.

- bù-chī  
bù-chī-le  
43. Xièxie, wǒ-bù-chīle.

not eat  
not eat any more  
Thanks, I won't have any more.

- niánjí  
èrniánjí  
44. Tā-bú-zài-èrniánjí-le.

year of school  
second year of school  
He's no longer in the second year.

- gāozhōng  
niàn-gāozhōng  
45. Tā-xiānzài bú-niàn-gāozhōng-le.

higher middle school  
study in higher middle school  
He's no longer in higher middle school [now].

- 'huānyíng  
dào-wǒ-jiā-lái  
46. Wǒ-huānyíng-nín-míngtiān dào-wǒ-jiā-lái.

welcome  
come to my home  
I look forward to your coming to my home tomorrow.

- jíle  
hǎojíle  
47. Tāde-Zhōngguó-huà hǎojíle.

awfully  
awfully good  
His Chinese is awfully good.

- lái  
'méi-yǒu-lái  
48. Tāmen-'méi-yǒu-lái.

came  
did not come  
They didn't come.

- láile  
'méi-lái  
49. Tā-'hái-méi-lái-ne.  
came  
did not come  
He still hasn't come.
- láile  
méi-you  
50. Tā-'láile-méi-you?  
came  
not have  
Did he come?
- bù-chī-le  
51. Nǐ-bù-chī-le-ma?  
not eat any more  
Aren't you eating any more?
- méi-yǒu-bǐ  
méi-bǐ  
52. Nǐ-méi-bǐ-ma?  
not have a pen  
not have a pen  
Don't you have a pen?
- shàng-xué  
xīngqīliù  
53. Wǒmen-xīngqīliù bú-shàng-xué.  
attend school  
Saturday  
We don't go to school on Saturday.
- shàng-zhōngxué  
shàng-dàxué  
54. Nǐ-shàng-'zhōngxué hái-shì-shàng-'dàxué?  
attend middle school  
attend college  
Do you go to middle school or college?
- shàng-Yīngguó  
55. Tā-kuài-shàng-Yīngguó-le.  
go to England  
He's going to England soon.
- shàng-xīngqī  
zuò-shénmo?  
56. Nǐ-shàng-xīngqī zuò-shénmo-le?  
last week  
do what?  
What did you do last week?
- xià-xīngqī  
xià-xīngqīsān  
57. Wǒ-xià-xīngqīsān qu-'kàn-diànyǐngr.  
next week  
next Wednesday  
I'm going to see a movie next Wednesday.
- niàn-xiǎoxué  
niàn-zhōngxué  
58. Nǐ-dìdi-niàn-'xiǎoxué hái-shì-niàn-'zhōngxué?  
study in grade school  
study in middle school  
Is your younger brother going to grade school or middle school?
- gāozhōng-'jǐniánjí?  
niàn-'jǐniánjí?  
59. Nǐ-niàn-gāozhōng-jǐniánjí?  
what year of higher middle school?  
be in what year of school?  
What year of higher middle school are you in?
- wàng  
wàngle-míngzi-le  
60. Wǒ-wàngle-tāde-míngzi-le.  
forget  
forgot a name  
I've forgotten his name.

## PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 13.1. Le Indicating Completed Action or New Situation  
(Notes 1-2 below)

Pattern 13.1 a.

S	V	<u>le</u>
Subject	Verb	<u>le</u>
Tā	zǒu	le.
'He has left.'		

Pattern 13.1 b.

S	V(- <u>le</u> )	O	<u>le</u>
Subject	Verb(- <u>le</u> )	Object	<u>le</u>
Tā	chīle	fàn	le.
'He has eaten.'			

- |                                                            |                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| 1. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie zǎochen-lái-le.                            | Miss Gao came in the morning.                       |
| 2. Wó-mǔqin zuótian-zǎochen-zǒu-le.                        | My mother left yesterday morning.                   |
| 3. 'Qián-Tàitai chīle-fàn-le-ma?                           | Has Mrs. Qian eaten?                                |
| 4. Wǒ-dìdì jīntian-zǎochen-lái-le.                         | My brother came this morning.                       |
| 5. 'Máo-Xiānsheng mǎile-'zì-diǎn-le-ma?                    | Did Mr. Mao buy a dictionary?                       |
| 6. Nǐ-chīle-fàn-le-ma?                                     | Have you eaten?                                     |
| 7. Tā-bìyè-le-ma?                                          | Has he graduated?                                   |
| 8. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie zhǎo-shéi-qu-le?                           | Whom has Miss Gao gone to visit?                    |
| 9. 'Bái-Xiānsheng zhǎo-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-qu-le-ma?            | Did Mr. White go to visit Mr. Gao?                  |
| 10. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng dào-shū-diàn-qu-le.                   | Mr. Zhang has gone to the bookstore.                |
| 11. Wǒ-gàosu-ni-le. Nǐ-wàng-le-ma?                         | I told you. Did you forget?                         |
| 12. Míngtian-wǎnshang tā-qíng-ni-chī-fàn. Nǐ-zhīdao-le-ma? | He's inviting you to dinner tomorrow. Did you know? |
| 13. Jīntian-zǎochen wǒ-zuòle-diànchē-le.                   | I took a streetcar this morning.                    |
| 14. Wǒ-zuótian-yùjian-ta-le.                               | I met him yesterday.                                |



15. Tā-jīntian-zǎochen shàng-fēijī-le.

He took the plane this morning.
16. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng jīntian-shàng-shān-le-ma?

Did Mr. King go up the mountain today?
17. Wǒ-zài-túshūguǎn jièle-liángběn-shū-le.

I've borrowed two books at the library.
18. Wó-mǎile-gāngbǐ-le.

I've bought a pen.
19. Bái-Xiānsheng-lái-le-ma?

Did Mr. White come?
20. Wǒ-zuótian kànle-hěn-duō-shū-le.

I read a lot yesterday.

Pattern 13.2. Completed Action with le in Dependent Clauses  
(Note 3 below)

Pattern 13.2 a.

S	V <sub>1</sub> - <u>le</u>	O	<u>jiù</u>	V <sub>2</sub>
Subject	Verb <sub>1</sub> - <u>le</u>	Object	'then'	Verb <sub>2</sub>
Wǒ	chīle	fàn	jiù	zǒu.
'After eating I will leave.'				

Pattern 13.2 b.

S	V <sub>1</sub> - <u>le</u>	O	<u>jiù</u>	V <sub>2</sub>	<u>le</u>
Subject	Verb <sub>1</sub> - <u>le</u>	Object	'then'	Verb <sub>2</sub>	<u>le</u>
Wǒ	chīle	fàn	jiù	zǒu	le.
'After eating, I left.'					

1. Tā-mǎile-shū jiù-huái-jiā-le.

He returned home after buying the books.
2. Tā-xiàle-chē jiù-dào-gōngyuán-qu-le.

After he got off the car he went to the park.
3. Qián-Xiānsheng-chīle-fàn jiù-zǒu-le-ma?

Did Mr. Qian leave after he ate?
4. Gāo-Xiānsheng-chīle-fàn jiù-dào-xuéxiào-qu-le.

After eating, Mr. Gao went to school.
5. 'Bái-Xiānsheng lái-le-jiù-zǒu-le.

Mr. White came and then left immediately.
6. Tā-mǎile-běnzǐ jiù-zǒu.

He will leave after buying the notebook.
7. Nǐ-shàngle-chē jiù-mǎi-piào.

You buy the ticket right after you get on the car.
8. Tā-mǎile-shū jiù-zǒu.

He will leave right after buying the books.

9. Tāmen-mǎile-máobǐ jiù-xiě-Zhōngguó-zì.  
They will write some Chinese characters after buying writing brushes.
10. 'Bái-Xiānsheng chīle-zǎofàn-jiù-zǒu.  
Mr. White will leave right after (eating) breakfast.
11. Tā-chīle-zǎofàn jiù-dào-gōng-yuán.  
He will go to the park after (eating) breakfast.
12. Tā-dàole-gōngyuán jiù-dào-túshūguǎn-qu.  
After going to the park he will go to the library.
13. Tā-mǎile-shū jiù-huí-jiā.  
He will return home after buying the books.
14. Tā-shuōle-jiù-zǒu-le.  
He mentioned it and left.
15. 'Bái-Xiānsheng jièle-shū-jiù-huí-jiā-le.  
Mr. White returned home after borrowing the books.

Pattern 13.3. Le with Stative Verbs and Time Expressions  
(Note 4 below)

Pattern 13.3a.

(S)	(AD)	SV	<u>le</u>
(Subject)	(Adverb)	Stative verb	<u>le</u>
Wǒ	xiànzài	hǎo	le.
'I'm well now.'			

Pattern 13.3b.

(AD)	TW	<u>le</u>
(Adverb)	Time word	<u>le</u>
Xiànzài	sāndiǎn	le.
'It's become 3:00.'		

1. Wǒde-fángzi 'tài-xiǎo-le.  
My home has become too small.
2. Xiànzài chà-yǐkè-sìdiǎn-le.  
It's [gotten to be] 3:45.
3. Nèige-háizi 'tài-gāo-le.  
That child is too tall.
4. Tā-jiā-lí-zhèr 'tài-yuǎn-le.  
His home is too far from here.
5. Nèige-xuéxiàode-xuésheng 'tài-duō-le.  
There are too many students in that school.
6. Dào-Gāo-jia-qu 'tài-yuǎn-le.  
It is too far to go to the Gao home.
7. Zhèiběn-zìdiǎn tài-dà-le.  
This dictionary is too big.
8. Ní-mǔqin-hǎo-le-ma?  
Has your mother recovered?

- |                                              |                                       |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 9. Nèige-háizi pǎode-hěn-kuài-le.            | That child runs very fast.            |
| 10. Xiānzai-'hén-wǎn-le. 'Yìdiǎn-le.         | It's late now. It's one o'clock.      |
| 11. 'Gāo-Tàitai tài-kèqi-le.                 | Mrs. Gao is too polite.               |
| 12. Wǒ-tài-máng-le. Bù-néng-dào-gōngyuán-qu. | I'm too busy. I can't go to the park. |
| 13. Qián-tài-shǎo-le.                        | I have too little money.              |
| 14. Xiānzai-'Yìdiǎn-zhōng-le?                | What time is it now?                  |
| 15. 'Máo-Xiānsheng shū-tài-duō-le.           | Mr. Mao has too many books.           |

Pattern 13.4. Single and Double le with Quantified Objects  
(Note 5 below)

Pattern 13.4 a.

S	(TW)	V- <u>le</u>	NU-M	O
Subject	(Time word)	Verb- <u>le</u>	Number-Measure	Object
Wǒ	jīntian	kànle	liángběn	shū.
'I read two books today (and that's all I'm reading).'				

Pattern 13.4 b.

S	(TW)	V- <u>le</u>	NU-M	O	<u>le</u>
Subject	(Time word)	Verb- <u>le</u>	Number-Measure	Object	<u>le</u>
Wǒ	jīntian	kànle	liángběn	shū	le.
'I've read two books today (and I'm not done yet).'					

- |                                                                            |                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Wǒ-zuótiān mǎile-liángběn-shū.                                          | I bought two books yesterday.                                       |
| 2. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng kànle-yíci-diànyǐngr.                                    | Mr. Gao has been to a movie once.                                   |
| 3. Wǒ-jīntian yǐjīng-niànle-'sānběn-shū-le.                                | Today I've already read three books.                                |
| 4. 'Bái-Xiǎojie mǎile-wǔzhǐ-bǐ. 'Dōu-hén-hǎo.                              | Miss Bai bought five pens. All of them are very good.               |
| 5. 'Qián-Xiānsheng yǐjīng-mǎile-yìzhāng-dìtú-le. Hái-yào-'zài-mǎi-yízhāng. | Mr. Qian has already bought one map. He still wants to buy another. |
| 6. 'Qián-Xiānsheng zài-Gāo-Xiānsheng-yòubiān mǎile-yì-suǒr-fángzi.         | Mr. Qian bought a house to the right of Mr. Gao('s house).          |
| 7. Tāmen-kànle 'wǔci-diànyǐngr.                                            | They saw five movies.                                               |

8. Bái-Xiānsheng-dào-túshūguǎn  
jièle-liángběn-zìdiǎn.
9. Ní-yǐjīng-qǐng-le- 'báge-péng-  
you-le. 'Hái-yào-qǐng-duō-  
shao?
10. Wó-hěn-máng. Zhèige-xīngqī  
jiù-kànle-'yíci-diànyǐng.
11. Tā-shuō tā-yào-mǎi-'sānběn-  
shū. Yǐjīng-mǎile-'liángběn-  
le.
12. Wǒmen-yǐjīng-zǒule chàbuduō-  
'shílǐ-lù-le. 'Hái-yào-zǒu-  
duó-yuǎn?
13. Wǒ-qùnián-zài-chéng-wàitou  
mǎile-yìsuǒr-fángzi.
14. Wó-mǎile-yìzhāng-dà-dìtú.
15. Tā-xiěle-wǔge-zì. 'Dōu-bù-  
hǎo.

Mr. White went to the library  
and took out two dictionaries.

You've already invited eight  
friends. How many more are  
you going to invite?

I'm very busy. I've seen only  
one movie this week.

He says he wants to buy three  
books. He's already bought two.

We've already walked almost ten  
miles. How far do we still have  
to go?

I bought a house outside the city  
last year.

I bought a large map.

He wrote five characters. They  
were all no good.

Pattern 13.5. Imminent Action with le (Note 6 below)

S	(kuài)	V	<u>le</u>
Subject	('soon')	Verb	<u>le</u>
Tā	kuài	zǒu	le.

'He is leaving soon.'

1. Wǒ-dìdi jiù-yào-cóng-Měiguó-  
lái-le.
2. Wǒmen-xuéxiào xiànzài-kuài-  
yào-kǎoshì-le.
3. Wúdiǎn-sānkè tā-jiù-lái-le.
4. Wǒ-kuài-zǒu-le. Wǒmen-jiù-  
yào-shàng-kè-le.
5. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie 'sāndian-zhōng-  
lái-de, 'sìdian-zhōng-jiù-yào-  
zǒu-le.
6. Xiànzài kuài-dào-qīdiǎn-  
zhōng-le.
7. Wǒ-'jiù-yào-chī-fàn-le.
8. Hái-yǒu-yíké-zhōng jiù-dào-  
wúdiǎn-le.
9. Wǒ-'jiù-yào-niàn-shū-le.

My younger brother will come  
from America soon.

Our school is about to have ex-  
ams now.

He'll come at 5:45.

I'm leaving. We're about to go  
to class.

Miss Gao came at three o'clock  
and will leave at four.

It will soon be seven o'clock  
[now].

I'm about to eat.

In another quarter of an hour it  
will be five o'clock.

I'm about to study.

10. Yǐjīng-'bādiǎn-zhōng-le.  
Wǒ-'jiù-yào-zhǎo-Gāo-Xiān-  
sheng-qu-le.

It's already eight o'clock. I'm  
about to go visit Mr. Gao.

Pattern 13.6. Clauses Expressing Relative Time (Note 7 below)

Pattern 13.6 a.

S	V	<u>yǐqián/yǐhòu</u>
Subject	Verb	'before'/'after'
nǐ	lái	yǐqián
'before you come'		

Pattern 13.6 b.

S	V	<u>de-shíhou</u>
Subject	Verb	'when'
nǐ	lái	de-shíhou
'when you come'		

1. Nǐ-lái-de-shíhou xiān-dào-  
'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā-qu-ma?

When you come, will you first go  
to Mr. Gao's home?
2. Nǐ-láile-yǐhòu, wǒmen-niàn-  
shū 'hǎo-bu-hǎo?

After you come, let's study —  
O.K.?
3. Nǐ-qù-de-shíhou qíng-ni-mǎi  
yìběn-zìdiǎn.

When you go (to the bookstore),  
please buy a dictionary.
4. Wǒmen-kǎole-yǐhou qu-kàn-  
diànyǐngr 'hǎo-bu-hǎo?

How about going to a movie after  
we've had our exams?
5. Wó-zǒu-de-shíhou wàngle-dài-  
biǎo-le.

When I left, I forgot to wear my  
watch.
6. Wó-mǎi-shū-de-shíhou xiān-  
zhǎo-'Máo-Xiānsheng.

Whenever I buy books, I [first]  
look up Mr. Mao.
7. 'Bái-Xiānsheng dào-xuéxiào-  
lái-de-shíhou, xiān-zháo-wo-  
tántan.

When Mr. White comes to school  
he will visit me first for a chat.
8. Wǒ-dào-xuéxiào-yǐqián xiān-  
chī-zǎofàn.

Before I go to school I [first] eat  
breakfast.
9. 'Bái-Xiānsheng dào-Měiguó-  
qù-de-shíhou, xiān-lái-bài-  
fang-ni.

When Mr. White arrives in  
America, he will first visit you.
10. Wó-mǔqīn-dào-zhèr-yǐhòu,  
hěn-duō-péngyou qǐng-ta-chī-  
fàn.

After my mother arrived here a  
lot of friends invited her to din-  
ner.
11. Wǒ-niàn-shū-de-shíhou bù-  
xǐhuan-rén-zháo-wo.

When I study I don't like people  
to visit me.

- 12 Wǒ-xià-chuán-yǐhòu 'xiān-dào-Gāo-jia-qu.  
 13 Wǒ-huí-jiā-yǐqián 'xiān-dào-túshūguǎn-qu.  
 14 Wǒ-shàng-chuán-yǐhòu rènshi-le-hěn-duō-pengyou.  
 15 Wǒ-chī-fàn-de-shíhou bù-xǐ-huan-shuō-huà.

After getting off the boat, I go first to the Gaos'.

Before returning home, I'm [first] going to the library.

After boarding the boat I made [the acquaintance of] numerous friends.

When I eat I don't like to talk.

Pattern 13.7. Le with Negative Verbs (Note 8)

S	<u>bu</u>	V	<u>le</u>
Subject	<u>bu</u>	Verb	<u>le</u>
Wǒ	bù	chī	le.

'I'm not eating any more.'

- |                                                                    |                                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng bú-zài-shūdiàn-le. Tā-huí-jiā-le.                | Mr. Gao is no longer at the bookstore. He's gone home.                                                      |
| 2. 'Bái-Xiānsheng jīntian-tài-máng-le. Tā-bù-dào-túshūguǎn-qu-le.  | Mr. White is too busy today. He isn't going to the library.                                                 |
| 3. Jīntian wǒ-niànle-sānběn-shū-le, suóyì-wǒ-bù-niàn-le.           | I've read three books today, so I'm not reading any more.                                                   |
| 4. Jīntian wǒmen-huányíng-yí-wèi-péngyou. Wǒ-bù-dào-'nǐ-nèr-qu-le. | Today we're meeting [lit. welcoming] a friend. I'm not going to your place (after all).                     |
| 5. 'Qiān-Xiānsheng jīntiān-yǒu-shì, suóyì-tā-bù-lái-le.            | Mr. Qian has something to do today, so he's not coming (after all).                                         |
| 6. Tā-méi-yǒu-qián. Bù-néng-'zài-niàn-shū-le.                      | He doesn't have any money. He can't study any more.                                                         |
| 7. Tā-jīntian-méi-yǒu-qián-le, suóyì-tā-'bù-mǎi-shū-le.            | He has no more money today, so he's not buying any more books.                                              |
| 8. Zhèige-fàn bù-hǎo-chī. Wǒ-bù-chī-le.                            | This food is unappetizing. I'm not eating any more.                                                         |
| 9. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie méi-yǒu-mòshuǐ-le. Tā-xiǎng-qù-mǎi.                | Miss Gao doesn't have any more ink. She's going to go buy some.                                             |
| 10. Tā-suíran-hén-xiǎo, kěshi méi-yǒu-fùqin-le.                    | [Although] he's very young, but he's already lost his father [lit. nevertheless he no longer has a father]. |

SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 50 Sentences (Note 2)

tā	—	lái	le	—
	jīntian	qù		ma
	zuótian	zǒu		
	jīnnian	dào		
	qùnian	bìyè		

II: 60 Sentences (Note 2)

(The asterisks here and in Tables III and V below indicate that only items in the same row may be taken together.)

	*		*		
nǐ	chī	—	fàn	le	—
tā	mǎi	-le	bǐ		ma
tāmen	xiě		zì		
	shàng		shān		
	jiè		shū		

III: 96 Sentences (Note 3)

(See note at head of Table II)

	*		*			
wǒ	chī	-le	fàn	jiù	zǒu	—
wǒmen	mǎi		bǐ		lái	le
tā	xiě		zì		qù	
tāmen	jiè		shū			

IV: 15 Sentences (Note 4)

—	duō	—
tài	shǎo	le
	hǎo	
	wǎn	
	gāo	

V: 96 Sentences (Note 5)

(See note at head of Table II)

	*		*		
wǒ	kàn	-le	yì	-běn shū	—
tā	mǎi		liǎng	-zhī bǐ	le
	kàn		sān	-cì diànyǐngr	
	zǒu		sì	-lǐ lù	
	mǎi			-ge biǎo	
	jiè			-běn zìdiǎn	



## VI: 48 Sentences (Note 6)

wǒ	——	lái	le
nǐ	yào	zǒu	
tā	kuài	qù	
	jiù	mǎi	

## VII: 48 Sentences (Note 7)

wǒ	chī-fàn	yǐqián
nǐ	kàn-shū	de-shíhou
tā	xiě-zì	yǐhou
	dào-nèr-qu	
	mǎi-piào	
	gàosu-ta	

## VIII: 24 Sentences (Note 8)

wǒ	——	bu	chī	le
nǐ	men		mǎi	
tā			zǒu	
			qù	

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

I. The in - ian - an Contrast

(a) yīn	yān	ān
(b) bīn	biān	bān
(c) pīn	piān	pān
(d) mín	mián	mán
(e) lín	lián	lán

II. The ou - uo Contrast

(a) gōu	guō	(f) dōu	duō	(k) zhōu	zhuō
(b) gǒu	guǒ	(g) lóu	luó	(l) shōu	shuō
(c) gòu	guò	(h) kòu	kuò	(m) zǒu	zuǒ
(d) tóu	tuó	(i) hòu	huò	(n) còu	cuò
(e) chōu	chuo	(j) ròu	ruò	(o) sōu	suō

III. Contrast between h and Zero Initial

- |              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| (a) wā huā   | (e) wàn huàn   |
| (b) wǒ huǒ   | (f) wáng huáng |
| (c) wài huài | (g) wú hú      |
| (d) wèi huì  | (h) wèn hùn    |

EXPANSION DRILLS

The following exercise provides an opportunity to build up long sentences step by step. Practice them until you are fluent at every step. Observe the changes in meaning through the successive steps of the expansion.

I  
qù  
qù-le  
dào-nèr-qu-le  
dào-'tā-nèr-qu-le  
wǒ-dào-'tā-nèr-qu-le  
wǒ-zuótian-dào-'tā-nèr-qu-le  
Wǒmen-zuótian-dào-'tā-nèr-qu-le.

II  
shū  
mǎi-shū  
mǎi-yìběn-shū  
mǎile-yìběn-shū  
mǎile-yìběn-shū-le  
jīntian-mǎile-yìběn-shū-le  
wǒ-jīntian-mǎile-yìběn-shū-le  
Wǒ-jīntian-yǐjīng-mǎile-yìběn-shū-le.

III  
chī  
chī-fàn  
chīle-fàn  
chīle-fàn-jiù-zǒu  
chīle-fàn-jiù-zǒu-le  
xiānsheng-chīle-fàn-jiù-zǒu-le  
Bǎi-Xiānsheng-chīle-fàn-jiù-zǒu-le.

## IV

mǎi

mǎi-le

dōu-mǎi-le

tā-dōu-mǎi-le

shū, bǐ tā-'dōu-mǎi-le

Shū, bǐ tā-dōu-'mǎi-le-méi-you?

## QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Practice the following questions and answers. The questions all contain le, and the negative answers require the use of méi or méi-you.

- |                                                                     |                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 1. 'Bái-Xiānsheng 'shénmo-shíhou-huǐ-jiā-le?                        | 'Bái-Xiānsheng hái-'méi-huǐ-jiā-ne.                |
| 2. Ní-mǎi-'shū-le-méi-you?                                          | Wó-'méi-you-mǎi-ne.                                |
| 3. Ní-mǔqín-zuótian-dào-le-ma?                                      | Wó-mǔqín-zuótian-'méi-dào. Jīntian-jiù-dào.        |
| 4. Nǐ-zuótian dào-túshūguǎn-le-ma?                                  | Wǒ-zuótian-'méi-dào-túshūguǎn.                     |
| 5. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng zuótian-'lái-le-méi-you?                          | Tā-zuótian-'méi-lái. Tā-shuō-'jīntian-lái.         |
| 6. Míngtian wǒmen-dōu-dào-'Bái-Xiānsheng-nèr-qu. Tā-gàosu-ni-le-ma? | Wǒ-bù-zhīdào. Tā-'méi-gàosu-wǒ.                    |
| 7. Ní-yǐjīng-niàn-'dàxué-le-méi-you?                                | Méi-you. Wǒ-xiànzài-niàn-'zhōngxué.                |
| 8. Nǐde-shū mǎile-'jíbēn-le?                                        | Wó-mǎile-'liángběn-le. Hái-yǒu-'sānbēn-méi-mǎi-ne. |
| 9. Nǐ-chī-'fàn-le-méi-you?                                          | Wǒ-'méi-chī-fàn-ne.                                |
| 10. 'Gāo-Xiáojie-kǎoshì-le-ma?                                      | Hái-méi-you-ne.                                    |
| 11. Jīntian-zǎochen nǐ-zuò-diàn-chē-le-ma?                          | Méi-you. Wǒ-'méi-zuò-diànchē.                      |
| 12. 'Qián-Xiānsheng 'shénmo-shíhou dào-le-Měiguó-le?                | Tā-hái-'méi-dào-Měiguó-ne.                         |
| 13. Gāngbǐ, mòshuǐ nǐ-'dōu-yǒu-le-ma?                               | Méi-you. Gāngbǐ, mòshuǐ wǒ-'dōu-méi-mǎi.           |

- |                                                |                                            |
|------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| 14. 'Máo-Xiānsheng dào-shūdiàn-le-ma?          | Méi-you. Tā-'jiù-qù-le.                    |
| 15. 'Gāo-Xiáojie 'lái-le-méi-you?              | Gāo-Xiáojie-'méi-lái.                      |
| 16. Zuótian nǐ-dào-Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā-qu-le-ma? | Zuótian wǒ-'méi-dào-Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā-qu.  |
| 17. Nǐ-shàng-'Húnán-qù-le-méi-you?             | Wǒ-'méi-qù.                                |
| 18. Nǐ-dào-túshūguǎn qu-jiè-shū-le-ma?         | Méi-you. Wǒ-'méi-dào-túshūguǎn-qù-jiè-shū. |
| 19. Zìdiǎn, dìtú nǐ-'dōu-mǎi-le-méi-you?       | Zìdiǎn, dìtú wǒ-'dōu-méi-mǎi-ne.           |
| 20. Zuótian nǐ-kàn-diànyǐngr-le-ma?            | Zuótian-wǒ-'tài-máng. 'Méi-kàn-diànyǐngr.  |

# MONOLOGUE

Wǒ-yīnwei-xǐhuan-'Zhōngguo-wénxué, xiǎng-dào-'Zhōngguo-qu-niàn-shū, suóyì zài-yī-jiǔ-liù-èr-nián-èryuè wǒ-cóng-Měiguó-dào-Zhōngguo-de. Wǒ-bú-shi-yìzhíde dào-Zhōngguo-lái-de. Wǒ-shi-cóng-Měiguó-zuò-chuán, xiān-dào-Rìběn, wǒ-zài-Rìběn-'yíge-xīngqī, yòu-zuò-fēijī-dào-Zhōngguo-lái-de. Rìběn yé-hén-yǒu-yìsi. Wǒ-zuò-chuán-de-shíhou, rènshile-bù-shǎode-péng-you. Dào-Zhōngguo-yǐhòu, wǒ-yòu-rènshile-hěn-duō-'Zhōngguo-péngyou: Gāo-Xiānsheng, Gāo-Tàitai, Gāo-Xiáojie, 'Máo-Xiānsheng, 'Qián-Xiānsheng, tāmen-'dōu-shi-wó-hén-hǎode-péngyou. Wǒ-zài-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué-niàn-shū. Wǒ-niàn-wénxué. Yuǎndōng-Dàxué yǒu-hěn-duō-'wàiguó-xuésheng. Wǒ-'Zhōngguo-wénxué, 'Yīngguó-wénxué 'dōu-niàn-le. Zhōngguo-wénxué 'hěn-nán. Zhōngwén bù-rǒngyì-xué. Zhōngguo-zì 'yòu-nán-xiě. Suírán-nán, kěshi-wó-hén-xǐhuan. Yǒu-yìsi-jíle. Yīnwei-wǒ-zài-Měiguó-dàxué yǐjīng-niàn-'èrniánjí-le, suóyì-wǒ-dào-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué jiù-niàn-'sānniánjí-le. Wǒ-shuōde-Zhōngguo-huà suírán-bú-tài-hǎo, kěshi wǒ-chàbuduō-'dōu-huì-shuō-le. Wó-xiǎng wǒ-bìyè-de-shíhou, yídìng-bǐ-xiànzài 'hǎo-yìdiǎr. Wǒ-xī-wang-wǒ-bìyè-de-shíhou néng-kàn-shū, néng-xiě-zì, yě-néng-shuō 'gèng-hǎode-Zhōngguo-huà.

## SETTING THINGS RIGHT

The following sentences based on the Dialogue contain false statements. Make whatever changes are necessary to turn them into true statements.

1. 'Gāo-Xiáojie cóng-túshūguǎn-huí-jiā.
2. 'Bái-Xiānsheng zhīdao-'Gāo-Xiáojie zài-něige-xuéxiào-niàn-shū.
3. Gāo-Xiānshengde-Yīngguo-péngyou shì-yíwèi-tàitai.
4. 'Bái-Xiānsheng wàngle-dài-biǎo-le.
5. Yuǎn-Dà yǐjīng-kǎoshì-le.
6. Gāo-Xiáojiede-mǔqīn-shuō 'Bái-Xiānsheng 'yòu-cōngmíng yòu-yònggōng.
7. 'Gāo-Xiáojie 'bù-xǐhuan-kàn-diànyǐngr.
8. 'Gāo-Xiáojie shàng-kè-yǐqián yǒu-yìdiǎr-shì.
9. 'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-Yuǎn-Dà-'sìniánjí-niàn-shū.
10. 'Gāo-Xiáojie chàbuduō-'měige-xīngqī dōu-qù-kàn-diànyǐngr.

## WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

Improvise a Chinese conversation along the following lines between an American student and a Chinese acquaintance.

You ask the acquaintance where he is studying. He says he is studying at the No. 3 Middle School. You ask what year. He answers that he's in the third year of higher middle school, and that he's graduating this year. Then he asks what you are studying. You reply that you're studying literature. He asks whether it's English literature or Chinese literature, and you mention the latter in reply. He tells you that you speak Chinese very well. You remark that he's too polite, and that you don't speak Chinese well. He insists that you are certainly very intelligent and very hard-working. You reply that you're really awfully dumb and don't work very hard. He asks what time it is. You say you forgot to bring your watch, but that you think it will soon be six-thirty. You ask him if he has something to do. He says he has and suggests further conversation later. You exchange farewells.

## NOTES

1. The suffix -le is attached either to verbs or to entire sentences.\* It has no precise English equivalent, though in many of its uses it corresponds roughly to the 'have (has, had)' of perfect-tense constructions, which denote past-flavored actions (had done, have been eating, have seen, have been writing, will have gone, will have been studying, having bought). Some specific uses of -le are described in Notes 2-9 below.

2. At the end of a sentence, -le indicates that the foregoing actions are completed or past, or that there has been a change to a new situation:

Tāmen-dōu-lái-le. Wǒmen-jiù-'tányitán-le. 'They all came, and then we had a chat.'

If the verb has a simple direct object, the verb may have a second -le attached to it, reinforcing the -le at the end:

Tāmen-dōu-chīle-fàn-le. 'They have all eaten.'

See pp. 174-75 for more examples.

3. The suffix -le attached to a verb in a dependent clause indicates that the action of the clause is completed with respect to the action of the main clause ('after having . . . -ed'). In a sentence of this structure, the main clause is commonly introduced by jiù 'then, and then, after that':

Wǒ-jièle-shū jiù-yào-dào-ta-jiā-qu. 'After having borrowed the book I will go to his home.'

Wǒ-jièle-shū jiù-dào-ta-jiā-qu-le. 'After borrowing the book I went to his home.'

Note that a phrase like Wǒ-chīle-fàn, with a single le attached to the verb, is not complete; it does not mean 'I ate' but rather 'after I ate,' and one expects something to follow.

See pp. 175-76 for more examples.

4. When -le is attached to a stative verb (e.g. hǎo 'is good') or to a time expression (e.g. shídiǎn-zhōng 'ten o'clock'), it means 'is (am, are)' in the special sense 'has (now) become,' as:

Wó-hǎo-le. 'I'm fine, now [as contrasted to my previous ill state].'  
(Cf. Wó-hǎo. 'I'm fine,' in answer to a queried greeting.)

Xiànzài-shídiǎn-zhōng-le. 'It's ten o'clock (already).' 'It's (now become) ten o'clock [and time to get on with a scheduled activity].'  
(Cf. Xiànzài-shídiǎn-zhōng. 'It's ten o'clock,' with no special emphasis.)

See pp. 176-77 for more examples.

---

\* In our transcription, we attach -le to sentences by a hyphen (Tā-hǎo-le.) and to non-terminal verbs directly (chīle-fàn).

5. In sentences containing an object preceded by a number, -le may indicate a simple past action (corresponding to English simple past tense):

Wǒ-jìè-le-sānběnn-shū. 'I borrowed three books [and that is the end of my borrowing].'

Addition of a second -le at the end alters the connotation of the past action: it implies that the (completed) action bears a relation to another present or future action (cf. the English present perfect tense):

Wǒ-jìè-le-sānběnn-shū-le. 'I've borrowed three books [in preparation for some other activity—borrowing more books, doing something with the books already borrowed, etc.].'

See pp. 177-78 for more examples.

6. A verb plus -le can mean 'be about to [do]' or 'be on the point of [doing]':

Lái-le. 'I'm (on the point of) coming!' ['In another second, I'll have arrived.']

Wó-zǒu-le. 'I'm about to go.' ['I will have left in no time.']

The verb in this usage is often accompanied by a word which reinforces the sense of imminence—yào 'will,' jiù 'immediately,' kuài 'soon' (also 'fast') or the like:

Wǒ-jiù-zǒu-le. 'I'm just about to leave.'

Wǒ-kuài-yào-zǒu-le. 'I'm leaving soon.'

See pp. 178-79 for more examples.

7. A méi or bu negative verb suffixed with -le means either 'doesn't [do] any more' or 'no longer intends to [do],' depending on the context:

Wǒ-bu-chī-le. 'I'm not eating any more (because I'm full).' or 'I no longer intend to eat it.'

Zuótiān-qián-hěn-duō. Jīntiān-'méi-yǒu-le. 'Yesterday (I) had a lot of money. Today there isn't any more (left).'

See pp. 184-85 for more examples.

8. Except for the usage described in the preceding note, le appears only in affirmative sentences. Corresponding negative sentences have méi-yǒu, or méi, before the verb (or coverb, if there is one):

Tā-méi-yǒu-zǒu. or Tā-méi-zǒu. 'He hasn't gone.'

See p. 180 for more examples.

9. One way of making -le sentences interrogative is to add ma at the end:

Tā-lái-le-ma? 'Has he come?'

Alternatively, affirmative (not negative!) -le sentences can be made into questions by adding méi-you at the end:

Tā-'lái-le-méi-you? 'Has he come?'

See pp. 184-85 for more examples.



10. Méi-yǒu may be abbreviated to méi before nouns as well as before verbs:  
 Wǒ-méi-yǒu-qián. or Wǒ-méi-qián. 'I don't have any money.'

11. The relative-time words yǐqián 'before,' yǐhòu 'after,' and shíhou 'when, while' appear at the END of the clause, rather than at the beginning as in English:

nǐ-niàn-shū-YǐQIÁN 'BEFORE you study'

nǐ-niàn-shū-YǐHÒU 'AFTER you study'

nǐ-niàn-shū-de-SHÍHOU 'WHEN you study'

These subordinate time clauses must come BEFORE the main clause in Chinese sentences:

Nǐ-niàn-shū-de-shíhou yào-yònggōng. 'When you study, you have to work hard.'

Yǐhòu 'after' is optional in the type of changes mentioned above in Note 3:

Tā-chīle-fàn jiù-zǒu-le.

or

Tā-chīle-fàn-yǐhòu jiù-zǒu-le.

} 'After he ate, he left.'

12. Xīngqī 'week' is compounded with tiān 'day' to form xīngqītiān 'Sunday,' and with the numbers from one to six to name the remaining days of the week:

xīngqīyī 'Monday'

xīngqīsì 'Thursday'

xīngqī'èr 'Tuesday'

xīngqīwǔ 'Friday'

xīngqīsān 'Wednesday'

xīngqīliù 'Saturday'

13. The verb shàng 'ascend, go up; get on [a vehicle],' which we have encountered in the phrases shàng-shān 'ascend a mountain' and shàng-chē 'board a car,' also means 'go to a place,' as:

shàng-kè 'go to a class'

shàng-xué 'go to school' [lit. 'go to study']

shàng-xuéxiào 'go to (one's) school'

shàng-xiǎoxué 'go to elementary school'

shàng-Yīngguó 'go to England'

Shàng and xià are also used before xīngqī 'week' and its compounds in the meanings 'last' and 'next' respectively:

shàng-xīngqī 'last week'

xià-xīngqīsān 'next Wednesday'

14. The verb niàn 'study' is used in various senses: (a) with a general meaning, as in niàn-shū; (b) with a specific object, as in niàn-wénxué 'study literature'; and (c) to refer to studying at a particular school or in a particular year of school:

Wǒ-niàn-zhōngxué. 'I'm studying in middle school.'

Wǒ-niàn-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué. 'I'm studying at Far Eastern University.'

Wǒ-niàn-dàxué-èrniánjí. 'I'm a sophomore in college.'

15. The expression jíle is added to a stative verb as an intensifier:

hǎo 'good'

hǎojíle 'excellent'

16. The exchange in the Dialogue between Miss Gao and Mr. White regarding their intelligence (lines 29-32, 35-38) sounds stilted and unnatural to native speakers of English, but it is characteristically Chinese. Social custom requires that a Chinese speak very deprecatingly about himself and with exaggerated praise for the person he is speaking to:

ní-fǔshang 'your residence' but

wǒ-jiā 'my home'

Nín-guāxìng? 'What is your [honorable] surname?'

Bìxìng 'My [miserable] surname is . . .'

(This is now considered rather out of date by some Chinese.)

After you, a foreigner, say a few words of Chinese to a native speaker, you will probably be told—however halting your delivery—that you speak Chinese very well. Remember on the one hand to take such remarks with a grain of salt, and on the other hand to participate in this Oriental practice as much as possible, by exalting the other person and humbling yourself.

## Lesson 14 DISCUSSING SCHOOL WORK



"Tā-chàbuduō-měitiān 'yé-xiě-zì."

Dialogue: Mr. White and Miss Gao continue their conversation.

Bái : 'Gāo-Xiǎojie, nǐmen-xué-xiǎo yígòng-yǒu-'duōshao-xuésheng?

Miss Gao, how many students does your school have altogether?

Gāo: Wǒmen-xuéxiǎo yǒu-'yì-qian-duō-rén.

5

[Our school has] over a thousand.

Bái : 'Nán-xuésheng-duō háishi-nǚ-xuésheng-duō-ne?

Which are (there) more (of), boys or girls?

Gāo: 'Nán-xuésheng-duō. 'Bái-Xiǎnsheng, nǐmen-Yuǎn-Dà yǒu-'duōshao-xuésheng?

10

There are more boys. [Mr. White,] how many students do you have at Far Eastern?

Bái : Yǒu-'sānqiān-wúbǎi-duō-rén.

[There are] over 3,500.

Gāo: Wó-xiǎng nǐmen-zài-'dà-xué-niàn-shū-de-xuésheng yídìng-'dōu-shì-hěn-cōng-míng-de.

15

I guess you college students must all be pretty bright.

Bái : Yé-yǒu-cōngmíngde, yé-yǒu-bènde. Yǒu-rén-niànde-hén-hǎo, yǒu-rén-niànde-hén-bù-hǎo.

20

Some are bright, some are stupid. Some [people] study very well, some [people] study very badly.

- Gāo: Qùnián-dào-Yuǎn-Dà-kǎo-shì-de-xuésheng yígòng-yǒu-yīwàn-duō-rén. Kǎo-shàngde zhī-yǒu-yìqiān-rén. Suǒyì-wǒ-shuō 'dà-xuéde-xuésheng 'dōu-hěn-cōngmíng. 25  
Last year over ten thousand students took the exams for Far Eastern. Only a thousand passed the exams. So I say university students are all very bright.
- Bái: 'Gāo-Xiǎojie, nǐ-zhōngxué-bìyè-yǐhòu xiǎng-xué-shén-mo-ne? 30  
[Miss Gao,] what do you plan to study after graduating from middle school?
- Gāo: Wǒ-xiǎng-xué-wénxué, kěshì wǒ-yòu-bù-yònggōng yòu-bù-cōngmíng. Wǒ-xiǎng wǒ-yídìng-kǎobùshàng-dàxué. 35  
I'd like to study literature, but I don't work hard and I'm not bright. I'm sure I can't pass the college exams.
- Bái: Nǐ-kèqi-ne. 'Yídìng-kǎodeshàng. 40  
You're being polite. You certainly can pass.
- Gāo: Nǐ-shuō-wǒ-kǎodeshàng-ma? 45  
Do you think [lit. say] I can [pass]?
- Bái: Wǒ-shuō nǐ-'yídìng-kǎodeshàng. 50  
I think you certainly can [pass].
- Gāo: Nǐ-xiǎng-wǒ-xué-wénxué xuédeliǎo-ma? 55  
Do you think I will be able to study literature?
- Bái: Nǐ-'zěnmō-xuébuliǎo-ne? Wǒ-yé-hěn-xīwang nǐ-xué-wénxué. 60  
Why shouldn't you be able to? And I hope very much that you will [study literature].
- Gāo: Rúguó-wǒ-kǎobùshàng-dàxué wǒ-jiù-xué-huà-huà. 65  
If I can't pass the exams for college, then I'll study painting.
- Bái: Wǒ-xiǎng-nǐ-'yídìng-huì-huà, nǐ-huàde-huà 'yídìng-yé-hén-hǎo. 70  
I'm sure you can paint and that what you do is very good.
- Gāo: Huà-huà wǒ-shì-xuéguo-de, kěshì-wǒ-huàde-bu-hǎo. 75  
It's true I've studied painting [lit. drawing pictures I have studied], but I paint badly.
- Bái: Yǐlǐhuǒ wǒ-jiù-kéyì-kànjian nǐ-huàde-huà-le. 80  
In a little while I'll be able to see the paintings you've done.
- Gāo: Huàde-'bù-hǎo. Zuì-hǎo-nín-bù-kàn. 'Bái-Xiǎn-sheng, 'nín-shì-xué-shén-mo-de? 85  
They're badly done. It would be best if you didn't see them. What are you studying. Mr. White?
- Bái: Wǒ-yuánlái shì-xiǎng-xué-'kēxué-de, kěshì-wǒ-duì-'wàiguó-huà hén-yǒu-xìng-qu, 'gèng-xǐhuan-Zhōngguó-huà, suǒyì-wǒ-zài-Měiguó jiù-xué-Zhōngguó-huà, niàn-Zhōngguó-shū. Xiànzài-wǒ- 90  
I originally planned to study science, but I'm very much interested in foreign languages, especially Chinese, so in America I studied (spoken) Chinese and read Chinese books. Now I've come to China to study

- dào-Zhōngguo-lái xué-Zhōngguo-wénxué, yě-xué-yǔyánxué.
- Gāo: Xué-yǔyánxué 'zěnmó-xué-ne? Jiù-shì-xué-shuō-wàiguó-huà-ma? 70 How does one study linguistics? Is it simply studying (how) to speak a foreign language?
- Bái: Bú-shì. Xué-yǔyánxué shì-yòng 'kēxuéde-fāngfǎ yánjiu-yǔyán. Yǒu-rén-néng-shuō hén-hǎode-wàiguó-huà, dōu-tīngdedǒng, yě-shuōde-shífēn-hǎo, kěshì-bù-dǒng yòng-'kēxué-fāngfǎ yánjiu-yǔyán. 75 No. [Studying] linguistics is analyzing languages by scientific means. Some people are quite proficient in foreign languages—they can understand everything and speak very well—but they don't understand (how) to use scientific means to analyze foreign languages.
- Gāo: Nín-xǐhuan-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì-ma? Nín-yòng-Zhōngwén-xiě-xìn xiēdeliǎo-xiě-buliǎo? 80 Do you like to write Chinese characters? Can you use Chinese in writing letters?
- Bái: Suírán-xiēdeliǎo, kěshì-xiě-de-bu-hǎo. Wó-gěi-Zhōngguo-péngyou-xiě-xìn xǐhuan-yòng-Zhōngwén-xiě. 85 I can [do so], but I write badly. (When) I write letters to Chinese friends, I like to write in Chinese.
- Gāo: Nín-néng-yòng-'máobǐ-xiě-zì-ma? 90 Can you write characters with a brush?
- Bái: Néng-yòng, kěshì-xiě-de-bu-hǎo. I can, but I don't write well.
- Gāo: Rúguǒ-nín-néng-yòng-máobǐ nín-xiě-de-zì yídìng-hén-hǎo. Xiànzài-hěn-duō-Zhōngguo-rén dōu-bù-néng yòng-máobǐ-xiě-zì-le. Chábuduō dōu-yòng-gāngbǐ-xiě-zì. 95 If you can use a writing brush, the characters you write are sure to be good. Nowadays many Chinese no longer can write characters with a brush. Almost all of them write with (fountain) pens.
- Bái: Nǐ-fùqin-duì-wǒ-shuō nǐde-zì xiěde-hén-hǎo. 100 Your father told me that your calligraphy is excellent.
- Gāo: Bù-hǎo-bù-hǎo. Suírán-wǒ-fùqin měitiān-chīguo-le-wǎnfàn-yǐhòu jiào-wǒ-yòng-máobǐ-xiě-zì, kěshì-wǒ-hái-xiěde-bu-hǎo. 105 No, no. [Although] my father has me write with a brush every day after dinner, but I still write badly.
- Bái: Zuì-nánde shì-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì-le. Nǐ-fùqin-zì xiěde-hén-hǎo. Wó-xiāng-nǐ-yídìng xiěde-yé-hén-hǎo. 110 The most difficult thing is writing Chinese characters. Your father writes [characters] very well. I'm sure you write well too.
- Gāo: Yīnwei-wǒ-fùqin-xiěde-hǎo suóyì-tā-měitiān-jiào-wó-
- Since my father writes well, he has me write every day. He

xiě-zì-ne. Tā-chàbuduō-  
měitiān yé-xiě-zì.

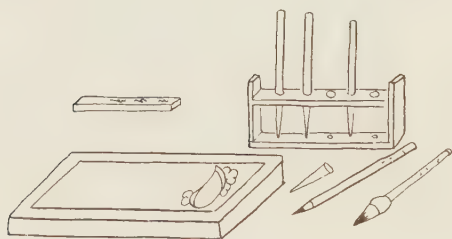
Bái : Nǐ-méi-tīngshuō-ma:  
Huó-dào-lǎo,  
Xué-dào-lǎo,  
Hái-yóu-sānfēn  
Xuébudào.

Gāo : Bù-zhī-yǒu-'sānfēn-ba!

practices calligraphy almost every day too.

115 Haven't you heard it said:  
Live to old age,  
Study to old age,  
There's still three-tenths  
That one can't learn.

120 It's not just three-tenths!



### VOCABULARY

bǎi	hundred (NU) (Note 7 below)
dǒng	understand (TV)
duì	(facing) toward, to, regarding (CV)
'fāngfǎ	method, technique (N) [lit. means method]
gěi	give (TV) for, to (CV) (Note 1 below)
guo	(verb suffix: Note 5 below)
huà	paint, draw (TV)
huàr	painting, drawing (N)
huó	live (IV)
kēxué	(study of) science (N)
lǎo	old (of animate things) (N)
liǎo	(resultative verb ending: Note 6 below)
qiān	thousand (NU)
shífēn	very (AD) [lit. ten part]



tīng	listen (to) (TV)
tīngshuō	hear (it said) that (TV) [lit. hear say]
wàn	ten thousand, myriad (also, a surname) (NU)
xìn	letter (N)
xìngqu	interest (in) (N) [lit. feelings interest]
yánjiū	study, make a study of, investigate (TV) [lit. re- search investigate] study, research (N)
yìhuǐr	a moment (TW) [lit. one moment]
yòng	use (TV) using, with (CV) (Note 1 below)
yǔyán	language (N) [lit. language word]
yǔyánxué	linguistics, linguistic science (N) [lit. language word study]
yuánlái	originally (MA) [lit. origin come]
zhǐ	only (AD)
zuì	most (AD)

SENTENCE BUILD-UP

yòng yòng-máobǐ	use use a writing brush
1. Wǒ-bú-huì-yòng-máobǐ.	I don't know how to use a writing brush.
yòng-máobǐ xiě-zì	use a writing brush write characters
2. Wǒ-huì-yòng-máobǐ-xiě-zì.	I can write characters with a brush.
duì duì-shéi?	toward, to to whom?
3. Tā-duì-shéi-shuō-huà?	Who is he talking to?
xìngqu hén-yǒu-xìngqu	interest be greatly interested
4. Tā-duì-wénxué hén-yǒu-xìngqu.	He's greatly interested in liter- ature.
gěi gěi-ta-qián	give give him money
5. Nǐ-gěi-ta-qián-ma?	Are you giving him any money?
gěi-ta gěi-ta-mǎi	give him buy for him
6. Nǐ-gěi-ta-mǎi-shū-ma?	Are you buying him a book?



- |     |                                                              |                                                               |
|-----|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
|     | xìn<br>xiě-xìn                                               | letter<br>write a letter                                      |
| 7.  | Ní-gěi-ta-xiě-xìn-ma?                                        | Are you writing him a letter?                                 |
|     | zuì<br>zuì-hǎo<br>zuì-hǎode                                  | most<br>best<br>the best one                                  |
| 8.  | Zuì-hǎode shì-'duōshao-qián?                                 | How much is the best one?                                     |
|     | huàr<br>zhèizhāng-huàr                                       | painting<br>this painting                                     |
| 9.  | Zhèizhāng-huàr hén-yǒu-yìsi.                                 | This painting is very interesting.                            |
|     | huà<br>huà-huàr                                              | paint<br>paint paintings                                      |
| 10. | Tā-měitiān huà-yìzhāng-huàr.                                 | He does one painting a day.                                   |
|     | dǒng<br>'dōu-dǒng                                            | understand<br>understand everything                           |
| 11. | Nǐ-'dōu-dǒng-ma?                                             | Do you understand everything?                                 |
|     | bù-dǒng-Zhōngguó-huà<br>bù-dǒng-Zhōngguó-huà-de-rén          | not understand Chinese<br>people who don't understand Chinese |
| 12. | Bù-dǒng-Zhōngguó-huà-de-rén<br>yě-néng-zài-zhèr-niàn-shū-ma? | Can people who don't understand Chinese also study here?      |
|     | tā-xiě-zì<br>tā-xiěde-zì                                     | he writes characters<br>the characters which he writes        |
| 13. | Tā-xiě-de-zì dōu-bú-duì.                                     | The characters that he wrote are all incorrect.               |
|     | zài-zhèr-niàn-shū<br>zài-zhèr-niàn-shū-de                    | study here<br>those who study here                            |
| 14. | Zài-zhèr-niàn-shū-de dōu-shì-'wàiguó-rén-ma?                 | Is everyone studying here a foreigner?                        |
|     | tā-shuō<br>tā-shuō-de                                        | he says<br>that which he says                                 |
| 15. | Tā-shuō-de nǐ-dōu-dǒng-ma?                                   | Do you understand all of what he says?                        |
|     | kēxué<br>niàn-kēxué-de                                       | science<br>those who study science                            |
| 16. | Nǚrén yě-yǒu-niàn-kēxué-de.                                  | There are also some women who study science.                  |
|     | yánjiū<br>yánjiū-kēxué                                       | do research in<br>do research in science                      |
| 17. | Yánjiū-kēxuéde-rén xiànzài-'gèng-duō-le.                     | There are even more people doing research in science now.     |
|     | yǔyán                                                        | language                                                      |

- yánjiu-yǔyán  
18. Yánjiu-yǔyán-de-rén yǒu-  
duōshao?  
do research in language  
How many people are doing re-  
search in language?
- yǔyánxué  
niàn-yǔyánxué  
19. Niàn-yǔyánxué-de-xuésheng  
'duō-bu-duō?  
linguistics  
study linguistics  
Are many students studying lin-  
guistics?
- fāngfǎ  
tā-yòng-de-'fāngfǎ  
20. Tā-yòng-de-'fāngfǎ hén-  
jiǎndān.  
method  
the method he uses  
The method he uses is very sim-  
ple.
- chī-'Rìběn-fàn  
chīguo-'Rìběn-fàn  
21. Nǐ-chīguo-'Rìběn-fàn-ma?  
eat Japanese food  
have eaten Japanese food  
Have you ever eaten Japanese  
food?
- chīguo-'wàiguó-fàn  
méi-chīguo-'wàiguó-fàn  
22. Nǐ-méi-chīguo-'wàiguó-fàn-  
ma?  
have eaten foreign food  
have never eaten foreign  
food  
Have you never eaten foreign  
food?
- chīguo-'Zhōngguó-fàn  
méi-you-chīguo-'Zhōng-  
guó-fàn  
23. Nǐ-chīguo-'Zhōngguó-fàn-méi-  
you?  
have eaten Chinese food  
have never eaten Chinese  
food  
Have you ever eaten Chinese  
food?
- tīng  
'tīngyíhuì  
24. Bú-yào-shuō-huà. Nǐ-'tīng-  
yítīng.  
listen  
listen (for a while)  
Don't talk. Listen!
- tīngshuō  
25. Wǒ-tīngshuō-ta-hǎo-le.  
hear it said  
I hear he's recovered.
- lǎo  
lǎo-le  
26. Tā-lǎo-le, bù-néng-zǒu-lù-  
le.  
old  
become old  
He's old and can't walk any  
more.
- kànjiàn  
kànbujiàn  
27. Kànbujiàn-Xī-Shān, yīnwei-  
tài-yuǎn-le.  
see  
unable to see  
It's impossible to see the West-  
ern Hills because they're too far  
away.
- kàndéjiàn  
kànbujiàn  
28. Nǐ-kàndéjiàn-kànbujiàn?  
able to see  
unable to see  
Can you see it or not?

- |     |                                                       |                                                                            |
|-----|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|     | liǎo<br>chīdeliǎo<br>chībuliǎo                        | (resultative suffix)<br>able to eat<br>unable to eat                       |
| 29. | Zhèige-fàn nǐ-chīdeliǎo-chībuliǎo?                    | Can you eat this food?                                                     |
|     | huó<br>huóbuliǎo                                      | live<br>unable to live                                                     |
| 30. | Tā-yídìng-huóbuliǎo.                                  | He certainly can't survive.                                                |
|     | kǎoshàng<br>kǎobushàng-zhōngxué                       | pass an entrance exam<br>unable to pass an entrance exam for middle school |
| 31. | Tā-bènjíle, kǎobushàng-zhōngxué.                      | He's awfully stupid. He couldn't pass an entrance exam for middle school.  |
|     | mǎidào-le<br>méi-mǎidào                               | have succeeded in buying<br>did not succeed in buying                      |
| 32. | Zhèiběn-shū 'wǒ-méi-mǎi-dào, kěshi-'tā-mǎidào-le.     | I didn't succeed in buying this book, but he did.                          |
|     | zhǐ<br>zhí-yǒu-yíge-rén                               | only<br>there is only one person                                           |
| 33. | Wǒmen-zhí-yǒu-yíge-rén méi-xuéguo-Zhōngguo-huà.       | There is only one person among us who has never studied Chinese.           |
|     | bǎi<br>sìbǎikuài-qián                                 | hundred<br>four hundred dollars                                            |
| 34. | Wǒmen-yígòng-yǒu-'sìbǎi-kuài-qián.                    | We have four hundred dollars in all.                                       |
|     | qiān<br>liǎngqiān-duō-běn-shū                         | thousand<br>over two thousand books                                        |
| 35. | Zhèige-shūdiàn yíge-xīngqī mǎi-liǎngqiān-duō-běn-shū. | This bookstore sells over two thousand books every week.                   |
|     | wàn<br>yíwàn-duō-lǐ-lù                                | ten thousand<br>over ten thousand miles                                    |
| 36. | Zhōngguo-lí-Měiguó yíwàn-duō-lǐ-lù.                   | China is over ten thousand miles from America.                             |
|     | yìqiān-sānbǎi<br>èrshibáge-xuésheng                   | one thousand three hundred<br>twenty-eight students                        |
| 37. | Dì-sì-Xiǎoxué yǒu-yìqiān-sānbǎi-èrshibáge-xuésheng.   | No. 4 Elementary School has 1,328 students.                                |
|     | yíwàn-qīqiān                                          | seventeen thousand                                                         |
| 38. | Wǒmen-xuéxiào yǒu-yíwàn-qīqiāngé-xuésheng.            | Our school has seventeen thousand students.                                |
|     | wànwàn<br>liùwànwàn-duō                               | one hundred million<br>over six hundred million                            |

39. Zhōngguo yǒu-liùwànwàn-duō-rén.

yuánlái  
mǎibuliǎo-fángzi
- China has over six hundred million people.
- originally  
unable to buy a house

40. Yuánlái-zài-chéng-lǐtōu  
mǎibuliǎo-fángzi.

bāfēn  
bāfēnde-xīwang

Originally it was not possible to buy a house in the city.

eight parts (of ten)  
eight parts hope

41. Tā-kǎoshàng-dàxué yǒu-bāfēn-de-xīwang.

shífēn  
shífēn-hǎo

There is an eight-tenths chance that he will pass the college entrance test.

very  
very good or very well

42. Tā-Rìběn-huà shuōde-shífēn-hǎo.

yìhuěr

He speaks Japanese very well.

a little while

43. Wǒ-yìhuěr-jiù-lái-le.

zuì-hǎo

I'll come in a moment.

best

44. Wǒmen-zuì-hǎo-'bú-qù.

yě-mài-shū  
yě-mài-bǐ  
yě-mài-zhǐ

It would be best if we didn't go.

also sell books  
also sell pens  
also sell paper

45. Tāmen-yě-mài-shū, yě-mài-bǐ, yě-mài-zhǐ.

tā-dàile  
tā-méi-yǒu-dài

They sell books and pens and also paper.

he wore  
he did not wear

46. Tā-'dàile-méi-you?

biǎo-dàile  
biǎo-méi-dài

Did he wear it?

the watch was worn  
the watch wasn't worn

47. Biǎo-'dàile-méi-you?

nèige-xuésheng  
hěn-cōngmíng

Was the watch worn?

that student  
very bright

48. Nèige-xuésheng-hěn-cōngmíng.

hěn-cōngmíng  
shì-hěn-cōngmíngde

That student is very bright.

very bright  
is a very bright one

49. Nèige-xuésheng shì-hěn-cōngmíngde.

That student is very bright.

## PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 14.1. The Coverbs yòng, gěi, duì (Note 1 below)

S	CV	O <sub>1</sub>	V	O <sub>2</sub>
Subject	Coverb	Object <sub>1</sub>	Verb	Object <sub>2</sub>
Tā	yòng	bǐ	xiě	zì.
'He writes with a pen.'				
Tā	gěi	ni	mǎi	shū.
'He is buying the books for you.'				
Tā	duì	ni	shuō	shénmo?
'What is he saying to you?'				

- |                                                                 |                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. 'Bái-Xiānsheng néng-yòng-'<br>'máobí-xiě-zì.                 | Mr. White can write with a Chinese writing brush.              |
| 2. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng bù-néng-yòng-máobí-xiě-zì.                  | Mr. Johnson cannot write with a brush.                         |
| 3. 'Bái-Xiānsheng néng-yòng-'<br>'máobí-xiě-zì-ma?              | Can Mr. White write with a brush?                              |
| 4. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng yòng-'Zhōng-wén-xiě-xìn.                     | Mr. King writes letters in Chinese.                            |
| 5. 'Zhāng-Xiǎojie néng-yòng-'Yīng-wén-xiě-xìn.                  | Miss Zhang can write letters in English.                       |
| 6. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie xǐhuan-yòng-'lán-mòshuǐ-xiě-zì.                 | Miss Gao likes to write characters with blue ink.              |
| 7. 'Bái-Xiānsheng kéyì-yòng-máo-bǐ xiě-hěn-hǎode-Zhōngguó-zì.   | Mr. White can write very nice Chinese characters with a brush. |
| 8. Zuótiān-'Máo-Xiānsheng-lái duì-ni-shuō-shénmo?               | What did Mr. Mao come to tell you yesterday?                   |
| 9. Jīntiān-Gāo-Tàitai duì-Gāo-Xiǎojie shuōle-hěn-duō-huà.       | Today Mrs. Gao talked a lot with Miss Gao.                     |
| 10. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie gěi-ni-xiě-xìn-le-ma?                          | Did Miss Gao write you a letter?                               |
| 11. 'Bái-Xiānsheng duì-Gāo-Xiǎojie-shuō tāmen-yào-kǎoshì-le.    | Mr. White told Miss Gao that they were about to have exams.    |
| 12. 'Bái-Xiānsheng duì-'Gāo-Xiǎojie-shuō tā-bènjíle.            | Mr. White told Miss Gao that he was awfully stupid.            |
| 13. 'Qián-Xiānsheng duì-Gāo-Xiānsheng-shuō tā-kàn-diànyǐngr-le. | Mr. Qian told Mr. Gao that he had seen a movie.                |
| 14. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-shuō tā-duì-'wénxué méi-yǒu-xìngqu.        | Mr. Zhang says he is not interested in literature.             |

15. 'Qián-Xiānsheng-shuō tā-duì -  
'wénxué-yǒu-xìngqu-ma?

Did Mr. Qian say he was inter-  
ested in literature?
16. Qián-Tàitai duì-Qián-'Xiān-  
sheng-shuō tā-qu-bàifang-  
péngyou.

Mrs. Qian told Mr. Qian that she  
was going to visit a friend.
17. 'Gāo-Xiáojie duì-tā-mǔqīn-  
shuō tā-dào-túshūguǎn-qu.

Miss Gao told her mother she  
was going to the library.
18. 'Máo-Xiānsheng gěi-'Bái-  
Xiānsheng jièle-hěn-duō-shū.

Mr. Mao borrowed a lot of books  
for Mr. White.
19. 'Qián-Xiānsheng duì-ta-péng-  
you-shuō tā-duì-wénxué-méi-  
xìngqu.

Mr. Qian told his friend he was-  
n't interested in literature.
20. 'Qián-Xiānsheng duì-ta-tài-  
tai-shuō jīntian-wǎnshàng  
tā-'bù-huī-jiā chī-wǎnfàn.

Mr. Qian told his wife that he  
wasn't going home for dinner to-  
night.
21. 'Qián-Xiáojie duì-'Zhāng-  
Xiānsheng-shuō tā-'bù-xǐhuan-  
kàn-diànyǐngr.

Miss Qian told Mr. Zhang that  
she didn't like to see movies.
22. 'Gāo-Xiáojie duì-kàn-diànyǐngr  
hén-yǒu-xìngqu-ma?

Is Miss Gao very much interest-  
ed in seeing movies?
23. 'Qián-Xiānsheng duì-kàn-shū  
méi-yǒu-xìngqu.

Mr. Qian isn't interested in  
reading.
24. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng géi-ni-mǎi-  
le hěn-duō-shū-ma?

Did Mr. Zhang buy a lot of books  
for you?
25. 'Bái-Xiānsheng duì-shuō-wài-  
guo-huà yǒu-xìngqu-ma?

Is Mr. White interested in speak-  
ing foreign languages?

Pattern 14.2. Subordination of Transitive and Intransitive Verbs to Nouns  
(Notes 2-4 below)

Pattern 14.2 a.

S	V	<u>de</u>	(N)
Subject	Verb	<u>de</u>	(Noun)
xuésheng	jiè	de	shū
'books which students borrow'			

Pattern 14.2 b.

V	O	<u>de</u>	(N)
Verb	Object	<u>de</u>	(Noun)
jiè	shū	de	xuésheng
'students who borrow books'			



- 1 Tā-xiě-de-zì-hén-hǎo.  
The characters he writes are very nice.
- 2 Nǐ-shuō-de-huà wǒ-'dōu-dǒng.  
I understand everything you say.
- 3 Zuótiān 'Gāo-Xiǎojie-jiède-nèiběn-shū 'zhēn-yǒu-yìsi.  
The book that Miss Gao borrowed yesterday is really interesting.
- 4 Tā-shuō-de 'dōu-shì-zhēn-huà.  
What he says is always the truth.
- 5 Tā-zuótiān-niàn-de-shū jīn-tian-jiù-wàng-le.  
The book he read yesterday he's forgotten today.
- 6 Nèiwèi-Měiguó-xuésheng wǒmen-shuō-de-huà tā-'dōu-dǒng.  
That American student understands all of what we say.
- 7 Wǒ-zuótiān-jiè-de-nèiběn-shū hěn-nán-niàn.  
The book I borrowed yesterday is very hard to read.
- 8 Bái-Xiānsheng-jiè-de-nèiběn-shū zuì-yǒu-yìsi.  
The book that Mr. White borrowed is most interesting.
- 9 Zhāng-Xiānsheng-mǎi-de-nèizhāng-huà hén-hǎo-kàn.  
The painting that Mr. Zhang bought is very pretty.
- 10 Zuótiān-lái-de-nèige-xuésheng shì-yánjiū-yǔyánxué-de.  
The student who came yesterday is studying linguistics.
- 11 Nèiwèi-cóng-Yīngguó-lái-de-xuésheng shì-yánjiū-kēxué-de.  
That student who has come from England is studying science.
- 12 Nèige-xué-huà-huàr-de-'nǚ-xuésheng bù-dǒng-Zhōngguó-huà.  
That girl student who is studying painting does not understand Chinese.
- 13 'Gāo-Xiǎojie zuótiān-mǎi-de-nèiběn-shū shì-'yánjiū-huà-huàr-fāngfǎ-de.  
The book that Miss Gao bought yesterday is [one] for studying techniques of painting.
- 14 Zuótiān-'Máo-Xiānsheng zài-túshūguǎn-jiè-de-shū 'dōu-méi-you-yìsi.  
The books that Mr. Mao borrowed at the library yesterday are all uninteresting.
- 15 Shàng-xīngqī wǒ-zài-Sān-Yǒu-Shūdiàn-mǎi-de-shū wǒ-kàn-le-'dōu-bù-dǒng.  
The books I bought last week at the Three Friends Bookstore I've read but don't understand.
- 16 Nèiwèi-néng-yòng-máobí-xiě-zì-de-wàiguó-xuésheng cōng-míng-jíle.  
That foreign student who can write with a brush is tremendously bright.
- 17 Zài-nèige-xuéxiào-niàn-shū-de chábuduō-dōu-shì-'wàiguó-xuésheng.  
The ones who are studying at that school are almost all foreign students.
- 18 Jīntian-wǎnshàng dào-Gāo-jia-chī-fàn-de dōu-shì-Gāo-Xiānshengde-hǎo-péngyou.  
The people [lit. the ones] who are going to the Gaos' home for dinner this evening are all good friends of Mr. Gao.



19. Dào-Zhōngguo-lái-niàn-shū-de-wàiguo-xuésheng chàbuduō-dōu-shi-yánjiu-yǔyán huòzhě-wénxué-de. Almost all students who come to China to study take up either language or literature.
20. Zài-nèige-dàxué-niàn-shū-de-xuésheng chàbuduō-yǒu-èrshíge-Měiguó-xuésheng. Among the students studying at that university, there are almost twenty American students.
21. Nèige-háizi-tài-bèn-le. Xiānsheng-shuō-de-huà tā-dōu-wàng-le. That child is too stupid. He has forgotten everything that the teacher said.
22. Qián-Xiānsheng-zuótian-mǎide-bǐ 'dōu-bu-néng-yòng. The pens that Mr. Qian bought yesterday are all useless.
23. Zài-nèige-dàxué-niàn-shū-de-xuésheng nán-xuésheng-shǎo nǚ-xuésheng-duō. Of the students studying at that university, there are few men [students] and many girls [lit. girl students].
24. Zhèi-shi-wǒ-zài-túshūguǎn 'jiè-de-shū. This is the book I borrowed at the library.
25. Qián-Xiānsheng-jīntian-mǎi-de-shi-Měiguó-bǐ. What Mr. Qian bought today is an American pen.
26. Nèiwèi-mǎi-shū-de-wàiguo-xuésheng jiù-shi-'Bái-Xiānsheng-ma? Is that foreign student who is buying books Mr. White?
27. Gāo-Xiǎojié-cōngmíng-jíle. Xiě-de-zì, huà-de-huàr 'dōu-hǎo. Miss Gao is very intelligent. The characters she writes (and) the paintings she does are all fine.
28. Nèiwèi-kàn-shū-de-xiānsheng shi-Gāo-Xiānshengde-péngyou. That gentleman who is reading is Mr. Gao's friend.
29. Mǎi-shū-de-'Máo-Xiānsheng shi-'Yīngguó-rén-ma? Is the Mr. Mao who sells books an Englishman?
30. Gāo-Xiānsheng-mǎi-de-fángzi zài-shānshang-ma? Is the house that Mr. Gao bought located on a hill?

Pattern 14.3. Completed Action with guo (Note 5 below)

Pattern 14.3 a. (Sentences 1-10 below)

S	(AD)	V	- <u>guo</u>	(O)
Subject	(Adverb)	Verb	- <u>guo</u>	(Object)
Wǒ	méi	chī	-guo	Zhōngguó-fàn.
'I have never eaten Chinese food.'				

Pattern 14.3b. (Sentences 11-20 below)

S	(TW)	V	-guo	le
Subject	(Time word)	Verb	-guo	le
Tā	zuótiān	shuō	-guo	le.

'He mentioned it yesterday.'

- |                                                             |                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Wǒ-dàoguo-Rìběn.                                         | I've been to Japan.                                                |
| 2. Nǐ-chīguo-'Měiguó-fàn-méi-you?                           | Have you ever eaten American food?                                 |
| 3. Nèige-lǎo-rén méi-kànguo-diànyǐngr.                      | That old man has never seen a movie.                               |
| 4. Wǒ-xuéguo-yǔyánxué.                                      | I've studied linguistics.                                          |
| 5. Wǒ-méi-xuéguo-kēxué.                                     | I've never studied science.                                        |
| 6. Wǒ-zài-zhōngxué-niàn-shū-de-shíhou méi-yòngguo-gāngbǐ.   | When I was studying in middle school, I never used a fountain pen. |
| 7. Wó-mǔqīn-méi-zuòguo-fēijī.                               | My mother has never ridden on a plane.                             |
| 8. 'Máo-Xiānsheng méi-niànguo-Zhōngguo-shū.                 | Mr. Mao has never read any Chinese books.                          |
| 9. Nǐ-dàoguo-Shāndong-ma?                                   | Have you ever been to Shantung?                                    |
| 10. Nǐ-kànjianguo tā-huà-de-huàr-ma?                        | Have you ever seen the painting he's done?                         |
| 11. 'Qián-Xiānsheng 'zuótiān-lái-guo-le.                    | Mr. Qian came yesterday.                                           |
| 12. Tā-zuótiān-shuō-le tā-jīntiān-'bù-lái-le.               | He mentioned yesterday that he wouldn't come today.                |
| 13. Tā-yǐjīng chīguo-wǎnfàn-le.                             | He's already eaten dinner.                                         |
| 14. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie zuótiān-dàoguo-'Qián-Xiǎojie-jiā.          | Miss Gao went to Miss Qian's home yesterday.                       |
| 15. Wǒ-jīntiān-dàoguo-túshūguǎn-le.                         | I've been to the library today.                                    |
| 16. Zhèige-zì wǒ-zuótiān-xuéguo, kěshi-jīntiān-yòu-wàng-le. | I studied this character yesterday, but today I've forgotten it.   |
| 17. 'Bái-Xiānsheng jīntiān-dào-shūdiàn-qùguo-le.            | Mr. White went to the bookstore today.                             |
| 18. Nǐ-zuótiān dàoguo-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā-ma?                | Did you go to Mr. Gao's home yesterday?                            |
| 19. Nǐ-'shàng-xīngqī kànguo-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-le-ma?          | Did you see Mr. Wang last week?                                    |
| Wǒ-qùguo-le, kěshi-tā-méi-zài-jiā.                          | I went (to see him), but he wasn't at home.                        |

20. Nǐ-zuótian zhǎoguo-'Máo-Xiānsheng-le-ma? Wǒ-méi-zhǎoguo-ta.

Did you visit Mr. Mao yesterday? I didn't visit him.

Pattern 14.4. Resultative Verbs (Note 6 below)

S	V <sub>1</sub>	( <u>bu</u> / <u>de</u> )	V <sub>2</sub>	(O)
Subject	Verb <sub>1</sub>	( <u>bu</u> / <u>de</u> )	Verb <sub>2</sub>	(Object)
Wǒmen	kàn	-bu	jiàn	hú.
'We can't see the lake.'				
Wǒmen	kàn	-de	jiàn	hú.
'We can see the lake.'				

A. Resultative-verb Phrases Composed from Vocabulary of Lessons 1-14 (Note 6 below)

1. kànjian

see
2. kàndejiàn

be able to see
3. kànbujiàn

be unable to see
4. tīngjian

hear
5. tīngdejiàn

be able to hear
6. tīngbujiàn

be unable to hear
7. yùjian

encounter
8. yùdejiàn

be able to encounter
9. yùbujiàn

be unable to encounter
10. kàndedǒng

be able to understand by reading
11. kànbudǒng

be unable to understand by reading
12. tīngdedǒng

be able to understand by hearing
13. tīngbudǒng

be unable to understand by hearing
14. hǎodeliǎo

be able to get well
15. hǎobuliǎo

be unable to get well
16. mǎideliǎo

be able to buy (because funds are adequate)
17. mǎibuliǎo

be unable to buy (because funds are inadequate)
18. chīdeliǎo

be able to eat (because there is not too much)
19. chībuliǎo

be unable to eat (because there is too much)
20. niàndeliǎo

be able to read or study
21. niànbuliǎo

be unable to read or study

一	卷一百一十五	卷一百一十五
二	卷一百一十六	卷一百一十六
三	卷一百一十七	卷一百一十七
四	卷一百一十八	卷一百一十八
五	卷一百一十九	卷一百一十九
六	卷一百二十	卷一百二十
七	卷一百二十一	卷一百二十一
八	卷一百二十二	卷一百二十二
九	卷一百二十三	卷一百二十三
十	卷一百二十四	卷一百二十四
十一	卷一百二十五	卷一百二十五
十二	卷一百二十六	卷一百二十六
十三	卷一百二十七	卷一百二十七
十四	卷一百二十八	卷一百二十八
十五	卷一百二十九	卷一百二十九
十六	卷一百三十	卷一百三十
十七	卷一百三十一	卷一百三十一
十八	卷一百三十二	卷一百三十二
十九	卷一百三十三	卷一百三十三
二十	卷一百三十四	卷一百三十四
二十一	卷一百三十五	卷一百三十五
二十二	卷一百三十六	卷一百三十六
二十三	卷一百三十七	卷一百三十七
二十四	卷一百三十八	卷一百三十八
二十五	卷一百三十九	卷一百三十九
二十六	卷一百四十	卷一百四十
二十七	卷一百四十一	卷一百四十一
二十八	卷一百四十二	卷一百四十二
二十九	卷一百四十三	卷一百四十三
三十	卷一百四十四	卷一百四十四
三十一	卷一百四十五	卷一百四十五
三十二	卷一百四十六	卷一百四十六
三十三	卷一百四十七	卷一百四十七
三十四	卷一百四十八	卷一百四十八
三十五	卷一百四十九	卷一百四十九
三十六	卷一百五十	卷一百五十
三十七	卷一百五十一	卷一百五十一
三十八	卷一百五十二	卷一百五十二
三十九	卷一百五十三	卷一百五十三
四十	卷一百五十四	卷一百五十四
四十一	卷一百五十五	卷一百五十五
四十二	卷一百五十六	卷一百五十六
四十三	卷一百五十七	卷一百五十七
四十四	卷一百五十八	卷一百五十八
四十五	卷一百五十九	卷一百五十九
四十六	卷一百六十	卷一百六十
四十七	卷一百六十一	卷一百六十一
四十八	卷一百六十二	卷一百六十二
四十九	卷一百六十三	卷一百六十三
五十	卷一百六十四	卷一百六十四
五十一	卷一百六十五	卷一百六十五
五十二	卷一百六十六	卷一百六十六
五十三	卷一百六十七	卷一百六十七
五十四	卷一百六十八	卷一百六十八
五十五	卷一百六十九	卷一百六十九
五十六	卷一百七十	卷一百七十
五十七	卷一百七十一	卷一百七十一
五十八	卷一百七十二	卷一百七十二
五十九	卷一百七十三	卷一百七十三
六十	卷一百七十四	卷一百七十四
六十一	卷一百七十五	卷一百七十五
六十二	卷一百七十六	卷一百七十六
六十三	卷一百七十七	卷一百七十七
六十四	卷一百七十八	卷一百七十八
六十五	卷一百七十九	卷一百七十九
六十六	卷一百八十	卷一百八十
六十七	卷一百八十一	卷一百八十一
六十八	卷一百八十二	卷一百八十二
六十九	卷一百八十三	卷一百八十三
七十	卷一百八十四	卷一百八十四
七十一	卷一百八十五	卷一百八十五
七十二	卷一百八十六	卷一百八十六
七十三	卷一百八十七	卷一百八十七
七十四	卷一百八十八	卷一百八十八
七十五	卷一百八十九	卷一百八十九
七十六	卷一百九十	卷一百九十
七十七	卷一百九十一	卷一百九十一
七十八	卷一百九十二	卷一百九十二
七十九	卷一百九十三	卷一百九十三
八十	卷一百九十四	卷一百九十四
八十一	卷一百九十五	卷一百九十五
八十二	卷一百九十六	卷一百九十六
八十三	卷一百九十七	卷一百九十七
八十四	卷一百九十八	卷一百九十八
八十五	卷一百九十九	卷一百九十九
八十六	卷二百	卷二百
八十七	卷二百一	卷二百一
八十八	卷二百二	卷二百二
八十九	卷二百三	卷二百三
九十	卷二百四	卷二百四
九十一	卷二百五	卷二百五
九十二	卷二百六	卷二百六
九十三	卷二百七	卷二百七
九十四	卷二百八	卷二百八
九十五	卷二百九	卷二百九
九十六	卷二百十	卷二百十
九十七	卷二百十一	卷二百十一
九十八	卷二百十二	卷二百十二
九十九	卷二百十三	卷二百十三
一百	卷二百十四	卷二百十四

- |                 |                                                                  |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 58. kǎodeshàng  | be able to pass examinations                                     |
| 59. kǎobushàng  | be unable to pass examinations                                   |
| 60. niàndeshàng | be able to study (because funds are adequate)                    |
| 61. niànbushàng | be unable to study (because funds are inadequate)                |
| 62. gěideshàng  | be able to give (i.e. make payments)                             |
| 63. gěibushàng  | be unable to give (i.e. make payments)                           |
| 64. chīdexià    | be able to eat (because there is not too much)                   |
| 65. chībuxià    | be unable to eat (because there is too much)                     |
| 66. zuòdexià    | be able to sit down (because there is enough room)               |
| 67. zuòbuxià    | be unable to sit down (because there is not enough room)         |
| 68. xiědexià    | be able to write down (because there is enough room)             |
| 69. xiěbuxià    | be unable to write down (because there is not enough room)       |
| 70. niàndeguò   | be able to surpass in studies (i.e. do better than someone else) |
| 71. niànbuguò   | be unable to surpass in studies                                  |

#### B. Sentences Illustrating Use of Resultative Verbs

- |                                                               |                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Nèiwèi-lǎo-tàitai bù-néng-chī-fàn-le. Hǎobuliǎo-le.        | That old lady can no longer eat. It's no longer possible for her to get well.    |
| 2. Nèiběn-shū-'tài-hǎo-le, kěshi-wǒ-méi-qíán. Mǎibuliǎo.      | That book is excellent, but I don't have any money. I can't buy it.              |
| 3. Zhèiběn-shū zài-shūdiànli-mǎibudào. Nǐ-'yídìng-màide-liǎo. | This book can't be bought in a bookstore. You certainly will be able to sell it. |
| 4. Zhèiběn-shū hěn-duō-shūdiàn'dōu-mǎibudào-le.               | This book can't be bought any more in lots of bookstores.                        |
| 5. Fàn-tài-duō-le. Wǒ-chībuliǎo.                              | There's too much food. I can't eat it all.                                       |
| 6. Xièxiè-nín. Wǒ-chīde-tài-duō-le. Chībuxià-le.              | Thank you. I've eaten too much. I can't eat any more.                            |
| 7. Wǒ-zuótiān-mǎide-yībēn-shū 'jīntiān-jiù-zhǎobudào-le.      | Today I can't find a book that I bought yesterday.                               |
| 8. Qǐng-wèn-nín, Gāo-Xiānsheng-                               | May I ask, on what hill is Mr.                                                   |

- jiǎ zài 'nèige-shānshang?  
Where is it? (In which mountain?)
9. Nǐ-kānyán-'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-le-ma? Méi-you. Tā-jǐa-lì-wǒ-jǐa tài-yuǎn. Wǒ-kānbu-jiàn-tā.  
Did you see Mr. Zhang? No. His home is too far from my home. I can't (go) see him.
10. Zhèncáo-lù-xībian yǒu-yíge-xiǎo-hóng-fángzi. Nǐ-kānde-jiàn-ma? Tài-yuǎn-le. Wǒ-kānbujiàn.  
West of this road is a little red house. Can you see it? It's too far. I can't see it.
11. Jīntian-mǎile-yíběn-shū. Róng-yì-jíe. Wǒ-dōu-kāndedōng.  
I bought a book today. It's awfully easy. I can understand it all.
12. Tā-shuō-huà shuōde-tài-kuài-le. Wǒ-tīngbuǒng.  
He talks too fast. I can't understand him.
13. Wǒ-shuōde-huà nǐ-tīngjiàn-le-ma? Nǐ-shuōde-huà wǒ-méi-tīngjiàn.  
Did you hear what I said? I didn't hear what you said.
14. Wǒ-tài-chǎo-le. Wǒ-yíqíng-niǎnbuliǎo-dàxué.  
I'm too stupid. I certainly can't do college work.
15. Wǒ-méi-quán. Wǒ-xiǎng-qù niǎnbushàng-dàxué.  
I don't have any money. I guess I can't attend college.
16. Yòng-Zhōngwén-xiě-xìn nǐ-xiědehǎo-ma? Wǒ-xiěbulǎo. Tài-nán-le.  
Can you write letters in Chinese? I can't. It's too hard.
17. Nǐ-míngtiān-dào-gōngyuán-qù-ma? Yīnwei-wǒ-yǒu-hěnduō-shì, 'míngtiān-wǒ-zǒu-buliǎo.  
Are you going to the park tomorrow? I have a lot to do, so can't go tomorrow.
18. Tā-zǒude-tài-mǎn-le. Yìtiān-zǒubuliǎo-èrlǐ-lù.  
He walks too slowly. He can't walk two miles a day.
19. Tāde-shì-tài-máfán-le. Wǒ-zuòbulǎo.  
His work is too difficult [troublesome]. I can't do it (for him).
20. Tā-bu-néng-shuō-huà-le.  
Yìqíng-bu-néng-shuō-huà-le  
He's no longer able to speak. He certainly can't live any longer.
21. Tāde-fángzi-tài-xiǎo-le. Yǒu-péngyou jiù-zuòbuxiǎ-le.  
His house is too small. (If he) has friends he can't seat them.
22. Yìzhī-gāngbǐ-liǎngkuài-qián.  
A fountain pen is two dollars.



- Yǒngbuliáo-'wǔkuai-qián.  
couldn't be five dollars.
23. Wǒ-zài-túshūguǎn yùjiàn-  
'Zhāng-Xiǎojié-le.  
I met Miss Johnson in the li-  
brary.
24. Zāncháng wǒ qíng qǐ nǐ.  
Wáng-Xiǎojié kéyǐ-ma? Wǒ-  
jīntiān yùbùjiàn-tā.  
May I ask you to give this book  
to Miss Wang? I'm not likely to  
run into her today.
25. Zhéběn-shū zài-túshūguǎn-  
jièdédào-ma?  
Is it possible to borrow this  
book at the library?
26. Nǐ-dào-túshūguǎn-qu zǒude-  
cāo'ěr. Nǐ néngbùnéng mǎi  
Rúguó-zhōude dào qíng-nǐ-géi-  
wǒ-mǎi-yībēn-shū.  
(On the way) to the library can  
you get to the Three Friends  
Bookstore? If you can [get to it]  
please buy a book for me.
27. Nèizhāng-zhǐ-'tài-xiǎo-le.  
Xiěbùxiǎ-hěn-duō-zì. Nǐ-  
zì-xiǎo-de-'xiǎo-yìdiǎr jiù-  
xiědexiǎ-le.  
That sheet of paper is too small.  
You can't write many characters  
on it. Write the characters a  
little smaller and you'll be able  
to get them on.
28. Tā-shuō-huà shuōde-'tài-kuài-  
le. Wǒ-'dōu-tīngbùdǒng.  
He talks too fast. I can't under-  
stand anything (he says).
29. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng Zhōngguó-  
huà shuōde-hǎojíle. Wǒ-  
'dōu-tīngdédǒng.  
Mr. King speaks Chinese awfully  
well. I can understand every-  
thing (he says).
30. Wǒ-xiǎng-xià-xīngqī wǒmen-  
xuébudào-dì-'shíqīkè.  
I don't think we'll be able to get  
to Lesson 17 by next week.
31. 'Zhāng-Xiǎojié kǎoshàng-dà-  
xué-le.  
Miss Zhang has passed the ex-  
ams for college.
32. Tā-yòu-cōngmíng yòu-yòng-  
gōng. Yídìng-kǎodeshàng-  
dàxué.  
He's bright and he works hard.  
He can certainly pass the exams  
for college.
33. 'Nèige-xuésheng yòu-bèn-yòu-  
bú-yònggōng. Kǎobùshàng-dà-  
xué.  
That student is stupid as well as  
lazy. He can't pass the college  
entrance exams.
34. Wáng-Xiānsheng-'tài-cōng-  
míng-le. Wǒ-suǐrán-hěn-  
yònggōng kěshì-'hái-niánbu-  
guò-tā.  
Mr. King is too brilliant. Al-  
though I work very hard I [still]  
can't beat him [in studying].
35. Nèige-xuésheng-'tài-cōngmíng-  
le. Tā-'yídìng-niàndeguò-  
Zhāng-Xiānsheng.  
That student is extremely in-  
telligent. He can certainly do  
better than Mr. Johnson [in  
studying].



## Pattern 14.5. Large Numbers (Note 7)

## Pattern 14.5 a. Numbers into the Tens of Thousands

(Each of the unit-numbers may be preceded by a digit from one to nine)

wàn	qiān	bǎi	shí
10,000's	1,000's	100's	10's
sānwàn	sìqiān	wúbǎi	liùshí
'thirty-four thousand five hundred sixty'			

## Pattern 14.5 b. Numbers into the Hundreds of Millions

(As above, followed by wàn '10,000')

wàn	qiān	bǎi	shí	wàn
10,000's	1,000's	100's	10's	10,000's
sānwàn	sìqiān	wúbǎi	liùshí	wàn
'34,560 ten-thousands = 345,600,000'				

1. Tīngshuō-Měiguó xiànzài-chà-buduō yǒu-liǎngwànwàn-rén. I hear that the United States now has almost 200,000,000 people.
2. Zhōngguode-rén-zuì-duō. Chà-buduō-yǒu-qīwànwàn-rén. Chinese are the most numerous. There are almost 700,000,000 of them.
3. Měiguó-lí-Zhōngguo-hén-yuǎn--'yíwàn-duō-lǐ-lù. America is a long way from China—over 10,000 miles.
4. Qián-Xiānsheng-'hén-xǐhuan-niàn-shū. Tā-jīnnian-yǐjīng-mǎile yìbǎi-jiǔshíbēn-shū-le. Mr. Qian is very fond of reading. He's already bought 190 books this year.
5. Tāde-qián-tài-duō-le. Chàbuduō-yǒu-qībǎi-wǔshiwàнкуài-qián. He has too much money—(he has) almost \$7,500,000.
6. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng yǒu-qián-jiù-mǎi-shū. Tā-yígòng-yǒu yíwàn-wǔqiān-duō-bēn-shū-le. Tāde-jīa jiù-shi-yíge-xiǎo-tú-shūguǎn. If Mr. Johnson has money he buys books. He has acquired a total of over 15,000 books. His home is a miniature (public) library.
7. Rúguǒ wó-yǒu-liǎng-sān-qiān-kuài-qián wǒ-jiù-dào-wàiguo-qu. If I had two or three thousand dollars I'd go abroad.
8. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng mǎile-yìsuǒr-dà-fángzi. Yòngle-jiǔwàn-wǔ-qiān-duō-kuài-qián. Mr. Wang bought a big house. He spent over \$95,000 (for it).
9. Nèige-xuéxiào yígòng-yǒu- That school has 3,000 students

- sānqiān-xuésheng: 'nán-xué-sheng yìqiān-jiúbǎi-rén, nǚ-xuésheng yìqiān-yìbǎi-rén.
- in all: 1,900 boys [lit. male students], 1,100 girls [lit. female students].
10. Zhèige-chéng-hěn-dà. Chà-buduō yǒu-shíqīwàn-wǔqiān-rén.
- This city is quite large. It has almost 175,000 people.

SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 36 sentences (Note 1)

wǒ	yòng	máobǐ	xiě	xìn	—
nǚ		qiānbǐ		zì	ma
tā		gāngbǐ			

II: 54 sentences (Note 1)

wǒ	gěi	xiānsheng	mǎi-piào	—
nǚ		tàitai	xiě-xìn	ma
tā		xiáojie	jiè-shū	

III: 54 sentences (Note 1)

wǒ	duì	Wáng	Xiānsheng	shuō	huà
nǚ		Qián	Tàitai		shénmo
tā		Gāo	Xiáojie		

IV: 27 phrases (Note 2)

wǒ	jiè	de	zìdiǎn
nǚ	mǎi		shū
tā	yào		běnzì

V: 72 phrases (Notes 2-3)

(Asterisks indicate columns either of which may be used)

*				*	
—	jiè	zìdiǎn	de	—	xiānsheng
zhèige	mǎi	shū		zhèige	rén
nèige	yào			nèiwèi	

VI: 72 sentences (Note 5)

nǚ	—	yòng	-guo	máobǐ	—
tā	méi	jiè		gāngbǐ	ma
		jiàn		qiānbǐ	

VIIa: 8 phrases (Note 6)

kàn	-de-	jiàn
tīng	-bu-	dǒng

VIIb: 12 phrases (Note 6)

jiè	-de-	dào
xué	-bu-	liǎo
mǎi		

VIII: 64 phrases (Note 7)

yí	-wàn	yì	-qiān	yì	-bǎi
èr		èr		èr	
sān		sì		wǔ	
liù		qī		bā	

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

I. Contrasts in ui: tones 1-2 versus tones 3-4

(The Sounds of Chinese, 8)

(Not all Chinese speakers make these contrasts; some pronounce all of these finals like those of tones 3-4.)

(a) guī guǐ	(e) huī huǐ	(i) tuí tuì
(b) guī guì	(f) huí huì	(j) suí suì
(c) kuī kuì	(g) duī duì	(k) zhuī zhuì
(d) kuí kuǐ	(h) tuī tuǐ	(l) cuī cuì

II. Contrasts in iu and you: tones 1-2 versus tones 3-4

(The Sounds of Chinese, 13)

(Not all Chinese speakers make these contrasts; some pronounce all of these finals like those of tones 3-4.)

(a) niú niǔ	(c) jiū jiǔ	(e) xiū xiǔ
(b) liú liù	(d) jiū jiù	(f) xiū xiù
(g) yōu yǒu	(i) yōu yòu	
(h) yóu yǒu	(j) yóu yòu	

## III. Contrasts in Stress (The Sounds of Chinese, 22)

- |                                                         |                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Shi-Wáng-'Xiānsheng-láide shi-Wáng-'Tàitai-láide?    | Is it Mr. King or Mrs. King who has come?       |
| 2. Shi-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-láide shi-'Bái-Xiānsheng-láide?  | Is it Mr. King or Mr. White who has come?       |
| 3. Tā-shi-jīntian-'mǎi-de-chē háishi-'mài-de-chē?       | Did he buy or sell a car today?                 |
| 4. Tā-shi-jīntian-mǎi-chē háishi-mǎi-fángzi?            | Is he buying a car or a house today?            |
| 5. Tā-'jīntian-lái háishi-'míng-tian-lái?               | Is it today or tomorrow that he's coming?       |
| 6. Tā-jīntian-lái háishi-jīntian-zǒu?                   | Is he coming or going today?                    |
| 7. Wǒ-shuō-jīntian, méi-shuō-zuótian.                   | I said <u>today</u> , not <u>yesterday</u> .    |
| 8. Wǒ-shuō-jīn <u>nián</u> , méi-shuō-jīn <u>tiān</u> . | I said this <u>year</u> , not this <u>day</u> . |

## IV. Contrasts in Juncture (The Sounds of Chinese, 21)

- |            |         |
|------------|---------|
| (a) yínán  | yīn'àn  |
| (b) míngē  | míng'é  |
| (c) fāngài | fáng'ài |

## THE TOPIC-COMMENT CONSTRUCTION (Note 8 below)

- |                                                                                                |                                                                         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Ní-mǎile-piào-le-ma? Piào-mǎi-le.                                                           | Did you buy the tickets? The tickets have been bought.                  |
| 2. Nǐ-kéyi-shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà-ma? Zhōngguo-huà-kéyi-shuō.                                      | Can you speak Chinese? (I) can speak Chinese.                           |
| 3. 'Bái-Xiānsheng mǎile-'bǐ-méi-you? Tā-bí-mǎi-le.                                             | Did Mr. White buy the pens? He bought the pens.                         |
| 4. 'Qián-Xiānsheng dào-túshū-guǎn-le-ma? 'Qián-Xiānsheng túshūguǎn-dàoguó-le.                  | Did Mr. Qian go to the library? Mr. Qian has been to the library.       |
| 5. 'Zhāng-Xiáojie zuótian-'kànguo-diànyǐngr-le-ma? 'Zhāng-Xiáojie zuótian diànyǐngr-kànguo-le. | Did Miss Zhang see a movie yesterday? Miss Zhang saw a movie yesterday. |
| 6. Nèige-xuésheng niànguo-'dàxué-le-ma? Ta-'zhōng-                                             | Has that student attended college? He's been to middle                  |

- xué-niànguo-le, 'dàxué-hái-méi-niàn-ne.
7. Nǐ-niàn-shū-le-ma? Shū-niàn-le.
8. Ní-mǎi-shū-gěi-'qián-méi-you? Qián-gěi-le.
9. Nǐ-chīle-fàn-le-ma? Fàn-chīguo-le.
10. Nǐ-néng-xiě-'Zhōngguo-zì-ma? 'Zhōngguo-zì néng-xiě.
11. Ní-géi-ni-mǔqīn xiě-xìn-le-ma? Géi-wó-mǔqīn-de-xìn xěi-le.
12. Ní-mǎi-'mòshuǐ-le-méi-you? Mòshuǐ-mǎi-le.
13. Nǐ-zuótian-shuō-mǎi-zìdiǎn, mǎi-dìtú. Dōu-'mǎi-le-méi-you? Zìdiǎn-mǎi-le, dìtú-hái-méi-mǎi-ne.
14. Ní-xiě-zì-le-ma? Zì-xiě-le.
15. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-mǎile nèi-suǒr-dà-fángzi-ma? Nèi-suǒr-dà-fángzi tā-mǎi-le.
- school, but has not yet been to college.
- Did you do (your) studying? The studying's done.
- Did you pay the money when you bought the books? The money has been paid.
- Have you eaten? I've already eaten.
- Can you write Chinese characters? (I) can write Chinese characters.
- Did you write a letter to your mother? The letter to my mother has been written.
- Did you buy the ink? The ink has been bought.
- Yesterday you said (you were going) to buy a dictionary and a map. Did you buy both? I bought the dictionary, but have not yet bought the map.
- Did you write the characters? The characters have been written.
- Did Mr. Gao buy that big house? He bought that big house.

## MONOLOGUE

Wǒ-shi-yíge-Měiguó-xuésheng. Wǒ-dào-Zhōngguó lái-niàn-shū. Xiànzài-'Zhōngguó-shū wǒ-néng-kàndedǒng-le. 'Zhōngguó-huà yě-dōu-néng-shuō-le. Wǒ-duì-xiě-zì zuì-yǒu-xìngqu. Wó-měitiān dōu-yòng-máobí-xiě-zì. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng, 'Qián-Xiānsheng tāmen-kànjian-wó-xiě-de-zì, dōu-shuō-xiěde-hǎojíle. Bù-zhīdào tāmen-shi-kèqī-ne háishi-zhēn-huà-ne. Yòng-máobí-xiě-zì hěn-nán. Zhōngguó-rén chàbuduō-yě-dōu-yòng-gāngbǐ huòzhěqiānbǐ xiě-zì-le. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-duì-xiě-zì hén-yǒu-yánjiu. Wó-xiě-de-zì cháng-qǐng-ta-kàn. Tā-yě-gàosu-wo xiě-zì-de-'fāngfǎ, suóyī-wó-hěnxìexie-ta.

CHECKING UP

The questions below are based on material in the Dialogue at the beginning of this lesson.

- 1. 'Gāo-Xiáojie-xuéxiào yígòng-yǒu-'duōshao-xuésheng?
- 2. Dào-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué-kǎoshì-de-xuésheng yígòng-yǒu-'duōshao-rén?
- 3. 'Gāo-Xiáojie-shuō ta-'zěnmō-kǎobushàng-dàxué?
- 4. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō 'Gāo-Xiáojie kǎodeshàng-dàxué-ma?
- 5. 'Gāo-Xiáojie-shuō ta-rúguó-kǎobushàng-dàxué ta-jiù-xué-shénmō?
- 6. 'Bái-Xiānsheng xīwang-'Gāo-Xiáojie-xué-shénmō?
- 7. 'Gāo-Xiáojie xuéguo-huà-huàr-ma?
- 8. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yuánlái-xiǎng-xué-shénmō-ne?
- 9. Yuǎndōng-Dàxué yǒu-'duōshao-xuésheng?
- 10. 'Duōshao-rén kǎoshang-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué-le?
- 11. Xué-yǔyánxué 'zěnmō-xué-ne?
- 12. 'Bái-Xiānsheng gěi-'Zhōngguo-péngyou-xiě-xìn, yòng-'Zhōngwén háishi-yòng-'Yīngwén?
- 13. 'Gāo-Xiáojiede-fùqīn 'zì-xiěde-hǎo-bu-hǎo?
- 14. 'Gāo-Xiáojie-shuō xiànzài-Zhōngguo-rén dōu-yòng-'shénmō-bí-xiě-zì?
- 15. 'Shéi-duì-Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō Gāo-Xiáojiede-zì xiěde-hén-hǎo?

NOTES

- 1. The verb yòng 'use' also functions as a coverb meaning 'by, with, by means of':

'Zhōngguo-rén yòng-máobí-xiě-zì. 'Chinese write characters with a writing brush.'

The verb gěi 'give,' which is similar to its English equivalent in that it takes both direct and indirect objects (Tā-gěi-wó-bǐ. 'He gave me a pen. '), is also used as a coverb meaning 'to' or 'for':

Wǒ-jīntian-gěi-ta-xiě-xìn. 'I'm writing him a letter today.' 'I'm writing a letter for him (i.e. to someone else) today.'

Wǒ-jīntian-gěi-ta-mǎi-shū. 'I'm buying him a book today.' 'I'm buying a book for him today.' \*

\* Note that the second of these English sentences is ambiguous: it could mean either 'I bought a book to give him as a present' or 'I bought a book to save him the effort of doing so himself.' The Chinese, however, is not ambiguous; it can only have the first English meaning. However, in a few cases, such as gěi-ta-xiě-xìn, the sentence is ambiguous out of context.

The verb duì 'face toward' is used as a coverb. Most often it corresponds to English 'toward' or 'to':

Tā-duì-wǒ-shuō tā-bù-lái-le. 'He told me [lit. said to me that] he isn't coming any more.'

Occasionally it corresponds more closely to 'with respect to':

Wǒ-duì-wénxué hén-yǒu-xìngqū. 'With respect to literature, I'm very interested.' Or, more freely, 'I'm very much interested in literature.'

2. Subordination of transitive and intransitive verbs to nouns is an extension of subordination of nouns and stative verbs (Lesson 5, Note 2, p. 55):

wǒ-péngyoude-shū 'my friend's book'  
hén-xiǎode-shū 'a very small book'

With other verbs as well, de occurs between the verb phrase and the following noun:

dào-túshūguǎn-qù-de-xuésheng 'students who go to the library'  
niàn-wénxué-de-xuésheng 'students who study literature'  
xuésheng-niàn-de-shū 'books which students read'

The verb phrases often correspond to English relative clauses; but in Chinese the clauses always come before the modified noun—not after it, as in English.

3. Specifiers (e.g. zhèi 'this,' nèi 'that') used with subordinate clauses can come either before the clause or before the noun:

nèige-mǎi-shū-de-rén	}	'the person who is buying books'
<u>or</u>		
mǎi-shū-de-nèige-rén		

If the clause is a long one, the specifier is more likely to occur before the noun. In this usage the specifier more often has the force of the definite article 'the' in English rather than its basic meaning 'this' or 'that.'

4. The noun to which a clause is subordinated can be omitted:

Zài-nèr-niàn-shū-de-rén bu-dōu-shi-'Zhōngguo-rén.

or

Zài-nèr-niàn-shū-de bu-dōu-shi-'Zhōngguo-rén.

'Not all those studying there are Chinese.'

5. The verb suffix -guo has two meanings:

- (a) In a context where no specific time is mentioned, it suggests that an action has (or has not) been experienced at some indefinite time in the past:

Wǒ-chīguo-'Rìběn-fàn. 'I've eaten Japanese food (at some time or other).'

Wǒ-méi-chīguo-'Rìběn-fàn. 'I have never [= not ever] eaten Japanese food.'

Nǐ-chīguo-'Rìběn-fàn-méi-you? 'Have you ever eaten Japanese food?'



- (b) In a context where a specific time is mentioned or understood, -guo places emphasis on the fact that an action has already been completed. Thus in answer to a question about whether you accomplished the task of borrowing a certain book from the library today, you might answer:

Jièguo-le. 'I've borrowed it (already).'

6. Resultative verbs (RV) are compound transitive verbs. Some of the compounds have a clear action-result relationship:

tīng 'listen' + jiàn 'see, perceive' = tīngjian 'perceive by listening' —  
i.e. 'hear'

Often, however, these compounds have meanings which are not predictable from the separate meanings of the parts (cf. English 'understand'), so that you cannot form your own resultative compounds by combining two likely-sounding verbs; you must learn each one individually as you encounter it.

Resultative verbs, as distinguished from other verbs, have special forms for adding the meanings 'be able' and 'be unable.' For 'be able,' de is inserted between the two parts:

tīngjian 'hear' > tīngdejiàn 'able to hear, can hear'

For 'be unable,' bu is inserted:

tīngjian 'hear' > tīngbujian 'unable to hear, can't hear'

Resultative compounds whose second member is liǎo (which here has no meaning in itself but only the grammatical function of forming compounds) have no simple verb + liǎo forms; they occur only in de and bu combinations:

chīdeliǎo 'can eat'  
chībuliǎo 'can't eat'

The latter forms are interchangeable with the auxiliary-plus-verb pattern:

néng-chī or chīdeliǎo 'able to eat, can eat'

The two patterns may even be combined, so that there is a double expression for 'can':

néng-chīdeliǎo 'able to eat, can eat'

Resultative verb compounds are made negative by méi or méi-you:

Wǒ-méi-kànjian-ta. 'I didn't see him.'

Rarely, however, are they preceded by bu; instead, the verb-bu-verb form is used, expressing a 'cannot' rather than a 'does not' negative:

Nǐ-tīngjian-ma? 'Do you hear?'  
Wǒ-tīngbujian. 'I can't hear.'

7. Numbers over 99 are expressed with combinations using bǎi 'hundred,' qiān 'thousand,' wàn 'ten thousand'; the larger units precede the smaller:

sānbǎi-sìshiwǔ '345'  
yíwàn-èrqiān-sānbǎi-sìshiwǔ '12,345'

Numbers above 10,000 are expressed in multiples of ten thousand (not, as in English, in multiples of one thousand or one million):

shíwàn	'100,000'
bǎiwàn	'1,000,000'
qiānwàn	'10,000,000'
wànwàn	'100,000,000'

The numbers bǎi, qiān, and wàn, when combined with '2,' take liǎng or èr:

liángbǎi or èrbǎi '200'

The measure ge is often omitted after bǎi, qiān, and wàn, and also after duō when the following word refers to people:

yìbǎi-rén '100 people'

sānqiān-duō-rén 'over 3,000 people'

8. Chinese subject-verb (SV) constructions may have two different interpretations, according to the context. For example, this sentence may have the following separate meanings:

Wáng-Xiānsheng yě-kàn-le.

(a) Mr. King also read (the book which has been under discussion).

(b) I also saw Mr. King (among other of my acquaintances).

In meaning (a), the subject (S) performed the action of the verb (V); this can be called an Actor-Action relationship and considered a special subtype of the S-V construction.

In meaning (b), the relationship between the parts is different: the subject (S) is commented on by—but did not perform the action of—the verb (V). Meanings of the (b) type might be referred to as T-C, or Topic-Comment, constructions, and considered another subtype of the S-V construction.

In constructions of the T-C type, the word order of the Chinese sentence often corresponds loosely with the word order of English passive sentences:

Fàn-chī-le. '(About) the food—eat(ing) has (been done to it).' (Cf.: 'The food has been eaten.')

It is misleading, however, to translate the T-C construction with an English passive sentence, since the English passive construction has quite different connotations from the Chinese T-C pattern. The T-C pattern names something, then says something about it; the effect is often to emphasize the V, or Comment, part of the sentence.

Here are more examples:

A-A: Nǐ-dōu-mǎi-le-méi-you? 'Did you buy everything?'

T-C: Shū-dōu-mǎi-le-méi-you? 'The books . . . did buy them all?'

T-C: Zhèiběn-shū xiànzài-shūdiàn-mǎibudào. '(About) this book. . . now [in] bookstores it can't be bought'—or, more freely, 'You can't buy this book in bookstores nowadays.'

9. An alternative, and slightly less blunt, way of saying N-V is the construction N shì V de:

Wǒ-chīguo. 'I've eaten (it).'

Wǒ-shì-chīguo-de. 'I've eaten (it).' [lit. 'I am the one who ate it.']

Zhèiběn-shū hěn-dà. 'This book is very large.'

Zhèiběn-shū shì-hěn-dà-de. 'This book is a very large one.'

Context will determine whether the form with shì...de has the same connotation as the simpler form, or whether a more literal translation is a closer representation of what the Chinese expresses.

10. The word zuì is used in two meanings: '-est' and 'very, extremely':

Zhèi-sìge-rén-lǐtōu, tā-shì-zuì-gāo-de. 'Among these four men, he is the tallest.'

Tā-shuōde zuì-hǎo. Wǒ-dōu-tīngdédǒng. 'He speaks extremely well. I can understand everything (he says).'

The word tài is also used in two meanings, 'excessively, too' and 'very, extremely':

Rén-tài-duō. 'There are too many people.'

Tā-Zhōngguo-huà shuōde-tài-hǎo-le. 'He speaks Chinese extremely well.'

11. Other ways of expressing extreme or excessive degrees of an attribute, in addition to those described in Note 10, are:

- (a) Giving special stress to a word. Observe the effect of stress in the following pairs of sentences:

Tā-hén-hǎo. 'He's O. K.'

Tā-'hén-hǎo. 'He's very good.'

- (b) Suffixing jíle 'extremely' to the stative verb:

Tā-bènjíle. 'He's extremely stupid.'

- (c) Repeating the phrase containing the stative verb:

Tā-shuō-Zhōngguo-huà shuōde hén-hǎo hén-hǎo. 'He speaks Chinese very well.'

12. The expression zuì-hǎo 'best' is used either before or after the subject to mean 'had better [do so-and-so]':

Wǒ-jīntian-méi-qián. Wǒ-zuì-hǎo míngtiān-mǎi-shū. 'I don't have any money today. It would be best if I bought the books tomorrow.'

Zuì-hǎo-wǒmen-bu-qù. 'We'd better not go.'

13. The measure fēn 'part,' which we have encountered in expressions of time and money (yīfēn-zhōng 'one minute,' yīfēn-qián 'one cent'), is occasionally used in the meaning 'one-tenth,' usually in a figurative sense:

Tā-huó-de-xīwang zhí-yǒu-sānfēn. 'There is only a three-tenths hope of his living.'

The expression shífēn 'ten-tenths' is used as an intensifying adverb in

the meaning 'very,' comparable to the English expression 'one hundred per cent' (a hundred per cent acceptable, etc.):

Zhèizhī-bǐ shífēn-hǎo. 'This pen is very good.'

14. The adverb yě 'also' is repeated in two or more consecutive parallel verbal expressions to mean 'both . . . and . . .,' or, if more than two, 'X and Y and Z . . . all three,' and so on:

Jīntiān shū-yě-niàn-le, zì-yé-xiě-le. 'Today I have done both the studying and the writing.'

## Lesson 15 STUDYING AND TRAVELING



"Tīng-lùyīn shì-xué-yǔyán-'zuì-hǎode-fāngfǎ-le."

Dialogue: Mr. White and Miss Gao speak of their studies and travels.

- |                                                                                                                                                                 |          |                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Gāo: 'Bái-Xiānsheng, nín-niànde<br>'jǐniánde-Zhōngwén-le?                                                                                                       |          | Mr. White, how many years have<br>you been studying Chinese?                                                                                                                                            |
| Bái: Wǒ-zài-zhōngxué jiù-kāishǐ-<br>niàn-'Zhōngwén. Gāozhōng-<br>'èrniánjí wǒ-jiù-niàn-Zhōng-<br>wén-le.                                                        | 5        | I began (to study Chinese) in<br>high school. [It was] in my sec-<br>ond year in senior high [that I<br>studied Chinese].                                                                               |
| Gāo: Nín-Zhōngwén niànde-'zhēn-<br>bù-shǎo-le.                                                                                                                  |          | You've been studying it for quite<br>a while.                                                                                                                                                           |
| Bái: Wǒ-niàn-'Zhōngwén chàbù-<br>duō-yǐjīng-yóu-'wǔnián-le.                                                                                                     | 10       | [I've been studying it] for almost<br>five years.                                                                                                                                                       |
| Gāo: Suóyì-nínde-Zhōngwén<br>nènmo-hǎo-ne. Nín-zài-<br>Měiguó-xué-Zhōngwén 'zěn-<br>mo-xué-ne?                                                                  |          | That's why your Chinese is so<br>good. How did you study Chinese<br>in America?                                                                                                                         |
| Bái: Wǒmen-kāishǐ-'xué-de-shí-<br>hou měitiān-shàng-'yíge-<br>zhōngtóude-kè. Jiàoyuán-<br>jiāo-wǒmen-shuō. Xià-kè-<br>yǐhòu wǒmen-jiù-tīng-<br>lùyīnjīde-lùyīn. | 15<br>20 | At the beginning [lit. when we<br>began to study], we went to class<br>one hour a day. The teacher<br>taught us to speak. After [leav-<br>ing] class we listened to record-<br>ings on a tape recorder. |

- Gāo: Tīng-lùyīn shì-xué-yǔyán-  
'zuì-hǎode-fāngfǎ-le.
- Bái: Duì-le.
- Gāo: Nín-měitiān-tīng-lùyīn  
yào-tīng-'duōshao-shíhou-  
ne? 25
- Bái: Zài-'zhōngxué-de-shíhou  
tīngde-shǎo-yìdiǎr. Měi-  
tiān-tīng 'sān-sìshífēn-  
zhōngde-lùyīn. Zài-'dà-  
xué-de-shíhou měitiān-yào-  
tīng 'yì-liǎngge-zhōngtóu. 30
- Gāo: Nín-zhēn-yònggōng.
- Bái: Xué-yǔyán bìděi-yònggōng.  
Xué-yǔyán hén-yǒu-yìsi. 35  
Kǎishǐ-de-shíhou hén-nán  
xué. Yǐhòu jiù-róngyì-le,  
gèng-yǒu-xìngqù-le. Wǒ-  
nèige-shíhou-jiù-xiǎng  
jiānglái-yídìng-dào-Zhōng-  
guo-qu-niàn-shù. 40
- Gāo: Nín-xiànzài 'zhēn-dào-  
Zhōngguo-lái-niàn-shù-le...  
Nín-dào-Zhōngguo zuò-'fēijī  
háishì-zuò-'chuán-lái-de-ne? 45
- Bái: Wǒ-xiān-cóng-Niǔyue zuò-  
qìchē dào-Sānfánshì. Wǒ-  
zuòle-'liùtiān-de-qìchē cái-  
dào-ner.
- Gāo: Tīngshuō-Sānfánshì 'Zhōng-  
guo-rén-hěn-duō. Shì-'zhēn-  
de-ma? 50
- Bái: Nèr-'Zhōngguo-rén-bù-shǎo.  
Zài-Sānfánshì zhùle-bātiān.  
Wǒ-yòu-zuòle-shítiānde-  
chuán dào-Rìběn. Zài-Rì-  
běn zhùle-yíge-xīngqī, jiù-  
zuò-fēijī dào-'Zhōngguo-lái-  
le. 55
- Gāo: Cóng-Rìběn-zuò-fēijī-dào-  
Zhōngguo yào-'duōshao-  
shíhou-ne? 'Yào-bu-yào  
qī-bāge-zhōngtóu-ne? 60
- Bái: Yòngbudào-qī-bāge-zhōng-  
tóu. Sān-sìge-zhōngtóu jiù-  
dào-le. 65
- Listening to recordings is the  
best way to study languages.
- That's right.
- How much time did you listen to  
recordings each day?
- We listened less in high school—  
[we listened] thirty or forty  
minutes a day. When I was in  
college we had [to listen for] one  
or two hours a day.
- You really work hard.
- You have to work hard to study a  
foreign language. Language  
study is very interesting. At the  
beginning it was hard going.  
Later it got easier and I became  
even more interested. It was  
then that I got the idea of [surely  
in the future] going to China to  
study.
- Now you've really come to China  
to study... Did you come by  
plane or by boat?
- First I went by car from New  
York to San Francisco, arriving  
there after a six-day drive.
- I hear there are a lot of Chinese  
in San Francisco. Is that right?
- There are quite a few [Chinese  
there]. I stayed in San Francis-  
co for eight days. Then I  
traveled for ten days by boat to  
Japan. I stayed in Japan for a  
week, and then came to China by  
plane.
- How much time does it take by  
plane from Japan to China?  
[Does it take] seven or eight  
hours?
- It doesn't take that long [lit. It  
can't take seven or eight hours].  
You can make it in three or four  
[hours].



Gāo : Nín-zuòguo-'jǐcì-fēijī-le?		How many times have you been on a plane?
Bái : Wó-yǐjing-zuòguo-'hěn-duō-cì-le.		[I've been] quite a few times [already].
Gāo : Wǒ-hái-méi-zuòguo-fēijī-ne. 70 Yǒu-jīhuì wó-děi-'zuò-yíci.		I haven't even been on a plane yet. If I have a chance I must go up in one [lit. sit once].
Bái : Jiānglái nǐ-bìyè-yǐhòu yīnggāi-zuò-fēijī dào-bié-de-dìfang-qu-wárwar.		[In the future] after you graduate you should take a plane somewhere and go have fun.
Gāo : Wó-xiǎng bìyè-yǐhòu gēn-wǒ-fùqin-mǔqin-tāmen yíkuàr-dào-Rìběn-wárwar. 75 Hěn-duō-rén-shuō Rìběn-hén-yǒu-yìsi. Wǒ-xīwang-dào-Rìběn-yǐhòu zài-nèr-zhù-yì-liǎngge-yuè.		I think that after I graduate I'll go to Japan with my father and mother for a vacation [lit. to have fun]. Many people say Japan is quite interesting. I hope [after getting to Japan] to stay there for a month or two.
Bái : Rìběn-'shì-hén-yǒu-yìsi. 80 Yīnggāi-qu-wárwar.		Japan <u>is</u> very interesting. You should go there and have fun.
Gāo : Wǒ-fùqin-mǔqin dōu-qùguo-Rìběn. Tāmen-'hén-xǐhuan-Rìběn. Tāmen-zài-nèrzhùe-liǎngge-duō-yuè-ne, hái-mǎile-hěn-duō Rìběn-dōngxì. 85		My father and mother have both been to Japan. They liked it very much. They stayed there for more than two months, and bought a lot of Japanese things.
Bái : Ní-'zěnmó-méi-gēn-tāmen yíkuàr-qù-ne? 90		How come you didn't go along with them?
Gāo : Yīnwei-wǒmen-xuéxiào-kǎoshì, wǒ-méi-gōngfu-qù. Wǒ-yuánlái-xiǎng kǎowán-yǐhòu gēn-liǎng-sānge-'péngyou-yíkuàr-qù, kěshì-wǒ-bìng-le, suóyi-jiù-méiqu. 95		Because our school was having exams, I didn't have time. I had planned originally to go with two or three friends after exams were over, but I got sick, so I didn't go.
Bái : Nǐ-bìyè-yǐhòu xīwang-nǐ-zhēn-néng-qù-yíci. 100		After you graduate I hope you really can go [once].
Gāo : 'Dāngrán-néng-qù-le. Yīnwei-wo-fùqin-mǔqin tāmen-'dōu-xǐhuan-qù, bìyè-yǐhòu huòzhě-gēn-tāmen-'yíkuàr-qù. 105		Of course I'll be able to [go]. Since my father and mother would both like to go, perhaps I'll go with them after I graduate.
Bái : Nǐ-fùqin-mǔqin tāmen-qù-Rìběn zhùzai-nǎr-ne?		When your father and mother go to Japan, where do they stay?
Gāo : Wǒ-fùqin-zai-Rìběn yǒu-yíwèi-Rìběn-lǎo-péngyou. Tāmen-qùdao-Rìběn jiuzhùzai-tā-jiā. 110		[In Japan] my father has an old Japanese friend. When they go to Japan they stay at his home.



Bá: Nǐ-huì-huà-huà 'gèng-yīnggāi dào-biéde-dìfang-qu-kānkan.

Your knowing how to paint is even more reason why you should go have a look at other places.

Gāo: Nǐ-zhènmò-shuō wǒ-yí-dìng-děi-dào-Rìběn-qù-yíci.

115

The way you talk I certainly must take a trip to Japan.

## VOCABULARY

bì	must, have to (AV) (Note 14 below)
bìděi	must, have to (AV) (Note 14 below)
bié(de)	other
bìng	sick (SV) sickness (N)
cái	(only) then, not until then (AD) (Note 13 below)
dāngrán	naturally, of course (MA) [lit. ought be]
děi	must, have to (AV) (Note 13 below)
dìfang	place, space (N) [lit. earth region]
dōngxi	(concrete) thing, object (N)
gāi	should, ought to (AV) (Note 15 below)
gēn	(together) with (CV)
jiānglái	in the future, hereafter (TW) [lit. about to come]
jiāo	teach (TV)
jīhuì	opportunity (N)
kāishǐ	begin (to do) (AV) [lit. open beginning]
lù-yīn	record (sound) (VO)
lùyīn	recording (N)
lùyīnjī	(tape) recorder (N) [lit. record sound machine]
nènmò	in that case (MA) so, that (AD) (Note 18 below)
Niūyue	New York (PW)
Sānfánshì	San Francisco (PW)
wán	finished, completed, done (IV)
wá	amuse oneself (with), play (with), have fun (IV)
yíkuà	together (AD) [lit. one lump]
yīngdāng	should, ought to (AV) [lit. should ought] (Note 15 below)

yīnggāi	should, ought to (AV) [lit. should must] (Note 15 below)
yuè	month (N) (Note 1 below)
zènmō, zhènmō	so, this (AD) (Note 18)
zhōngtóu	hour (N)
zhù	live (at) (TV)

SENTENCE BUILD-UP

yuè shí'èrge-yuè	month twelve months
1. Yīnián yǒu-shí'èrge-yuè.	One year has twelve months.
zhōngtóu èrshísìge-zhōngtóu	hour twenty-four hours
2. Yītiān yǒu-èrshísìge-zhōng-tóu.	One day has twenty-four hours.
lù yīn	record, make a recording sound
3. Wǒmen-xiànzài-lù-yīn kényi-ma?	Can we record now?
lùyīn lùde-bù-hǎo	a recording record badly
4. Zhèige-lùyīn lùde-bù-hǎo.	This recording is badly done.
lùyīnjī yòng-lùyīnjī	recording machine use a recorder
5. Wǒmen-yòng-lùyīnjī xué-yǔyán.	We use recorders in studying languages.
kāishǐ kāishǐ-niàn-Zhōngwén	begin begin to study Chinese
6. Wǒmen-shì-jiǔyuè kāishǐ-niàn-' Zhōngwén-de.	We began to study Chinese in September.
zhù zhù-Měiguó	live (in <u>or</u> at a place) live in America
7. Tāmen-dōu-zhù-Měiguó.	They all live in America.
zài-Měiguó zài-Měiguó-zhù	in America live in America
8. Tāmen-dōu-zài-Měiguó-zhù.	They all live in America.
Niǔyue zhù-Niǔyue	New York live in New York
9. Ní-xǐhuan-zhù-Niǔyue-ma?	Do you like to live in New York?

- |     |                                              |                                                           |
|-----|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
|     | Sānfánshì<br>zài-Sānfánshì-zhù               | San Francisco<br>live in San Francisco                    |
| 10. | Tīngshuō-zài-Sānfánshì-zhù<br>hén-yǒu-vìsi.  | I hear it's very interesting to<br>live in San Francisco. |
|     | jiāo<br>jiāo-tāmen                           | teach<br>teach them                                       |
| 11. | Wǒ-jiāo-tāmen-Zhōngwén.                      | I teach them Chinese.                                     |
|     | jiāo<br>jiāo-shū                             | teach<br>teach                                            |
| 12. | Tā-zài-Niǚyue-jiāo-shū.                      | He teaches in New York.                                   |
|     | jiāo-shū<br>jiāo-yíge-zhōngtóu-shū           | teach<br>teach for one hour                               |
| 13. | Wǒ-xiànzài yào-jiāo-yíge-<br>zhōngtóu-shū.   | I'm going to teach for one hour<br>now.                   |
|     | jiāo-shū<br>jiāo-liǎngge-zhōngtóude-<br>shū  | teach<br>teach for two hours                              |
| 14. | Wǒ-měitiān jiāo-liǎngge-zhōng-<br>tóude-shū. | I teach two hours every day.                              |
|     | zài-Niǚyue-zhù<br>sānge-yuè                  | live in New York<br>three months                          |
| 15. | Wǒ-xiǎng-zài-Niǚyue zhù-<br>sānge-yuè.       | I plan to live in New York for<br>three months.           |
|     | bìng<br>yǒu-bìng                             | sickness<br>have a sickness                               |
| 16. | Tā-yǒu-'shénmo-bìng?                         | What illness does he have?                                |
|     | bìng<br>bìng-le                              | sick<br>become sick                                       |
| 17. | Tā-qùnián-bìngge-bātiān.                     | He was sick for eight days last<br>year.                  |
|     | wár<br>wárwar                                | have a good time<br>have a good time                      |
| 18. | Wǒmen-dào-nèr-qu-wárwar-<br>hǎo-ma?          | How about going there and hav-<br>ing a good time?        |
|     | wár<br>wárle<br>wárle-yíge-xīngqī            | have fun<br>had fun<br>had fun for a week                 |
| 19. | Tāmen-èryue wárle-yíge-<br>xīngqī.           | They had fun for a week in Feb-<br>ruary.                 |
|     | jiāo-sìge-zhōngtóu-<br>shū                   | teach for four hours                                      |
|     | jiāole-sìge-zhōngtóu-<br>shū                 | taught for four hours                                     |
| 20. | Wǒ-zuótiān jiāole-sìge-zhōng-<br>tóu-shū.    | I taught for four hours yester-<br>day.                   |

- |                                               |                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 21. Tā-bú-zài-jia. Cǎi-zǒu.                   | just, then and only then<br>just left<br>He isn't at home. He just left.                                           |
| 22. Dōu-wán-le-ma?                            | finish<br>finished<br>Is everything finished?                                                                      |
| 23. Wǒmen-chīwánle-fàn cǎi-zǒu.               | finish eating<br>finished eating<br>We'll go after we've finished eating.                                          |
| 24. Nǐ-shífēn-zhōng chīde-wán-chībuwán?       | able to finish eating<br>unable to finish eating<br>Can you eat [lit. finish eating] in ten minutes?               |
| 25. Wǒ-yíkè-zhōng dāngrán-xiěbuwán.           | naturally<br>naturally unable to finish writing<br>Of course I can't finish writing in a quarter of an hour.       |
| 26. Nǐ-yǒu-'biéde-méi-you?                    | other<br>not have any other<br>Do you have any other?                                                              |
| 27. Wǒ-méi-yǒu-biéde-shì.                     | other<br>other tasks<br>I have no other tasks.                                                                     |
| 28. Nèige-difang méi-yǒu-'wàiguó-rén.         | place<br>that place<br>There are no foreigners in that place.                                                      |
| 29. Zhèige-dōngxī-jiào-shénmo?                | thing<br>this thing<br>What's this thing called?                                                                   |
| 30. Nǐ-jiānglái-shuōde bǐ-xiànzài-shuōde-hǎo. | some time in the future<br>compared to now<br>speak well<br>You will speak better in the future than (you do) now. |
| 31. Wǒ-déi-zǒu-le.                            | must<br>I must go.                                                                                                 |
| 32. Wǒ-jīntian bìděi-kànwán-zhèiběn-shū.      | must<br>must finish reading<br>I must finish reading this book today.                                              |



46 Wǒ-xī-yǐ-chīguo 'ānquǎn-  
Zhōngguó-xiānshēng.

I've eaten Chinese food only  
once before.

47 Wǒ-xī-yǐ-qù-mǎ?

Have you gone riding?

48 Tā-xī-yǐ-mánggōng-qù-mǎ?

Is he going tomorrow?

49 Zhōngguó-xiānshēng-qù-mǎ-yǐ-yǒu-yǒu.

He, must be if  
he had.

50 Tā-zài-jìzì-xiě-zì.

He is writing characters in the  
book.

51 Tā-xiězì-zhǐshàng.

He is writing on paper.

52 Tā-zài-xīnyuē.

He lives in a place  
He lives in New York.

### PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 12.1. Duration of an Action in the Future (Note 4 below)

S	(yào)	V	T	(-de)	(O)
Subject	(yào)	Verb	Time	(-de)	(Object)
Wǒ	yào	kān	yíge zhōngtóu	-de	shù.
'I will read a book for one hour.'					

1 Qiān Xiānsheng yào qù Rìběn-qu-bānnián.

Mr. Qian will go to Japan for half a year.

2 Wítái yào cānkǎo, kě Xiānsheng yào nián-lǎngge-xīngqī-shù.

Because he's about to have exams, Mr. White is going to study for two weeks.

3 Gāo Xiānsheng yào huà-lǎngge-yuēdìhuār.

Miss Gao says that after she has her exams she will paint for a couple of months.

4 Wǒ xià-zhōng-xīngqī yào mǎi yíge-lùyīnjī, xià-kè-yǐhòu měitiān-tīng-yíge-zhōngtóu-de-lùyīn.

I plan to buy a recorder next week and listen to recordings an hour a day after class.

5 Zhāng Xiānsheng hěn xǐhuan Sānfánsì. Tā-xià-zhōng-yíge-

Mr. Zhang is delighted with San Francisco. A week from now he



- xīngqī-yǐhòu dào-Sānfánshì  
zhù-liǎng-sānge-xīngqī.
6. 'Máo-Xiānsheng xiáng-qǐng-yīwèi-xiānsheng jiāo-ta-yì-niánde-Yīngguo-huà.
7. 'Gāo-Tàitai xiǎng-dào-Niǔyue qù-liǎngge-yuè.
8. 'Zhāng-Xiǎojie xiáng-měitiān xué-liǎngge-zhōngtóude-Yīngwén.
9. Tā-xiǎng-dào-Húnán qù-liǎngge-xīngqī.
10. Tā-xiǎng-cóng-míngtiān-kāishǐ tā-yào-niàn 'sānge-yuède-Zhōngwén.
11. Máo-Tàitai-shuō tā-yào-dào-Shāndong-qu-bànnián.
12. Zhāng-Xiānsheng-shuō tā-xiǎng-dào-Yīngguo-qu-yì-nián, zài-dào-Měiguo-qu-sānge-yuè.
13. Wó-xiǎng-bànnián-yǐhòu dào-'Zhōngguo-qu-zhù-yìnián.
14. Wǒ-duì-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì hén-yǒu-xìngqu. Wó-xiǎng yǐhòu-měitiān xiě-yíge-zhōngtóude-zì.
15. Máo-Xiānsheng-xiǎng dào-Zhōngguo-qù-yíge-yuè.
- intends to go to San Francisco and stay two or three weeks.
- Mr. Mao plans to ask a teacher to teach him English for a year.
- Mrs. Gao intends to go to New York for two months.
- Miss Zhang plans to study English two hours a day.
- He intends to go to Hunan for two weeks.
- He plans to study Chinese for three months beginning tomorrow.
- Mrs. Mao says she will go to Shantung for half a year.
- Mr. Zhang says he plans to go to England for a year, and then to America for three months.
- Half a year from now I plan to go to China for a year.
- I'm very much interested in writing Chinese characters. I plan to write characters for an hour a day hereafter.
- Mr. Mao intends to go to China for a month.

## Pattern 15.2. Duration of an Action in the Past (Note 5 below)

S	V	-le	T	(-de)	(O)
Subject	Verb	-le	Time	(-de)	(Object)
Wǒ	kàn	-le	yíge zhōngtóu	-de	shū.
'I read for one hour.'					

1. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie xuéle-'sānnián-de-huà.
2. 'Qián-Xiānsheng bìngle-bànnián-cái-hǎo.
3. Qùnián-wǒ-dào-Rìběn wárlē-liǎngge-yuè.
- Miss Gao studied painting for three years.
- Mr. Qian was sick for half a year before he recovered.
- I went to Japan last year for a pleasure trip for a couple of months.



4. Zhèiběn-Yīngwén-shū wǒ-niàn-le-yìnián.

I studied this English book for one year.
5. Tā-duì-'Zhōngwén méi-xìngqu. Jiù-niànle-bànnián.

He was not interested in Chinese. He studied it for only half a year.
6. Wǒ-xuéle-'liùniánde-Zhōngguo-huà, kěshi-shuōde-'hái-bu-hǎo.

I studied Chinese for six years, but I still speak it badly.
7. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng xuéle-wǔnián-de-Rìběn-huà.

Mr. King studied Japanese for five years.
8. Tā-niànle-'liǎngge-xīngqīde-shū jiù-bu-niàn-le.

He studied for two weeks and then didn't study any more.
9. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng zài-Zhōngguo jiāole-wǔnián-bànde-shū.

Mr. Johnson taught in China for five and a half years.
10. Wó-hén-xǐhuan chī-Zhōngguo-fàn. Zài-Zhōngguo-de-shíhou chīle-yìniánde-Zhōngguo-fàn.

I'm very fond of Chinese food. I ate it [lit. Chinese food] for a year when I was in China.

Pattern 15.3. Duration of an Action into the Present (a)  
(Note 6 below)

S	V	- <u>le</u>	T	(- <u>de</u> )	(O)	<u>le</u>
Subject	Verb	- <u>le</u>	Time	(- <u>de</u> )	(Object)	<u>le</u>
Wǒ	kàn	-le	yíge zhōngtóu	-de	shū	le.

'I have been reading for an hour.'

1. Bái-Xiānsheng-niàn-Zhōngwén niànle-wǔnián-le.

Mr. White has been studying Chinese for five years.
2. Qián-Xiānsheng-zài-Rìběn yǐ-jìng-zhùle-bànnián-le.

Mr. Qian has been living in Japan for half a year [already].
3. Wǒ-jīntian-niànle 'wǔge-zhōng-tóude-shū-le.

I've been studying for five hours so far today.
4. Máo-Xiǎojie-xuéle liǎngnián-bànde-Yīngwén-le.

Miss Mao has been studying English for two and a half years.
5. Gāo-Xiānsheng-shuō tā-dào-'Měiguó-láile yóu-wǔnián-duō-le.

Mr. Gao says he has been in America for over five years.
6. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng jiāole-chàbù-duō-sānshiwǔnián-shū-le.

Mr. King has been teaching for almost thirty-five years.
7. Wǒ-jīntian-zài-túshūguǎn kàn-le-'sìge-zhōngtóude-shū-le.

I've been reading in the library for four hours so far today.
8. Wǒ-jīntian tīngle-yíge-bàn-zhōngtóude-lùyīn-le.

I've been listening to recordings for an hour and a half so far today.

- |                                                                                      |                                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9. Wǒ-jīntian xiěle-yíge-zhōng-tóu-zì-le.                                            | I have been writing characters for an hour so far today.                                                    |
| 10. Tāmen-yǐjīng tánle-wúshífēn-zhōngde-huà-le.                                      | They've been conversing for fifty minutes [already].                                                        |
| 11. Nèige-háizi yǐjīng-zuòle-'liǎng-ge-zhōngtóude-diānchē-le, 'hái-bù-xiǎng-xià-chē. | That youngster has been riding the streetcar for two hours already and still has no thought of getting off. |
| 12. Tāmen-zǒule-'yíge-zhōngtóude-lù-le.                                              | They have been walking for an hour.                                                                         |
| 13. 'Máo-Xiānsheng zuòle-'yíge-zhōngtóu-shì-le.                                      | Mr. Mao has been working for an hour.                                                                       |
| 14. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng jiāole-liǎng-ge-zhōngtóude-shū-le.                              | Mr. Johnson has been teaching for two hours.                                                                |
| 15. Wǒ-jīntian jiù-niànle-bànge-zhōngtóude-Zhōngwén.                                 | I've studied Chinese for just half an hour today.                                                           |

Pattern 15.4. Duration of an Action into the Present (b)  
(Note 7 below)

S	V	O	(yǐjīng)	(yǒu)	T	le
Subject	Verb	Object	('already')	('there is')	Time	le
Wǒ	kàn	shū	yǐjīng	yǒu	yíge-zhōngtóu	le.
'I've already been reading for an hour.'						

- |                                                     |                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Tā-zuò-shì yǐjīng-yíge-zhōng-tóu-le.             | He's already been working for an hour.                           |
| 2. 'Qián-Xiānsheng zhùzai-Rìběn yóu-liǎngnián-le.   | Mr. Qian has been living in Japan for two years.                 |
| 3. Wǒ-jiāo-shū yǐjīng-'sānshí-duō-nián-le.          | I've already been teaching for thirty-odd years.                 |
| 4. Wǒ-xué-Zhōngguo-huà yǐjīng-yóu-wǔnián-le.        | I've [already] been studying Chinese for five years.             |
| 5. Bái-Xiǎojie-xué-huà-huàr yǐjīng-wǔnián-le.       | Miss Bai has [already] been studying painting for five years.    |
| 6. Qián-Xiānsheng-xué-wénxué yǐ-jīng-sānnián-le.    | Mr. Qian has [already] been studying literature for three years. |
| 7. Máo-Xiānsheng-lái-Yīngguo yóu-liǎngge-xīngqī-le. | It's been two weeks since Mr. Mao came to England.               |
| 8. Wǒ-dào-Měiguó yǐjīng-'yíge-yuè-le.               | It's been a month [already] since I arrived in America.          |

9. Wáng-Xiānsheng-niàn-Zhōng-wén yǒu-yìnián-le.

Mr. King has been studying Chinese for a year.
10. Wǒ-rènshi-ta yǐjīng-yóu-wǔ-niánle.

I've known him for five years.

Pattern 15.5. Number of Occurrences (Note 8 below)

S	V	(le)	NU	-ci	(O)
Subject	Verb	(le)	Number	-ci	(Object)
Wǒ	zuò	le	sān	-cì	fēijī.

'I've ridden on a plane three times.'

1. Nèige-diànyǐngr 'tài-yǒu-yìsi. Wǒ-kànle-liǎngcì.

That movie is extremely interesting. I saw it twice.
2. Shàng-xīngqī wǒ-kànle-liǎngcì-diànyǐngr.

I saw two movies last week.
3. Qùnián wǒ-qùle-yíci-Rìběn.

I went to Japan once last year.
4. Nèige-zì wó-xiěle-'wǔcì. 'Hái-bu-huì-xiě.

I wrote that character five times. I still can't write it.
5. Wǒ-bù-dǒng. Qǐng-nín-'zǎishuō-yíci.

I don't understand. Please say it once more.
6. Nèige-'Zhōngguo-zì bù-róng-yì-xiě. Jiāoyuán-jiāole-wǒ-sìcì wǒ-hái-bu-huì-xiě.

That Chinese character is not easy to write. The teacher taught it to me four times and I still can't write it.
7. Wǒ-dào-'Zhōngguo-lái yǐjīng-chīguo-'jiǔcì-Zhōngguo-fàn.

(Since) coming to China I've already eaten Chinese food nine times.
8. Kǎoshì-yǐhòu wǒ-'bìděi-qù-kàn-yíci-diànyǐngr.

After exams I must go see a movie.
9. Gāo-Xiānsheng-bingle. Wǒ-yīngdāng qù-'kàn-ta-yíci.

Mr. Gao is [lit. has become] ill. I certainly must go see him [once].
10. Zhōngshān-Gōngyuán wǒ-hái-bu-zhīdào-zài-nǎr-ne. Míngtiān wó-děi-gēn-ta-qù-yíci.

I still don't know where Sun Yatsen Park is. I must go (there) with him [once] tomorrow.

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 24 phrases (Notes 1-2)

bàn	-nián
yī	-ge yuè
liǎng	-tiān
sān	-ge zhōngtóu
sì	
wǔ	

II: 48 phrases (Notes 1-2)

yì	-nián	—
liǎng	-tiān	bàn
sān		duō
liù		
qī		
bā		

III: 54 phrases (Notes 1-2)

yí	-ge	—	yuè
liǎng		bàn	xīngqī
sān		duō	zhōngtóu
jiǔ			
shí			
shíyī			

IV: 96 sentences (Notes 3 c and 4)

(Here and in the following Tables, where columns are marked with asterisks, items must be taken from the same horizontal row.)

		*				*
tā	yào	jiāo	jǐ	-ge-zhōngtóu	—	shū
	xiǎng	lù	yī	-tiān	de	yīn
		tīng		-ge-xīngqī		lùyīn
		niàn				shū

V: 80 sentences (Note 5)

(See note at head of Table IV)

	*					*
tā	zuò	-le	jǐ	-ge-zhōngtóu	—	shì
	jiāo		liǎng	-tiān	de	shū
	tīng			-ge-xīngqī		lùyīn
	niàn					shū

VI: 80 sentences (Note 6)

*				*			
tā	zuò	-le	jǐ	-ge-zhōngtóu	—	shì	le
	jiāo		sān	-tiān	de	shū	
	tīng			-ge-xīngqī		lùyīn	
	niàn			-ge-yuè		shū	
				-nián			

VII: 96 sentences (Note 7)

tā	niàn	-le	——	——	yī	-ge-zhōngtóu	le
	zhù		yǐjīng	yǒu	liǎng	-tiān	
	jiāo				sì		
	xué						

VIII: 96 sentences (Note 8)

*				*			
tā	kàn	——	jǐ	-cì	diànyǐngr		
	qù	-le	yí		Rìběn		
	chī	-guo	sì		Zhōngguo-fàn		
	bàifang		wǔ		Gāo-Xiānsheng		
	zuò				fēijī		
	lái				Zhōngguo		

IX: 54 sentences (Note 3 d)

tā	jǐ	-nián	méi	chī Zhōngguo fàn	——
	yī	-ge-yuè		niàn Zhōngwén	le
	liǎng	-tiān		kànjian ta	

PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

(See The Sounds of Chinese, 20)

I. Suffixed r with final a, o, e, u, ng: add r

- |          |       |          |       |
|----------|-------|----------|-------|
| (a) bǎ   | bǎr   | (g) fǎ   | fǎr   |
| (b) gē   | gēr   | (h) zhè  | zhèr  |
| (c) suǒ  | suǒr  | (i) duǒ  | duǒr  |
| (d) tù   | tùr   | (j) shù  | shùr  |
| (e) dèng | dèngr | (k) gǒu  | gǒur  |
| (f) mǎo  | mǎor  | (l) fēng | fēngr |

II. Suffixed r with ai, an, en: drop final letter and add r

- |             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| (a) wán wár | (d) bàn bàr   |
| (b) fēn fēr | (e) mén mér   |
| (c) hái hár | (f) miǎn miǎr |

III. Suffixed r with final i, u after consonants: add er

- |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| (a) jī jiēr | (d) yú yuér |
| (b) yí yíer | (e) yǔ yǔer |
| (c) qì qièr | (f) xù xuèr |

IV. Suffixed r with final "i," in, un: drop final letter and add er

- |              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| (a) shì shèr | (d) xìn xièr   |
| (b) zǐ zěr   | (e) jīn jiēr   |
| (c) cì cèr   | (f) zhǔn zhuèr |

## EXPANSION DRILLS

1

niàn

niànwán

niàndewán

shū-niàndewán

zhèiběn-shū-niàndewán

zhèiběn-shū tā-niàndewán

zhèiběn-shū ta-jīntian-niàndewán

zhèiběn-shū ta-jīntian-kéyi-niàndewán

zhèiben-shū ta-jīntian-yídìng-kéyi-niàndewán

zhèiben-shū ta-shì-bu-shi-jīntian-yídìng-kéyi-niàndewán?

Nǐ-shuō-zhèiben-shū ta-shì-bu-shi-jīntian-yídìng-kéyi-niàndewán?

II

shū

niàn-shū

niàn-Zhōngwén-shū

wǒ-niàn-Zhōngwén-shū

wǒ-niàn-sāngē-zhōngtóu-Zhōngwén-shū

wǒ-niàn-sāngē-zhōngtóude-Zhōngwén-shū

wǒ-niànle-sāngē-zhōngtóude-Zhōngwén-shū

wǒ-niànle-sāngē-zhōngtóude-Zhōngwén-shū-le

wǒ-niànle-chàbuduō-sāngē-zhōngtóude-Zhōngwén-shū-le

wǒ-yǐjing-niànle-chàbuduō-sāngē-zhōngtóude-Zhōngwén-shū-le

Wǒ-xiànzai-yǐjing-niànle-chàbuduō-sāngē-zhōngtóude-Zhōngwén-shū-le.

A LITTLE VARIETY

This exercise shows how to give variety to your speech by saying the same thing (or virtually the same thing) in two different ways.

1. Zhāng-Xiānsheng-shi-jiàoyuán.  
'Zhāng-Xiānsheng zài-xuéxiào-jiāo-shū.
2. Tā-yǐqián shi-xué-kēxué-de.  
Yuánlái tā-shi-xué-kēxué-de.
3. Zhèige-zì bù-róngyì-xiě.  
Zhèige-zì hěn-nán-xiě.
4. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng hén-yǒu-qián.  
'Wáng-Xiānsheng qián-hěn-duō.
5. Tā-jiā-lí-zhèr bù-hén-yuǎn.  
Tā-jiā-lí-zhèr hěn-jìn.
6. Nèige-háizi-hěn-qíguài, 'yísuì-bàn jiù-huì-pǎo.  
Nèige-háizi 'yísuì-bàn jiù-huì-pǎo. 'Zhēn-qíguài.
7. Tā-zài-túshūguǎn-zuò-shì.  
Tā-zuò-shì shi-zài-túshūguǎn.
8. Wǒmen-dōu-'huānyíng nín-dào-'zhèr-lái.  
Nín-dào-'zhèr-lái wǒmen-dōu-'huānyíng.
9. Ní-zóu-yǐqián bú-yào-wàngle-dài-biǎo.  
Ní-zóu-yǐqián xiān-dài-biǎo.



10. Nèiběn-shū bǐ-zhèiběn-shū-jiǎndān.  
Nèiběn-shū bǐ-zhèiběn-shū róngyì-niàn.
11. Xiànzài chà-wǔfēn-zhōng shídiǎn-le.  
Xiànzài jiǔdiǎn-wúshíwǔfēn-le.
12. Zhèr-lí-Zhōngshān-Lù bù-yuǎn.  
Cóng-zhèr-dào-Zhōngshān-Lù hěn-jìn.
13. Yīnwei-wǒ-méi-qián, suóyǐ-bù-mǎi-fángzi.  
Wǒ-bù-mǎi-fángzi shì-yīnwei-wǒ-'méi-yǒu-qián.
14. Zhí-yǒu-yíkuài-qián bù-néng-mǎi-nèiběn-shū.  
Yíkuài-qián mǎibuliǎo-nèiběn-shū.
15. Tā-zài-'dàxué-niàn-shū shì-xué-wénxué-de.  
Tā-zài-'dàxué-niàn-wénxué.
16. 'Qián-Xiānsheng xīwang-dào-'Yīngguo-qù-yíci.  
'Qián-Xiānsheng xīwang-qù-Yīngguo-yíci.
17. Dào-'gōngyuán-qù tài-yuǎn-le, suóyǐ wǒ-bù-xiǎng-qù.  
Gōngyuán-'nènmo-yuǎn wǒ-'bù-xiǎng-qù.
18. 'Zhènmo-shuō nǐ-jīntiān-'bù-yídìng-lái-le.  
Tīng-nǐ-zènmo-shuō nǐ-jīntiān-huòzhě-'bù-lái-le.
19. Tā-huóbuliǎo-le, bù-néng-shuō-huà-le.  
Tā-huà-yǐjīng-bù-néng-shuō-le, 'yídìng-huóbuliǎo-le.
20. Wǒ-'cháng-dào-chéng-lǐtou-qu.  
Chéng-lǐtou wǒ-'cháng-qù.

## ANSWERING QUESTIONS

Each of the following items consists of one or more statements followed by a question. Read each aloud, and answer the question orally in Chinese.

1. 'Bái-Xiānsheng hén-xǐhuan-xué-yǔyánxué. Tā-duì-shénmo-hén-yǒu-xìngqu?
2. Tā-měitiān-zǎochen bādiǎn-zhōng-chī-fàn. Tā-nèige-shíhou-chī-de shì-'zǎofan háishi-'wǎnfàn?
3. Qùnián shì-yī-jiǔ-liù-yī-nián. 'Jīnnián-shì-jīnián?
4. Tā-zuótian-tīngle èrshíwǔfēn-zhōngde-lùyīn. Wǒ-tīngle-'èrshífēn-zhōng. 'Shéi-tīngde-duō?
5. Jīntiān-shì-shíyīyue-shíliùhào. Wǒ-shì-jīnnián-jiǔyue-shíliùhào kāishǐ-niàn-Zhōngwén-de. Wó-yǐjīng-niànle 'jǐge-yuède-Zhōngwén?

6. Wǒ-péngyou-niàn-gāozhōng-'èrniánjí. Tā-niàn-'zhōngxué háishi-niàn-'dàxué?
7. Nèige-rén-bènjíle. Tā-niànle-'liùniánde-gāozhōng 'hái-méi-bìyè-ne. Nǐ-shuō ta-kǎodeshàng-dàxué kǎobushàng-dàxué?
8. Zhèige-zìdiǎn zì-'tài-shǎo-le. Zhèige-zìdiǎn 'yǒu-yòng-méi-yǒu-yòng?
9. Wǒ-huì-shuō-Zhōngguo-huà, bú-huì-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì. Wǒ-'huì-bú-huì yòng-Zhōngguo-zì-xiě-xìn?
10. 'Shíge-rén xiǎng-zuò-'yíge-xiǎo-qìchē. Nǐ-shuō tāmen-'zuòdexià-zuò-bu-xià?

## NOTES

1. The neutral syllable yue, as you know, is used to form names of the months: wǔyue 'May.' Here it functions as a measure, since it can be preceded directly by a number. When yuè has a fourth tone, it is a noun meaning 'month.' It is used to count months, rather than name them, and is preceded not by a number but by a measure: wǔge-yuè 'five months.'
2. Chinese time words as a group are a good example of the differences in classification of Chinese and English words. The English words 'year,' 'month,' 'week,' 'day,' and 'hour' are all nouns—that is, they are grammatically the same kind of word. The corresponding Chinese words, however, are of two different types:

<u>Nouns</u>	<u>Measures</u>
yuè 'month'	nián 'year'
xīngqī 'week'	tiān 'day'
zhōngtóu 'hour'	

The measures nián and tiān can be preceded directly by a number:

wǔnián 'five years'  
wǔtiān 'five days'

The nouns cannot be preceded directly by a number but must have an intervening measure:

wǔge-yuè 'five months'  
wǔge-xīngqī 'five weeks'  
wǔge-zhōngtóu 'five hours'

3. Observe the differences among the following kinds of time expressions and their positions within the sentence:
- (a) Time expressions indicating the WHEN of an occurrence (or non-occurrence) come BEFORE the verb:
- Wǒ-míngtiān-qù. 'I'm going tomorrow.'  
Wǒ-míngtiān-bú-qù. 'I'm not going tomorrow.'

- (b) Time expressions indicating the PERIOD WITHIN WHICH of an occurrence (or non-occurrence) come BEFORE the verb:

Wó-(měi-)sānge-xīngqī kàn-yíběn-shū. 'I read one book every three weeks.'

Wǒ-zhèi-sāntiān kànle-sìběn-shū-le. 'I've read four books within the past [lit. these] three days.'

- (c) Time expressions indicating the DURATION of an occurrence come AFTER the verb:

Tā-yào-zài-Zhōngguó zhù-sānnián. 'He will live in China for three years.'

- (d) Time expressions indicating the DURATION of a NON-occurrence come BEFORE the verb:

Wǒ-sānnián méi-niàn-Zhōngwén. 'I didn't study Chinese for three years.'

Wǒ-sānnián bú-niàn-Zhōngwén. 'I'm not going to study Chinese for three years.'

4. A direct object in the construction described in Note 3 c can come at the end:

Tā-yào-niàn sānnián-Zhōngwén.	}	'He will study for three years.'
Tā-yào-niàn sānniánde-Zhōngwén.		

Or, the verb may be said twice, followed first by the object and then by the time expression:

Tā-niàn-Zhōngwén yào-niàn-sānnián. 'He will study Chinese for three years.'

5. The pattern described in Notes 3 c and 4 is made past by suffixing -le to the verb:

Tā-zài-Zhōngguó zhùle-sānnián. 'He lived in China for three years (but is doing so no longer).'

Tā-xuéle-sānnián-Zhōngwén.

or

Tā-xuéle-sānniánde-Zhōngwén.

or

Tā-xué-Zhōngwén xuéle-sānnián.

} 'He studied Chinese for three years (but is doing so no longer).'

6. If the pattern described in Notes 3 c and 4 has two occurrences of le—one attached to the verb, the other at the end of the sentence—the construction means 'has been doing' V (and still is)':

Tā-zài-Zhōngguó zhùle-sānnián-le. 'He has been living in China for three years (and still is).'

Tā-xuéle-sānnián-Zhōngwén-le.

or

Tā-xuéle-sānniánde-Zhōngwén-le.

or

Tā-xué-Zhōngwén xuéle-sānnián-le.

} 'He has been studying Chinese for three years.'

7. In the construction just described ('has been—and still is—doing'), the

words yǐjīng [lit. 'already'] or yǒu [lit. 'there is'] or both may be added, as follows:

- (a) If the verb with le is not followed by an object, yǐjīng may be inserted BEFORE this verb, or yǐjīng or yǒu or both may be inserted AFTER the verb:

'He's been studying Chinese for three years.'

Tā-xué-Zhōngwén yǐjīng-xuéle-sānnián-le.

or

Tā-xué-Zhōngwén xuéle-yǐjīng-sānnián-le.

or

Tā-xué-Zhōngwén xuéle-yǒu-sānnián-le.

or

Tā-xué-Zhōngwén xuéle-yǐjīng-yǒu-sānnián-le.

- (b) If the verb is followed by an object (in which case there is no verb suffix le), yǐjīng or yǒu or both may be inserted after the object:

'He's been studying Chinese for three years.'

Tā-xué-Zhōngwén yǐjīng-sānnián-le.

or

Tā-xué-Zhōngwén yǒu-sānnián-le.

or

Tā-xué-Zhōngwén yǐjīng-yǒu-sānnián-le.

8. The measure cì 'occasion,' which we encountered in Lesson 11 as a measure for movies (yí cì diànyǐng 'one movie'), is used also as a measure meaning 'number of times':

Wó-xiǎng-xià-xīngqī qù-kàn-liǎngcì-diànyǐng. 'I plan to go see two movies next week.' or 'I plan to go to the movies twice next week.'

Also:

Tā-láile-sāncì, kěshi-nǐ-'dōu-bú-zài-jiā. 'He came three times, but you were never at home.'

Nǐ-chīle-'jǐcì-Zhōngguó-fàn? 'How many times have you eaten Chinese food?'

In this pattern, an object referring to a person comes BEFORE, not after, the expression for number of times:

Wǒ-kànle-tā-sāncì. 'I saw him three times.'

9. An ordinal expression of time of occurrence or non-occurrence ('the first time,' 'the third time,' etc.) comes BEFORE the verb:

Dì-yí cì tā-méi-zài-jiā. 'The first time he wasn't at home.'

Zhèi-shi-wǒ dì-yí cì-lái. 'This is the first time I've come.'

10. Zài 'in' or 'at' has two separate grammatical functions:

- (a) It is used as a coverb if its subject and that of the main verb are identical:

Tā-zài-jiālǐ xiě-xìn. 'He's writing letters in the house.' [lit. 'He is in the house (and is) writing letters.']

- (b) It is used as a postverb (that is, suffixed to a preceding verb) if the subjects of the two verbs are different:

Tā-xiězai-shūshang. 'He wrote (it) on the book'—that is, 'He wrote (it and it is) on the book.'

In some cases the two functions of zài are interchangeable:

Tā-zài-Niǚyue-zhù.	}	'He lives in New York.'
<u>or</u> Tā-zhùzai-Niǚyue.		

When the main verb is zhù 'live,' zài may be omitted altogether:

Tā-zhùzai-Niǚyue.	}	'He lives in New York.'
<u>or</u> Tā-zhù-Niǚyue.		

11. The verbs lái 'come' and qù 'go' may take a direct object, without the co-verb meaning 'to':

Nǐ-shi-shénmo-shíhou lái-Zhōngguo-de? 'When was it that you came to China?'

Wǒ-lái-Měiguó yǒu-sānnián-duō-le. 'It's been over three years since I've come to America.'

12. The adverbs zài, yǒu, hái, and yě all have similar meanings but distinctly different usages. Zài means 'again, more, also' with respect to future action:

Wǒ-míngtiān-'zài-lái. 'I'm coming again tomorrow.'

Yòu means 'again, more, also' referring to past action:

Tā-zuótiān-láile-yíci, jīntiān-tā-'yòu-láile-yíci. 'He came once yesterday and he came once more today.'

Hái means 'still, in addition, more' and refers to conditions now in existence:

Tā-hái-zài-zhèr. 'He is still here.'

Wǒ-hái-yào. 'I want some more.' [lit. 'I still want some.']

Wó-mǎile-sānběn-shū, wǒ-hái-yào-mǎi-yìběn. 'I bought three books and want to buy one more.' [lit. 'I bought three books and still want to buy one.']

Yě means 'also, too, besides' and refers generally to the subject or topic of the sentence:

Máo-Xiānsheng-zài-zhèr, Wáng-Xiānsheng-yě-zài-zhèr. 'Mr. Mao is here, and Mr. Wang is also here.'

13. The adverb cái 'then; then and only then' is used before the second of two verbs to indicate that the action of the second verb occurred only after that of the first verb was completed. The verb modified by cái is never followed by le:

Wǒ-shuōle-sāncì, tā-cái-tīngjian. 'I said it three times, and only then did he hear me.'

14. Notice that English 'have to' and 'must' mean the same thing when they

are affirmative, but that when they are made negative, their meanings diverge:

- (a) 'don't have to' means 'need not';
- (b) 'must not' means 'permission is denied'

Chinese děi (bìděi) corresponds to both affirmative 'have to' and 'must'; but in the negative, which has the special form bú bì, it matches only the (a) negative above: 'don't have to, need not.'

15. The auxiliary verbs gāi, yīnggāi, and yīngdāng 'ought to, should' are used interchangeably. The affirmative forms often have a stronger meaning, corresponding to English 'must,' while the negative forms have the force of 'must not':

Wǒ-gāi-zǒule. 'I must go.'

Nǐ-'bù-yīngdāng-nènmo-shuō. 'You shouldn't speak so.' or 'You mustn't talk that way.'

These words, then, are nearly identical with those described in the preceding note.

16. Gēn '(together) with' is used as a coverb to join coordinate nouns:

Wǒ-gēn-ni-qù. 'I'm going with you.'

Shū-gēn-bǐ dōu-shi-wǒde. 'The books and the pens are all mine.'

17. The verb shì 'be' with heavy stress emphasizes what the sentence is asserting:

Zhèiběn-shū 'shì-hén-yǒu-yìsi. 'This book is very interesting.'

Unstressed shì, bu-shì, and shì-bu-shì occur in sentences stating a contrast of some kind; their use indicates that it is some other word in the sentence to which attention is directed:

Shì-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-yào-lái-ma? . . . Bu-shì-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-yào-lái, shì-'Bái-Xiānsheng-yào-lái. 'Is it Mr. King who's coming? . . . It isn't Mr. King who's coming, it's Mr. White.'

Similarly:

Shì-Wáng-'Tàitai-yào-lái-ma? 'Is it Mrs. King who's coming?'

Tā-shì-'míngtiān-qù. 'He's going tomorrow.'

Tā-míngtiān shì-dào-'Zhōngguó-qù. 'He's going to China tomorrow.'

Compare the shì . . . háishì pattern introduced in Lesson 7, Note 12, pp. 84-85.

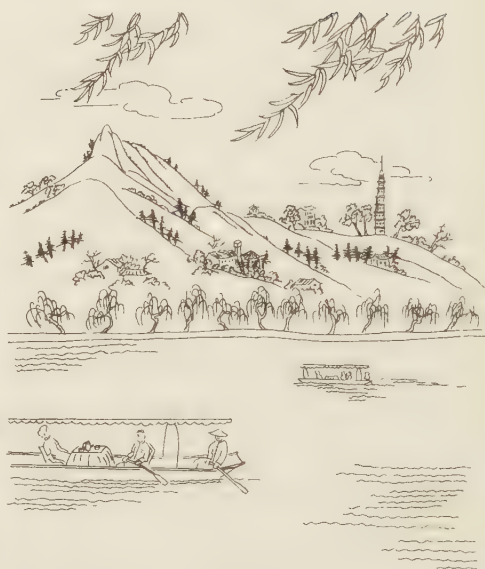
18. The adverbs zhènmo or zènmo 'this sort' and nènmo 'that sort' are used in the sense 'so, as, to such-and-such an extent.' Zhènmo or zènmo refers to something close by and nènmo to something farther away or at no specified place or distance:

Nǐ-zěnmō-zěnmō-wǎn-ne? 'How come you're so late?'

Tā-jiā-nènmo-yuǎn wǒ-bù-xiǎng-qù. 'His home is so far away that I don't think I'll go (there).'



## Lesson 16 VISITING FRIENDS



"'Xià-yǒu-Sū-Háng."

Dialogue: Mr. White, accompanied by Miss Gao, arrives at the Gao home and visits with the Gaos and another guest.

Gāo: Yǐjīng-dào-le. 'Qiántou-gōngyuán-mén-kǒu jiù shì-chē-zhàn. Wǒmen-jiù-xià-chē. 'Xiàle-chē shàng-shān-jiù-dào-le.

5

Here we are. The park gate ahead is the bus stop. [We get off now.] After we get off and climb the hill we'll be there.

Bái: Fǔshàng-zhèige-dìfang hén-hǎo-a. 'Yòu-yǒu-shān 'yòu-yóu-shuǐ. 'Zhènmò-piào-liang!

This area around your home is very nice. You have hills and you have water. So beautiful!

Gāo: Suóyī-wǒ-fùqīn 'měitiān-dōu-yào-chūqu-zóuzou. Lián-xīngqītiān tā-méishì dōu-yào-chūqu. Chū-qu-huīlai dōu-shì-zǒu-lù.

10

That's why my father likes to go out for a walk every day. Even on Sundays when he doesn't have to work, he always goes out for a walk [lit. going out and returning is always (a matter of) walking].

Bái: Nǐ-fùqīn 'yé-xǐhuan-lǚxíng-ma?

15

Does your father also like to travel?

Gāo: Tā-'zuì-xǐhuan-lǚxíng-le.

He likes nothing better than



	Tā-měinián dōu-lǚxíng-jǐcì.		traveling. Every year he takes a few trips.
Bái :	Tā-dōu-dàoguó 'shénmo-dìfang?	20	Where has he been?
Gāo :	Zhōngguó-chàbuduō 'suó-yǒude-dìfang tā-dōu-dàoguó-le.		He's been almost everywhere in China.
Bái :	Tā-zuì-xǐhuan 'shénmo-dìfang?	25	What place does he like best?
Gāo :	Yīnwei-tā-shì-'Hángzhou-rén, suóyì-tā-shuō tā-zuì-xǐhuan-Sūzhou-Hángzhou.		Since he comes from Hangchow, he says he likes Soochow and Hangchow best of all.
Bái :	Lǚxíng 'shì-hén-yǒu-yìsi. 'Ní-xǐhuan-lǚxíng-ma?	30	Travel <u>is</u> interesting. Do you like to travel?
Gāo :	Wó-xǐhuan, kěshì-méi-jīhuì. Wǒ-'shénmo-dìfang-dōu-méi-qùguó. . . . Dào-le. Wǒmen-xià-chē-ba.	35	I do, but I don't have any opportunities (to do so). I haven't been anywhere. . . . Here we are. Let's get off.
Bái :	Wàng-'něibiār-zǒu?		Which way do we go?
Gāo :	Wàng-'zóu-guǎi-jiu-shàng-shān.		We turn left and go up the hill.
Bái :	Zhèige-dìfang-'zhēn-hǎo. Ní-měitiān-dào-xuéxiào zuò-chē hái-shì-zǒu-lù-ne?	40	This place is really nice. [Every day] do you take the bus to school, or do you walk?
Gāo :	Wǒ-chàbuduō-dōu-zuò-chē.		I nearly always take a bus.
Bái :	Zuò-chē yào-'duōshao-shí-hou-ne?		How long does it take to go by bus?
Gāo :	'Èrshífēn-zhōng jiù-dào-le.	45	It takes twenty minutes.
Bái :	Fǔshàng-lí-xuéxiào yě-bu-hěn-jìn.		Your home isn't very close to the school.
Gāo :	Bú-tài-yuǎn. . . . Dào-le.*		It's not too far. . . . Here we are.* (She knocks.)
Gāo-Tàitai :	Shéi-a?		Who (is it)?
Gāo-Xiǎojie :	Wǒ. Mā! Kāi-mén! 'Kèren-lái-le.	50	Me. Mom! Open the door! The guest has come.

\* The layout of the Gao home is as follows. The main door or gate leads into a courtyard. On the left are utility rooms, the kitchen, and a store-room; on the right is a study; and straight ahead, facing south, is a combined living room and dining room, flanked on both sides by bedrooms. The gate is barred on the inside, not locked. When Miss Gao knocks, Mrs. Gao comes out of the kitchen to let her in, and Mr. Gao comes out of the living room to receive his guest.

(Gāo-Tàitai-chūlai duì-Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō:)

Gāo-Tàitai: Oh, 'Bái-Xiānsheng-lái-le. 'Háo-jiǔ-bu-jiàn. Ní-hǎo-ma? 'Máng-bu-máng?

Bái: Gāo-Tàitai, 'háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn. Nín-hǎo? Gāo-'Xiānsheng-hǎo-ma?

Gāo-Tàitai: Hǎo, xièxie-ni.

(Gāo-Xiānsheng tīngjian-'Bái-Xiānsheng-lái-le yě-chūlai-le.)

Gāo-Xiānsheng: 'Bái-Xiānsheng, hǎo-ma? Lái-lái. Wó-géi-nǐmen-liǎngwèi-'jiè-shao-'jièshao. Zhèiwèi-shi-Wàn-Jiàoshòu. Zhèiwèi-shi-'Bái-Xiānsheng.

Bái: Jiúyǎng.

Wàn: Jiúyǎng.

Wàn: Wǒ-'cháng-tīng-Lǎo-Gāo\*tán-dào-ni.

Gāo: Jīntiān-hǎojíle. Nǐmen-liǎngwèi dōu-shuō-'Zhōng-guó-huà. Rúguǒ nǐmen-shuō-'Yīngwén wǒ-nèirén-lián-'yíge-zì yě-tīngbu-dǒng. Tā-jiù-méi-fázi gēn-kèren-shuō-huà-le. Nǐmen-liǎngwèi búdàn-néng-shuō, érqǐě-shuōde-'shífēn-hǎo.

Bái: Gāo-Xiānsheng-kèqi.

Wàn: 'Bái-Xiānsheng, nǐ-'shén-mo-shíhou dào-'Zhōngguó-lái-de?

Bái: Wǒ-shi-qùnian-'báyue-láide. Nín-ne?

Wàn: Wó-yǐjīng-láile-'liǎngnián-le. Nǐ-zài-'něige-dàxué?

(Mrs. Gao comes out and says to Mr. White:)

Oh, Mr. White, you're here! I haven't seen you for a long time. How are you? Have you been busy?

Mrs. Gao, I haven't seen you for a long time (either). How are you? How is Mr. Gao?

Fine, thanks.

(Mr. Gao, on hearing that Mr. White has arrived, also comes out.)

Mr. White, how are you? Come (in), come (in). I'll introduce the two of you. This is Professor Wanamaker. This is Mr. White.

Pleased to meet you.

Pleased to meet you.

I've often heard [Old] Gao\* speak of you.

This is wonderful. You can both speak Chinese. If you spoke English my wife wouldn't understand even one word, and she wouldn't have any way of talking to you [lit. to the guests]. Not only can you both speak (Chinese), but you both speak very well.

Mr. Gao is being polite.

Mr. White, when did you come to China?

I came last August. And you?

I've been here two years now. At what university are you?

\* Friends of about the same age address each other either by their given names or by their surnames preceded by the word lǎo 'old': Lǎo-Qián 'Old Qian.'

Bái :	Wǒ-zài-'Yuǎndōng-Dàxué-niàn-shū.		I'm studying at Far Eastern University.
Wàn:	Yuǎn-Dà wǒ-hái-yǒu-jǐge-péngyou. Nǐ-shi-xué-shén-mo-de?	95	I have a few other friends at Far Eastern. What are you studying?
Bái :	Wǒ-xué-yǔyán-gēn-wénxué.		(I'm studying) language and literature.
Wàn:	Hǎojíle. Wǒmen-'dōu-shi yánjiu-yǔyán-gēn-wénxué-de.	100	Wonderful. We're both students of language and literature.
Bái :	Wǒ-kànguo-nín-zuò-de-nèiběn 'Zhōngguo-Wénxué-Yánjiu. Nín-xiě-de-zhēnhǎo. Duì-wǒmen-xué-wénxué-de-rén hén-yǒu-yòng.	105	I've read your <u>Studies in Chinese Literature</u> . You've done a really fine job of writing. It's a great help for those of us studying literature.
Wàn:	Wǒ-xiànzài-'yòu-xiěle-yìběn yánjiu-wénxué-de-shū.		I've just finished (writing) another book of literary research.
Gāo :	'Bái-Xiānsheng, Lǎo-Wàn-de-xuéwen 'zhēn-bú-cuò. Nǐmen-liǎngge-rén kěyicháng-zài-yíkuàr 'yánjiu-yánjiu.	110	Mr. White, [Old] Wan's scholarship is really good. You two should get together often to carry on your studies.
Wàn:	Lǎo-Gāo, nǐ-bié-zhènmo-kèqì 'hǎo-bù-hǎo?	115	[Old] Gao, don't flatter so, [all right?]
(Wàn-Jiàoshòu duì-Gāo-'Xiáojie-shuō:)			(Professor Wanmaker says to Miss Gao:)
	Měiyīng, lái, zuòxia. Wǒmen-yíkuàr-tántan. Gāo-Xiáojie cōngmíng-piàoliang. Shū-niànde-hǎo, huà-de-hǎo.	120	Meiying, come sit down. Let's talk together. (To the others:) Miss Gao is intelligent and attractive. She studies well, she paints well.
Bái :	Duì-le. 'Gāo-Xiáojie, wǒmen-děi-'kànkān-nǐde-huà-le.	125	That's right. Miss Gao, we must look at your paintings.
Gāo Xiáojie:	Bié-kàn-le. Wǒ-huà-de-bù-hǎo.		Don't look (at them). I paint badly.
Bái :	Bié-kèqì-le. Qíng-ní-bǎ-huà-náchulai wǒmen-kànkān.	130	Don't be polite. Please bring out the paintings for us to look at.
Gāo-Xiānsheng:	Měiyīng, bá-nǐ-'suóyǒu-de-huà dōu-náchulai. Qǐng-tāmen-liǎngwèi-kànkān.		Meiying, bring all your paintings out. Let [both of] them have a look.
Gāo-Xiáojie:	Wǒ-zhèr zhí-yǒu-jǐzhāng-huà.	135	I have only a few paintings here.

(Gāo-Xiáojie náchu-sì-wǔzhāng-huà-lai.)

(Miss Gao brings out four or five paintings.)

Bái : Huàde-hǎojíle. Nǐ-xuéguo-jǐnián-le? 140

They're wonderfully well done. How many years have you studied?

Gāo-Xiānsheng: Zhèige-háizi tā-'hén-xǐhuan-huà-huà. Xué-le-'méi-yǒu-jǐnián.

This child loves to paint. She hasn't studied many years.

Gāo-Xiáojie: Wǒ-xuéle-'sānnián.

I've studied three years.

Wàn : 'Zhēn-cōngmíng. Xuéle-'sānnián jiu-huàde-'zhènmohǎo. Dōu-shi-xiànzàihuà-de-ma? 145

Really talented. Three years of study and you paint so well. Did you paint them all just recently [lit. now]?

Gāo-Xiáojie: Bú-shi. Yǒude-shi kǎishǐ-'xué-de-shíhou-huà-de. Yǒude-shi 'xiànzàihuà-de. 150

No. I painted some when I began to study and some just recently.

Bái : Zhèizhāng-shānshuǐ-huà 'zhēn-hǎo. Huà-de-shi-nǎ-a? 155

This landscape painting is really nice. What place is it [that's shown]?

Gāo-Xiáojie: Zhèi-jiu-shi-Hángzhou-a.

Why, this is Hangchow.

Bái : Oh, zhè-jiu-shi-Hángzhou-a. 'Zhēn-piàoliang.

Oh, so this is Hangchow. It's really attractive.

Wàn : Zhōngguo yǒu-yíjù-huà-shuō: 160

China has a saying :

'Shàng-yǒu-tiāntáng;  
'Xià-yǒu-Sū-Háng.  
Shuōde-yì 'diár-yě-bú-cuò.

Above is heaven,  
Below are Soochow and Hangchow.

The saying is not an exaggeration.

## VOCABULARY

bǎ	take (CV)
bié	don't (AV)
búdàn	not only (MA) [lit. not merely]
chū	exit from (TV)
cuò	wrong, mistaken (CV)
érqiě	but also (MA) [lit. and moreover]
fázi	method, plan (N)
Hángzhou	Hangchow (PW)
jiàoshòu	professor (N) (also, a title)

jièshao	introduce (TV)
jìn	enter (TV)
jiúyǎng	Pleased to meet you. [lit. long look up to]
jù	(measure for sentences)
kāi	open (door, etc.); drive (car) (TV)
kèrén	guest (N) [lit. guest person]
lián	even, even including (CV)
lǚxíng	travel (IV) [lit. travel go]
mā	(one's own) mother (N) (Note 15)
ná	hold, grasp, carry, take (TV)
nèiren	(one's own) wife (N) (Note 16)
piàoliang	attractive, elegant, beautiful (SV) [lit. bleach bright]
shānshuǐ	scenery, landscape (N) [lit. mountain water]
shuǐ	water (N)
'suóyǒude	all (before nouns)
Sūzhou	Soochow (PW)
tiāntáng	heaven (N) [lit. sky hall]
xuéwen	learning, scholarship (N) [lit. study ask]
yǒude	some (before nouns)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                                    |                                 |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| bié                                | don't!                          |
| bié-tīng                           | don't listen!                   |
| 1. Nǐ-bié-tīng-tāde-huà.           | Don't you listen to him.        |
| ná                                 | take                            |
| bié-ná                             | don't take!                     |
| 2. Bié-ná-wǒde-dōngxi.             | Don't take my things.           |
| jìn                                | enter                           |
| jìn-chéng                          | enter the city                  |
| 3. Qì chē-bù-kéyi-jìn-chéng.       | Cars cannot enter the city.     |
| chū                                | exit from, leave                |
| chū-chéng                          | leave the city                  |
| 4. Wǒmen-yíkuàr-chū-chéng kéyi-ma? | Can we leave the city together? |
| jìn                                | enter                           |
| jìnlai                             | come in                         |
| 5. Qǐng-jìnlai!                    | Please come in!                 |

- |                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| jìnqu<br>kéyi-jìnqu<br>6. Wǒmen-kéyi-jìnqu-ma?                                                   | go in<br>can go in<br>May we go in?                                                                                 |
| chū<br>chūlai<br>7. Qǐng-nín-chūlai-kànkàn.                                                      | leave<br>come out<br>Please come out and take a look.                                                               |
| chūqu<br>8. Tāmen-dōu-chūqu-le.                                                                  | go out<br>They've all gone out.                                                                                     |
| ná<br>náqu<br>9. Dōu-'náqu-le-méi-you?                                                           | carry<br>take away<br>Have they all been taken out?                                                                 |
| nálai<br>10. Nǐ-nálai-ba!                                                                        | bring<br>Bring it!                                                                                                  |
| nèiren<br>wǒ-nèiren<br>11. Wǒ-nèiren bú-zài-jiā.<br>Tā-chūqu-le.                                 | wife<br>my wife<br>My wife isn't home. She's gone out.                                                              |
| kèren<br>qǐng-kèren<br>12. Qǐng-kèren-jìnlai.                                                    | guest<br>invite guests<br>Invite the guests to come in.                                                             |
| jiàoshòu<br>'Máo-Jiàoshòu<br>13. 'Máo-Jiàoshòu xià-'kè-le-méi-you?                               | professor<br>Professor Mao<br>Has Professor Mao left class?                                                         |
| zǒulái<br>zǒuqu<br>zǒulái-zǒuqu<br>14. Háizi-zài-lùshang zǒulái-zǒuqu.                           | walk toward<br>walk away from<br>pace back and forth<br>The child is walking back and forth on the road.            |
| xiǎnglái-xiǎngqù<br>yīnggāi-'zěnmó-zuò<br>15. Wó-xiǎnglái-xiǎngqù bù-zhī-dào-yīnggāi-'zěnmó-zuò. | think over and over<br>how it should be done<br>I thought and thought (but still) don't know how it should be done. |
| huí-jiā<br>huí-jiā-qu<br>16. Nǐ-'shēnmó-shíhou huí-jiā-qu?                                       | return home<br>go back home<br>When do you go back home?                                                            |
| huí-jiā<br>huí-jiā-lai<br>17. Tā-jīntian 'bù-huí-jiā-lai.                                        | return home<br>come back home<br>He isn't coming [back] home today.                                                 |

mā  
18. Mā! Wǒmen-'shénmo-shí-  
hou-chī-fàn?

lǚxíng  
lǚxíng-liǎngcì  
19. Wó-měinián-lǚxíng-liǎngcì.

Hángzhou  
dà-chéng  
20. Hángzhou shì-'dà-chéng-ma?

Sūzhou  
lí-Sūzhou  
21. Hángzhou-lí-Sūzhou 'bù-yuǎn.

yǒude  
yǒude-hǎo  
22. Yǒude-hǎo, yǒude-'bù-hǎo.

'suóyǒude  
'suóyǒude-rén  
23. Qíng-'suóyǒude-rén-dōu-lái.

jìnqu  
nájinqu  
24. Dōu-'nájinqu-le-méi-you?

nádejìnqù  
nábujinqu  
25. Yǒude-'nádejìnqù, yǒude-  
'nábujinqu.

shuǐ  
méi-yóu-shuǐ  
26. Húli-méi-yóu-shuǐ.

fázi  
zhèige-fázi  
27. Zhèige-fázi bú-tài-hǎo.

méi-yǒu-fázi  
méi-fázi-niàn-shū  
28. Yīnwei-wǒ-'méi-qián, suóyi-  
'méi-fázi-niàn-shū.

kāi  
kāi-mén  
29. Qíng-nǐ-qu-kāi-mén.

mother  
Mom! When do we eat?

travel  
make two trips  
I make two trips a year.

Hangchow  
big city  
Is Hangchow a big city?

Soochow  
from Soochow  
Hangchow is not far from Soochow.

some  
some are good  
Some are good, some are bad.

all  
all the people  
Invite everyone to come.

go in  
take in  
Have they all been taken in?

able to carry in  
unable to carry in  
Some can be carried in, some  
can't [be carried in].

water  
there's no water  
There's no water in the lake.

method, way, means  
this method  
This method isn't very good.

have no means (of doing  
something)  
have no way to study  
Since I have no money I have no  
way of studying.

open  
open the door  
Please go open the door.



- kāi  
kāi-qìchē  
30. Nǐ-huì-bu-huì-kāi-qìchē?

- 'náhuíqu  
'náhuí-jīa-qu  
31. Nǐ-'dǒu-náhuí-jīa-qu-le-ma?

- jù  
liǎngjù-huà  
32. Zhèi-liǎngjù-huà shì-'shén-mo-yì si?

- xuéwen  
tāde-xuéwen  
33. Tāde-xuéwen-hǎojié.

- xuéwen  
yǒu-xuéwen  
34. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu hén-yǒu-xué-wen.

- piàoliang  
35. 'Nèige-nǚ-xuésheng 'hěn-piàoliang.

- shānshuǐ  
zhèrde-shānshuǐ  
36. Zhèrde-shānshuǐ hěn-piào-liang.

- shānshuǐ  
shānshuǐ-huàr  
37. Zhèizhāng-shānshuǐ-huàr 'duōshao-qián?

- búdàn  
érqiě  
38. Tā-búdàn-piàoliang, érqiě hén-yǒu-qián.

- niàndào  
niàndào-dì-'jǐkè?  
39. Wǒmen-jīntian niàndào-dì-'jǐkè?

- niànbudào  
niànbudào-dì-èrshíkè  
40. Wǒmen-xià-xīngqī niànbu-dào-dì-èrshíkè.

drive  
drive a car  
Do you know how to drive a car?

take back  
take back home  
Did you take them all back home?

(measure for sentences)  
two sentences  
What is the meaning of these two sentences?

learning  
his scholarship  
He is extremely learned. [lit. His scholarship is extremely good.]

learning  
be learned  
Professor Wanamaker is very learned.

attractive  
That girl student is very attractive.

scenery  
the scenery here  
The scenery here is very attractive.

landscape  
landscape painting  
How much is this landscape painting?

not only  
but also  
She's not only attractive, but also very rich.

reach [in studying]  
reach what lesson?  
What lesson have we reached today?

unable to reach [in studying]  
unable to reach the 20th lesson  
We can't get to Lesson 20 by next week.

pǎodào  
pǎodào-nǎr-qu?

41. Tā-pǎodào-nǎr-qu-le?

bǎ  
bǎ-'suóyǒude-shū

42. Qíng-ní-bǎ 'suóyǒude-shū  
dōu-gěi-ta.

cuò  
cuò-le

43. Wǒ-zhīdao-wǒ-cuò-le.

bú-cuò  
hěn-bú-cuò

44. Nèige-diànyǐngr hěn-bu-cuò.

cuò  
niàncuò

45. Zhèige-zì nǐ-niàncuò-le.

xiěcuò-le  
zài-xiě-yíci

46. Bá-xiěcuò-le-de-zì 'zài-xiě-  
yíci.

jièshao  
nǐmen-liǎngwèi

47. Wó-géi-nǐmen-liǎngwèi  
'jièshao-jìeshao.

jièshao-'Wàn-Jiàoshòu

gěi-'Bái-Xiānsheng

48. Qíng-ní-gěi-'Bái-Xiānsheng  
jièshao-jìeshao-'Wàn-Jiào-  
shòu.

lián  
lián-'Wàn-Jiàoshòu

49. Lián-'Wàn-Jiàoshòu yě-bù-  
dǒng.

lián-Niǚyue

50. Wǒ-lián-Niǚyue dōu-méi-qù-  
guo.

yìfēn-qián

51. Wǒ-'yìfēn-qián dōu-méi-you.

jiúyǎng

52. Liǎngge-rén-dōu-shuō: "Jiú-  
yǎng."

run to  
run away to where?

Where's he run off to?

take  
take all the books

Please give him all the books.

wrong  
made a mistake

I know I made a mistake.

not bad  
very good

That movie is very good.

wrong  
read incorrectly

You've read this character in-  
correctly.

wrote incorrectly  
write once more

Write once more the characters  
that you wrote incorrectly.

introduce  
the two of you

I'll introduce the two of you (to  
each other).

introduce Professor Wana-  
maker  
to Mr. White

Please introduce Professor  
Wanamaker to Mr. White.

even  
even Professor Wanamaker  
Even Professor Wanamaker  
doesn't understand.

even New York  
I haven't even been to New York.

one cent  
I don't even have a cent.

pleased to meet you  
Both persons said: "Pleased to  
meet you."

tiāntáng  
shàngbuliǎo  
53. Tā-'yídìng shàngbuliǎo-  
tiāntáng!

heaven  
unable to go up  
He certainly can't go to heaven!

yóu-'jǐkuài-qíán?  
54. Ní-yóu-'jǐkuài-qíán?

have how many dollars?  
How many dollars do you have?

'yóu-jǐkuài-qíán  
55. Wǒ-'zhí-yóu-jǐkuài-qíán.

have a few dollars  
I have only a few dollars.

shéi-shuō?  
'shéi-dōu-shuō  
56. 'Shéi-dōu-shuō tā-'hén-yǒu-  
qíán.

who says?  
everyone says  
Everyone says he's very  
wealthy.

yào-shénmo?  
'shénmo-yě-bú-yào  
57. Wǒ-'shénmo-yě-bú-yào.

want what?  
want nothing  
I want nothing.

tā-xiě-shū  
58. Shū-shi-'tā-xiě-de.

he writes books  
The books were written by him.

## PATTERN DRILLS

### Pattern 16.1. Verbs of Motion (Note 1 below)

S	V	O
Subject	Verb	Object
Tā	shàng	shān.
'He is climbing the hill.'		

1. 'Jiàoyuán duì-xuésheng-shuō:  
"Shàng-kè-de-shíhou bié-  
wàngle-ná-shū."
2. Míngtiān tā-xiǎng-chū-chéng-  
kàn-péngyou.
3. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-jìn-chéng mǎi-  
le-hěn-duō-dōngxi.
4. Wó-měitiān-wǎnshang 'bādiǎn-  
zhōng-huī-jiǎ.
5. 'Máo-Xiānsheng míngtiān-  
zǎochen-shàng-chuán.
6. Tā-zhùzai-shānshang. Měi-  
tiān-dōu-yào 'shàng-shān  
'xià-shān.

The teacher said to the students:  
"When you go to class don't for-  
get to take (your) books."  
Tomorrow he plans to leave the  
city to see (some) friends.  
Mr. White went to the city and  
bought a lot of things.  
I return home every evening at  
eight o'clock.  
Mr. Mao will go aboard tomor-  
row morning.  
He lives on a hill. Every day he  
goes up and down the hill.

7. Xuéxiào zài-hú-zuǒbiar. Wǒ-jiā zài-hú-yòubiār. Měitiān-yào-guò-hú.

The school is to the left of the lake. My home is to the right of the lake. I have to cross the lake every day.
8. Wǒmen-jīntian 'shénmo-shíhou-xià-kè?

When do we leave class today?
9. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng hái-yǒu-'sān-ge-yuè jiù-huī-guó-le.

Mr. Wang still has three months before returning to his own country.
10. 'Máo-Xiānsheng jīntian-wǎn-shang 'jiúdiǎn-zhōng-shàng-fēijī.

Mr. Mao boards the plane this evening at nine.

Pattern 16.2. Directive Postverbs (Notes 2-3 below)

S	V	-PV
Subject	Verb	Postverb
Tā	shàng	-qu.
'He is going up.'		
1. 'Shū-mǎi-le, kěshi-méi-ná-lai.	The books have been bought, but not brought (here).	
2. Wǒ-nèiren hái-méi-huī-lai-ne.	My wife hasn't come back yet.	
3. Zuótiān wǒ-qu-zhǎo-'Gāo-Xiānsheng. Wǒ-hái-méi-jìn-qu, tā-jiù-chū-lai-le.	Yesterday I went to visit Mr. Gao. Just as I was about to go in, he came out.	
4. Ní-'zěnmó-lái-de? . . . Wó-zǒu-lai-de.	How did you come? . . . I came on foot.	
5. Wǒ-jīntian 'jiā-lǐ-tou-yǒu-shì. Wǒ-'xiànzài-jiù-huī-qu.	I have something to do at home today. I'm going back (there) right now.	
6. Wó-yǒu-yìběn 'hén-hǎo-de-zì-diǎn. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu jiè-qu-le.	I have an excellent dictionary. Professor Wanamaker borrowed it [and took it away].	
7. Nèige-zì wǒ-wàng-le. Xiǎng-lái-xiǎng-qù 'hái-bu-rènshi.	I've forgotten that character. I've thought and thought and still don't recognize it.	
8. Kèren-lái-le, nèige-háizi pǎo-lái-pǎo-qù.	When the guests came the child ran back and forth.	
9. Jīntian-lùshang guò-lái-guò-qù-de-rén hěn-duō.	Today there are a lot of people going back and forth on the road.	
10. 'Bái-Xiānsheng bú-zài-jia. Chū-qu-le.	Mr. White isn't at home. He's gone out.	

## Pattern 16.3. Objects and Postverbs (Notes 4-5 below)

S	V	O	(PV)
Subject	Verb	Object	(Postverb)
Tā	shàng	shān	qu.

'He is going up the hill.'

- |                                                                              |                                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Wǒ-shàng-shān qu-bàifang-<br>'Gāo-Xiānsheng.                              | I'm going up the hill to visit Mr. Gao.                              |
| 2. Wǒ-fùqin chū-chéng-qu-le.                                                 | My father has gone out of town.                                      |
| 3. Wǒ-shi-zuótian jìn-chéng-lái-de.                                          | I came into town yesterday.                                          |
| 4. Mā! 'Qíng-nǐ shàng-'zhèr-lai.                                             | Mom! Please come here.                                               |
| 5. 'Bái-Xiānsheng 'Qián-Xiānsheng tāmen-'dōu-shàng-shān-lái-le.              | Mr. Bai and Mr. Qian both came up the hill.                          |
| 6. Wó-hěnxīwang shàng-'Háng-zhou-qu-lǚxíng.                                  | I hope very much to go to Hangchow for a trip.                       |
| 7. Wó-yǒu-jīhuì yě-shàng-'Sū-zhou-qu-kànkàn.                                 | (If) I have an opportunity I will also go to Soochow to have a look. |
| 8. Nèige-háizi xiànzài-'hái-méihuí-jīa-lai-ne. Bù-zhīdào tā-shàng-nǎr-qu-le. | That child still hasn't come home. I don't know where he's gone.     |
| 9. Yǐjīng-'shídiǎn-le. Wǒ-yào-huí-jīa-qu-le.                                 | It's already ten. I'm going back home.                               |
| 10. 'Wáng-Jiàoshòu jīnnián-jiǔ-yue-huí-guó-qu.                               | Professor King is going back to his own country this September.      |

## Pattern 16.4. Compound Verbs (Note 6 below)

S	V <sub>1</sub>	(bu/de)	V <sub>2</sub>	PV
Subject	Verb <sub>1</sub>	(bu/de)	Verb <sub>2</sub>	Postverb
Tā	pǎo		shang	lai.

'He is running up(ward).'

- |                                                            |                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Yǒude-háizi pǎoshanglai-le,<br>yǒude-háizi pǎoxiaqu-le. | Some children ran up, some (children) ran down. |
| 2. Shān-'tài-gāo, zǒubushàngqù.                            | The hill is too high, (one) can't walk up it.   |

3. Nèige-shān-'tài-gāo. Suóyǒu-de-rén 'dōu-zǒubushàngqù.

That hill is too high. Nobody can walk up it.
4. Wǒde-shū nábuhuílái-le.

I can't get my book back.
5. Zuótiān wǒ-cóng-shūdiàn 'zǒuhuíqu-de.

I walked back from the bookstore yesterday.
6. Nèige-háizi 'zǒuhuílai-de.

That child came back on foot.
7. Nèige-mén 'tài-xiǎo. Méiyǒu-fázi 'zǒujìnqu.

That door is too small. There's no way of going in.
8. Zhèige-dōngxī 'tài-dà. Ná-bujìnqu.

This thing is too big. It can't be carried in.
9. Nèitiáo-lù yǒu-shuǐ, zǒubuguòqù.

There's water on the road, (you) can't walk across.
10. Nèige-dōngxī bú-'tài-dà. 'Yídìng-nádejìnqu.

That thing isn't too big. It can certainly be taken in.

Pattern 16.5. Compound Verbs with Objects (Notes 6–7)

S	V <sub>1</sub>	V <sub>2</sub>	O	PV
Subject	Verb <sub>1</sub>	Verb <sub>2</sub>	Object	Postverb
Tā	pǎo	shàng	shān	lái.

'He is running up the hill (toward us).'

1. Tā-kāi-mén zǒujìn-fángzi-qu-le.

He opened the door and went into the house.
2. Yǒude-náhuí-shūdiàn-qu, yǒude-náhuí-túshūguǎn-qu.

Take some back to the bookstore, and [take] some back to the library.
3. 'Nèige-dōngxī yīngdāng-nájìn-fángzi-lai.

That thing should be brought into the house.
4. Tā-zuótiān-wǎnshang 'shíyī-diǎn-bàn-zhōng cái-zǒuhuí-jiā-qu-de.

Yesterday evening (it was) eleven-thirty before he walked back home.
5. 'Zuótiān-tāmen-sānge-rén yíkuài-zǒushang-shān-qu-le.

Yesterday the three of them walked up the mountain together.
6. Wǒ-'wàngle-ná-běnzǐ-le. Wó-déi-'pǎohuí-jiā-qu-ná.

I forgot to bring (my) notebook. I must hurry back home to get it.
7. Ní-yǐqián-jiè-de-shū qǐng-'náhuí-túshūguǎn-lai.

Please bring back to the library the books that you borrowed earlier.
8. Zuótiān wǒ-kàn-diànyǐngr-yǐhòu, wǒ-shi-'zǒuhuí-jiā-qu-de.

Yesterday I walked (back) home after I saw the movie.

9. Ní-mǎi-de-shū 'dōu-yào-ná-huǐ-Měiguó-qu-ma? Are you taking all the books you bought back to America?
10. Lùyīnjī míngtiān-nǐ-yào-'náhuǐ-xuéxiào-lai. You must bring the recorder back to school tomorrow.

Pattern 16.6. Compound Verbs with dào (Notes 8-9)

S	V	- <u>dào</u>	P	( <u>lai/qu</u> )
Subject	Verb	'to'	Place	('come'/'go')
Tā	huǐ	-dào	shānshang	qu.

'He went back to the top of the hill.'

1. 'Xiān-nádao-zhèr-lai, 'hòu-nádao-wàitou-qu. First bring it here, and then take it outside.
2. Zhèiběn-shū yǐjīng-niàndào dì-shíliùkè-le. We've already studied this book up to Lesson 16.
3. Wǒmen-'xià-xīngqī niàndedào-niànbudào dì-shíjiǔkè? By next week can we study up to Lesson 19?
4. Wó-mǔqīn huídào-Měiguó-qu-le. My mother has gone back to America.
5. Tā-xiěde-nèiběn-shū yǐjīng-'xiědào-nǎr-le? How far has he gotten in that book he's writing?
6. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng 'méi-zuò-chē, shì-'zǒudào-chéng-lǐtou-qu-de. Mr. Gao didn't go by car, he went to town on foot.
7. Wǒde-shū dōu-nádào-jiā-qu-le. My books have all been taken home.
8. Nǐmen-tīng-lùyīn 'yídìng-yàotīngdào dì-shíliùkè. In listening to the recordings, you must be sure to listen up to Lesson 16.
9. Qǐng-wèn, wǒmen-jīntiān niàndào-nǎr-le? May I ask, where have we gotten to [lit. studied to] today?
10. Chē kāidào-nǎr-qu-le? Where has the car been driven to?

Pattern 16.7. Definite Objects with the Coverb bǎ (Note 10 below)

S	<u>bǎ</u>	O <sub>1</sub>	V	(O <sub>2</sub> )
Subject	'take'	Object <sub>1</sub>	Verb	(Object <sub>2</sub> )
Wó	bǎ	zìdiǎn	gěi	ta.

'I gave him the dictionary.'



1. 'Bái-Xiānsheng bǎ-tāde-shū  
'dōu-nádao-xuéxiào-qù-le.

Mr. White took all his books to school.
2. Wó-bǎ-tāmen-de-míngzi 'dōu-wàng-le.

I've forgotten all their names.
3. Ní-bǎ-nèiběn-shū 'dōu-kàn-wán-le-ma?

Have you finished reading all of that book?
4. Wǒ-rúguó-yǒu-qián, bǎ-nèige-shūdiàn-de-shū 'dōu-mǎilai.

If I had the money, I'd buy all the books in that bookstore.
5. Tā-bǎ-lùyīnjī-mài-le.

He sold the recorder.
6. 'Bái-Xiānsheng bǎ-jīntian-xué-de-zì 'dōu-xiězài-běn-zì-shàng.

Mr. White wrote in his notebook all the words (he) studied today.
7. Qíng-ni-bǎ xué-yǔyán-de-'fāngfǎ gào-su-wo.

Please tell me about the way to study languages.
8. Nèige-xuésheng-'zhēn-bèn. Bǎ-'zuì-jiǎndānde-zì dōu-xiěcuò-le.

That student is really stupid. He wrote all the simplest characters wrong.
9. Jīntian wó-bá-biǎo kàncuò-le.

I looked at my watch wrong today.
10. 'Máo-Xiānsheng bǎ-shūdiàn-lide-Zhōng-Yīng-zìdiǎn 'dōu-náchulai gēi-wǒ-kànkàn.

Mr. Mao brought out all the Chinese-English dictionaries in the bookstore for me to look at.
11. Ní-bǎ-shū 'dōu-mǎi-le-ma?

Did you buy all the books?
12. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng bǎ-shān-shang-nèisuǒr-fángzi-mài-le.

Mr. King sold that house on the hill.
13. Tā-bá-wǒde-shū dōu-náqu-le.

He took away all my books.
14. 'Bié-bǎ-zhèiběn-shū-gěi-ta. Wǒ-hái-niàn-ne.

Don't give him this book. I'm still reading it.
15. Nǐ-bù-bǎ-qián-gěi-ta tā-zěnmó-mǎi-ne?

(If) you don't give him the money how will he buy it?

Pattern 16.8. The Coverb lián (Note 11 below)

Pattern 16.8 a.	<u>lián</u>	S	<u>yě/dōu</u>	V
	'even'	Subject	'also'	Verb
	Lián	tā	yě	qù-le.
	'Even <u>he</u> went.'			

Pattern 16.8 b.	(S)	( <u>lián</u> )	O	(S)	( <u>yě/dōu</u> )	V
	(Subject)	('even')	Object	(Subject)	('also')	Verb
		Lián	'tā	wǒ	yě	bù qǐng.
	'I'm not even inviting <u>him</u> .'					

1. Jīntian wǒ-zhí-qíng-nǐ-'yíge-rén. Lián-'Bái-Xiānsheng wǒ-dōu-bù-qǐng.  
Today I'm inviting only you. I'm not even inviting Mr. White.
2. Nèige-zì búdàn-'wǒmen-bù-rènshi, lián-'jiàoyuán yě-bù-rènshi.  
Not only do WE not recognize that character, even the teacher doesn't recognize it.
3. Zuótiān wǒmen-qu-kàn-diànyǐngr. Lián-'fùqīn-dōu-qù-le.  
Yesterday we went to see a movie. Even father went.
4. Nǐ-zěnmǒ-'zěnmǒ-bèn-a? 'Zhèige-zì yě-bù-rènshi.  
How come you're so stupid? You don't even recognize this character.
5. Wǒ-jīntiān-'tài-máng-le. Lián-'fàn-dōu-méi-chī.  
I'm too busy today. I haven't even eaten.
6. Wǒ-jīntiān 'yìmáo-qián-dōu-méi-yǒu.  
I don't have a dime today.
7. Wǒ-jīntiān-zǎochen dào-xué-xiào-de-shíhou, xuéxiàoli 'yíge-rén-yě-méi-yǒu.  
When I went to school this morning, there wasn't a single person there [lit. in school].
8. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng tài-cōng-míng-le. Niànle-liǎngniánde-'Zhōngguó-shū búdàn-huì-shuō-Zhōngguó-huà lián-'shū-dōu-néng-kàndǒng-le.  
Mr. King is awfully intelligent. After studying Chinese for two years, he can not only speak Chinese but can even read [and understand].
9. Nèige-rén 'yíge-péngyou-dōu-méi-yǒu.  
That man doesn't have even one friend.
10. Zhèige-zì 'tài-róngyi-le. Nǐ-zěnmǒ-lián-'zhèige-zì dōu-bù-huì-xiě?  
This character is very easy. How come you can't even write it [lit. this character]?

## Pattern 16.9. Question Words as Indefinites (Note 12 below)

## Pattern 16.9a.

(S)	V	QW
(Subject)	Verb	Question Word
Wó	'yǒu	jíběn shū.
'I have a few books.'		

## Pattern 16.9b.

QW	<u>yě/dōu</u>	V
Question Word	<u>yě/dōu</u>	Verb
Shéi	dōu	méi-lái.
'Nobody came.'		

1. Nǐ-dào-nǎr-qu? Wǒ-'bú-dào-nǎr-qu.

Where are you going? I'm not going anywhere (in particular).
2. Nǐ-xué-'Zhōngguo-huà xuéle-'jǐnián-le? Wǒ-xué-le yǐjīng-'yóu-jǐnián-le.

How many years have you been studying the Chinese language? I've been studying it for a few years.
3. Nǐ-yǒu-'duōshao-shū? Wǒ-'méi-you-duōshao-shū.

How many books do you have? I don't have many books.
4. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie jīntian-dào-nǎr-qu-le? Tā-jīntian-'nár-yě-méi-qù.

Where did Miss Gao go today? She didn't go anywhere today.
5. Nǐ-yào-mǎi-'shénmo-shū? Wǒ-'shénmo-shū-dōu-bù-mǎi.

What books do you want to buy? I'm not buying any books.
6. Jīntian-wǎnshang fùshang-yóu-'jǐge-kèren? Jīntian-wǎnshang 'méi-jǐge-rén.

How many guests are there at your house this evening? There aren't many [people] this evening.
7. 'Wáng-Jiàoshòu 'hén-yǒu-xué-wen-ma? Tā-'méi-shénmo-xuéwen.

Is Professor King very learned? He doesn't have much learning.
8. Nǐ-zài-zhèr-zhùle-'jǐnián-le? Wǒ-zài-zhèr 'méi-zhù-jǐnián.

How many years have you been living here? I haven't been living here long [lit. many years].
9. Nǐ-xiǎng-shàng-nǎr-qu? Wǒ-'nár-yě-bù-xiǎng-qù.

Where are you planning to go? I'm not thinking of going anywhere.
10. 'Qián-Xiǎojie zěnmó-'nènmó-piàoliang? Wǒ-shuō-tā 'bù-zěnmó-piàoliang.

How is it that Miss Qian is so pretty? I say she isn't so pretty.

Pattern 16.10. Passives with shì . . . de (Note 13 below)

S	<u>shì</u>	(N)	V	<u>de</u>
Subject	<u>shì</u>	(Noun)	Verb	<u>de</u>
Zhèiběn-shū	shì	tā	xiě	de.
'This book was written by him.'				
1. Zhèizhāng-shānshuǐ-huà shì-'Gāo-Xiǎojie-huà-de.			This landscape painting was painted by Miss Gao.	
2. 'Nèige-péngyou shì-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jièshao-de.			That friend was introduced by Mr. Gao.	
3. Nèiběn-shū hǎojíle. Shì-'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-mǎi-de.			That book is excellent. It was bought by Mr. Johnson.	

- |                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4. Mǎi-'shū-de-qián shi-'wó-gěi-de.                                                                   | The money for buying books was given by me.                                                                                    |
| 5. Nèiběn-zìdiǎn shi-'Bái-Xiān-sheng-jiè-de.                                                          | That dictionary was borrowed by Mr. White.                                                                                     |
| 6. Zhè-'suóyǒude-zì dōu-shi-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-xiě-de-ma?                                                 | Were all these characters written by Mr. Gao?                                                                                  |
| 7. Jīntiān-wǎnshàng wǒmen-qukàn-diànyǐngr. Piào-shi-'Máo-Xiānsheng-mǎi-de. Tā-'qǐng-wǒmen.            | This evening we're going to see a movie. The tickets were bought by Mr. Mao. He is inviting us.                                |
| 8. Nèige-'Zhōngwen-xìn xiě-de-zhēn-hǎo. Shi-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-xiě-de-ma?                                | That Chinese letter is very well written. Was it written by Mr. King?                                                          |
| 9. Zuótiān wǒ-tīngle-yìhuěrlùyīn. Nèige-lùyīn shi-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-lù-de. Zhōngguó-huà shuōde-hǎojíle. | I listened to a recording for a while yesterday. That recording was done by Mr. Wang. The Chinese was spoken exceedingly well. |
| 10. 'Shānshàng-nèisuǒr-fángzǐ 'zhēn-piàoliang. Shi-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-zhù-de-ma?                          | That house on the hill is very attractive. Is it occupied by Mr. Gao?                                                          |

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 32 sentences (Note 1)

nǐmen	——	shàng	chuán	——
tāmen	xiǎng	xià	shān	ma

II: 96 sentences (Notes 2-3)

nán-rén	huí	-lai	—
nǚ-rén	guò	-qu	le
tāmen	pǎo		
	ná		
	jìn		
	chū		
	shàng		
	xià		

III: 72 sentences (Notes 4-5)

xiānsheng	shàng	shān	—	—
háizi	xià	chē	lái	ma
tāmen			qù	

IV: 90 phrases (Notes 6-7)

pǎo	—	shàng	lái
zǒu	bu	guò	qù
ná	de	huí	
		jìn	
		chū	

V: 72 sentences (Note 6)

háizi	—	shàng	shān	—
tāmen	pǎo	xià	chuán	lái
	zǒu			qù

VI: 64 phrases (Note 8)

pǎo	dào	túshūguǎn	lái	—
zǒu		shūdiàn	qù	le
huí		Hángzhou		
ná		Sūzhou		

PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

Contrasts of Initials in Two-Syllable Pairs

This exercise consists of pairs of expressions which are distinguished in meaning solely by the differences of tone on the first syllable. Blank spaces indicate phrases involving a shift from 3 3 to 2 3, that is a shift from third tone to second tone.

1 0, 2 0	zhuōzi, zhuózi	1 1, 2 1	fēijī, féi-jī
1 0, 3 0	Shānxi, Shǎnxi	1 1, 3 1	mā-chī, mǎ-chī
1 0, 4 0	zhuīzi, zhuìzi	1 1, 4 1	shāng-fēng, shàng-fēng
1 2, 2 2	fēi-é, féi-é	1 3, 2 3	huī-shǒu, huí-shǒu
1 2, 3 2	zōng-zé, zǒng-zé	(1 3, 3 3)	
1 2, 4 2	yōng-rén, yòng-rén	1 3, 4 3	jūn-zhǔ, jùn-zhǔ
1 4, 2 4	tōu-piào, tóu-piào		
1 4, 3 4	xiāng-jiàn, xiǎng-jiàn		
1 4, 4 4	jiē-dào, jiè-dào		

20, 10 zhuózi, zhuōzi

20, 30 yízi, yǐzi

20, 40 máde, màde

22, 12 féi-é, fēi-é

22, 32 hú-lái, hǔ-lái

22, 42 huí-lái, huì-lái

21, 11 féi-jī, fēi-jī

21, 31 wú-yī, wǔ-yī

21, 41 huá-bīng, huà-bīng

23, 13 huí-shǒu, huī-shǒu

(23, 33)

23, 43 xíng-lǐ, xìng-lǐ

24, 14 tóu-piào, tōu-piào

24, 34 wú-shì, wǔ-shì

24, 44 dádao, dà-dào

30, 10 Shǎnxi, Shānxi

30, 20 mǎde, máde

30, 40 mǎide, màide

32, 12 zǒng-zé, zōng-zé

32, 22 hǔ-lái, hú-lái

32, 42 mǎi-fáng, mài-fáng

31, 11 mǎ-chī, mā-chī

31, 21 wǔ-yī, wú-yī

31, 41 huǒ-chē, huò-chē

(33, 13)

(33, 23)

(33, 43)

34, 14 xiǎng-jiàn, xiāng-jiàn

34, 24 wǔ-shì, wú-shì

34, 44 zuǐ-huài, zuì-huài

40, 10 zhuìzi, zhuīzi

40, 20 màde, máde

40, 30 màide, mǎide

42, 12 yòng-rén, yōng-rén

42, 22 huì-lái, huí-lái

42, 32 mài-fáng, mǎi-fáng

41, 11 shàng-fēng, shāng-fēng

41, 21 huà-bīng, huá-bīng

41, 31 huò-chē, huǒ-chē

43, 13 jùn-zhǔ, jūn-zhǔ

43, 23 xìng-lǐ, xíng-lǐ

(43, 33)

44, 14 jiè-dào, jiē-dào

44, 24 dà-dào, dádao

44, 34 zuì-huài, zuǐ-huài

## ANSWERING QUESTIONS

1. Rúguǒ ní-géi-liǎngge-rén-jièshao, shì-'yíge-rén-shuō -Jiúyǎng háishi-'liǎngge-rén-shuō-Jiúyǎng-ne?
2. Tā-rènshi 'èrbǎige-Zhōngguo-zì. Wǒ-rènshi 'sānbái-wúshíge-Zhōngguo-zì. 'Shéi-rènshi-de-zì-duō?
3. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng qùguo-Hángzhou. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng qùguo-Sūzhou. Tāmen-liǎngge-rén 'shéi-qùguo-Hángzhou?
4. 'Qián-Xiānshengde-tàitai hěn-piàoliang. 'Wáng-Xiānshengde-tàitai bú-piàoliang. Nǐ-shuō 'shéide-tàitai-hǎokàn?
5. 'Wáng-Tàitai cóng-Gāo-jia-dào-shūdiàn-qu. 'Gāo-Tàitai zài-jiā-lǐtou. Shì-shéi-zài-lùshang?
6. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie xǐhuan-huà-huà. 'Wáng-Xiǎojie hén-xǐhuan-huà. Tāmen-liǎngge-rén 'shéi-huì-huà-huà?
7. 'Bái-Xiānsheng lái-Zhōngguo-'yìnián. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu lái-Zhōngguo-'èrnián. Tāmen-liǎngge-rén 'shéi-xiān-dào-Zhōngguo-de?
8. Wáng-Xiānsheng zuótian-kāile-'sāngge-zhōngtóude-chē. Wáng-Tàitai 'bú-huì-kāi-chē. 'Shéi-huì-kāi-chē?
9. Wáng-Xiānsheng huídào-Yīngguo-qu-le. Wáng-Tàitai 'hái - zài - Zhōng-guo-ne. 'Shéi-dào-Yīngguo-qu-le?
10. Gāo-Xiānsheng zǒuhuilai-de. Gāo-Tàitai zuò-'chē-huilai-de. Zǒu-lù-de-shì-shéi?

## NOTES

1. In Chinese, as in English, verbs of motion sometimes indicate direction relative to the speaker (e.g. go in, come in), and sometimes have no such indication (e.g. enter). Thus Tāmen-jīntian-jìn-chéng 'They're entering the city today' gives no clue to whether the speaker is himself inside or outside the city.

2. Postverbs of direction indicate the direction of a motion relative to the speaker. Two of these are lái 'come [toward me]' and qu 'go [away from me]':

Qǐng-jìnlai. 'Please come in.' (Spoken by someone already inside to someone outside.)

Qǐng-jìnqu. 'Please go in.' (Spoken by someone outside to another person who is also outside.)



3. A verb said twice, first with postverb lái 'come' and immediately after with postverb qù 'go' (both with tones) means 'do V back and forth':

zǒulái-zǒuqù 'walk back and forth'

Sometimes the meaning is figurative:

xiǎnglái-xiǎngqù 'rack one's brains' [lit. 'think back and forth']

4. When a verb with a directional verb after it has an object, the object is either placed in front of the verb, as the topic, or is inserted between the verb and the postverb:

Nèiběn-shū qíng-nǐ-nálai.	} 'Please bring that book.'
<u>or</u>	
Qíng-nǐ-ná-nèiběn-shū-lai.	

5. Some compound verbs consist of two verbs of motion or action:

pǎoshàng 'run up'	náshàng 'carry up'
pǎojìn 'run in'	nájìn 'carry in'
pǎohuí 'run back'	náhuí 'carry back'

Such verbs are further compounded with directional postverbs:

pǎoshànglai 'run up (toward the speaker)'  
 pǎoshàngqu 'run up (away from the speaker)'  
 náhuílai 'bring back'  
 náhuíqu 'take back'

6. If the compound verbs mentioned in the preceding note have a place word as object, this is inserted before the postverb:

pǎoshàng-shān-lai 'run up the mountain (toward the speaker)'  
 pǎoshàng-shān-qu 'run up the mountain (away from the speaker)'  
 náhuí-shūdiàn-lai 'bring back to the bookstore'  
 náhuí-shūdiàn-qu 'take back to the bookstore'

7. The compound verbs with directional postverbs described in Note 5 are resultative verbs. This means they have special forms to express 'be able to' and 'be unable to':

náhuílai 'bring back'  
 nádehuílái 'able to bring back'  
 nábuhuílái 'unable to bring back'

8. The verb dào 'to' is often suffixed to other verbs to mean 'to' or 'toward' or 'up to, as far as,' forming expressions parallel to English 'walk to,' 'run to,' 'take [something] to,' 'read as far as.' Use of lái 'come' or qu 'go' at the end shows whether the direction is toward or away from the speaker:

Wǒmen-míngtiān niàndào-dì-sānkè. 'We read to the third lesson tomorrow.'  
 Tā-pǎodào-shānshang-lai. 'He is running up the mountain (toward the speaker).'

The last sentence is almost the same in meaning as:

Tā-pǎoshang-shān-lai.

The former gives somewhat greater emphasis to the destination (shān-shang), the latter to the action (pǎoshang).

9. Compound verbs with dào, discussed in the preceding note, are resultative verbs, so that de and bu are inserted between the main verb and dào to make the phrase mean 'able to' and 'unable to' respectively:

niàndào 'read as far as'

niàndedào 'able to read as far as'

niànbudào 'unable to read as far as'

Wǒmen-míngtiān niànbudào dì-sānkè. 'We can't get to the third lesson by tomorrow.'

10. The coverb bǎ, literally 'take,' introduces the direct object of a verb. It is used—

- (a) When a definite thing is referred to. Compare:

Tā-gěi-wǒ-shū. 'He gave me a book.'

Tā-bǎ-shū-gěi-wǒ. 'He gave me the book.'

- (b) When the main verb is followed by another object, verb, or suffix, e.g.:

Wó-bǎ-zì dōu-xiěwán-le. 'I've finished writing all the characters.'

11. The adverb yě 'also,' if used with a stressed object placed before the verb, means 'even':

Wǒ-'yìběn-shū yě-méi-yǒu.

or

'Yìběn-shū wǒ-yě-méi-yǒu.

}

'I don't have even one book.'

(The subject comes either before or after the transposed object.)

The adverb dōu, literally 'all,' is also used in this way:

Wǒ-'yìběn-shū dōu-méi-yǒu.

or

'Yìběn-shū wǒ-dōu-méi-yǒu.

}

'I don't have even one book.'

The preceding examples are also expressed with the coverb lián 'even' before the object:

Wǒ-lián-'yìběn-shū yě-méi-yǒu. or

Wǒ-lián-'yìběn-shū dōu-méi-yǒu. or

Lián-'yìběn-shū wó-yě-méi-yǒu. or

Lián-'yìběn-shū wǒ-dōu-méi-yǒu.

If yě or dōu are used in reference to the subject, the coverb lián is generally used also:

Lián-'tā yě-bú-rènshi-zhèige-zì. or

Lián-'tā dōu-bú-rènshi-zhèige-zì.

'Even he doesn't recognize this character.'

12. The meanings of question words (shénmo 'what?' shéi 'who?' nǎr 'where?' etc.) shift to indefinite meanings ('few,' 'everything,' 'nothing,' 'everywhere,' 'nowhere,' and the like) under the following conditions:

- (a) When they occur in constructions containing dōu 'all' or yě 'also' plus a verb:

Wǒ-'shénmo-dōu-bú-yào. } 'I want nothing.' or 'I don't want any-  
or  
 Wǒ-'shénmo-yě-bú-yào. } thing.'

'Shéi-dōu-huì. 'Everybody knows how.'

'Shéi-dōu-bú-huì. 'Nobody knows how.'

- (b) When some word other than the question word receives the chief stress. Compare:

Tā-yóu-'jǐběn-shū. 'How many books does he have?'  
 (stress on jǐ 'how many?')

Tā-'yóu-jǐběn-shū. 'He has a few books.'  
 (stress on yóu 'have')

13. Sentences of the type (S) V O (Subject-Verb-Object) when transformed into the pattern O shì (S) V de cause shifts in the connotation of the Chinese sentence which correspond to the following English processes: (a) the object changes from indefinite to definite; (b) the tense becomes past; (c) the voice becomes passive; (d) the portion of the utterance between shì and de receives the chief emphasis. Thus:

Wó-mǎi-shū. 'I'm buying books.'

but—

Shū shì-wó-mǎi-de. 'The books were bought by me.'

Nár-mǎi-shū? 'Where (does one) buy books?'

but—

Shū shì-nár-mǎi-de? 'Where were the books bought?'

Shénmo-shíhou mǎi-shū? 'When does one buy books?'

but—

Shū shì-shénmo-shíhou-mǎi-de? 'When were the books bought?'

14. Girls' names frequently include the word měi 'beautiful,' as in Měiyīng—literally 'beautiful (and) brave.'
15. The word mā 'mother' is most often used in direct address. Occasionally one hears wǒ-mā for 'my mother,' but mā is not used in reference to another person's mother.
16. The word for 'wife' is nèiren if spoken by a man in reference to his own wife, and tàitai in direct address (i.e. 'Wife!') or if the reference is to another person's wife.
17. The verb shì 'be' is frequently used to join verbal phrases as well as noun phrases:

Xiě-Zhōngguó-zì shì-hěn-bu-róngyì-de. 'Writing characters is (something which is) not at all easy.'

Xué-xiě-zì shì-bìděi-yònggōng. 'Studying the writing of characters is (a matter of) having to be industrious.'

Xué-yǔyánxué jiù-shì-yánjiū-wàiguó-huà. 'To study linguistics is to investigate foreign languages.'

18. The verb cuò 'wrong' preceded by bu 'not' has the special meaning 'not bad' or 'that's right.' Hěn-bu-cuò, literally 'quite not bad,' is much like English 'not at all bad,' actually meaning 'pretty good.' Cuò is also suffixed to a few verbs to mean '[do] wrong or incorrectly':

Wó-bǎ-shū-mǎicuò-le. 'I bought the wrong book.' [lit. 'I incorrectly bought the book.']

Here are some other compounds formed with cuò:

niàncuò 'read incorrectly'	xiěcuò 'write incorrectly'
kàncuò 'look at incorrectly'	zuòcuò 'do incorrectly'
shuōcuò 'say incorrectly'	mǎicuò 'buy incorrectly'
tīngcuò 'hear incorrectly'	nácuò 'take incorrectly'

## Lesson 17 PLAYING 'GUESS-FINGERS'



"Qīge-qīge-qīge-a! . . . Bā-a!"

Dialogue: Mr. Gao, Professor Wanamaker, and Mr. White converse as Mrs. Gao and Miss Gao put the finishing touches on dinner.

Gāo-Xiānsheng, Wàn-Jiàoshou,  
Bái-Xiānsheng tāmen-sānge-rén  
hē-chá-de-shíhou, tāmen-tán-  
Sūzhou-Hángzhou.

While Mr. Gao, Professor Wana-  
maker, and Mr. White are drink-  
ing tea, they talk of Soochow and  
Hangchow.

Gāo : Nǐmen-tándào

5

(Since) you've mentioned

Shàng-yǒu-tiāntáng  
Xià-yǒu-Sū-Háng

Above is Heaven  
Below are Soochow and Hang-  
chow

wǒ-xiànzài-gēn-nǐmen-  
tányitan wǒde-lǎo-jiā-  
Hángzhou.

10

I'll tell you now about my old  
home, Hangchow.

Bái : Nín-shi-zài-Hángzhou  
zhǎng-dà-de-ma?

Did you grow up in Hangchow?

Gāo : Wǒ-shi-zài-Hángzhou-  
shēng-de. Wǒ-'èrshi-  
jǐsuì cái-líkai-Háng-  
zhou.

15

I was born in Hangchow. I didn't  
leave there [lit. Hangchow] until  
I was in my twenties.

- Wàn : Wǒ-zài-Yīngguo jiù-tīngshuō  
'Hángzhou-hén-hǎo. 'Yīng-  
guo-rén dào-'Zhōngguo-lǔ-  
xíng yíding-yào-dào-Háng- 20  
zhou-qu. Huílai-'dōu-shuō  
Hángzhou-hǎode-bùdéliǎo.
- Gāo : Nǐ-méi-qùguo-Hángzhou-ma,  
Lǎo-Wàn?
- Wàn : Wǒ-méi-qùguò. 25
- Gāo : Hángzhou-yǒu-ge-hú jiào-  
Xī-Hú shi-'hén-yǒu-míng-  
de. Cóngqiándè-rén bǎ-  
Xī-Hú bǐzuò-yíge-'zuì-  
piàoliàngde-nǚ-rén Xī-Shī.\* 30  
Nènmo-nǐ-jiù-zhīdào zhèi-  
ge-hú shi-zěnmoyàngde-  
piàoliàng-le.
- Wàn : Wǒ-láiguo-Zhōngguo-'jǐcì  
dōu-méi-qùguo-Hángzhou. 35  
Xīwang-jiānglái qù-yíci.
- Gāo : Tiānqi-nuǎnhuode-shíhou  
yǒu-hǎoxiē-rén dào-Háng-  
zhou-lǔxíng.
- Bái : Wǒ-xīwang jiānglái-yǒu-jī-  
hui dào-Hángzhou-lǔxíng. 40  
'Sūzhou-zěnmoyàng? Sū-  
zhou gēn-Hángzhou-yíyàng-  
ma?
- Gāo : Sūzhou méi-yǒu-Hángzhou-  
nènmo-dà. Shānshuǐ-bù-  
yíyàng, kěshi-yé-hěn-piào-  
liàng. 45
- Bái : Nín-fǔshang-zhèige-dìfang  
'yé-hěn-piàoliàng. Chàbu- 50  
duō-gēn-Gāo-Xiǎojie huà-  
de-nèizhāng-huàr yíyàng-  
piàoliàng.
- Gāo : Yīnwei-wó-xǐhuan-Háng-  
zhou, suóyi-cóngqian-jiu- 55  
xiǎng, jiānglái-wǒ-'yíding-  
zhǎo-yíge-dìfang xiàng-  
'Hángzhou-yíyàng-hǎo wǒ-  
cái-zhù-ne. Hòulai-péng-  
you jièshao-zhèige-dìfang. 60
- (Even while) I was in England, I  
heard that Hangchow is very  
nice. Englishmen who travel to  
China feel it is a must to go  
there [to Hangchow]. When they  
come back, they all say that  
Hangchow is wonderful.
- You haven't been to Hangchow,  
[Old] Wan?
- I never have.
- Hangchow has a lake called West  
Lake that's very famous. Peo-  
ple of earlier days compared  
West Lake to Xi Shi, one of the  
most beautiful of women.\* You  
can tell from this how beautiful  
the lake is.
- I've been to China several times  
but have never been to Hang-  
chow. I hope to go there some  
day [lit. once in the future].
- When the weather's warm a lot  
of people make trips to Hang-  
chow.
- I hope [in the future] I'll have an  
opportunity to make a trip to  
Hangchow. What's Soochow like?  
Is Soochow like Hangchow?
- Soochow isn't as big as Hang-  
chow. The scenery is different,  
but also very beautiful.
- This area around your home is  
very beautiful too. It's almost  
as beautiful as that painting of  
Miss Gao's.
- Since I like Hangchow, I used to  
think that at some future time I  
would make it a point to look for  
a place as nice as Hangchow to  
settle down. Later, friends in-  
troduced me to this place. Al-  
though it's not as nice as Hang-

\* Xī-Shī, one of the greatest beauties in Chinese history, lived during the Warring Kingdoms Period (B.C. 403-221).



- Suírán-méi-you-'Hángzhou-nènmo-hǎo, kěshi-yǒu-yì-diǎr-xiàng-Hángzhou. Wǒ-jiù-zài-zhèr mǎile-zhèi-suǒr-fángzi. 65
- Bái : Tīngshuō Sūzhou-nǚ-rén-piàoliang.\* Shì-zhēnde-ma? I hear the women of Soochow are beautiful.\* Is that so?
- Gāo : Bù-yídìng. Yǒude-piàoliang, yǒude-yé-hěn-nán-kàn. 70 Yes and no. Some are beautiful, some are ugly.
- Wàn: Shì. Sūzhou-nǚ-rén 'shì-piàoliang. Nǐ-kàn-Gāo-Xiáojie duómo-piàoliang. It is so. Soochow women are beautiful. You see how attractive Miss Gao is.
- Bái : Gāo-Xiáojie shì-'Sūzhou-rén-a? 75 Is Miss Gao a native of Soochow?
- Wàn: Gāo-Xiáojie shì-zài-'Sūzhou-shēng-de. Gāo-'Tàitai-shì-Sūzhou-rén. Lǎo-Gāo zài-Sūzhou-rènshì-de- 80 Gāo-Tàitai. Tāmen-liǎng-ge-rén zài-'Sūzhou-jiēhūn, Gāo-Xiáojie shì-zài-'Sūzhou-shēng-de. Gāo-'Xiáojie-zhǎngde gēn-Gāo-'Tàitai-yíyàng-piàoliang. 85
- Bái : Oh, suóyì-Gāo-Tàitai Gāo-Xiáojie nènmo-piàoliang-ne! Oh, so that's why Mrs. Gao and Miss Gao are so attractive!
- Wàn: Hángzhou-shānshuǐ-yǒu-míng. Sūzhou-nǚ-rén-yǒu-míng. 90 Hangchow is famous for its scenery, and Soochow is famous for its women.
- Gāo : Wǒmen-zhǐ-shuō-huà-le. Wǒ-wàngle qíng-nǐmen-liǎngwèi-hē-jiǔ-le. Lǎo-Wàn, 'Bái-Xiānsheng, 95 qǐng. All we're doing is talking. I've forgotten to ask you to have some wine. [Old] Wan, Mr. White, please.
- Wàn: Zhèi-jiǔ-'zhēn-hǎo. Shì-shénmo-jiǔ-a? This wine is really nice. What is it?

---

\* China has its geographical stereotypes comparable to the thrifty Scotchman and the hard-bargaining New Englander. Natives of Shansi are supposed to be penny-pinching, southerners cunning, and Soochow women beautiful.



- Gāo : Shi-Méigui-Lù.\* Lǎo- 100 It's Rose Dew.\* [Old] Wan, what  
Wàn, zēnmoyàng, wǒmen-  
hēle-zhèibēi huá-'quán-  
hǎo-bu-hǎo? \*\* do you say, after this cup shall  
we play 'guess-fingers'? \*\*
- Wàn: Hǎo. Fine.
- Gāo : 'Bái-Xiānsheng, nǐ-kàn- 105 Mr. White, have you seen 'guess-  
jianguo-huá-quán-de-ma? fingers' played?
- Bái : Wǒ-hái-méi-kànjianguo- No, I haven't.  
ne.
- Gāo : Lǎo-Wàn, lái, wǒmen-huá- [Old] Wan, come on, let's play.  
quán-ne. 110
- Gāo : Sìge-a! Wàn: Qī-a! (Gao:) Four! (Wan:) Seven!
- Wàn: Nǐ-yíng-le. Wǒ-hē. You win. I drink.
- Gāo : Shíge-shíge-a! Wàn: Wǔ- (Gao:) Ten! (Wan:) Five!  
a!
- Gāo : Wǒ-yíng-le. Nǐ-hē. 115 I win. You drink.
- Gāo : Wǔge-wǔge-a! Wàn: Liù-a. (Gao:) Five! (Wan:) Six!  
(No one wins.)
- Gāo : Qīge-qīge-qīge-a! Wàn: (Gao:) Seven! (Wan:) Eight!  
Bā-a!
- Wàn: Nǐ-yíng-le. Wǒ-'yòu-hē. You win. I drink again.
- Gāo : 'Bái-Xiānsheng, nǐ-kàn. 120 Mr. White, what do you think, is  
Yǒu-yìsi-ma? it interesting?
- Bái : 'Hén-yǒu-yìsi. Wó-hěn- Very interesting. I'm puzzled  
qíguài wèi-shénmo-'yíng- about why the winner doesn't  
de-rén bu-hē-jiǔ-ne? drink.

---

\* Méigui-Lù 'Rose Dew' is the name of a popular light wine which is taken in tiny cups holding only a few thimblefuls.

\*\* The game of 'guess-fingers' is widely played in China by people of all ages. There are several versions. In one, especially popular with children, two opponents simultaneously extend the right hand in the form of a fist or an open palm or with the first and second fingers spread apart, the others being held against the palm. The fist represents a stone, the open palm represents cloth, and the spread fingers represent scissors. Cloth wins over stone, stone wins over scissors, and scissors win over cloth (since cloth covers stone, stone breaks scissors, scissors cut cloth). In another version, the two contestants simultaneously extend none to five fingers while calling out their guesses as to the total number of fingers extended by the two contestants. The numbers are often called out over and over again at a very rapid pace; sometimes the numbers are called in fixed phrases with such auspicious connotations as 'four happinesses' and 'six successes.' These latter versions are especially popular with men who like to play the game while having wine as a prelude to dinner.

Gāo : Ní-'děng-yìhuěr jiù-míng-bai-le.	125	Wait a moment and you'll understand.
Gāo : Qīge-qīge-a! Wàn: Jiǔ-a!		(Gao:) Seven! (Wan:) Nine!
Gāo : Wǒ-'yòu-yíng-le. Nǐ-'yòu-hē.		I win again. You drink again.
Wàn: Lǎo-Gāo, nǐ-kàn, jiǔ-bēi-zhēn-bù-xiǎo-a.	130	[Old] Gao, see, the wine cups aren't so small after all.
Gāo : Lǎo-Wàn, 'zài-huá.		[Old] Wan, let's play again.
Wàn: Gòu-le. Zài-huá jiù-hēde-'tài-duō-le.		Enough. If I play again I'll have too much wine.
Bái : Oh, 'xiànzài-wǒ-cái-míng-bai wèi-shénmo 'yíng-de-rén bù-hē-jiǔ.	135	Oh, now I understand why the winner doesn't drink.

## VOCABULARY

bēi	cup (M) (Note 8)
bēi(zi)	cup (N) (Note 8)
bǐ	compare (TV)
bùdéliǎo	awfully [lit. not reach end] (Note 10)
chá	tea (N)
cóngqián	formerly, in the past (TW) [lit. from before]
děng	wait (IV)
gòu	be enough (IV)
hǎoxiē	good many, a lot (Note 9)
hē	drink (TV)
huá-quán	play guess-fingers
jiēhūn	marry (IV)
jiǔ	wine (N)
lù	dew (N)
méigui	rose (N)
míngbai	understand (TV) [lit. clear white]
nuǎnhuo	warm (SV)
quán	fist (N)
shēng	be born (IV)
tiānqi	weather (N)
wèi-shénmo?	why? [lit. for what?]
xiàng	resemble (EV) (Notes 1, 2, 4)

xiē	few (M) (Note 9)
yàng	kind (M)
yíng	win (TV)
yíyàng	same (SV) (Notes 2-3, 5)
yǒu-míng	famous (VO) [lit. have name]
zěnmoyàng?	like what? how about it? well? [lit. how kind?]
zhǎng	grow (IV)
zuò	as (Note 7)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                                                                                    |                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| xiàng<br>xiàng-tāde-fùqin<br>1. Tā-hěn-xiàng tāde-fùqin.                           | resemble<br>resemble his father<br>He looks a lot like his father.                   |
| yǒu-yìdiǎr<br>yǒu-yìdiǎr-xiàng<br>2. Tā-yǒu-yìdiǎr xiàng-tāde-mǔqin.               | have a little<br>resemble a little<br>He resembles his mother a little.              |
| yàng<br>zhèiyàng<br>3. Zhèiyàng-rén hén-shǎo.                                      | kind<br>this kind<br>This sort of person is quite rare.                              |
| nèiyàng<br>nèiyàngde<br>4. Wó-xiàng-mǎi 'nèiyàngde-bǐ.                             | that kind<br>that kind (of)<br>I'd like to buy that kind of pen.                     |
| yíyàng<br>5. Zhèi-liǎngge-dōngxi-yíyàng.                                           | one kind, same<br>These two things are alike.                                        |
| yíyàng<br>bù-yíyàng<br>6. Zhèi-liǎngge-lùyīnjī bù-yíyàng.                          | the same<br>not the same, different<br>These two recorders are not the same.         |
| zhèige<br>gēn-nèige<br>7. Zhèige-gēn-nèige-yíyàng.                                 | this<br>with that<br>This and that are the same.                                     |
| xiàng-nèiběn-shū<br>xiàng-nèiběn-shū-yíyàng<br>8. Zhèiběn-shū xiàng-nèiběn-yíyàng. | resemble that book<br>be the same as that book<br>This book is the same as that one. |
| tiānqi                                                                             | weather                                                                              |

- zhèrde-tiānqi  
9. Zhèrde-tiānqi bù-gēn-nèrde-tiānqi-yíyàng.  
the weather here  
The weather here is not the same as the weather there.
- Húnán-de-tiānqi  
gēn-Dōngběi-de-tiānqi  
10. Húnán-de-tiānqi gēn-Dōngběi-de-tiānqi bù-yíyàng.  
the weather in Hunan  
and the weather in Manchuria  
The weather in Hunan is different from the weather in Manchuria.
- Húběi-de-tiānqi  
chàbuduō  
11. Húběi-de-tiānqi chàbuduō-gēn-Húnán-de-tiānqi-yíyàng.  
the weather in Hupei  
almost  
The weather in Hupei is almost the same as the weather in Hunan.
- bú-xiàng  
bú-xiàng-wǒde-yíyàng  
12. Nǐde-bǐ bú-xiàng-wǒde-yíyàng.  
does not resemble  
is not like mine  
Your pen is not like mine.
- jiǔ  
13. Zhèige-jiǔ hén-hǎo.  
wine  
This wine is excellent.
- bēi  
jiǔ-bēi  
14. Zhōngguó-jiǔ-bēi hén-xiǎo.  
cup  
wine cup  
Chinese wine cups are very small.
- bēizi  
sānge-bēizi  
15. Ná-sānge-bēizi-lai.  
cup  
three cups  
Bring three cups.
- bēi  
sānbēi-jiǔ  
16. Qíng-ni-ná sānbēi-jiǔ-lai.  
cup  
three cups of wine  
Please bring three cups of wine.
- gēn-nèige-bēizi-yíyàng  
gēn-nèige-bēizi yíyàng-xiǎo  
17. Zhèige-bēizi gēn-nèige-yíyàng-xiǎo.  
the same as that cup  
as small as that cup  
This cup is as small as that one.
- nuǎnhuo  
gēn-Húnán yíyàng-nuǎnhuo  
18. Húběi-gēn-Húnán yíyàng-nuǎnhuo-ma?  
warm  
as warm as Hunan  
Is Hupei as warm as Hunan?
- nuǎnhuo  
gēn-Húnán yíyàng-nuǎnhuo  
bù-gēn-Húnán yíyàng-nuǎnhuo  
warm  
as warm as Hunan  
not as warm as Hunan

19. Shāndong bù-gēn-Húnán yí-yàng-nuǎnhuo.

xiàng-Shānxi-yíyàng  
xiàng-Shānxi-yíyàng-dà

20. Shāndong chàbuduō-xiàng-Shānxi-yíyàng-dà.

méigui  
yǒude-méigui

21. Yǒude-méigui shì-hóngde,  
yǒude-shì-báide.

lù  
Méigui-Lù  
xiàng-Méigui-Lù

22. Zhèige-jiǔ xiàng-Méigui-Lù  
yíyàng-hǎo.

xǐhuan-kàn-diànyǐngr  
yíyàng-xǐhuan kàn-  
diànyǐngr

23. Wǒ-gēn-nǐ-yíyàng xǐhuan-  
kàn-diànyǐngr.

xǐhuan-chī-'Zhōngguo-  
fàn  
yíyàng-xǐhuan-chī-  
'Zhōngguo-fàn

24. Wǒ-bù-xiàng-tā-yíyàng xǐ-  
huan-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn.

nǐ-xiàng-tā  
nènmo-cōngmíng

25. Nǐ-xiàng-'tā-nènmo-cōng-  
míng.

tā-xiàng-nǐ  
zhènmo-cōngmíng

26. Tā-xiàng-'nǐ-zhènmo-cōng-  
míng.

nènmo-yònggōng

27. Ní-yǒu-tā-nènmo-yònggōng.

nènmo-xǐhuan-chī-  
'Zhōngguo-fàn

28. Nǐ-méi-yǒu-tā nènmo-xǐ-  
huan-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn.

chá  
ná-chá-lai

29. Qǐng-ná-chá-lai.

hē

Shantung is not as warm as Hu-  
nan.

like Shansi  
as big as Shansi

Shantung is almost as large as  
Shansi.

rose  
some roses

Some roses are red, some are  
white.

dew  
Rose Dew  
resemble Rose Dew

This wine is as nice as Rose  
Dew.

like to see movies  
equally like to see movies

I like to see movies as much as  
you do.

like to eat Chinese food

equally like to eat Chinese  
food

I don't like to eat Chinese food  
as much as he does.

you resemble him  
that intelligent

You are as intelligent as he is.

he resembles you  
this intelligent

He is as intelligent as you are.

so hard-working

You work as hard as he does.

like to eat Chinese food as  
much

You don't like to eat Chinese  
food as much as he does.

tea  
bring tea

Please bring some tea.

drink

- xǐhuan-hē-chá  
30. Wǒ-xiàng-nǐ-yíyàng xǐhuan-  
hē-chá.

like to drink tea  
I like to drink tea as much as  
you do.

- hē  
hǎo-hē  
31. Zhèige-chá-'zhēn-hǎo-hē.

drink  
nice to drink  
This tea is really nice to drink.

- míng  
yǒu-míng  
32. Sūzhou-méi-yǒu-Hángzhou  
nènmo-yǒu-míng.

name  
be famous or well known  
Soochow isn't as well known as  
Hangchow.

- jiēhūn  
33. Tāmen-shi-'qùnian-jiēhūn-  
de.

marry  
They were married last year.

- Wáng-Xiānsheng gēn-  
Wáng-Tàitai  
shi-qùnian-jiēhūn-de  
34. Wáng-Xiānsheng gēn-Wáng-  
Tàitai shi-qùnian-jiēhūn-de.

Mr. and Mrs. King  
were married last year  
Mr. and Mrs. King were married  
last year.

- zhǎng  
zhǎng-dà  
35. Tā-shi-zài-'Zhōngguo-zhǎng-  
dà-de.

grow  
grow up  
He grew up in China.

- zhǎng-gāo  
36. Nèige-háizi xiànzài-zhǎng-  
gāo-le.

grow tall  
That child has grown tall now.

- gòu  
'gòu-bu-gòu  
37. Fàn-'gòu-bu-gòu?

enough  
enough or not  
Is there enough food?

- huá-quán  
38. Nǐ-huì-huá-quán-ma?

play 'guess-fingers'  
Can you play 'guess-fingers'?

- gēn-ta-fùqin  
yíyàng-gāo  
39. Tā-zhǎngde gēn-ta-fùqin  
yíyàng-gāo.

with his father  
equally tall  
He's grown as tall as his father.

- gēn-ta-yíyàng-hǎo  
40. Nǐ-huá-quán-huá-de gēn-  
ta-yíyàng-hǎo.

as good as he  
You play 'guess-fingers' as well  
as he does.

- cóngqián  
gēn-ta-yíyàng-duō  
41. Wǒ-cóngqián-chī-de gēn-  
tā-yíyàng-duō.

formerly  
as much as he  
I used to eat as much as he does.

- xiàng-tā-nènmo-duō  
42. Ní-mǎi-shū-mǎi-de xiàng-  
'tā-nènmo-duō.

as much as he  
You buy as many books as he  
does.

43. méi-yǒu-'tā-nènmo-duō  
Ní-mǎi-shū-mǎi-de méi-  
yǒu-'tā-nènmo-duō.

44. yíng  
yíng-le-sāncì  
Wó-yě-yíngle-sāncì.

45. shēng  
Tā-shì-zài-Húnán-shēng-de.

46. shēngzài  
Tā-shēngzài-Húnán.

47. míngbai  
míngbai-nǐde-yìsi  
Wǒ-bù-míngbai-nǐde-yìsi.

48. wèi-shénmo?  
Nǐ-wèi-'shénmo-bú-qù?

49. děng  
'děngyiděng  
Qǐng-ni-'děngyiděng.

50. nǐ-kàn  
zěnmoyàng?  
Nǐ-kàn-nèiběn-shū zěnmoyàng?

51. zěnmoyàng?  
'bù-zěnmoyàng  
Nèiběn-shū 'bù-zěnmoyàng.

52. xiē  
zhèxiē-shū  
Zhèxiē-shū 'dōu-shi-nǐde-ma?

53. nèixiē  
nèixiē-rén  
Nèixiē-rén dōu-shi-'shénmo-rén?

54. hǎoxiē  
Hǎoxiē-fángzi 'dōu-shi-yí-yàngde.

55. yǒu-xiē  
yǒu-xiē-rén  
Yǒu-xiē-rén 'xǐhuan-lǚxíng,  
yǒu-xiē-rén 'bù-xǐhuan-lǚxíng.

not as many as he  
You don't buy as many books as he does.

win  
won three times  
I also won three times.

be born  
He was born in Hunan.

be born in  
He was born in Hunan.

understand  
understand your meaning  
I don't understand what you mean.

why?  
Why aren't you going?

wait  
wait a while  
Please wait a while.

you see or you think  
like what?  
What do you think of that book?

like what?  
nothing much  
That book isn't anything much.

a few  
these books  
Are all these books yours?

those  
those men  
Who are those men?

a good many, a lot  
A lot of homes are alike.

there are some  
there are some people  
There are some people who like to travel, and some people who don't [like to travel].



- bǐ  
 'bǐyībǐ  
 56. Nèi-liǎngge-xuésheng 'bǐ-yībǐ. compare  
 make a comparison  
 Compare those two students.
- bǎ-zhèige-xuésheng  
 gēn-nèige-xuésheng  
 57. Bǎ-'zhèige-xuésheng gēn-'nèige-xuésheng 'bǐyībǐ. take this student  
 with that student  
 Compare this student with that student.
- bǐdeshàng  
 bǐbushàng  
 58. 'Tāde-xuéwen bǐdeshàng-bǐbushàng 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu? comparable  
 not comparable  
 Can his learning compare with Professor Wanamaker's?
- bǐzuò  
 bǐ-sìniánjíde-xuésheng  
 59. Jiàoshòu 'dōu-bǎ-ta bǐzuò-'sìniánjíde-xuésheng. compare with, equate with  
 equate with senior students  
 The professors all rank him with the senior students.
- kànzuo  
 kànzuo-yíge-'Zhōngguo-rén  
 60. Wó-bǎ-nèige-'Rìběn-rén kànzuo-yíge-'Zhōngguo-rén. view as, take for, mistake for  
 view as a Chinese, (mis)-take for a Chinese  
 I mistook that Japanese for a Chinese.
- hǎo-kàn  
 hǎo-kànde-hěn  
 61. Méigui-hǎo-kànde-hěn. pretty  
 very pretty  
 Roses are very pretty.
- bùdéliǎo  
 dàde-bùdéliǎo  
 62. Tāde-fángzi dàde-bùdéliǎo. awfully  
 awfully big  
 His house is awfully big.
- méi-yǒu-rén  
 xǐhuan-mǎi  
 63. Nèisuǒr-fángzi-dàde méi-yǒu-rén-xǐhuan-mǎi. there isn't anyone  
 like to buy  
 That house is so big that no one wants to buy it.
- nènmo  
 wǒmen-yíkuàr-qù  
 64. Nènmo-wǒmen-'yíkuàr-qù 'hǎo-bu-hǎo? since that's the case  
 we go together  
 Then how about our going together?

## PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 17.1. Similarity and Disparity (Note 2 below)

N <sub>1</sub>	<u>gēn/xiàng</u>	N <sub>2</sub>	<u>yíyàng</u>
Noun <sub>1</sub>	'with'/'resemble'	Noun <sub>2</sub>	'alike'
Zhèige-yánse	gēn	nèige-yánse	yíyàng.
'This color is like that color.'			

- |                                                                |                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Wǒde-biǎo gēn-nǐde-biǎo-yí-yàng.                            | My watch is like your watch.                                              |
| 2. Nèizhī-bǐ xiàng-zhèizhī-yí-yàng.                            | That pen is like this one.                                                |
| 3. 'Jīntiānde-tiānqì xiàng-'zuó-tiānde-tiānqì-yíyàng.          | Today's weather is like yesterday's weather.                              |
| 4. Shāndōng bù-gēn-Shānxī-yí-yàng.                             | Shantung is not like Shansi.                                              |
| 5. Rìběn-fàn bú-xiàng-'Zhōngguo-fàn-yíyàng.                    | Japanese food is not like Chinese food.                                   |
| 6. 'Zhède-tiānqì chàbuduō-gēn-'nèrde-tiānqì-yíyàng.            | The weather here is almost the same as the weather there.                 |
| 7. 'Zhōngguo-bǐ bú-xiàng-'Měiguó-bǐ-yíyàng.                    | Chinese pens are not like American pens.                                  |
| 8. 'Dàxué bú-xiàng-'zhōngxué-yíyàng.                           | College isn't like middle school.                                         |
| 9. Zǎofàn-gēn-wǎnfàn bù-yí-yàng.                               | Breakfast is different from dinner.                                       |
| 10. 'Rìběn-zì gēn-'Zhōngguo-zì yǒude-yíyàng yǒude-'bù-yí-yàng. | Some Japanese and Chinese characters are the same and some are different. |

Pattern 17.2. Similarity and Disparity (Note 3 below)

N <sub>1</sub>	<u>gēn</u>	N <sub>2</sub>	<u>yíyàng</u>	V
Noun <sub>1</sub>	'with'	Noun <sub>2</sub>	'alike'	Verb
Tā	gēn	nǐ	yíyàng	yònggōng.
'He is as diligent as you are.'				
Tā	gēn	nǐ	yíyàng	xǐhuan-kàn-shū.
'He likes to read as much as you do.'				

- |                                                                       |                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Wáng-Tàitai xiàng-Wáng-Xiānsheng yíyàng-yònggōng.                  | Mrs. Wang as as hard-working as Mr. Wang.                                         |
| 2. Niàn-Zhōngguo-shū gēn-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì yíyàng-nán.                  | Reading Chinese is as hard as writing Chinese.                                    |
| 3. Zhèige-fàn gēn-wó-mǔqīn-zuòde yíyàng-hǎo-chī.                      | This food is as delicious as my mother's.                                         |
| 4. Húnánde-shānshuǐ gēn-Húběide yíyàng-hǎo-kàn.                       | The scenery in Hunan is as beautiful as that in Hupei.                            |
| 5. Gāo-'Xiáojie-xiě-de-zì gēn-Gāo-'Xiānsheng-xiě-de-zì yíyàng-hǎo-ma? | Are the characters written by Miss Gao as nice as the characters done by Mr. Gao? |

- |                                                                     |                                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6. 'Zhèige-chá-bēi gēn-'nèige-yí-yàng-dà.                           | This teacup is as big as that one.                                      |
| 7. Níde-zìdiǎn gēn-wǒde-yíyàng-xiǎo.                                | Your dictionary is as small as mine.                                    |
| 8. 'Wáng-Xiǎojie xiàng-ta-mǔ-qín yíyàng-piàoliang.                  | Miss King is as attractive as her mother.                               |
| 9. Tā-shuōde-Zhōngguó-huà xiàng-'Zhōngguó-rén-shuō-de yíyàng-hǎo.   | The Chinese that he speaks is as good as that spoken by a Chinese.      |
| 10. Tā-niàn-shū xiàng-nǐ-niàn-shū yíyàng-hǎo.                       | He studies as well as you do.                                           |
| 11. Húběi bù-gēn-Shāndong yí-yàng-dà-ma?                            | Isn't Hupeh as large as Shantung?                                       |
| 12. Diànchē bú-xiàng-gōnggòng-qìchē yíyàng-kuài.                    | Streetcars aren't as fast as buses.                                     |
| 13. 'Wǒde-qián bú-xiàng-'nǐde-qián yíyàng-duō.                      | I don't have as much money as you do.                                   |
| 14. 'Wáng-Tàitai-huà-de-huàr xiàng-'Qián-Tàitai-huà-de yí-yàng-hǎo. | The paintings done by Mrs. Wang are as good as those done by Mrs. Qian. |
| 15. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng bú-xiàng-'Zhāng-Xiānsheng yíyàng-cōngmíng.      | Mr. King is not as intelligent as Mr. Johnson.                          |
| 16. 'Zhōngguó-rén gēn-'wàiguó-rén yíyàng-xǐhuan-wár.                | Chinese like to have fun as much as foreigners do.                      |
| 17. Wǒ-xiàng-tā-yíyàng xīwang-dào-'Zhōngguó-qu.                     | I'm as eager as he is to go to China.                                   |
| 18. 'Qián-Xiānsheng bú-xiàng-'Gāo-Xiānsheng yíyàng-xǐhuan-lǚxíng.   | Mr. Qian does not like to travel as much as Mr. Gao does.               |
| 19. 'Máo-Xiānsheng xiàng-'Gāo-Xiānsheng yíyàng-xǐhuan-kàn-shū.      | Mr. Mao likes to read as much as Mr. Gao does.                          |
| 20. Wǒ-gēn-ta-yíyàng xīwang-dào-'Zhōngguó-qu-niàn-shū.              | I'm as eager as he is to go to China to study.                          |

## Pattern 17.3. Similarity and Disparity (Note 4 below)

N <sub>1</sub>	yǒu/xiàng	N <sub>2</sub>	nènmo	V
Noun <sub>1</sub>	'have'/'like'	Noun <sub>2</sub>	'as'	Verb
Wǒ	yǒu	tā	nènmo	gāo.
'I'm as tall as he is.'				
Wǒ	yǒu	tā	nènmo	xǐhuan-kàn-shū.
'I like to read as much as he does.'				

1. Wáng-Tàitai yǒu-Wáng-'Xiānsheng-nènmo-cōngmíng.

Mrs. King is as smart as Mr. King.
2. 'Nèizhāng-dìtú méi-yǒu-zhèizhāng-zhènmo-hǎo.

That map isn't as good as this one.
3. Zuò-chuán méi-yǒu-zuò-fēijī-nènmo-kuài.

Going by boat isn't as fast as going by plane.
4. 'Qián-Xiānsheng-xiě-de-zì méi-yǒu-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-xiě-de-nènmo-hǎo.

The characters that Mr. Qian writes aren't as nice as those written by Mr. Gao.
5. 'Zhèiběn-zìdiǎn méi-yǒu-'nèiběn-nènmo-hǎo.

This dictionary isn't as good as that one.
6. 'Nèiběn-shū méi-yǒu-'zhèiběn-shū-zhènmo-róngyí.

That book isn't as easy as this one.
7. 'Qián-Xiǎojie méi-yǒu-'Wáng-Xiǎojie-nènmo-piàoliang.

Miss Qian is not as attractive as Miss Wang.
8. Wǒ-dìdi xiàng-'Bái-Xiānsheng-nènmo-yònggōng.

My younger brother works as hard as Mr. Bai.
9. 'Zhèrde-rén méi-yǒu-'nèrde-nènmo-duō.

There aren't as many people here as there are there.
10. 'Niàn-Zhōngguo-zì méi-yǒu-'xiě-Zhōngguo-zì-nènmo-nán.

Reading Chinese characters isn't as hard as writing them.
11. Wǒ-bú-xiàng-nǐ nènmo-xīwang-dào-'wàiguó-qù.

I'm not as eager as you are to go abroad.
12. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng méi-yǒu-'Bái-Xiānsheng nènmo-xǐhuan-chī-Zhōngguo-fàn.

Mr. King does not like to eat Chinese food as much as Mr. White does.
13. Wǒ-xiàng-nǐ-nènmo-xǐhuan-lǚxíng.

I like to travel as much as you do.
14. Gāo-Tàitai bú-xiàng-Gāo-'Xiānsheng-nènmo-xīwang Měiyīng-dào-'wàiguó-qu-niàn-shū.

Mrs. Gao is not as eager as Mr. Gao for Meiying to go abroad to study.
15. Wǒ-bú-xiàng-nǐ nènmo-xīwang-jiéhūn.

I'm not as eager as you are to get married.

Pattern 17.4. Similarity and Disparity (Note 5 below)

S	V <sub>1</sub>	O <sub>1</sub>	V <sub>1</sub>	-de	<u>gēn</u>	O <sub>2</sub>	<u>yíyàng</u>	SV
Subject	Verb <sub>1</sub>	Object <sub>1</sub>	Verb <sub>1</sub>	-de	'with'	Object <sub>2</sub>	'equally'	Stative Verb
Nǐ	niàn	shū	niàn	-de	gēn	tā	yíyàng	hǎo.
'You study as well as he does.'								
1.	Tā-xiǎng-de	gēn-nǐ-yíyàng	kuài.	He thinks as fast as you do.				

- |                                                              |                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| 2. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu shuō-de-gēn-<br>'Zhōngguó-rén yíyàng-hǎo.   | Professor Wanamaker speaks as<br>well as a Chinese. |
| 3. Tā-niàn-shū niànde-gēn-nǐ-<br>yíyàng-hǎo.                 | He studies as well as you do.                       |
| 4. Tā-zǒu-lù gēn-nǐ-yíyàng-kuài.                             | He walks as fast as you do.                         |
| 5. Tā-chī-fàn gēn-nǐ-yíyàng-duō.                             | He eats as much as you do.                          |
| 6. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-mǎi-shū mǎi-<br>de-gēn-wǒ-yíyàng-duō.      | Mr. Gao buys as many books as<br>I do.              |
| 7. Tā-kǎoshì-kǎo-de xiàng-wǒ-<br>yíyàng-máng.                | He's as busy with exams as I<br>am.                 |
| 8. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie-huà-shānshuǐ<br>huà-de xiàng-'tā-yíyàng-hǎo. | Miss Gao paints landscapes as<br>well as he does.   |
| 9. Tā-huá-quán-huá-de gēn-nǐ-yí-<br>yàng-hǎo.                | He plays 'guess-fingers' as well<br>as you do.      |
| 10. Tā-shuō-huà gēn-nǐ-yíyàng-<br>màn.                       | He talks as slowly as you do.                       |

## Pattern 17.5. Similarity and Disparity (Note 6 below)

S	V <sub>1</sub>	O <sub>1</sub>	V <sub>2</sub>	-de	yǒu/xiàng	O <sub>2</sub>	nènmo	SV
Subject	Verb <sub>1</sub>	Object <sub>1</sub>	Verb <sub>2</sub>	-de	'have'/'like'	Object <sub>2</sub>	'as'	Stative Verb
Nǐ	niàn	shū	niàn	-de	yǒu	tā	nènmo	hǎo.
'You study as well as he does.'								

- |                                                                                    |                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-xiě-zì-xiě-<br>de méi-yóu-nǐ-zhènmo-hǎo.                       | Mr. Johnson does not write<br>characters as well as you do.                    |
| 2. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng shuō-'Zhōng-<br>guó-huà-shuō-de xiàng-'nǐ-<br>zhènmo-hǎo.       | Mr. King speaks Chinese as well<br>as you do.                                  |
| 3. Tā-kǎoshì-kǎo-de méi-'nǐ-<br>zhènmo-máng.                                       | He isn't as busy with exams as<br>you are.                                     |
| 4. Tā-chī-de xiàng-nǐ-zhènmo-<br>kuài.                                             | He eats as fast as you do.                                                     |
| 5. 'Máo-Xiānsheng rènshi-zì-<br>rènshide méi-'nǐ-zhènmo-duō.                       | Mr. Mao does not know as many<br>characters as you do.                         |
| 6. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-kàn-shū xiàng-<br>'Gāo-Xiānsheng-nènmo-duō.                      | Mr. Mao reads as many books as<br>Mr. Gao does.                                |
| 7. 'Qián-Xiānsheng-shuō-Yīng-<br>wén shuō-de-xiàng-'Yīngguó-<br>rén-nènmo-hǎo.     | Mr. Qian speaks English as well<br>as an Englishman.                           |
| 8. Sān-Yǒu-Shūdiàn-mài-shū-mài-<br>de xiàng-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-<br>shūdiàn-nènmo-duō. | The Three Friends Bookstore<br>sells as many books as Mr.<br>Wang's bookstore. |

9. Tā-jìe-shū-jìe-de méi-yǒu-  
'nǐ-zhènmo-duō.

He doesn't borrow as many  
books as you do.
10. Tā-tīng-lùyīn bú-xiàng-'nǐ-  
zhènmo-duō.

He doesn't listen to recordings  
as much as you do.

Pattern 17.6. Qualification of Stative Verbs (Note 10 below)

S	SV	-de	A*	
Subject	Stative Verb	-de	A*	
Tā	hǎo	-de	hěn.	'He's very good.'
Tā	hǎo	-de	bùdéliǎo.	'He's awfully good.'
Tā	piàoliang	-de	rén-dōu-xǐhuan-ta.	'She's so attractive every- one likes her.'

1. Shānshang-nèisuǒr-fángzi dade-hěn.	That house on the hill is huge.
2. Nèiwèi-xiǎojie piàoliangde- bùdéliǎo.	That girl is awfully attractive.
3. Nǚyue-rén duōde-bùdéliǎo.	New York has a terrific number of people.
4. Zhèige-chá hǎo-hēde-bùdé- liǎo.	This tea is awfully good.
5. Wǒ-mángde méi-jīhui-kàn- diànyǐngr.	I'm so busy I don't have time to see movies.
6. Nèige-xiǎojie-piàoliangde hěn- duō-rén xiǎng-gēn-ta-jiēhūn.	That young lady is so pretty that she has lots of suitors.
7. 'Hángzhou-shānshuǐ hǎo-kànde- méi-fázì-shuō.	The scenery at Hangchow is in- describably beautiful.
8. Nèige-xuésheng-'tài-bèn, hence-lán-'yíge-zì-dōu-bù- rènshi.	That student is very stupid, so much so that he doesn't recog- nize a single character.
9. Nèige-dìfang-piàoliangde chà- buduō-'suóyǒude-rén 'dōu- xiǎng-qù-ner-qù-lǚxíng.	That place is so beautiful that almost everyone wants to make a trip there.
10. Nèige-fángzi-'tài-dà, dàde- méi-rén-yào-mǎi.	That house is too big, so much so that no one wants to buy it.

\* Where A is hěn 'very,' bùdéliǎo 'extremely,' or else a sentence.



## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 32 sentences (Note 2)

(The asterisks here and in Table II below indicate that only items in the same row may be taken together — zhèrde-tiānqi with nèrde-tiānqi, Sānfánshì with Niǔyue, etc.)

*			*		
zhèrde-tiānqi	—	xiàng	nèrde-tiānqi	yíyàng	—
Sānfánshì	bu	gēn	Niǔyue		ma
dàxué			zhōngxué		
gāngbǐ			máobǐ		

II: 32 sentences (Note 3)

*			*		
zhèiběn-shū	—	xiàng	nèiběn-shū	yíyàng	—
wǒde-bǐ	bu	gēn	nǐde-bǐ		hǎo
Sūzhou			Hángzhou		
zhèige-yánse			nèige-yánse		

III: 72 sentences (Note 4)

Húnán	(méi) yǒu	Húběi	zhènmo	yuǎn
	(bú) xiàng	Dōngběi	zènmo	dà
			nènmo	hǎo

IV: 72 sentences (Note 5)

(The asterisks here and in Table V below indicate that only items from the same row may be taken together. Also, either one of the asterisked columns may be omitted altogether.)

	*		*			
wǒ	shuō-huà	shuō-de	xiàng	tā	yíyàng	——
	niàn-shū	niàn-de	gēn			hǎo
	xiě-zì	xiě-de				kuài
	zuò-shì	zuò-de				màn

V: 64 sentences (Note 6)

	*		*			
wǒ	shuō-huà	shuō-de	(méi) yǒu	tā	zhènmo	hǎo
	xiě-zì	xiě-de	(bú) xiàng		nènmo	kuài



PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

I. Contrast of Finals in Two-Syllable Pairs

This exercise consists of pairs of expressions which are distinguished in meaning solely by differences in tone on the second syllable. Digits represent tone sequences; 10, for example, means first tone followed by neutral tone.

1 0 vs. 1 1-1 4	1 1 vs. 1 0-1 4	1 2 vs. 1 0-1 4
dōngxī, dōng-xī	dōng-xī, dōngxī	fādá, fāde
fāde, fādá	sānshī, sānshí	sānshí, sānshī
xiāzi, xiāzǐ	fēnfā, fēnfǎ	gāi-mái, gāi-mǎi
tāde, tā-dà	shān-dōng, shān-dòng	gōng-rén, gōng-rèn

1 3 vs. 1 0-1 3	1 4 vs. 1 0-1 3
xiāzǐ, xiāzi	tā-dà, tāde
fēnfǎ, fēnfā	shān-dòng, shān-dōng
gāi-mǎi, gāi-mái	gōng-rèn, gōng-rén
gāi-mǎi, gāi-mài	gāi-mài, gāi-mǎi

2 0 vs. 2 1-2 4	2 1 vs. 2 0-2 4	2 2 vs. 2 0-2 4
méimao, méi-māo	méi-māo, méimao	méi-ná, méi-ne
méi-ne, méi-ná	méi-qiān, méi-qián	méi-qián, méi-qiān
xínglǐ, xíng-lǐ	qígān, qígǎn	méi-lí, méi-lǐ
yíge, yígè	báihuā, báihuà	méi-qián, méi-qiàn

2 3 vs. 2 0-2 4	2 4 vs. 2 0-2 3
xíng-lǐ, xínglǐ	yígè, yíge
qígǎn, qígān	báihuà, báihuā
méi-lǐ, méi-lí	méi-qiàn, méi-qián
qiánjǐn, qiánjìn	qiánjìn, qiánjǐn

30 vs. 31-34

huǒji, huǒjī

mǎi-ma, mǎi-má

hǎode, hǎo-dà

31 vs. 30-34

huǒjī, huǒji

běifāng, běi-fáng

wǔ-yī, wǔyì

32 vs. 30-34

mǎi-má, mǎi-ma

běi-fáng, běifāng

wǔshí, wǔshì

(33 vs. 30-34)

34 vs. 30-33

hǎo-dà, hǎode

wǔyì, wǔ-yī

wǔshì, wǔshí

40 vs. 41-44

dà-ma, dà-mā

dàode, dàodé

kuàide, kuài-dǎ

kuàile, kuàilè

41 vs. 40-44

dà-mā, dà-ma

yì-tīng, yì-tíng

huìzhāng, huìzhǎng

huì-fēi, huì-fèi

42 vs. 40-44

dàodé, dàode

yì-tíng, yì-tīng

xià-xué, xià-xuě

xìngmíng, xìngmìng

43 vs. 40-44

kuài-dǎ, kuàide

huìzhǎng, huìzhāng

xià-xuě, xià-xué

kuài-mǎi, kuài-mài

44 vs. 40-43

kuàilè, kuàile

huì-fèi, huì-fēi

xìngmìng, xìngmíng

kuài-mǎi, kuài-mài

## II. Tonal Shifts in Three-Syllable Expressions

### A. Changes of Third Tone to Second Tone

If two third-tone syllables occur together, the first changes to second tone. If three third-tone syllables occur together, the first two change to second tone. These changes are shown in our transcription.

330 &gt; 230

nǐ mǔqín &gt; ní-mǔqín

wǒ xǐhuan &gt; wó-xǐhuan

qǐng wǔge &gt; qíng-wǔge

mǎi jiǔge &gt; mái-jiǔge

331 &gt; 231

hěn jiǎndān &gt; hén-jiǎndān

yě hǎo chí &gt; yé-hǎo-chí

wǒ mǎi shū &gt; wó-mǎi-shū

yě yǒu chē &gt; yé-yǒu-chē

## 3 3 2 &gt; 2 3 2

wǒ lǚxíng > wó-lǚxíng  
 hěn yǒu míng > hén-yǒu-míng  
 zhǐ yǒu qián > zhí-yǒu-qián  
 yě děi lái > yé-děi-lái

## 3 3 3 &gt; 2 2 3

wǒ yě yǒu > wó-yé-yǒu  
 nǐ mǎi bǐ > ní-mái-bǐ  
 yě hěn hǎo > yé-hén-hǎo  
 mǎi wǔběn > mái-wúběn

## 3 3 4 &gt; 2 3 4

yě kǎoshì > yé-kǎoshì  
 wǒ xiě zì > wó-xiě-zì  
 yě hǎokàn > yé-hǎokàn  
 wǔlǐ lù > wúlǐ-lù

## B. Change of Second Tone to First Tone

If a second-tone syllable with light stress occurs as the middle of three tonal syllables and follows a first or second tone, it changes to a first tone when spoken at rapid conversational speed. Since this change does not always take place, however, we do not show it in our writing.

## 1 2 1 &gt; 1 1 1

Zhōngwén-shū  
 dōu-méi-shuō  
 tā-néng-fēi  
 tā-cháng-chī

## 1 2 2 &gt; 1 1 2

sānmáo-qián  
 tā-méi-yíng  
 dōu-nán-xué  
 sānniánjí

## 1 2 3 &gt; 1 1 3

dōu-méi-mǎi  
 jiānglái-xiě  
 tā-lái-zhǎo  
 xīnán-yǒu

## 1 2 4 &gt; 1 1 4

sāntiáo-lù  
 tā-hái-zuò  
 dōu-méi-kàn  
 Sānfánshì

## 2 2 1 &gt; 2 1 1

shéi-néng-shuō  
 nín-hái-chī  
 shéi-méi-hē  
 cái-néng-jiāo

## 2 2 2 &gt; 2 1 2

xué-wénxué  
 hái-méi-lái  
 cóng-Húnán  
 bié-ná-qián

## 2 2 3 &gt; 2 1 3

yuánlái-yǒu  
 hái-nán-xiě  
 suírán-yǒu  
 cái-lái-mǎi

## 2 2 4 &gt; 2 1 4

Húnán-huà  
 lái-xuéxiào  
 shéi-tán-huà  
 bié-lái-kàn

## C. Change of Third Tone to First Tone

If a third-tone syllable with light stress occurs in the middle of a three-syllable expression after a first or second tone and before another third tone, it changes to a first tone in rapid speech. (Note that this change is a combination of the two changes mentioned in A and B.) We show in our transcription only the A change, since the B changes do not always occur.

1 3 3 &gt; 1 2 3 &gt; 1 1 3

2 3 3 &gt; 2 2 3 &gt; 2 1 3

tā yě yǒu &gt; tā-yé-yǒu

nín děi zǒu &gt; nín-déi-zǒu

dōu mǎi bǐ &gt; dōu-mái-bǐ

shéi xiǎng mǎi &gt; shéi-xiǎng-mǎi

shū yě hǎo &gt; shū-yé-hǎo

méi yǒu bǐ &gt; méi-yǒu-bǐ

tā hěn lǎo &gt; tā-hén-lǎo

ná wǔběn &gt; ná-wúběn

## EXPANSION DRILLS

## I

tā

gēn-tā

gēn-tā-yíyàng

gēn-tā-yíyàng-hǎo

bù-gēn-tā-yíyàng-hǎo

nǐ-bù-gēn-tā-yíyàng-hǎo

nǐ-bù-gēn-tā-yíyàng-hǎo-ma

## II

kuài

nènmo-kuài

chīde-nènmo-kuài

chīde-yóu-nǐ-nènmo-kuài

tā-chīde-yóu-nǐ-nènmo-kuài

tā-chīde méi-yóu-nǐ-nènmo-kuài

tā-chī-fàn-chīde méi-yóu-nǐ-nènmo-kuài

## III

yíyàng

yíyàng-màn

xiàng-tā-yíyàng-màn

nǐ-xiàng-tā-yíyàng-màn

nǐ-zuò-shì xiàng-tā-yíyàng-màn

nǐ-zuò-shì-zuòde xiàng-tā-yíyàng-màn

# SENTENCE CONVERSION

The Chinese sentences below are converted step by step into quite different sentences.

I. From: Mrs. Gao is very fond of visiting foreign friends.

To: Professor Wanamaker can't read Chinese books.

1. 'Gāo-Tàitai-hén-xǐhuan bàifang-wàiguó-péngyou.
2. 'Wàn-Tàitai-hén-xǐhuan bàifang-wàiguó-péngyou.
3. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu-hén-xǐhuan bàifang-wàiguó-péngyou.
4. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu-hén-xǐhuan kàn-wàiguó-péngyou.
5. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu-bù-xǐhuan kàn-'wàiguó-péngyou.
6. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu-bù-xǐhuan kàn-'wàiguó-shū.
7. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu-bù-xǐhuan kàn-'Zhōngwén-shū.
8. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu bú-huì-kàn-'Zhōngwén-shū.

II. From: I'm also buying a five-dollar pen tomorrow.

To: He reads only ten minutes a day.

1. Wǒ-míngtiān yé-mái-wǔkuài-qiándē-bǐ.
2. Wǒ-míngtiān yé-mái-wǔfēn-qiándē-bǐ.
3. Wǒ-míngtiān yé-mái-wǔfēn-qiándē-shū.
4. Wǒ-míngtiān jiù-mái-wǔfēn-qiándē-shū.
5. Tā-míngtiān jiù-mái-wǔfēn-qiándē-shū.
6. Tā-měitiān jiù-mái-wǔfēn-qiándē-shū.
7. Tā-měitiān jiù-kàn-wǔfēn-zhōngde-shū.
8. Tā-měitiān jiù-kàn-shífēn-zhōngde-shū.

# ANSWERING QUESTIONS

1. Qián-Xiānsheng hēle-'sānbēi-chá. Qián-Tàitai hēle-'sìbēi-chá. Tāmen-yígòng-hēle-'jǐbēi-chá?
2. Gāo-Xiānsheng shuō-'Hángzhou-huà. Gāo-Tàitai Gāo-Xiáojie dōu-shuō-'Sūzhou-huà. Shuō-'Hángzhou-huà-de-rén-duō háishì-shuō-'Sūzhōu-huà-de-rén-duō?
3. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-huá-quán yíngle-liùcì. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng yíngle-sāncì. 'Shéi-yíng-le?
4. 'Máo-Xiānsheng qùguó-Hángzhou-wǔcì. 'Bái-Xiānsheng qùguó-sìcì. 'Shéi-qùde-duō?

5. Wáng-Xiānsheng hē-Méiguī-Lù. Wáng-'Tàitai-hē-chā. 'Shéi-hē-jiǔ?
6. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie huàle-'wǔzhāng-shānshuǐ-huà. 'Wàn-Xiǎojie huà-le-'liǎngzhāng. Huà-wǔzhāng-de-shi-shéi?
7. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng jiēhūn-wǔnián-le. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng jiēhūn-qīnián-le. Shéi-'xiān-jiēhūn?
8. Wǒ-qùguo-Xī-Hú-liǎngcì. Tā-qùguo-Xī-Hú-yí cì. Tā-qùguo-'jǐ cì?
9. Wǒ-líkai-Hángzhou shíwǔnián. Tā-líkai-Hángzhou shí'èrnián. Shéi-'xiān-líkai-Hángzhou?
10. Tā-xǐhuan-nuǎnhuode-tiānqi. Wó-xǐhuan-bù-nuǎnhuode-tiānqi. 'Shéi-xǐhuan-nuǎnhuode-tiānqi?

## NOTES

1. The expression yǒu yìdiǎr—literally 'have a little'—is used in the mean-'somewhat' before verbs:

Wǒ-zhèi-jǐtiān yǒu-yìdiǎr-máng. 'I've been somewhat busy these few days.'

Tā-yǒu-yìdiǎr xiàng-ta-mǔqīn. 'He somewhat resembles his mother.'

2. The expression yíyàng—literally 'one kind'—as a verb means 'be alike,' 'be like,' 'similar to':

Zhèi-liángběn-shū yíyàng. 'These two books are alike.'

Zhèi-liángběn-shū bù-yíyàng. 'These two books are not alike.' or 'These two books are different.'

If the things being compared are mentioned separately, they are connected by gēn 'with' or xiàng 'resemble':

Wǒde-bǐ gēn-tāde-bǐ yíyàng.

or

Wǒde-bǐ xiàng-tāde-bǐ yíyàng.

} 'My pen is like his pen.'

3. Yíyàng used adverbially before a verb means 'equally' or 'as':

Wǒde-bǐ gēn-tāde-bǐ yíyàng-hǎo. or

Wǒde-bǐ xiàng-tāde-bǐ yíyàng-hǎo.

'My pen is as good as his.' [lit. 'My pen and his pen are equally good.']

In this construction, bù 'not' and other adverbial modifiers are placed before either gēn 'with, and' or xiàng 'resemble':

Wǒde-bǐ bù-gēn-tāde-bǐ yíyàng-hǎo. or

Wǒde-bǐ bù-xiàng-tāde-bǐ yíyàng-hǎo.

'My pen isn't as good as his pen.'

In sentences with gēn 'with, and' it is possible also to put an adverbial modifier before yíyàng:

Wǒde-bǐ gēn-tāde-bǐ bù-yíyàng-hǎo. 'My pen isn't as good as his pen.'

A few verbs other than stative verbs (e.g. hǎo 'good') are used in this construction. Note xǐhuan in the following example:

Wǒ-gēn-nǐ yíyàng-xǐhuan-kàn-diànyǐngr. 'I like to see movies as much as you do.' [lit. 'I and you equally like to see movies.']

4. An alternative way of expressing similarity and disparity is to use yǒu 'have' or xiàng 'resemble' in the coverb position before a verb which is itself preceded by any of the adverbs nènmo, zhènmo, or zènmo 'so':

Nǐ-yǒu-tā-nènmo-hǎo.

or

Nǐ-xiàng-tā-nènmo-hǎo.

} 'You are as good as he is.'

Tā-yǒu-nǐ-zhènmo-hǎo.

or

Tā-xiàng-nǐ-zhènmo-hǎo.

} 'He is as good as you are.'

The negative forms of these sentences use méi before yǒu and bú before xiàng:

Nǐ-méi-yǒu-tā-nènmo-hǎo.

or

Nǐ-bú-xiàng-tā-nènmo-hǎo.

} 'You're not as good as he is.'

In sentences containing yǒu the adverbs nènmo, zhènmo, and zènmo can be omitted:

Nǐ-méi-yǒu-tā-nènmo-hǎo.

or

Nǐ-méi-yǒu-tā-hǎo.

} 'You're not as good as he is.'

5. The constructions described in Note 3 are also used in sentences comparing how an action is performed:

Nǐ-xiě-zì xiěde-gēn-tā-yíyàng-hǎo. 'You write as well as he does.'

In such sentences, xiě-zì and xiěde are optional:

Nǐ-xiěde gēn-tā-yíyàng-hǎo.

or

Nǐ-xiě-zì gēn-tā-yíyàng-hǎo.

} 'You write as well as he does.'

6. The constructions discussed in Note 4 are also used in sentences comparing how an action is performed:

Nǐ-xiě-zì xiěde-méi-yǒu-tā-nènmo-hǎo. 'You don't write as well as he does.'

Here also, xiě-zì and xiěde are optional.

7. The verb zuò 'do' is used as a postverb in kànzuo 'regard as,' bǐzuò 'rank as, equate with':

Wó-bǎ-tā kànzuo-wǒde-péngyou. 'I regarded him as my friend.'

Wó-bǎ èr-zì kànzuo-sān-zì. 'I took the character two to be the character three.'

Wó-bǎ-nèige-zhōngxuéde-xuésheng bǐzuò-dàxuéde-xuésheng. 'I rank that high-school student as a college student.'



8. The Chinese tendency to use two-syllable expressions as full forms and monosyllables as combining forms is illustrated by the contrast of bēi and bēizi. The latter is a fully independent word for 'cup':

Zhèige-bēizi-tài-dà-le. 'This cup is too large.'

Bēi is used as a combining nominal form (chá-bēi 'teacup,' xiǎo-bēi 'small cup') as well as a measure (sānbēi-chá 'three cups of tea').

9. The measure xiē is used as a general pluralizing form:

Zhèiběn-shū-shi-wǒde. 'This book is mine.'

Zhèixiē-shū-shi-wǒde. 'These books are mine.'

Xiē is not used if a specific number is mentioned:

Zhèi-sānběn-shū-shi-wǒde. 'These three books are mine.'

Xiē 'few' combines with hǎo 'good' in hǎoxiē 'a good many, a good deal':

Mǎi-yìsuǒr-fángzi yào-hǎoxiē-qián. 'Buying a house requires quite a lot of money.'

Hǎoxiē is often used after yǒu 'have' in the shared-object-subject construction described in Lesson 9 (Note 7, p. 118):

Zuótiān-yǒu-hǎoxiē-xuésheng lái-kǎoshì. 'Yesterday there were quite a few students who came to take the exams.'

Xiē is also used in the combination yǒu-xiē meaning 'some':

Nèige-shūdiàn-mǎi-de-shū, yǒu-xiē-shi-hǎo-de, yǒu-xiē-shi-bù-hǎo-de. '(Of) the books sold by that bookstore, some are good, some are bad.'

10. The most common type of qualifier for a stative verb is a preceding adverb:

hěn-dà 'quite large'

Stative verbs can also be qualified by the suffix de plus a following qualifying expression:

dàde-hěn 'very large'

dàde-bùdéliǎo 'awfully big'

dàde-méi-rén-yào 'so big that no one wants (it)'

## Lesson 18 REVIEW

### PRONUNCIATION REVIEW

All the possible tonal combinations of three syllables are here illustrated with vocabulary from the first three Units. The digits to the left indicate the tone of the first syllables, those at the top the tones of the second and third syllables. Asterisks indicate expressions which have undergone tonal shifts. (See Lesson 17, Pronunciation Drill II, pp. 288-90, for these and other possible changes in tone.)

	0 0	0 1	0 2	0 3	0 4
1	zhīdaole	xiānsheng-shuō	tāmen-lái	chībuliǎo	shuōde-màn
2	háizide	xuésheng-tīng	róngyi-xué	xuéde-hǎo	fángzi-dà
3	xǐhuan-ma	zěnmō-shuō	xǐhuan-lái	xiěde-hǎo	pǎode-kuài
4	tàitaide	màide-duō	wàngle-ná	niànbuliǎo	kànbujiàn
	1 0	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4
1	gāozhōngde	sānfēn-zhōng	yīngdāng-xué	xīngqīwǔ	fēijiǐ-kuài
2	rén-duō-le	méi-tīngshuō	xué-Zhōngwén	shízhī-bǐ	néng-chī-fàn
3	wǒ-shuōde	wǒ-jiāo-shū	xiě-Yīngwén	mǎi-gāngbǐ	yě-chī-fàn
4	kuài-chī-ba	lùyīnjī	niàn-kēxué	sìzhībǐ	dào-shūdiàn
	2 0	2 1	2 2	2 3	2 4
1	dōu-lái-le	tā-huǐ-jiā	zhēn-nán-xué	gōngyuán-yuǎn	tā-méi-kàn
2	shéi-lái-le	hái-méi-chī	xué-wénxué	méi-qián-mǎi	Húnán-huà
3	wǒ-xuéde	yě-méi-shuō	qǐng-nín-lái	yǒu-qián-mǎi	hěn-nán-niàn
4	tài-róngyi	zuì-nán-shuō	dào-Húnán	zuì-nán-zhǎo	shàng-xuéxiào
	3 0	3 1	3 2	3 3	3 4
1	shū-mǎi-le	zhēn-hǎo-chī	tā-yǒu-qián	gāngbǐ-hǎo*	xiān-mǎi-piào
2	nán-zǒu-ma	shíběn-shū	Húběi-rén	qián-hén-shǎo*	shíjiǔsuì
3	mái-běnzǐ*	hén-hǎo-chī*	jiúbǎi-rén*	wó-yóu-bǐ*	hén-hǎo-kàn*
4	tài-hǎo-le	qù-mǎi-shū	yào-wǔmáo	wàng-béi-guǎi*	zuì-hǎo-kàn

4 0	4 1	4 2
1 dōu-mài-le	tīng-lùyīn	dōu-tài-nán
2 hái-zuò-ma	néng-shàng-shān	shíkuài-qián
3 kǎoshì-le	yě-yònggōng	mǎi-dìtú
4 zuì-dà-de	zì-tài-duō	màipiàoyuán

4 3	4 4
1 shān-tài-xiǎo	tā-zuì-dà
2 rén-tài-shǎo	lí-zhèr-jìn
3 yǒu-sìběn	yě-tài-dà
4 jiè-zìdiǎn	sìwànkuaì

## ANALOGY DRILL

The drills below consist of three parts: (1) a statement, (2) a question, and (3) an answer. In Section A, all three are given; in Section B, only the statement is given. To perform Section B, the teacher says the statement, one student asks an appropriate question on the analogy of those in Section A, and another student makes an appropriate response, again on the foregoing analogy. Examples:

Ta-'bú-xìng-Wáng. 'His name isn't King.'

Ta-bú-xìng-Wáng xìng-shénmo? 'If his name isn't King, what is his name?'

Ta-xìng-Zhāng. 'His name is Johnson.'

Jīntian bú-shi-xīngqīyī. 'Today isn't Monday.'

Jīntian bú-shi-xīngqīyī shi-xīngqījǐ? 'If today isn't Monday what day of the week is it?'

Jīntian shi-xīngqī'èr. 'Today is Tuesday.'

Zhèi-bú-shi-'gāngbǐ. 'This isn't a fountain pen.'

Zhèi-bú-shi-'gāngbǐ shi-shénmo? 'If this isn't a fountain pen what is it?'

Zhèi-shi-'qiānbǐ. 'This is a pencil.'

Wǒ-bú-niàn-shū. 'I don't study.'

Nǐ-bú-niàn-shū zuò-shénmo? 'If you don't study what do you do?'

Wǒ-zuò-shì. 'I work.'

## Section A

1. Wǒ-bù-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn. Nǐ-bù-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn chī-shénmo? Wǒ-chī-'Měiguó-fàn.
2. Zhèi-bú-shi-wǒde-shū. Zhèi-bú-shi-'nǐde-shū shi-'shéide-shū? Shi-'Zhāng-Xiānshengde-shū.

3. Wǒ-bú-huà-huà. Nǐ-bú-huà-huà zuò-shénmo? Wó-xiě-zì.
4. Wǒ-jīntian bù-tīng-lùyīn. Nǐ-bù-tīng-lùyīn zuò-shénmo? Wǒ-niàn-shū.
5. Wǒ-bú-shàng-Hángzhou. Nǐ-bú-shàng-'Hángzhou shàng-nǎr? Wǒ-shàng-Sūzhou.
6. Wǒ-míngtian 'bú-qù-lǚxíng. Nǐ-bù-lǚxíng zuò-shénmo? Kàn-diànyǐng.
7. Wǒ-bù-hē-jiǔ. Nǐ-bù-hē-jiǔ hē-shénmo? Wǒ-hē-chá.
8. Tā-xiě-xìn bú-yòng-máobǐ. Tā-bú-yòng-'máobǐ yòng-shénmo? Tā-yòng-'gāngbǐ.
9. Wǒ-bú-shàng-xuéxiào. Nǐ-bú-shàng-xuéxiào shàng-nǎr? Shàng-túshū-guǎn.
10. 'Qián-Xiānsheng jīnnian-bú-dào-'Měiguó-qu. Tā-bú-dào-'Měiguó dào-nǎr-qu? Tā-dào-'Rìběn-qu.
11. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng 'wúdiǎn-zhōng-bù-lái. Tā-'wúdiǎn-zhōng-bù-lái 'jídìǎn-zhōng-lái? Tā-'liùdiǎn-zhōng-lái.
12. Wó-mǔqīn sìyue-'bù-dào-Měiguó-lái. Tā-'sìyue-bù-lái 'shénmo-shíhou-lái? Tā-'báyue-lái.
13. 'Qián-Xiānsheng jīnnian-bú-dào-Yīngguó-qu. Tā-jīnnian bú-dào-'Yīngguó-qu dào-nǎr-qu? Tā-dào-Měiguó-qu.
14. Wǒ-jīntian-bù-mǎi-shū-qu. Nǐ-jīntian-bù-mǎi-shū mǎi-shénmo? Wó-mǎi-mòshuǐ-qu.
15. Wǒ-bú-zài-'Yuǎndōng-Dàxué-niàn-shū. Nǐ-bú-zài-'Yuǎndōng-Dàxué-niàn-shū zài-'nǎr-niàn-shū? Wǒ-zài-'zhōngxué-niàn-shū.
16. Wǒ-fùqīn bù-xǐhuan-chī-'Zhōngguó-fàn. Tā-bù-xǐhuan chī-'Zhōngguó-fàn xǐhuan-chī-'shénmo-fàn? Tā-xǐhuan-chī-'Měiguó-fàn.
17. Tā-bú-xiàng-ta-mǔqīn. Tā-bú-xiàng-ta-mǔqīn xiàng-shéi? Tā-xiàng-tā-fùqīn.
18. Wǒ-'bù-xiáng-mái-biǎo. Nǐ-bù-mái-biǎo mǎi-shénmo? Wó-xiáng-mǎi-shū.
19. Tā-bú-zài-'zhōngxué-jiāo-shū. Tā-bú-zài-'zhōngxué-jiāo-shū zài-'nǎr-jiāo-shū? Tā-zài-'xiǎoxué-jiāo-shū.
20. 'Wǒmen-bù-huānying-ta. 'Nǐmen-bù-huānying-ta 'shéi-huānying-ta? 'Méi-rén-huānying-ta.
21. Wǒ-jīntian-bú-shàng-kè. Nǐ-bú-shàng-kè zuò-shénmo? Wǒ-tīng-lùyīn.

22. Wǒ-bú-zài-sìniánjí. Nǐ-bú-zài-'sìniánjí zài-'jǐniánjí? Wǒ-zài-'sān-niánjí.
23. Wǒ-duì-'kēxué-méi-yǒu-xìngqu. Nǐ-duì-'kēxué-méi-yǒu-xìngqu duì-'shénmo-yǒu-xìngqu? Wǒ-duì-'yǔyánxué-yǒu-xìngqu.
24. Wǒ-bù-xǐhuan 'zhèige-fāngfǎ. Nǐ-bù-xǐhuan 'zhèige-fāngfǎ xǐhuan-'něi-ge-fāngfǎ? Wó-xǐhuan-'nèige-fāngfǎ.
25. Wǒ-bù-shífēn-xǐhuan chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn. Nǐ-bù-xǐhuan chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn xǐhuan-chī-'shénmo-fàn? Wó-xǐhuan chī-'Rìběn-fàn.
26. Wǒ-bú-yòng-'Zhōngwén-xiě-xìn. Nǐ-bú-yòng-'Zhōngwén-xiě-xìn yòng-'shénmo-wén-xiě-xìn? Wǒ-yòng-'Yīngwén-xiě-xìn.
27. Nèige-háizi 'zuì-bù-xǐhuan-niàn-shū. Tā-bù-xǐhuan-niàn-shū xǐhuan-zuò-shénmo? Tā-xǐhuan-wár.
28. Wǒmen-jīntian niànbuluán-dì-'sānkè. Nǐmen-niànbuluán-dì-'sānkè niàndewán-dì-jǐkè? Wǒmen-niàndewán-dì-'èrkè.
29. Wǒ-jīntian-bù-xiǎng-tīng 'liǎngge-zhōngtóude-lùyīn. Nǐ-bù-xiǎng-tīng 'liǎngge-zhōngtóude-lùyīn xiǎng-tīng-'jǐge-zhōngtóude-lùyīn? Wó-xiǎng-tīng 'yíge-zhōngtóude-lùyīn.
30. Tā-méi-bǎ-zìdiǎn-géi-wo. Tā-méi-ba-'zìdiǎn-géi-ni bǎ-'shénmo-géi-ni-le? Tā-bǎ-'dìtú-géi-wo-le.
31. 'Zhèige-fázi bù-hǎo. 'Zhèige-fázi-bù-hǎo 'shénmo-fázi-hǎo? 'Méi-you-hǎo-fázi.
32. Wó-géi-ni-'jièshao-de-nèiwèi-péngyou bú-shi-jiàoshòu. Tā-bú-shi-'jiàoshòu shi-shénmo? Tā-shi-'zhōngxué-jiàoyuán.
33. Bié-bǎ-zhèixiě-dōngxi nájìn-fángzi-qu. Bù-nájìn-fángzi-qu nàdào-nǎr-qu? Nàdào-shūdiàn-qu.
34. Bú-shi-'wǒ-gàosu-xiānsheng-de. Bú-shi-'nǐ-gàosu-xiānsheng-de shi-shéi-gàosu-xiānsheng-de? Shi-'tā-gàosu-xiānsheng-de.
35. Tā-bú-shi-zài-'Zhōngguo-zhǎng-dà-de. Tā-bú-shi-zài-'Zhōngguo-zhǎng-dà-de shi-zài-'nár-zhǎng-dà-de? Tā-shi-zài-'Měiguó-zhǎng-dà-de.
36. Jīntian-bú-shi-'wǔhào. Jīntian-bú-shi-'wǔhào shi-'jǐhào? Jīntian-shi-'liùhào.
37. Xī-Shān bú-zài-xīnánbiar. Xī-Shān bú-zài-xīnánbiar zài-něibiar? Xī-Shān-zài-xīběibiar.
38. Wǒmen-bú-zài-'zhèr-xià-chē. Wǒmen-bú-zài-'zhèr-xià-chē zài-'nǎr-xià-chē? Wǒmen-zài-gōngyuán-mén-kǒur-xià-chē.
39. Wǒmen-bú-mài 'hóng-mòshuǐ. Nǐmen-bú-mài 'hóng-mòshuǐ mài-'shénmo-yánse-mòshuǐ? Wǒmen-jiù-mài-'hēi-mòshuǐ, 'lǎn-mòshuǐ.

40. Wǒ-bú-shì-děng-Gāo-Xiǎojie. Nǐ-bú-shì-děng-Gāo-Xiǎojie děng-shéi?  
Wó-děng-Gāo-Xiānsheng.
41. Tā-bú-shì-'qùnian-jiēhūn-de. Tā-bú-shì-'qùnian-jiēhūn-de shì-'shénmo-shíhou-jiēhūn-de? Tā-shì-'jīnnian-jiēhūn-de.
42. Tiānqi-bù-hǎode-shíhou wǒ-bú-dào-gōngyuán-qu. Nǐ-bú-dào-gōngyuán-qu dào-nǎr-qu? Wǒ-'bú-dào-nǎr-qu.
43. Tā-huá-quán bú-shì-yíngle-'sāncì. Tā-bú-shì-yíngle-'sāncì yíngle-'jǐcì? Tā-yíngle-'liǎngcì.
44. Chī-de-dōngxī bú-shì-'wó-mǎi-de. Bú-shì-'ní-mǎi-de shì-'shéi-mǎi-de? Shì-'tā-mǎi-de.
45. 'Liǎngge-bēnzi-bú-gòu. 'Liǎngge-bēnzi-bú-gòu 'jǐge-bēnzi-gòu-ne?  
'Sānge-bēnzi-cái-gòu-ne.

### Section B

1. Wǒ-jīntian bú-dào-túshūguǎn-qu.
2. Wǒ-méi-yǒu-yìbǎikuài-qián.
3. Wǒ-bù-gěi-ta-qián.
4. Tā-yuánlái bù-xǐhuan-yánjiu-kēxué.
5. Wǒ-jiānglái bú-niàn-dàxué.
6. Tā-bù-xǐhuan-jiāo-shū.
7. Wǒ-jīntian bù-xiǎng-chūqu.
8. Wǒ-bù-xǐhuan zhùzai-shānshang.
9. Tā-bù-xǐhuan kāi-diànchē.
10. Wǒ-bù-xiáng-mǎi-chá-bēi.
11. Wǒ-bù-xǐhuan-lǚxíng.
12. Tā-bú-shì-zài-'Húnán-shēng-de.
13. Tā-bú-shì-'zǎochen-lái-de.
14. Tā-bú-niàn-'yìniánjí.
15. Tā-bú-duì 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-shuō-huà.
16. Wǒ-bù-géi-wó-mǔqīn-mǎi-shū.
17. Zhèige-bú-jiào-qiānbǐ.
18. Wǒmen-jīntian bú-niàn-dì-shíjiǔkè.
19. Zhèige-zì bú-shì-wó-xiě-de.
20. Wǒ-bú-zuò-fēijī-qù.
21. Zhèige-zìdiǎn bú-shì-wǒde.

22. Wǒmen-bú-wàng-béi-guǎi.
23. Tā-bú-xìng-Bái.
24. Tā-bú-zhù-Niǚyue.
25. Bú-shi-'tā-gàosu-wǒ-de.

## REPLACEMENT DRILL

Replace some element in each sentence with the parenthesized expression to the right.

1. Tāde-Zhōngguo-huà bú-cuò. (hén-hǎo)
2. Wǒmen-zuì-hǎo déng-jǐfēn-zhōng. (yìhuěr)
3. Wǒmen-bìděi-dào-biéde-dìfang-qu. (děi)
4. Nǐ-wèi-shénmo méi-dài-biǎo? (mǎi)
5. Nǐ-kàn zhèizhāng-shānshuǐ-huàr 'hǎo-bù-hǎo? (zěnmoyàng)
6. Nǐmen-yīngdāng měitiān-tīng 'liǎngge-zhōngtóu-lùyīn. (gāi)
7. Tā-shuō-de-huà wo-'dōu-dòng. (míngbai)
8. Tā-qīngle-hěn-duō-kèren, kěshi-lián-'yíge-rén dōu-méi-lái. (yě)
9. 'Zhèige-dōngxī gēn-'nèige-dōngxī-yíyàng. (xiàng)
10. Nèige-lǎo-xiānsheng hén-yǒu-qián. (míng)
11. Yìqiāнкуài-qián 'gòu-bu-gòu? (wàn)
12. Wǒmen-chī-fàn-yǐqián xiān-hē-chá. (huá-quán)
13. Wó-zhí-yǒu-sānkuài-qián. (jiù)
14. Rúguó-wó-yǒu-jīhuì wǒ-yídìng-dào-nèr-qu-lǚxíng. (gōngfu)
15. Wǒmen-dōu-mángde-hěn. (bùdéliǎo)
16. Wó-bǎ-ta kànzuo-yíge-xuésheng. (jiàoyuán)
17. Wǒmen-kuài-yào-kǎo-shū-le. (kǎoshì)
18. Wǒ-yìdiǎr-dōu-bù-míngbai. (shénmo)
19. Zhèiyàng bú-xiàng-nèiyàng nènmo-hǎo. (méi-yǒu)
20. Tāmen-dāngrán chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn. (yídìng)

## INSERTION DRILL

Insert into the following items the material in parentheses. This may require you to combine the two sentences into one. For example:



Wǒ-máng. Lián-'fàn-dōu-bù-néng-chī. (de)  
'I'm busy. I can't even eat.'

Insertion of de into these sentences gives a single sentence:

Wǒ-mángde lián-'fàn-dōu-bù-néng-chī.  
'I'm so busy I can't even eat.'

1. Wǒ-méi-gōngfu, bù-néng-qu-kàn-diànyǐngr. (yīnwei... suóyi)
2. Tā-bìyè-le. Dào-'Rìběn-qu-le. (yǐhòu... jiu)
3. Nèige-xuéxiào yǒu-'Zhōngguo-xuésheng, yǒu-'wàiguó-xuésheng. (yě... yě)
4. Tā-méi-yǒu-qián. Hái-yào-qu-kàn-diànyǐngr. (suírán... kěshi)
5. Tāmen-dōu-bèn. Méi-yǒu-rén-xǐhuan-tāmen. (de)
6. Tā-huì-shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà, huì-xiě-'Zhōngguo-zì. (yě... yě)
7. Nǐ-méi-yǒu-qián. Bù-néng-mǎi-shū. (rúguǒ... jiu)
8. Tā-chī-fàn. Dào-túshūguǎn-qu. (xiān... hòu)
9. Wó-xiǎng-qu-bàifang-péngyou. Méi-yǒu-gōngfu. (kěshi)
10. Wǒ-yào-kǎoshì-le, bù-néng-qu-wár. (yīnwei... suóyi)
11. Wǒ-jīntian-méi-niàn-shū, yě-méi-xiě-zì. (búdàn... érqǐě)
12. Bái-Xiānsheng-cōngming, érqǐě-yònggōng. (yòu... yòu)
13. Wó-yǒu-gōngfu. Yídìng-dào-nín-fǔshang-qu. (rúguǒ)
14. Nèige-xuésheng-hěn-bèn, yě-bú-yònggōng. (búdàn... érqǐě)
15. Wǒ-néng-kàn-Zhōngguo-shū, bù-néng-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì. (suírán... kěshi)
16. Wǒ-xué-yǔyán. 'Měitiān-tīng-lùyīn. (de-shíhou)
17. Wǒ-méi-yǒu-gōngfu-qu-wár. Méi-yǒu-qián. (búdàn... érqǐě)
18. Tā-niànguó-dàxué. Méi-bìyè. (kěshi)
19. Tā-xuéle-yìniánde-'Zhōngguo-huà-le. Yíjù-'Zhōngguo-huà yě-bù-néng-shuō. (suírán... kěshi)
20. Wǒ-zuòwán-le-shì. Wǒmen-kéyi-zǒu. (yǐhòu... jiu)

## TRANSFORMATION DRILL

### A. Transformation from Affirmative to Negative.

Note that there are several possible types of transformation, depending on the form of the affirmative sentence.

1. Tā-zuótian-lái-le. Tā-zuótian-'méi-lái.
2. Tā-shì-zài-Dōngběi-shēng-de. Tā-'bú-shì-zài-Dōngběi-shēng-de.

3. Tā-zài-Húnán-zhǎng-dà-de. Tā-'bú-shi-zài-Húnán-zhǎng-dà-de.
4. Tā-kǎodeshàng-dàxué. Tā-kǎobushàng-dàxué.
5. Nǐ-bìdéi-zǒu. Nǐ-'bú-bì-zǒu.
6. Tā-dào-nǎr-qu? Tā-'bú-dào-nǎr-qu.
7. Tāde-xuéwen-hén-hǎo. Tāde-xuéwen-'bù-hén-hǎo.
8. Tā-zài-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā-chī-fàn. Tā-'bú-zài-Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā-chī-fàn.
9. Tā-shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà shuōde-hén-hǎo. Tā-shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà shuōde-'bù-hén-hǎo.
10. Wǒmen-xià-xīngqī niàndedào-dì-'èrshikè. Wǒmen-xià-xīngqī niàn-budào-dì-'èrshikè.

B. Transformation from Indefinite Active to Definite Passive.

In the first of each pair of sentences below, the object is either definite or indefinite, the verb is active, and the time is immaterial. In the second, the object is always definite, the time is past, and the translation can be expressed as a passive. For example:

Tāmen-mài-shū. 'They sell books.'

Shū-shi-'tāmen-mài-de. 'The books were sold by them.'

1. Gāo-Xiáojie huà-huàr. Huàr shi-'Gāo-Xiáojie-huà-de.
2. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu xiěle-zhèiběn-shū. Zhèiběn-shū shi-'Wàn-Jiàoshòu-xiě-de.
3. Tā-mǎile-nèige-'zìdiǎn-méi-yǒu? Nèige-zìdiǎn shi-'tā-mǎi-de-ma?
4. Tā-mǎi-piào. Piào-shi-'tā-mǎi-de.
5. 'Gāo-Tàitai zuò-'Zhōngguo-fàn. 'Zhōngguo-fàn shi-'Gāo-Tàitai-zuò-de.
6. Tā-xiěle-sānběn-shū-le. Sānběn-shū shi-'tā-xiě-de.
7. Tā-zài-túshūguǎn-jiè-shū. Shū-shi-tā-zài-'túshūguǎn-jiè-de.
8. Wó-gěi-tā-qián. Qián-shi-'wó-gěi-ta-de.
9. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng jiāo-wo-Zhōngwén. Zhōngwén shi-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiāo-wo-de.
10. Wó-xiě-xìn. Xìn-shi-'wó-xiě-de.

MISCELLANEOUS SENTENCES

(Read aloud and translate)

1. Xià-kè-yǐhòu wǒ-jiù-huǐ-jiā.
2. 'Gāo-Xiáojie zuótian-mǎile-yíge-biǎo.

3. Tā-'gāozhōng-hái-mái-niànwán jiù-yào-kǎo-dàxué.
4. Wǒ-xīngqīliù xiǎng-qu-kàn-diànyīngr.
5. Nèiwèi-jiàoyuán-hén-hǎo. Wǒmen-'dōu-huānying-ta.
6. Qíng-nǐ-kàn wó-xiě-de-zhè-jǐge-'Zhōngguo-zì 'duì-bu-duì.
7. Xué-yǔyán yǒu-'yídìngde-fāngfǎ.
8. Nǐ-chīguo-'Zhōngguo-fàn-ma? Wǒ-chīguo-hěn-duō-cì-le.
9. Wó-yóu-wǔqiāнкуài-qián wǒ-jiù-dào-Yīngguo-Měiguó qù-lǚxíng.
10. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie zhǎngde-'shífēn-piàoliang.
11. 'Qián-Xiānsheng yòng-wǔwàнкуài-qián mǎile-yìsuǒr-fángzi.
12. Jīntian wǒ-hái-méi-géi-wo-nǚ-péngyou-xiě-xìn-ne.
13. 'Máo-Xiānsheng duì-kēxué-'hén-yǒu-xìngqu.
14. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-láile-yìhuǐr jiù-zǒu-le.
15. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yuánlái-shi-xué-'kēxué-de. Hòulái yòu-xué-wénxué-le.
16. Wó-měitiān bìděi-tīng yíge-zhōngtóude-lùyīn.
17. Yīnwei-tā-bìng-le, suóyì-jīntian-bú-dào-xuéxiào-lái.
18. Nǐ-míngtian-sāndiǎn-zhōng 'yídìng-dào-túshūguǎn-qù-ma? Wǒ-dāng-rán-qù-le.
19. 'Kuài-yào-kǎoshì-le. Wó-děi-yònggōng-niàn-shū-le.
20. Wǒ-xīwàng-jiānglái néng-shàng-'Zhōngguo-qu-niàn-shū.
21. Wǒmen-'dōu-xǐhuan nèiwèi-jiàoyuán. Tā-jiāo-shū jiāode-hǎojíle.
22. Wǒ-jiānglái-yǒu-jīhui yě-dào-wàiguó-qu-lǚxíng.
23. 'Bái-Xiānsheng rènshi-'Máo-Xiānsheng. Shi-'Qián-Xiānsheng-jièshao-de.
24. Zuótian gēn-jǐge-péngyou yíkuài-shàng-shān-le.
25. Wǒmen-xué-yǔyán yīngdāng-měitiān-tīng-lùyīn.
26. Wáng-Xiānsheng-bìng-le. Wǒ-yīnggai-qu-kànkàn-ta.
27. Tā-jiā-zhùzai-shānshang. Mǎi-dōngxì-hěn-máfan.
28. 'Bái-Xiānsheng búdàn-'shū-niànde-hǎo, érqiě-zì yé-xiěde-hǎo.
29. Yuǎndōng-Dàxué kǎoshì-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì. Yígòng-kǎole èrbǎi-duō-ge-zì. 'Bái-Xiānsheng lián-'yíge-zì dōu-méi-xiěcuò.
30. Xué-yǔyán, tīng-lùyīn-zhèige-fázi zhēn-hǎo.
31. Liǎngge-rén-kāishǐ-rènshi yídìng-děi-shuō "Jiúyǎng, jiúyǎng."
32. Nèige-háizi sìsuì-le. Lián-yíjù-huà yě-bú-huì-shuō.
33. Gāo-Tàitai gěi-Gāo-Xiǎojie-kāi-mén.
34. Nèige-háizi-bènjíle. Niànle-yìnián-shū lián-yíge-zì yě-bú-rènshi.
35. Tā-bǎ-jiā-lǐtōu 'suóyǒude-shū 'dōu-nádào-xuéxiào-qu-le.
36. Yǒude-rén-xǐhuan-lǚxíng, yǒude-rén xǐhuan-kàn-diànyīngr.

37. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu 'zhēn-yǒu-xuéwen. Tā-xiěde-shū-hǎojíle.  
 38. Tā-dài-ta-fùqinde-biǎo.  
 39. 'Máo-Xiānsheng 'bú-zài-jiā. Tā-chūqu-le.  
 40. Nín-qīng-'jìnlai-zuò-yìhuēr.

## DIALOGUE

'Wàn-Jiàoshòu yào-huǐ-'Yīngguo-qu-le. Tāde-xuésheng, 'Zhāng-Dōngshēng, xiáng-qīng-tā-chī-fàn. Tāmen-liǎngge-rén-tán-huà.

Zhāng: 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu, nín-hǎo-ma?

Wàn: Oh, Dōngshēng, wó-hǎo. Ní-hǎo-ma?

Zhāng: Wó-hǎo, xièxie-nín. Wǒ-tīngshuō nín-yào-huǐ-'Yīngguo-qu-le.

Wàn: Duì-le. Wǒ-èrshiwǔhào jiù-zǒu-le. Ní-kǎoshì-yǐhòu dào-Yīngguo-qu-wárwǎr.

Zhāng: Wó-hěn-xīwang dào-'Yīngguo-qu, kěshi-tài-máng. Kǎoshì-yǐhòu yě-bìděi-yònggōng-niàn-shū. Wó-xiáng-děi-bìyè-yǐhòu cái-yǒu-jīhuì dào-'Yīngguo-qu-ne.

Wàn: Xīwang-nǐ-bìyè-yǐhòu dào-Yīngguo-qu. Wǒmen-zài-'Yīngguo-jiàn.

Zhāng: Hǎo. Wó-yě-shì zènmo-xīwang. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu, nín-kuài-zǒu-le. Wó-xiǎng-zhèige-xīngqī-lǐtou qīng-nín-chī-fàn. Wǒ-hái-qíng-jǐge-'biéde-péngyou. Nín-shénmo-shíhou-yǒu-gōngfu-ne? Qīng-nín-'shuō-yíge-shíhou.

Wàn: Nǐ-tài-kèqì.

Zhāng: Nín-bié-kèqì.

Wàn: Nènmo xìngqī'wú-hǎo-bu-hǎo?

Zhāng: Hǎo. Wó-xiáng-qīng-nín dào-wǒ-'jiā-lǐtou-lái. Qīng-nín-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn 'hǎo-bù-hǎo?

Wàn: Hǎojíle. Wǒ-zuì-xǐhuan chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn. Kěshi-tài-máfan-le.

Zhāng: Nín-bié-kèqì.

Wàn: Ní-fǔshang-zài-nǎr-a?

Zhāng: Wó-jiā-jiù-zài-Zhōngshān-Lù, yìbái-wǔshíbá hào. Lí-Sān-Yǒu-Shū-diàn-bù-yuǎn. Qīng-nín-xīngqīwǔ wǎnshang-qīdiǎn-zhōng dào-wǒ-jiā-lái.

Wàn: Hǎo. Wǒmen-xīngqīwǔ-jiàn.

Zhāng: Xīngqīwǔ wǎnshang-jiàn.

Wàn: Xièxie-ni.

# NARRATIVE

Zuótian-tiānqi hén-nuǎnhuo. Wǒmen-xuéxiào bú-shàng-kè, suóyi -wo-zhǎole-jǐge-péngyou. Yé-yǒu- 'Gāo-Měiying-Xiǎojie. Wǒmen-yí gòng-qíge-rén qu-lǔxíng. Wǒmen-jiù-xiǎng: “Dào-nǎr-qu-hǎo-ne?” ' Gāo -Xiǎojie - shuō: “Wǒmen-shàng-Běi-Hú-nèibiar, nèige-dà-shānshang-qu-wár-ba.” Tā-shuō-nèige-shānshang piàoliang-jíle. Tā-shuō-nèige-shānshang zuì-gāode-dìfang jiù-shi-yíge-dà-gōngyuán. Nèr-yóu-hěn-duō-méigui. Yīnwei-tā-hén-xǐhuan-méigui, tā-shuō-dào-nèr-qu. Suóyi-wǒmen-jiù-qù-le.

'Qù-de-shíhou, wǒmen-xiān-zuò gōnggòng-qìchē. Yīnwei-wǒmen-shi-lǔxíng, suóyi-wǒmen-zuòdào-Zhōngshān-Lù jiù-xià-chē-le. Zhōngshān-Lù lí-nèige-dà-shān hái-yǒu-hén-yuǎn-ne. Wǒmen-qíge-rén yíkuàr-zǒu-lù-tán-huà, hén-yǒu-yìsi. Wǒmen-wàng-shānshang-zǒu-de-shíhou, yùjian-le-Máo-Xiānsheng Máo-Tàitai gēn-tāmen-liǎngge-háizi 'yě-lái-shàng-shān. Yǒude-péngyou bú-rènshi-Máo-Xiānsheng, Máo-Tàitai. Wó-gěi-tāmen-jièshao-le-yǐhòu, jiù-dōu-rènshi-le. Wǒmen-jǐge-rén 'dōu-xǐhuan-tāmen -nèi-liǎngge-háizi. 'Dōu-hěn-piàoliang. Xiànzai-yòu-yǒu-'Máo-Xiānsheng tāmen -sìge-rén, wǒmen-yí gòng-shi shíyíge-rén-le.

Wǒmen-dào-shānshang yǐjing-chàbuduō-shí'èrdiǎn-le. Dōu-xiǎng-chī-dōngxi-le. Bá-wǒmen-zài-shānxià-mǎi-de-dōngxi dōu-náchulai. Wǒmen-zài-yíkuàr-chī. Suírán-wǒmen-'chī-de-dōngxi mǎile -bù -shǎo, kěshi-wǒmen-wàngle-ná-shuǐ. Wǒmen-méi-yóu-shuǐ-hē. 'Máo-Tàitai-tāmen ná-shuǐ-lái-le. Wǒmen-měige-rén dōu-hēle-yìdiǎr-shuǐ.

Chīwanle-dōngxi-yǐhòu, 'Máo-Xiānsheng-shuō: “Xiànzài-wǒmen-kāishǐ-wár-le.” 'Gāo-Xiǎojie-huà-huà. Wǒmen-jǐge-rén yǒude-zóuzou, yǒude-kàn-méigui, yǒude-tántan. 'Zuì-yǒu-yìside hái-shi-nèi-liǎngge-háizi pǎolái-pǎoqù-de.

Jíntian-wǒmen-wárde-hén-hǎo. Yǐjing-kuài-dào-wúdiǎn-zhōng-le, 'Máo-Xiānsheng-shuō: “Wǒmen-gāi-xià-shān-huí-jiā-le.” Kěshi-nèi-liǎngge-xiǎo-háizi 'hái-bù-xiáng-zǒu.

## ANSWERING QUESTIONS

1. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng méi-yǒu-qián, suóyi-tā-bù-néng-qu-kàn-diànyǐngr. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng yě-bù-néng-qù, yīnwei-tā-méi-yǒu-gōngfú. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-wèi-shénmo bù-néng-qu-kàn-diànyǐngr?

2. Wó-xiàng-mǎi-liùběn-shū. Yǐjīng-mǎile-sìběn-le. Wǒ-hái-yào-mǎi-jībēn?
3. Wǒ-yòng-'gāngbǐ-xiě-zì. Tā-yòng-'máobǐ-xiě-zì. 'Shéi-yòng-máobǐ-xiě-zì?
4. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-chīle-fàn jiù-dào-túshūguǎn-qu-le. Tā-'jièle-shū-yǐhòujiù-huǐ-jiā. Tā-'xiān-zuò-shénmo?
5. Niàn-'wénxué-de-xuésheng dōu-shì-nǚ-ren. Niàn-kēxuéde 'dōu-shì-nán-ren. Nǚ-xuésheng-niàn-shénmo?
6. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng 'Wáng-Tàitai shàng-xīngqī-bīng-le. Wáng-Xiānsheng xiànzài-hǎo-le, Wáng-Tàitai hái-méi-hǎo-ne. 'Shéi-hái-yǒu-bīng?
7. Xiànzài-yǐjīng-sāndiǎn-le. Wǒ-yào-zǒu-le. Xiànzài-jídiǎn-zhōng-le?
8. Wǒ-dìdi méi-niànguo-kēxué. Tā-shuō kēxué-méi-yǒu-yìsi. Tā-duì-kēxué yǒu-xìngqu-ma?
9. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng dào-'Zhōngguo-lái-yǐhòujiù-kāishǐ-xué-'Zhōngwén. Tā-zài-'Měiguó-de-shíhou xué-le-'Zhōngwén-méi-you?
10. Méi-yǒu-xuéguo-'Zhōngguo-huà-de-xuésheng kànde dǒng-kànbudǒng 'Zhōngwén-shū?
11. Yígòng-yǒu yíwànwàn-'zhōngxuéde-xuésheng, yìqiānwàn-'dàxuéde-xuésheng. Shì-'zhōngxuéde-xuésheng-duō háishi-'dàxuéde-xuésheng-duō?
12. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng bú-zài-túshūguǎn-le. Tā-huǐ-jiā-le. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng hái-zài-túshūguǎn-ma?
13. 'Bái-Xiānsheng zuótian-niànle-wǔge-zhōngtóu-shū. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie cóngliángdiǎn-dào-wúdiǎn-zhōng niàn-shū. 'Shéi-niànde-duō?
14. 'Wàitou-yóu-liǎngge-rén. Wó-qīng-tāmen-jìnlai. Wǒ-zài-lǐtou háishi-zài-wàitou?
15. Tā-bǎ-'Zhōngwén-shū dōu-nádào-túshūguǎn-qu-le, bǎ-'Yīngwén-shū dōu-náhuǐ-jiā-lái-le. 'Zhōngwén-shū-zài-nǎr?
16. Wǒ-xìng-Wáng. Wǒ-bú-huì-zuò-'Zhōngguo-fàn. Lián-wǒ-'nèiren yěbú-huì-zuò. Wáng-Tàitai huì-bú-huì-zuò-'Zhōngguo-fàn?
17. Tā-'shénme-dōu-méi-mǎi. Tā-mǎile-'shū-méi-you?
18. Wǔge-zì shì-wó-xiě-de. Shíge-shì-'tā-xiě-de. 'Shéi-xiěde-duō?
19. Tā-shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà shuōde-bí-ní-hǎo. Wǒ-shuōde méi-yǒu-nǐzhènmo-hǎo. Wǒmen-sāngè-rén 'shéi-shuōde-hǎo?
20. Yǒude-'Rìběn-zì gēn-'Zhōngguo-zì-yíyàng, yǒude-'bù-yíyàng. Suǒyǒude-'Rìběn-zì dōu-gēn-'Zhōngguo-zì yíyàng-ma?



21. Tā-zuótian-jièle-'liángběn-shū. Jīntian-yòu-jièle-'sānběn. Tā-yígòng-jièle-'jībēn-shū?
22. 'Dìdi-niàn-dàxué-'sìniánjí. Mèimei-niàn-'èrniánjí. 'Shéi-xiān-bìyè?
23. Yīnwei-tā-méi-yǒu-qián, suóyì-bù-néng-qu-kàn-diànyǐngr. Tā-wèi-shénmo bú-qu-kàn-diànyǐngr?
24. Wáng-Xiānsheng hén-xǐhuan-yánjiu-kēxué. Wáng-Xiáojie hén-xǐhuan-yánjiu-wénxué. Wáng-Xiānsheng duì-shénmo-yǒu-xìngqu?
25. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng zài-Zhōngguo-xuéle liǎng-niánde-'Zhōngguo-huà. Zài-'Yīngguo-xuéle-yìnián-Zhōngwén. Tā-zài-'Yīngguo-xuéguo-méi-you?
26. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu zài-Zhōngguo yánjiule-wūnián-yǔyán, èrnián-wénxué. Tā-yánjiu-'shénmo-de-shíhou zuì-duō?
27. Qián-'Xiānsheng-hěn-máng. Tā-méi-gōngfu-kàn-diànyǐngr. Qián-'Tàitai-cháng-kàn-diànyǐngr. 'Shéi-bú-kàn-diànyǐngr?
28. Wǒ-shi-zài-'Zhōngguo-zhǎng-dà-de. Tā-zài-'Rìběn-zhǎng-dà-de. 'Shéi-shi-Zhōngguo-rén?
29. Wǒ-fùqīn-géi-wo-'wǔkuài-qián. Wó-mǔqīn-géi-wo-'sānkuài-qián. Tā-men-liǎngge-rén 'yígòng-géi-wo-duōshao-qián?
30. Zhèizhī-bǐ bú-shi-'wó-mǎi-de. Shi-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-mǎi-de. Zhèizhī-bǐ shi-'shéi-mǎi-de?

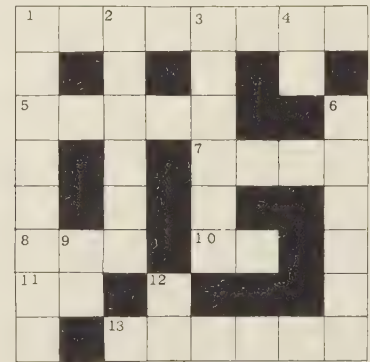
CROSSWORD PUZZLE

Cóng-zuǒ-wàng-yòu

1. Zhōngguo-zuì-piàoliangde-chéng.
5. Wǒ-méi-yǒu-tā — cōngmíng.
7. Fāngfǎ.
8. Xiānsheng, tàitai, xiáojie, xuésheng, háizi 'dōu-shi-shénmo?
10. Bǎ.
11. Yī-gēn-sān-de-zhōngjià.
13. Yǒude-rén yòng-zhèige-xiě-zì.

Cóng-shàng-wàng-xià

1. Cóng-Húnán-lái-de-rén.
2. Tāmen-bú-shi-nǚ-rén shi-shénmo?
3. Nǐ-měitiān-zǎochen chī-shénmo?
4. Míngbai-le-yǐhòu, cháng-yòng-zhèige-zì.



6. Wǒ-bù-néng-qu-kàn-diànyǐngr, — wǒ-méi-yǒu-qián.
9. Gēn-shàngtou-shíyī-yíyàng.
12. Mǔqīn.





## UNIT IV



## Lesson 19 EATING FAMILY STYLE



“Biàn-fàn, hén-jiǎndān.”

Dialogue: Mr. White and Professor Wanamaker have dinner at the Gao home.

Gāo-Tàitai: Fàn-hǎo-le. 'Wàn-Xiānsheng 'Bái-Xiānsheng, qīng-chī-fàn-ba.

Gāo-Xiānsheng: Lǎo-Wàn Bái-Xiānsheng, wǒmen-chī-fàn. 5

Wàn: Gāo-Tàitai, jīntian-'tài-máfan-nín-le.

Gāo-Tàitai: Méi-shénmo. Biàn-fàn,\* hén-jiǎndān.

Dinner's ready. Mr. Wanamaker, Mr. White, please (come and) eat.

[Old] Wan, Mr. White, let's have dinner.

Mrs. Gao, we've put you to too much trouble today.

It's nothing. It's plain food,\* very simple.

\* The Chinese dinner at the Gaos', though not precisely biàn-fàn 'plain food' in the American sense, is not an elaborate dinner such as one might have in a restaurant. The courses are as follows:

Shīzi-tóu 'lion's head' (large meatballs made of ground pork, fried with cabbage and stewed for several hours)

Hóng-shāo-jī 'red-cooked chicken' (chicken first seared in hot fat and then simmered in soy sauce until the meat is very soft)

Táng-cù-yú 'sweet-and-sour fish' [lit. sugar and vinegar fish] (fish cooked

Gāo-Xiānsheng: Qǐng-zuò, qǐng-zuò. Wǒmen-suíbiàn-zuò.	10	Please sit down, please sit down. Let's sit down anywhere we like.
Bái : Gāo-Tàitai Gāo-Xiǎojie, qǐng-lái-yíkuài-chī-ba.		Mrs. Gao, Miss Gao, please come and eat with us.
Gāo-Xiānsheng: Měiyīng-lái. Wǒ-nèiren déi-bǎ-cài-zuòwán. Wǒmen-xiān-chī. Tā-yì-huěr-jiu-lái.	15	Meiying (can) come. My wife has to finish preparing the (remaining) dishes. Let's start eating. She'll come in a moment.
Wàn: He! Bùdéliǎo! Zěnmó-'zhènmó-duōde-cài-a!		My! There's no end (of food). How is it that there are so many courses!
Gāo-Xiānsheng: Biàn-fàn, 'méi-yǒu-shénmo-cài. Nǐmen-liǎngwèi suíbiàn-zuò, suíbiàn-chī. Wǒ-nèiren yě-'bù-zěnmó-huì-zuò-cài.	20	It's plain food, nothing in particular. [Both of you] sit and eat as you please. My wife isn't such a good cook. If it isn't fish then it's meat. There aren't any
Bú-shi-yú jiù-shi-ròu. 'Méi-shénmo-hǎo-cài.	25	fine dishes.
Bái : Gāo-Tàitai, cài-'tài-duō-le. Nín-bié-máng-le. Qǐng-lái, wǒmen-yíkuài-chī-fàn-ba.	30	Mrs. Gao, there are too many courses. Don't do so much. Please come, let's eat together.
Gāo-Tàitai: Nǐmen-jǐwèi-xiān-qǐng. Hái-yǒu-'yíge-cài wǒ-jiù-lái-le.		(All of) you start eating. There's still one more dish and then I'll come.
Gāo-Xiānsheng: Wǒmen-'xiān-chī.	35	Let's start eating.
Bái : Cài-zhēn-piàoliang. Dōu-jiào-shénmo?		Everything is [lit. The dishes are] very attractive. What are they all called?
Gāo Xiānsheng: Zhèige-jiào-shī-zi-tóu.		This one is called lion's head.
Bái : 'Zěnmó-jiào-shīzi-tóu-ne? Míngzi-hěn-qíguài.	40	How come it's called lion's head? It's an odd name.

---

with sugar and vinegar)

Chǎo-dòufu 'fried bean curd' (bean curd fried in a very hot pan while being constantly stirred, with soy sauce, ginger, and scallions, and beef, pork, or shrimp)

Chǎo-báicài 'fried cabbage' (cabbage fried with soy sauce, ginger, scallions, and meat)

Niú-ròu-tāng 'beef soup' (beef with scallions and ginger)

Note that the soup is usually taken toward the end of the meal. A soup is not reckoned as a course, so that in a restaurant one might say: Yào-sìge-cài yíge-tāng 'Order four dishes and a soup.'

Gāo-Xiānsheng: Wó-xiǎng-huòzhě shì-yīnwei-měi-yíge-dōu-hěndà, suóyì-jiào-shīzì-tóu.	45	I think perhaps it's because each (of the meatballs) is quite large, [so it's called lion's head].
Bái : 'Zhèige-cài-shì-shénmo?		What is this dish?
Gāo Xiānsheng: Zhèi-shì-chǎo-báicài.		[This is] fried cabbage.
Bái : Zhèige-ne?		And what about this?
Gāo Xiānsheng: Zhèi-shì-hóng-shāo-jī.*	50	[This is] red-cooked chicken.*
Bái : 'Zhèige-wǒ-zhīdao. Shì-chǎo-dòufu.		This I know. It's fried bean curd.
('Gāo-Tàitai bǎ-cài-zuòhǎo-le nǎzhe-cài-chūlai-le.)	55	(Mrs. Gao, having finished the [last] dish, brings it out.)
Gāo-Tàitai: 'Méi-shénmo-hǎo-cài. Qǐng-'duō-chī-yì-diǎr. Wó-xiǎnglái-xiǎng-qù yé-xiǎngbuchū tèbiéde-cài-lai.	60	There aren't any fine dishes. Please eat a little more. I thought and thought but couldn't think of anything special.
Wàn: Nín-tài-kèqi-le. Cài-'tài-hǎo-le, bǐ-fànguārde-cài-dōu-hǎo.		You're too polite. The food is excellent, better than any restaurant food.
Gāo-Tàitai: Guòjiǎng, guòjiǎng.		You flatter me.
Wàn: Shīzi-tóu zuòde-hǎojíle. Wǒ-tèbié-xǐhuan-chī.	65	The lion's head is awfully well done. I'm particularly fond of it.
Gāo-Tàitai: Bái-Xiānsheng, nǐ-dōu-xǐhuan chī-'shénmo-cài?		Mr. White, what dishes do you like?
Bái : Wó-xǐhuan chī-hóng-shāo-de, xiàng-hóng-shāo-ròu, hóng-shāo-jī, hóng-shāo-yú—wǒ-'dōu-xǐhuan-chī.	70	I like red-cooked things, such as [red-cooked] meat, [red-cooked] chicken, [red-cooked] fish—I like them all.
Gāo-Xiānsheng: 'Bái-Xiānsheng, nǐ-zài-Měiguó yě-cháng-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn-ma?	75	Mr. White, did you often have Chinese food in America too?
Bái : Cháng-chī. Wó-hén-xǐ-huan-chī, cháng-gēn-péng-you-yíkuài qu-chī-Zhōngguo-fànguǎr.	80	I often did. I liked [to eat] it very much, and often went with friends to eat in Chinese restaurants.

\* 'Red-cooked,' so called from the coloring imparted by the liberal use of soy sauce, is the rendering for hóng-shāo given by Buwei Yang Chao in her delightful book, How to Cook and Eat in Chinese, New York, John Day, 1945. (Her introduction, incidentally, contains a wealth of information on Chinese table manners.)

Gāo-Tàitai: Suóyī-nǐ-yòng-kuàizi  
yòngde-nènmò-hǎo-ne.

Gāo-Xiáojie: Zài-Měiguó-de-  
'Zhōngguó-fànguǎr duō-  
ma?

Bái: Bù-shǎo.

Gāo-Xiáojie: Měiguó-de-Zhōng-  
guó-fàn hǎo-chī-ma?

Bái: Zài-Měiguó-de-'Zhōngguó-  
fànguǎr chàbuduo-dōu-shì-  
Guǎngdōng-fànguǎr. Tāmen-  
zuò-de hǎo-shì-hǎo, kěshì-  
méi-yǒu-Gāo-Tàitai-zuò-  
de zhènmò-hǎo-chī. Shì-  
zì-tóu-zài-Měiguó chūle-  
Sānfánshì-Niǔyue jǐge-dà-  
chéng-yǐwài, jiù-chībū-  
zhào.

Wàn: Zhèige-táng-cù-yú hén-hǎo-  
chī.

Bái: Gāo-Tàitai, qǐng-wen, zhèi-  
ge-táng-cù-yú-lǐtōu dōu-  
yǒu-shénmo?

Gāo-Tàitai: Táng-cù-yú-lǐtōu  
yǒu-bái-táng-yǒu-cù. Yīn-  
wei-yǒu-yǒu-táng-yǒu-yǒu-  
cù, suóyī-yòu-tián-yòu-  
suān.

Bái: Báicài bìděi-yòng-'zhū-ròu-  
chǎo-ma?

Gāo-Tàitai: Bù-yídìng. Rúguó-  
ní-xǐhuan chī-niú-ròu, jiù-  
yòng-niú-ròu-chǎo.

Bái: Nènmò-chǎo-dòufu-ne?

Gāo-Tàitai: Suíbiàn-zhū-ròu niú-  
ròu dōu-kéyì.

Bái: Gāo-Xiáojie, nǐ-huì-zuò-  
fàn-ma?

Gāo-Xiáojie: Wǒ-bú-huì-zuò-fàn.

Gāo-Tàitai: Tā-yě-huì-zuò jǐ-  
yàng-cài, zuòde-hái-bú-  
cuò.

Bái: Nín-cài zuòde-zhènmò-  
hǎo, wó-xiǎng-Gāo-Xiáojie  
yíding-zuòde-yě-bú-  
cuò.

## Lesson 19. Eating Family Style

That's why you use chopsticks  
so well.

Are there many Chinese restau-  
rants in America?

Quite a few.

Is the Chinese food in America  
good?

The Chinese restaurants in  
America are almost all Can-  
tonese restaurants. Their cook-  
ing is good all right, but it isn't  
as good as Mrs. Gao's. Apart  
from a few big cities (like) San  
Francisco and New York, lion's  
head just can't be had in Ameri-  
ca.

This sweet-and-sour fish is de-  
licious.

May I ask, Mrs. Gao, what's in  
it [lit. what's in this sweet-and-  
sour fish]?

It [lit. the sweet-and-sour fish]  
has white sugar and vinegar [in  
it]. Since it has both sugar and  
vinegar, it's both sweet and  
sour.

Does cabbage have to be fried  
with pork?

Not necessarily. If you like to  
eat beef, make it with beef.

Then how about fried bean curd?

Whatever you like—pork and beef  
will both do.

Miss Gao, can you cook?

I don't know how to.

She can make a few [kinds of]  
dishes too, and she doesn't do  
them badly at all.

You've done these dishes so well  
I'm sure Miss Gao also is a  
good cook.



Gāo-Tàitai: Xīwang-nǐ-cháng-lái, jiù-zài-zhèr chī-biàn-fàn.		I hope you will come often and have our simple cooking here.
Bái : Xièxie-nin.		Thank you.
Gāo-Tàitai: Nǐ-xià-cì-lái wǒ- jiào-Měiyīng-zuò.	130	Next time you come I'll have Meiying cook.
Gāo-Xiānsheng: Qǐng-chī-cài. Tàitai, gāi-ná-tāng-le.		Please eat. (To his wife:) You should bring the soup.
Gāo-Tàitai: Wǒ-gēn-'Bái-Xiān- sheng shuō-huà-shuōde wàngle-ná-tāng-le. (Tā-bǎ-tāng-nálai.)	135	I've been talking with Mr. White so much that I've forgotten to get it. (She brings the soup.)
Bái : Zhèi-shi-'shénmo-tāng?		What (kind of) soup is this?
Gāo-Tàitai: 'Niú-ròu-tāng.		Beef soup.
Bái : Tāng-'zhēn-hǎo.	140	It's really nice.
Gāo-Xiānsheng: Qǐng-duō-chī- cài.		Please have some more food.
Wàn: Wǒmen-yǐjīng-chībǎo-le, yòu-hē-hěn-duō-tāng.		We've already eaten our fill, and we've had a lot of soup too.
Gāo-Xiānsheng: Lǎo-Wàn, Bái- Xiānsheng, zài-chī-yì- diǎr. Chīde-'tài-shǎo.	145	[Old] Wan, Mr. White, have a bit more. You've eaten too little.
Wàn: Wǒ-yìdiár-yě-méi-kèqì. Chīde-hén-bǎo. Xièxie.		I haven't been the least bit po- lite. I've eaten until I'm quite full. Thank you.
Bái : Xièxie. Chīde-'tài-duō- le.	150	Thank you. I've eaten too much.
Gāo-Tàitai: 'Zhēn-chībǎo-le- ma?		Are you really full?
Wàn: Bǎo-le. Xièxie.		Yes, thank you.
Gāo-Xiānsheng: Nènmo jiù-qǐng- hē-chá-ba.	155	Then please have some tea.

## VOCABULARY

báicài	cabbage (N) [lit. white vegetable]
bǎo	full, satiated (SV)
biàn-fàn	plain food (N) [lit. convenient food]
cài	dish, course; vegetable (N)
chǎo	sauté, fry (TV)
chúle	except for (MA) (Note 5 below)

cù	vinegar (N)
dòufu	bean curd (N) [lit. legume curd]
fànguǎnr	restaurant (N) [lit. food establishment]
Guǎngdong	(city of) Canton, (province of) Kwangtung (PW) [lit. broad east]
guòjiǎng	you flatter me [lit. pass praise]
he!	Gosh! My!
jī	chicken (N)
kuàizi	chopsticks (N)
niú	cow, ox (N)
ròu	meat (N)
shāo	roast, braise (N)
shīzi	lion (N)
suān	sour (SV)
suíbiàn	as you please, any way one likes (MA) [lit. follow convenience] (Note 13 below)
tāng	soup (N)
táng	sugar (N)
tèbié	special (SV) [lit. special other]
tián	sweet (SV)
tóu	head (N)
yǐwài	besides, except for [lit. take outside] (Note 5 below)
yú	fish (N)
-zháo	(suffix indicating accomplishment: Note 8 below)
-zhe	(suffix indicating progressive action: Note 2 below)
zhū	pig (N)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                                  |                                       |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| cài                              | dish, course                          |
| jǐge-cài                         | how many courses?                     |
| 1. Wǒmen-jìntian chī-'jǐge-cài?  | How many courses shall we have today? |
| tāng                             | soup                                  |
| yíge-tāng                        | one soup                              |
| 2. Wǒmen-yào sìge-cài-yíge-tāng. | We want four dishes and a soup.       |
| táng                             | sugar                                 |

3.       bái-táng Zuì-hǎode-táng shì-bái-táng.	white sugar The best sugar is white sugar.
4.       kuàizi yòng-kuàizi-chī-fàn Nǐ-huì-yòng-'kuàizi-chī-fàn- ma?	chopsticks eat with chopsticks Can you eat with chopsticks?
5.       hē-yìdiǎr duō-hē-yìdiǎr Duō-hē-yìdiǎr-tāng-ba.	drink a little drink a little more Have a little more soup.
6.       'màn-yìdiǎr shuō-'màn-yìdiǎr Wǒ-bù-dǒng. Qǐng-nín- shuō-'màn-yìdiǎr.	a little slower speak a little slower I can't understand. Please speak a little more slowly.
7.       'màn-yìdiǎr 'màn-yìdiǎr-shuō Wǒ-bù-míngbai. Qǐng-nín- 'màn-yìdiǎr-shuō.	a little slower speak a little slower I don't understand. Please speak a little more slowly.
8.       dòufu yòng-kuàizi-chī-dòufu Yòng-kuàizi-chī-dòufu bù- róngyi.	bean curd eat bean curd with chop- sticks It's not easy to eat bean curd with chopsticks.
9.       báicài xǐhuan-chī-báicài Zhōngguo-rén hén-xǐhuan- chī-báicài.	cabbage like to eat cabbage Chinese are very fond of cab- bage.
10.      fànguǎr zài-fànguǎr-chī-fàn Wó-hén-xǐhuan zài-fànguǎr- chī-fàn.	restaurant eat in a restaurant I like to eat in restaurants very much.
11.      fànguǎr chī-fànguǎr Nǐ-bù-xǐhuan chī-fànguǎr- ma?	restaurant eat in a restaurant Don't you like to eat in restau- rants?
12.      Guǎngdong chī-Guǎngdong-fànguǎr Wǒmen-chī-Guǎngdong-fànguǎr kéyi-ma?	Canton eat at a Cantonese restau- rant Can we eat at a Cantonese res- taurant?
13.      tīng tīngzhe Wǒ-tīngzhe-lùyīn-ne.	listen listening I'm listening to a recording.
chīzhe-fàn	eating

- tīng-lùyīn  
14. Wǒ-chīzhe-fàn tīng-lùyīn.

- chǎo  
chǎo-báicài  
chǎo-dòufu  
15. Chǎo-báicài chǎo-dòufu dōu-  
hěn-róngyi-zuò.

- ròu  
yòng-shénmo-ròu?  
16. Zuǒ-chǎo-báicài yòng-shén-  
mo-ròu?

- zhū  
zhū-ròu  
zhū-ròu-chīde-duō  
17. Zhōngguo-rén zhū-ròu-chīde-  
duō.

- niú  
niú-ròu  
niú-ròu-chīde-duō  
18. Měiguó-rén niú-ròu-chīde-  
duō-ne háishi-zhū-ròu-chī-  
de-duō-ne?

- shīzi  
méi-yǒu-shīzi  
19. Zhōngguo-yǒu-láohu méi-yǒu-  
shīzi.

- tóu  
shīzi-tóu  
20. Zhèige-cài jiào-'shīzi-tóu.

- bú-shi-Yīngguo-rén  
jiù-shi-Měiguó-rén  
21. Nèige-'wàiguó-rén bú-shi-  
'Yīngguo-rén jiù-shi-'Měi-  
guo-rén.

- bù-chī-zhū-ròu  
jiù-chī-niú-ròu  
22. Wǒmen-bù-chī-'zhū-ròu jiù-  
chī-'niú-ròu.

- bú-shi-chī-zhū-ròu  
jiù-shi-chī-niú-ròu  
23. Wǒmen-bú-shi-chī-zhū-ròu  
jiù-shi-chī-niú-ròu.

listen to recordings  
I listen to recordings while eat-  
ing.

sauté, fry  
fried cabbage  
fried bean curd  
Fried cabbage and fried bean  
curd are both very easy to make.

meat  
use what meat?  
What meat is used in (making)  
fried cabbage?

pig  
pork  
eat more pork  
Chinese eat more pork.

cow  
beef  
eat more beef  
Do Americans eat more beef or  
pork?

lion  
there are no lions  
There are tigers but not lions in  
China.

head  
lion's head  
This dish is called lion's head.

isn't an Englishman  
then is an American  
That foreigner—if he isn't Eng-  
lish, he's American.

not eat pork  
then eat beef  
If we don't eat pork then we eat  
beef.

not eat pork  
then eat beef  
If we don't eat pork then we eat  
beef.

- shāo  
24. Zhèige-ròu shi-shāo-de.  
roast, braise  
This meat is roasted.
- hóng-shāo  
hóng-shāo-ròu  
25. Ní-xǐhuan-chī hóng-shāo-ròu-  
ma?  
red-cooked  
red-cooked meat  
Do you like red-cooked meat?
- mǎi  
mǎizhao  
26. Ní-'mǎizhao-le-méi-you?  
buy  
succeed in buying  
Did you succeed in buying it?
- mǎizhao  
mǎibuzháo  
27. Zhèige xiànzài-mǎibuzháo.  
succeed in buying  
unable to succeed in buying  
This can't be bought nowadays.
- wó-děngle-bàntiān  
tā-yě-méi-lái  
28. Wó-děngle-bàntiān, tā-yě-  
méi-lái.  
I waited a long time  
yet he did not come  
Although I waited a long time, he  
didn't come.
- wó-děngle-bàntiān  
tā-dōu-méi-lái  
29. Wó-děngle-bàntiān, tā-dōu-  
méi-lái.  
I waited a long time  
yet he didn't come  
Although I waited a long time, he  
didn't come.
- náchulai  
náchu-shūdiàn-lai  
30. Bǎ-shū dōu-náchu-shūdiàn-  
lai.  
bring out  
bring out of the bookstore  
Bring all the books out of the  
bookstore.
- náchulai  
náchu-huà-lai  
31. Qǐng-nín náchu-huà-lai, wǒ-  
yào-kànkàn.  
bring out  
bring out the paintings  
Please bring out the paintings, I  
want to look at them.
- tèbié  
32. Nèige-rén hěn-tèbié.  
special, peculiar  
That man is quite peculiar.
- tèbié-xǐhuan  
33. Wǒ-tèbié-xǐhuan chī-shīzi-  
tóu.  
especially like  
I especially like to eat lion's  
head.
- yú  
34. Zhèi-shi-yú-shi-ròu-ne?  
fish  
Is this fish or meat?
- cù  
yòngwán-le  
35. Cù-yòngwán-le-ma?  
vinegar  
use up  
Is the vinegar all used up?
- chúle  
chúle-chá  
except for, besides  
except for tea

36. Chùle-chá ta-'shénmo-dōu-bù-hē.

yǐwài  
chá-yǐwài

37. Chá-yǐwài tā-'shénmo-dōu-bù-hē.

- chúle-chá-yǐwài  
38. Tā-chúle-chá-yǐwài 'shénmo-dōu-bù-hē.

tián  
tiánde

39. Wǒ-bù-xǐhuan-chī-tiánde.

- suān  
40. Cù-shi-suānde.

guòjiǎng  
kèqì-huà

41. "Guòjiǎng" jiu-shi-kèqì-huà.

bǎo  
tài-bǎo-le

42. Wǒ-tài-bǎo-le.

- chībǎo  
43. Nǐ-'chībǎo-le-méi-you?

chībǎo  
chībubǎo

44. Fàn-tài-shǎo, wǒ-chībubǎo.

hǎo  
xiéhǎo

45. Zì-dōu-xiéhǎo-le-ma?

xiéhǎo  
xiébuhǎo

46. Wǒ-yíge-zhōngtóu xiébuhǎo.

hǎo-shi-hǎo  
méi-yǒu-'nèige-nènmo-hǎo

47. Zhèige-hǎo-shi-hǎo, kěshi-méi-yǒu-'nèige-nènmo-hǎo.

biàn-fàn  
hǎo-chī-shi-hǎo-chī

He doesn't drink anything but tea.

except for  
except for tea

He doesn't drink anything but tea.

except for tea

He doesn't drink anything but tea.

sweet  
sweet thing

I don't like to eat sweet things.

sour

Vinegar is sour.

you flatter me  
polite expression

"You flatter me" is a polite expression.

full, satiated  
too full

I'm too full.

eat until full

Have you had enough to eat?

eat until full  
unable to eat until full

There isn't enough food, I can't get filled.

good  
finish writing

Did you finish writing all the characters?

finish writing  
unable to finish writing

I can't finish writing it in an hour.

good all right  
not as good as that

This is good all right, but it's not as good as that.

plain food  
is appetizing all right

48. Biàn-fàn hǎo-chī-shì-hǎo-chī, kěshì-wǒ-bù-xǐhuan-chī.  
Plain food is appetizing all right, but I don't like to eat it.
49. suíbiàn  
Wǒmen-'suíbiàn-zuò, hǎo-bù-hǎo?  
as one pleases  
Shall we sit as we please?
50. suíbiàn  
kéyi  
'Suíbiàn-shénmo-shíhou-dōu-kéyi.  
as one pleases  
all right  
Any time you please is all right.
51. 'suíbiàn-shénmo-shíhou  
kéyi-lái  
Nǐ-'suíbiàn-shénmo-shíhou  
'dōu-kéyi-lái.  
any time you please  
may come  
You may come any time you please.
52. jī  
Ní-xǐhuan-chī-jī-ma?  
chicken  
Do you like to eat chicken?
53. he!  
He! Zěnmō-'zhènmō-duōde-rén-ne?  
my!  
My! How come there are so many people?
54. yào  
yào-cài  
Wǒmen-zài-fànguǎr yàole-sānge-cài.  
want  
order dishes  
We ordered three dishes in the restaurant.

# PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 19.1. Stative Verbs Expressing Manner (Note 1 below)

Pattern 19.1 a.

<u>duō/shǎo</u>	V	A	(O)
'more'/'less'	Verb	Amount	(Object)
Duō	hē	(yì)diǎr	chá.
'Drink a little more tea.'			
Shǎo	gěi	yíkuài	qián.
'Give a dollar less.'			

Pattern 19.1 b.

V	SV	<u>(yì)diǎr</u>
Verb	Stative Verb	'a little'
Zǒu	màn	yìdiǎr.
'Walk a little slower.'		



## Pattern 19.1 c.

SV	<u>(yì)diǎr</u>	V
Stative Verb	'a little'	Verb
Màn	yìdiǎr	zǒu.
'Walk a little slower.'		
1. Nǐ-yīnggāi-'shǎo-yào-yìdiǎr.	You should order a little less.	
2. Qíng-ní-zǒu-'kuài-yìdiǎr.	Please walk a little faster.	
3. Ní-xiě-de-zì 'tài-xiǎo-le. Qíng-ni-zài-xiě-'dà-yìdiǎr.	The characters you've written are too small. Please rewrite (them) a little bigger.	
4. Qíng-ni 'duō-mǎi-yìxiē-bǐ.	Please buy a few more pens.	
5. 'Duō-ná-diar-qián.	Take a little more money.	
6. Yào-kǎoshì-le. Wó-děi-'duō- niàn-yìdiǎr-shū.	I'm about to have exams. I'm going to study a bit more.	
7. Zhèizhāng-huà wó-děi-huà- 'hǎo-yìdiǎr.	I must do this painting a little better.	
8. Nǐ-shuō-de-huà tā-bù-dǒng. Ní-děi-'màn-yìdiǎr-shuō.	He doesn't understand what you say. You must speak a little slower.	
9. Wǒ-bù-hē-tāng. Wǒ-yào-duō- hē-diar-chá.	I'm not having soup. I want to drink a little more tea.	
10. Zài-'nèige-shūdiàn mǎile-yì- běn-zìdiǎn. Tāmen-shǎo-yào- wǔmáo-qián.	I bought a dictionary in that bookstore. They reduced the price by fifty cents.	
11. Kuàizi-bù-róngyi-yòng. Wó- děi-'màn-diar-chī.	Chopsticks are not easy to use. I have to eat a little slowly.	
12. Ní-děi-'duō-géi-jǐkuài-qián.	You should give a few dollars more.	
13. Mǎi-zhèiběn-shū ní-kéyi- 'shǎo-géi-jǐmáo-qián.	(If) you buy this book you can take a few dimes off the price.	
14. Jīntian-wǒ-bingle. 'Shǎo- niàn-yìdiǎr-shū.	I'm sick today. I'm going to study a little less.	
15. Wǒ-méi-dǒng. Qíng-ni shuō- 'màn-yìdiǎr.	I didn't understand. Please speak a little more slowly.	

## Pattern 19.2. Progressive Action (Note 2 below)

## Pattern 19.2 a.

S	V	- <u>zhe</u>	(O)	( <u>ne</u> )
Subject	Verb	- <u>zhe</u>	(Object)	( <u>ne</u> )
Wǒ	chī	-zhe	fàn	ne.
'I'm eating.'				

Pattern 19.2b.

S	V <sub>1</sub>	-zhe	(O)	V <sub>2</sub>	(O <sub>2</sub> )
Subject	Verb <sub>1</sub>	-zhe	(Object)	Verb <sub>2</sub>	(Object <sub>2</sub> )
Wǒ	chī	-zhe	fàn	niàn	shū.
'I study while eating.'					
1.	Xiànzài-bù-néng-qù-le. Wǒ-gēn-péngyou shuōzhe-huà-ne.		I can't go now. I'm talking with a friend.		
2.	Tā-lái-zháo-wo-de-shíhou, wǒ-chīzhe-fàn-ne.		When he came to visit me I was having dinner.		
3.	Wǒ-tīngzhe-lùyīn-ne, tā-jiào-wǒ-qu-kàn-diànyǐngr.		(As) I was listening to recordings he asked me to go see a movie.		
4.	Wǒ-huí-jiā-de-shíhou wó-mǔ-qīn-zuòzhe-fàn-ne.		When I returned home my mother was cooking dinner.		
5.	Zuótiān wǒ-gēn-'Máo-Xiānsheng dào-túshūguǎn-qu. Zǒuzhe-lu shuōzhe-huà, hén-yǒu-yìsì.		Yesterday I went to the library with Mr. Mao. It was very pleasant to walk and talk.		
6.	Háizi-xǐhuan kànzhe-diànyǐngr-chī-dōngxì.		Children like to eat things while seeing a movie.		
7.	Wǒmen-gēn-péngyou shuōzhe-huà-hē-chá.		We drank tea while talking with friends.		
8.	Nèige-háizi nǎzhe-zhǐ, nǎzhe-bǐ, yào-xiě-zì.		That child is holding paper and pen. He wants to write characters.		
9.	'Gāo-Xiǎojie dàizhe-yíge 'hěnpiàoliangde-biǎo.		Miss Gao is wearing a very attractive watch.		
10.	'Wáng-Xiǎojie nǎzhe-hěnduō-méiguì.		Miss Wang is holding a lot of roses.		
11.	Nǐ-dào-túshūguǎn-lái, zuò-'chē-lái-de háishi-'zǒuzhe-lái-de?		When you came to the library, did you come by car or on foot?		
12.	Zuótiān-wǎnshang zài-fànguǎrchīzhe-fàn-de-shíhou, 'Wáng-Xiānsheng yě-lái-chī-fàn.		Yesterday evening while I was eating in the restaurant, Mr. Wang also came to eat.		
13.	Zuótiān-gēn-péngyou dào-túshūguǎn-qu. Zǒuzhe-lù, shuōzhe-huà, yìhuǐr-jiu-dào-le.		Yesterday I went to the library with friends. Walking and talking, we arrived in a moment.		
14.	Wǒ-bìngzhe-ne hái-déi-kǎoshì.		I'm sick (but) I still have to take the exam.		
15.	Tā-méi-yǒu-qián. Zuòzhe-shìniàn-dàxué.		He doesn't have any money. He's working his way through college.		

## Pattern 19.3. A Special Type of 'if' Sentence (Note 3 below)

<u>bu</u>	V <sub>1</sub>	<u>jiù</u>	V <sub>2</sub>
'not'	Verb <sub>1</sub>	'then'	Verb <sub>2</sub>
Bú	shi zhū-ròu	jiù	shi niú-ròu.
' (If) it isn't pork then it's beef.'			
Bú	(shi) chī-zhū-ròu	jiù	(shi) chī-niú-ròu.
' (If he) doesn't eat pork then (he) eats beef.'			

- |                                                                                              |                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Wǒ-bù-zhīdào tā-shi-'něiguó-rén. Bú-shi-'Měiguó-rén jiù-shi-'Yīngguó-rén.                 | I don't know what country he's a native of. He's either American or English.                      |
| 2. Nèige-háizi hěn-yònggōng. Měitiān bú-shi-niàn-shū jiù-shi-xiě-zì.                         | That child works hard. Every day he either studies or writes characters.                          |
| 3. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-měitiān bú-dào-shūdiàn jiù-dào-túshūguǎn.                                  | Every day if Mr. Gao doesn't go to the bookstore then he goes to the library.                     |
| 4. 'Máo-Xiānsheng hén-xǐhuan-chī-chǎo-de-cài. Bú-shi-chī-chǎo-dòufu jiù-shi-chī-chǎo-báicài. | Mr. Mao likes to eat fried things. He has fried bean curd or fried cabbage, one or the other.     |
| 5. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu hén-xǐhuan-chī-ròu. Bú-shi-zhū-ròu jiù-shi-niú-ròu.                         | Professor Wanamaker likes to eat meat. If it isn't pork then it's beef.                           |
| 6. Wó-xiǎode-shíhou hén-xǐhuan-lǚxíng. Bú-shi-dào-Hángzhou jiù-shi-dào-Sūzhou.               | When I was young I was very fond of traveling. If I didn't go to Hangchow then I went to Soochow. |
| 7. Wó-měitiān bú-shi-tīng-lùyīn jiù-shi-xiě-zì.                                              | Every day I either listen to recordings or write characters.                                      |
| 8. Wó-xiě-zì bú-shi-yòng-'máobǐ jiù-shi-yòng-'gāngbǐ.                                        | In writing characters I use either a brush or a pen.                                              |
| 9. 'Máo-Xiānsheng bù-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn jiù-chī-'Měiguó-fàn.                                  | If Mr. Mao doesn't eat Chinese food then he has American food.                                    |
| 10. Wǒ-bú-niàn-kēxué jiù-niàn-yǔ-yánxué.                                                     | If I don't study science then I'll study linguistics.                                             |

## Pattern 19.4 A Special Type of 'although' or 'but' Sentence (Note 4 below)

V <sub>1</sub>	<u>yě/dōu</u>	<u>bù/méi</u>	V <sub>2</sub>
Verb <sub>1</sub>	'still'	'not'	Verb <sub>2</sub>
Zhǎolái-zhǎoqù	yě	méi	zhǎodào.

'Although I searched and searched I still didn't succeed in finding (it).'

1. 'Wáng-Xiáojie xuéle-bànnián-Yīngwén yě-bú-huì-shuō-Yīngguo-huà.

Although Miss Wang studied English for half a year she can't speak it.
2. Tā-shuōle-'hěn-duōde-huà, wó-yě-bù-dǒng.

He talked a lot but I didn't understand (what he said).
3. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng xiāng-zhǎo-'Bái-Xiānsheng. Tā-bú-rèn-shí-lù. Zhǎole-bàntiān dōu-méi-zhǎozhǎo.

Mr. Johnson wanted to visit Mr. White. He didn't know the way. Although he hunted for a long time [lit. half a day], he didn't succeed in finding (him).
4. Zhèige-zì-wǒ-wàngle. Xiǎng-lái-xiǎngqù dōu-xiǎngbùchūlái.

I've forgotten this character. I've racked my brains but can't recall it.
5. Wǒ-shuōle-'hǎoxie-cì, tā-yě-bù-dǒng.

Although I said it a good many times, he didn't understand.
6. Wó-děngle-bàntiān, tā-yě-méi-lái.

I waited for a long time but he didn't come.
7. Wó-zhǎo-ta-sì-wǔcì, ta-'dōu-bú-zài-jia.

I went to see him four or five times, but he wasn't at home.
8. Wǒ-zài-dàxué niànle-'èrnián-le, yě-bù-néng-xiě hén-hǎode-Zhōngguo-zì.

Although I studied for two years in college I can't write very good Chinese characters.
9. Wǒ-zuótian qu-kàn-'Wáng-Xiānsheng. Wó-děngle-bàntiān tā-yě-méi-chū-lai.

Yesterday I went to see Mr. Wang. I waited for a long time but he didn't come out.
10. Wǒ-wàngle-wèn-Máo-Xiānsheng zài-'nǎr-zhù-le. Zhǎolái-zhǎo-qù dōu-zhǎobuzhǎo.

I forgot to ask Mr. Mao where he lives. I searched and searched but wasn't able to find (him).

Pattern 19.5. Expressing 'besides, except for, apart from' (Note 5 below)

(chúle)	N/V	(yǐwài)
<u>chúle</u>	Noun/Verb	<u>yǐwài</u>
chúle	nǐ	yǐwài
'except for you, besides you'		
chúle	zǒu	yǐwài
'except for walking'		
1. Zài-Měiguó chúle-chīdezháo-'Zhōngguo-fàn yě-chīdezháo-'Rìběn-fàn.	In America, besides being able to eat Chinese food, you can also eat Japanese food.	
2. Chúle-'Máo-Xiānsheng-yǐwài, wǒmen-dōu-xǐhuan-chī-hóng-shāo-yú.	Except for Mr. Mao, we all like to eat red-cooked fish.	

3. Chùle-tiánde-yǐwài, wǒ-hái-xǐhuan-chī-suānde.
4. 'Wàn-Jiàoshou chùle-tèbié-xǐhuan-chī 'Gāo-Tàitai-zuò-de-fàn, Zhōngguo-fàn tā-'bù-zěnmò-xǐhuan-chī.
5. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu xǐhuan-táng-cù-yú-yǐwài yě-xǐhuan-chī hóng-shāo-yú.
6. Wǒ-chùle-tīngzhe jiàoyuán-jiāo-'Zhōngguo-huà, hái-měitiān tīngzhe-lùyīn.
7. Wǒmen-shuō 'Gāo-Tàitai-zuò-de-cài-hǎo. Tā-chùle-shuō-"Guòjiǎng"-yǐwài, hái-shuō-hěn-duō-biéde-kèqì-huà.
8. Wǒ-xuézhe-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà-yǐwài, yòu-xuézhe-xiě-'Zhōngguo-zì.
9. Tā-chùle yánjiū-'Zhōngguo-yǔyán-yǐwài, yě-yánjiū-'Rì-běn-yǔyán.
10. Chùle-tā-yǐwài biéde-xuésheng 'dōu-duì-wǒ-hén-hǎo.

Besides sweet things I also like to eat sour things.

Professor Wanamaker, apart from a special liking for Mrs. Gao's cooking, isn't that fond of Chinese food.

Professor Wanamaker, besides liking sweet-and-sour fish, also likes [to eat] red-cooked fish.

In addition to listening to the teacher teach Chinese, I also listen to recordings every day.

We said that the dishes Mrs. Gao made were excellent. Besides saying "You flatter me," she said a lot of other polite things.

Besides learning to speak Chinese, I'm also learning to write Chinese characters.

Besides doing research on the Chinese language, he is also studying Japanese.

Apart from him, the rest of the students are all very nice to me.

#### Pattern 19.6. Concessive Construction (Note 6 below)

V <sub>1</sub>	<u>shì</u>	V <sub>1</sub>
Verb <sub>1</sub>	'is'	Verb <sub>1</sub>
lái	shì	lái
'came all right'		

1. Yòng-kuàizi-chī-fàn, nán-shì-nán, kěshì-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn 'bǐděi-yòng.
2. 'Zhōngguo-fàn hǎo-chī-shì-hǎo-chī, jiù-shì-róngyì chīde-'tài-bǎo-le.
3. Shīzi-tóu dà-shì-dà kěshì-wó-děi-chī-liǎngge.
4. Wǒ-jīntian-qǐng-'Gāo-Xiǎojie chī-biàn-fàn. Tā-chī-shì-chī-le, wó-xiǎng tā-méi-chībǎo.

Eating with chopsticks is hard all right, but you have to use them when you eat Chinese food.

Chinese food is delicious, to be sure. The only thing is, it's easy to overstuff oneself.

The lion's head is big all right, but I must eat two.

I invited Miss Gao to have some ordinary food today. She ate, to be sure, but I don't think she had enough to eat.

- |                                                                           |                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5. Zuótian wǒ-dào-'Gāo-Xiān-sheng-jiā qù-shì-qù-le, kěshi-méi-kànjian-ta. | I <u>did</u> go to Mr. Gao's home today, but I didn't see him.       |
| 6. Wǒ-gàosu-ta-shì-gàosu-ta-le. Tā-dǒng-bu-dǒng wǒ-jiù-bù-zhīdào-le.      | I told him, to be sure, but I don't know if he understood.           |
| 7. Jīntian-'Wáng-Xiǎojie lái-shì-lái-le. Zuò-yìhuǒr-jiù-zǒu-le.           | Miss King did come today. She stayed a while and then left.          |
| 8. Nèige-fànguǎrde-cài hǎo-shì-hǎo, kěshi-gěide-'hén-shǎo.                | The food in that restaurant is good, yes—but the servings are small. |
| 9. Zhèiběn-shū wǒ-niàn-shì-niànguo-le. Xiànzài-'dōu-wàng-le.              | I did read this book, but now I've forgotten it all.                 |
| 10. Shū-mǎi-shì-mǎi-le, kěshi-mǎicuò-le.                                  | I bought the book all right, but I bought the wrong one.             |

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 16 sentences (Note 1)

(In the columns marked by asterisks, only items from the same row may be taken together: hē with tāng, gěi with qián, etc.)

	*		*
duō	hē	diar	tāng
shǎo	gěi	yìdiǎr	qián
	chī		táng
	mǎi		dòufu

II: 16 sentences (Note 1)

(One or the other, but not both, of the columns marked with asterisks may be used.)

*			*
chī	kuài	diar	chī
hē	màn	yìdiǎr	hē
zǒu			zǒu
zuò			zuò

## III: 55 phrases (Note 5)

chúle	chī	shīzi-tóu	yǐwài
	zuò	chǎo-dòufu	
		hóng-shāo-yú	
		chǎo-báicài	
		táng-cù-yú	

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## Review of Four-Syllable Expressions (I)

This and similar exercises in subsequent lessons provide practice in the pronunciation of four-syllable expressions using vocabulary encountered in previous lessons. Items marked with asterisks have undergone a shift from third tone to second tone.

0 0 0	1 0 0	2 0 0
1 tāmende-ne	kāi-chē-le-ma	tā-lái-le-ma
2 xuéguo-le-ma	nín-chīguo-le	nín-xuéguo-le
3 wǒmende-ne	wǒ-zhīdao-le	yǒu-fázi-ma
4 gàosu-le-ma	zuì-duōde-ne	zuì-nánde-ma
3 0 0	4 0 0	
1 dōngběide-ne	Gāo-Tàिताide	
2 nǎ-wǒmende	méi-yìside	
3 yóu-hǎode-ma*	yǒu-xìngqu-ma	
4 kuài-hǎo-le-ma	tài-kèqi-le	
0 1 0	1 1 0	2 1 0
1 xiānsheng-shuō-le	tā-dōu-chī-le	tā-méi-shuōguo
2 róngyi-shuō-ma	shéi-dōu-zhīdao	hái-néng-chī-ma
3 nǐmen-chī-ba	wǒ-xiān-shuō-de	nǐ-cái-zhīdao
4 zhùzai-shānshang	zài-jiā-chī-ma	tài-nán-shuō-le
3 1 0	4 1 0	
1 tā-yǒu-shū-ma	tā-zhù-Sūzhou	
2 méi-yǒu-tāde	shéi-lù-yīn-ne	
3 hén-hǎo-chī-de*	nǐ-huì-shāo-ma	
4 yào-mǎi-shū-ma	mài-qìchē-ma	



0 2 0		1 2 0	2 2 0
1	tāde-fángzi	tā-shuō-shénmo	dāngrán-lái-le
2	biéde-fázi	shéi-chīwán-le	hái-méi-lái-ne
3	wǒmen-míngbai	měitiān-lái-ma	hěn-nán-xué-ma
4	sìge-péngyou	dào-Xī-Hú-le	dà-bái-fángzi

3 2 0		4 2 0
1	dōu-yǒu-fángzi	tā-jiào-shénmo
2	shéi-yǒu-qián-ne	nín-yào-xué-ma
3	ní-xiǎng-shénmo*	wǒ-jiù-lái-le
4	zuì-yǒu-qián-le	màipiàoyuán-ne

0 3 0		1 3 0	2 3 0
1	tāmen-mǎi-le	fēijī-hǎo-ma	tā-hái-yǒu-ma
2	nínde-mǔqin	shífēn-hǎo-ma	hái-néng-xiě-ma
3	wǒmen-zǒu-ba	nǐ-jiā-yuǎn-ma	yǒu-rén-zhǎo-ta
4	tài-bu-hǎo-le	lùyīn-hǎo-ma	zuì-nán-mǎi-le

3 3 0		4 3 0
1	dōu-hén-hǎo-ma*	tā-tài-hǎo-le
2	shéi-xiáng-zǒu-le*	yídìng-zǒu-le
3	ní-mái-bǐ-ma*	yě-yào-mǎi-le
4	jiè-jíběn-le*	wàng-nèr-zǒu-ma

0 4 0		1 4 0	2 4 0
1	chībuxià-le	fēijī-kuài-ma	tā-néng-huà-ma
2	shéide-fùqin	xué-shuō-huà-ma	shéi-ná-zhèige
3	zǎochen-qù-le	wǒ-chī-fàn-le	nǐ-néng-mài-ma
4	kànbujiàn-le	zuò-chē-kuài-ma	zuì-nán-mài-le

3 4 0		4 4 0
1	tā-kǎoshì-le	chē-tài-dà-ma
2	nín-yǒu-fùqin	nín-huì-huà-ma
3	wó-yǒu-dìdi*	nǐ-wèn-mèimei
4	yào-mǎi-sìge	Wàn-Jiàoshòude

## SENTENCE CONVERSION

I. From: Does he also want a little tea?

To: Give one dollar more.

1. Tā-yě-yào-yìdiǎr-chá-ma?
2. Tā-yě-yào-yìdiǎr-qián-ma?
3. Tā-yě-yào-yíkuài-qián-ma?
4. Tā-yé-gěi-yíkuài-qián-ma?
5. Tā-duō-gěi-yíkuài-qián-ma?
6. Nǐ-duō-gěi-yíkuài-qián-ma?
7. Nǐ-duō-gěi-yíkuài-qián-ba.

II. From: Who requested you all to come and borrow books?

To: I said they don't have any good friends.

1. 'Shéi-jiào-nǐmen dōu-lái-jiè-shū?
2. 'Shéi-jiào-tāmen dōu-lái-jiè-shū?
3. 'Shéi-shuō-tāmen dōu-lái-jiè-shū?
4. Wǒ-shuō-tāmen dōu-lái-jiè-shū.
5. Wǒ-shuō-tāmen 'méi-lái-jiè-shū.
6. Wǒ-shuō-tāmen 'méi-you-jiè-shū.
7. Wǒ-shuō-tāmen 'méi-you-hǎo-shū.
8. Wǒ-shuō-tāmen 'méi-you-hǎo-péngyou.

III. From: Anyone can cook fried cabbage.

To: We don't like to eat in restaurants.

1. 'Shéi-dōu-huì-zuò chǎo-báicài.
2. Wǒmen-dōu-huì-zuò chǎo-báicài.
3. Wǒmen-bù-huì-zuò chǎo-báicài.
4. Wǒmen-bù-xǐhuan-zuò chǎo-báicài.
5. Wǒmen-bù-xǐhuan-chī chǎo-báicài.
6. Wǒmen-bù-xǐhuan-chī fànguǎr.

## ANSWERING QUESTIONS

1. 'Wàn-Jiàoshou chīde-hěn-duō. 'Bái-Xiānsheng chīde-'bù-duō. 'Shéi-chīde-tài-bǎo?

2. Bái-táng shi-tiánde, cù shi-suānde. 'Shénmo-shi-tiánde?
3. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng tèbié-xǐhuan-chī-yú. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu tèbié-xǐhuan-chī-ròu. Shéi-bù-xǐhuan-chī-yú?
4. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng shi-'Guǎngdong-rén. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng shi-'Shāndong-rén. Nèige-Guǎngdong-rén xìng-shénmo?
5. Shíge-rén yào-hē-tāng. Sìge-rén yào-hē-chá. Xǐhuan-hē-tāngde-rén-duō-ne, háishi-xǐhuan-hē-chá-de-rén-duō-ne?
6. Táng-shi-tiánde, cù-shi-suānde. Nǐ-shuō-'duì-bu-duì?
7. Fànguǎrde-cài méi-you-'Gāo-Tàitai zuòde-hǎo-chī. Shi-'fànguǎr-zuòde-hǎo háishi-'Gāo-Tàitai-zuòde-hǎo-ne?
8. Péngyou-shuō: " 'Gāo-Tàitai, nǐde-xiǎojie yòu-piàoliang-yòu-cōngmíng." 'Gāo-Tàitai yīnggāi-duì-péngyou shuō-shénmo-kèqì-huà?
9. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu-hē-tāng, 'Bái-Xiānsheng-hē-chá. Hē-'tāng-de-rén shi-shéi?
10. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie-shuō ta-bú-huì-zuò-fàn. 'Gāo-Tàitai-shuō Měiyīng-huì-zuò-fàn. Nǐ-shuō-ta-huì-zuò-fàn bú-huì-zuò-fàn?

### WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

Imagine that you and a Chinese friend, Zhang, are having dinner in a restaurant.

You ask your friend what he would like to eat. He replies that he likes everything, and asks about your preference. You reply that you also like everything. Zhang then asks if it is O.K. to order two dishes and one soup. You say this is fine, and you tell him to speak up first. He says he'd like red-cooked meat. You say you want fried bean curd, and ask what soup to order. Your friend suggests that the two of you should order one cabbage soup. You say this is fine, as you are very fond of cabbage. Zhang remarks that the food in this restaurant is delicious. You say you think you should order one more dish. He asks you to say what more should be ordered. You ask if he likes sweet-and-sour fish. He says he does, but that he prefers to eat red-cooked things. You suggest that in that case you should order a red-cooked fish. To your friend's question whether you can use chopsticks or not, you reply that you can, but that you don't use them very well. He asks if you often eat Chinese food. You say you do, adding that the places where you eat are almost all Cantonese restaurants, and that this is the first time you've come to this restaurant. He suggests that hereafter when you eat Chinese food you should come here to eat.

## NOTES

1. When stative verbs are modified by expressions of amount ('more, a little, etc.'), the following patterns occur:

(a) Duō 'more' and shǎo 'less' come before the main verb, while yìdiǎr (or diar) 'a little' and number-measure-noun phrases (e.g. yíkuài-qían 'one dollar') follow the main verb:

'Duō-gěi-ta-yìdiǎr. }  
                   or  
 'Duō-gěi-ta-diar. } 'Give him a little more.'  
 'Duō-gěi-ta-yíkuài-qían. 'Give him a dollar more.'

(b) When yìdiǎr (or diar) is combined with kuài 'fast' or màn 'slow,' the phrase may appear either before or after the main verb:

Zǒu-'màn-yìdiǎr. (Zǒu-'màn-diar.) }  
                   or  
 'Màn-yìdiǎr-zǒu. ('Màn-diar-zǒu.) } 'Walk a little slower.'

(c) In other cases, the stative verb and yìdiǎr come after the main verb:

Nǐ-kéyì-zuò-'hǎo-yìdiǎr-ma? 'Can you do it a little better?'

2. The verb suffix -zhe forms expressions which correspond to certain -ing phrases in English. A main verb with -zhe attached, and frequently with the sentence particle ne at the end, means 'is (am, are) [doing]':

Wǒ-chīzhe-ne. 'I'm eating.'  
 Wǒ-niànzhe-shū-ne. 'I'm studying.'

A phrase consisting of two verbs, A and B, with -zhe attached to the first (A-zhe B) means '[The subject] while doing A, does B':

Wǒ-chīzhe-fàn niàn-shū. 'I study while eating.'  
 Wǒ-zuòzhe-chī-fàn. 'I eat sitting down.'

3. There is a sentence pattern for mentioning two alternative actions and indicating that if the first is not true, the second automatically is true. The pattern consists of two short verb expressions, the first negative; the second, which is affirmative, is introduced by jiù 'then, it follows (that)':

Tā-měitiān bù-chī-'Zhōngguó-fàn jiù-chī-'Rìběn-fàn. 'If he doesn't eat Chinese food every day, then he eats Japanese food.' [lit. 'He doesn't eat Chinese food every day, then (it follows that) he eats Japanese food.' (The implication is that he eats one or the other.)

Tā-bú-shì-'Zhōngguó-rén jiù-shì-'Rìběn-rén. 'If he isn't Chinese then he's Japanese.'

Often shì 'am, is, are' is added before the verbs if these are not themselves shì. Thus, shì can be added to the first of the two sentences just above, but not to the second:

Tā-měitiān bú-shì-chī-'Zhōngguó-fàn jiù-shì-chī-'Rìběn-fàn.

4. If the second of two related verbal clauses has a negative verb which is preceded by yě 'also' or dōu 'all,' the construction is equivalent to 'although... , yet' or 'but' in English. Thus if you have lost a book and are hunting for it, you might say:

Wó-zhǎolái-zhǎoqù yě-zhǎobuzháo. or  
 Wó-zhǎolái-zhǎoqù dōu-zhǎobuzháo.  
 'I've looked and looked but can't find it.'

5. The expression chúle A yǐwài '[lit.] removing A apart,' in which A is a noun or verb expression, has two different meanings depending on what follows:

- (a) It means 'besides A' if the following clause contains hái, yě, or yòu, all meaning 'also':

Chúle-ròu-yǐwài wǒ-hái-xǐhuan-chī-yú. 'Besides meat I also like to eat fish.'

Chúle-Zhōngguó-shū-yǐwài wó-yě-yǒu-Rìběn-shū. 'Besides Chinese books I also have Japanese books.'

Chúle-tā-yǐwài yòu-yǒu-sāngè-rén-lái-le. 'Besides him three other men came.'

Chúle-bù-xǐhuan chī-ròu-yǐwài wǒ-hái-bù-xǐhuan-chī-yú. 'Besides not liking to eat meat, I also don't like to eat fish.'

- (b) It means 'except for A' if the following clause contains the adverb dōu 'all' or some other expression meaning 'all' or 'more':

Chúle-tā-yǐwài wǒmen-dōu-shuō-Zhōngguó-huà. 'Except for him, we all speak Chinese.'

Chúle-tā-yǐwài méi-yǒu-rén-huì-shuō-Zhōngguó-huà. 'Except for him, there is no one who can speak Chinese.'

In this construction, either chúle or yǐwài may be omitted:

Chúle-ròu-yǐwài wǒ-hái-xǐhuan-chī-yú. or

Ròu-yǐwài wǒ-hái-xǐhuan-chī-yú. or

Chúle-ròu wǒ-hái-xǐhuan-chī-yú.

'Besides meat I also like to eat fish.'

6. Repetition of a verb (or verb phrase), with shì 'be' inserted between the two occurrences, means '[verb] may be true' or '[verb] is true, to be sure.' The construction is often followed by a 'but' clause:

Nèige-nǚ-xuésheng piàoliang-shì-piàoliang, kěshì-tā-bènjíle. 'That girl (student) is beautiful all right, but she's awfully dumb.'

In this construction the second occurrence of the verb can take a suffix as an additional element:

Tā-lái-shì-lái-le, kěshì-wǒ-méi-zài-jīā. 'He came all right, but I wasn't at home.'

7. The expression náchu A lai 'bring out A' (or náchu A qu 'take out A') is ambiguous in that A may be the object of either ná 'take' or chu 'go out':

Náchu-shū-lai. 'Bring the books out.'

Náchu-fángzi-lai. 'Bring (them) out of the house.'

Náchu-shū-qu. 'Take the books out.'

Náchu-fángzi-qu. 'Take (them) out of the house.'

8. The postverb zhǎo meaning 'succeed in [doing]' is used to form resultative verbs (see Lesson 14, Note 6, p. 217):

zhǎozhao 'succeed in finding'

mǎizhao 'succeed in buying'

zhǎobuzhǎo 'be unable to find' (= 'not succeed in finding')

9. The verb bǎo 'be full (in the stomach)' is used to form resultative compounds:

chībǎo 'eat until full, be satiated'

chībubǎo 'be unable to eat one's fill'

chīdebǎo 'be able to eat one's fill'

10. The verb hǎo 'good' is used as an independent verb meaning 'finished' (fàn-hǎo-le 'food's ready') and as a postverb to form resultative compounds meaning 'finish [doing]':

zuòhǎo 'finish doing'

zuòbuhǎo 'be unable to finish doing'

zuòdehǎo 'be able to finish doing'

Observe the significance of the particle -de in distinguishing this construction from the otherwise identical one meaning 'do badly' (Lesson 10, Note 2, p. 136):

zuòbuhǎo 'be unable to finish doing'

zuòde-bu-hǎo 'do badly'

The parallel expressions meaning 'be able to finish doing' and 'do well' are distinguished in speech only by context (in our transcription, we set off -hǎo with a hyphen in the meaning 'do well'):

zuòdehǎo 'be able to finish doing'

zuòde-hǎo 'do well'

11. The verb xiàng 'resemble' has the extended meaning 'such as' (cf. English 'like'):

Wǒ-jiù-huì-xiě jǐge-jiǎndānde-zì, xiàng yī, èr, sān. 'I can write only a few simple characters, such as one, two, three.'

12. The expression bùdéliǎo, which we have encountered in the meaning 'awfully' after a stative verb (piàoliangde-bùdéliǎo 'awfully attractive'), is used independently as an exclamation having approximately the value of English 'My!' or 'Gosh!'

13. The expression suíbiàn, literally 'follow (one's) convenience,' is often

used with kéyi 'permit' or hǎo 'good' in the construction suíbiàn . . . dōu kéyi 'as you please':

Suíbiàn-shénmo-dōu-kéyi. 'Anything will do.'

Suíbiàn-máobi-qiānbǐ dōu-hǎo. 'Either brush or pencil is O.K.'

14. The verb yào 'want' also means 'order (food, in a restaurant)':

Wǒmen-'zài-yào-yíge-cài. 'We are ordering another dish.'



## Lesson 20 CALLING A FRIEND



“Měiyīng, zěnmoyàng?”

Dialogue: Several months after his first visit to the Gaos', Mr. White, who has since been a frequent guest in their home, calls and speaks to Miss Gao.

Bái: Wai, shi-yī-liù-qī-bā-ma?

Hello, is this 1-6-7-8?

Gāo-Tàitai: Shì. Ní-zhǎo-shéi?

It is. Who are you calling?

Bái: Wǒ-shi-Wénshān-ne.\* Nín-shi-Gāo-Tàitai-ma? Nín-hǎo?

This is Vincent.\* Is this Mrs. Gao? How are you?

5

Gāo-Tàitai: Oh, Wénshān-a. Nín-hǎo-ma?

Oh, Vincent. How are you?

Bái: Hǎo, xièxie-nín. Měiyīng-zài-jiā-ma?

Fine, thank you. Is Meiyang at home?

Gāo-Tàitai: Zài-jiā. Nǐ-yào-gēn-ta-shuō-huà-ma?

Yes. Do you want to talk to her?

10

\* Mr. White is now on sufficiently familiar terms with the Gaos so that he is addressed by them as Wenshan. (See Lesson 10, Note 10.) Note also that Miss Gao has dropped the formal nín for the more familiar nǐ in addressing him.

- Bái : Shì.
- Gāo-Tàitai : Hǎo. Qíng-ni-'děng-yiděng.
- Gāo-Xiǎojie : Wai, Wénshān. Wǒ-yìcāi jiù-shì-nǐ. Wó-xiáng-nǐ-jīntiān-zǎoshang yídìng-géi-wó-dǎ-diànhuà. 15
- Bái : Zhēn-cōngming. Nǐ-yìcāi jiù-cāidui-le. Měiyīng, zěnmoyàng? Kǎowán-le-ma? Kǎode-'hǎo-bu-hǎo? 20
- Gāo : Hai, bié-tí-le. Yīngwén guó-wén kǎode-hái-hǎo, kěshì-shùxué kǎode-zāogāo-jíle. Wǒ-kàncuò-le-tímu. 25
- Bái : Zhèi-yě-shì-kǎoshì 'cháng-yǒu-de-shìqing.
- Gāo : Zài-kǎoshì de-shíhou wǒ-yìdiár-yě-bù-zhīdào shì-cuò-le. Kǎowán-le-yǐhòu, yíkàn-tímu cái-zhīdao-shì-cuò-le. 'Ní-kǎode-zěnmoyàng-ne? 30
- Bái : 'Yīngwén-kǎode wó-xiǎng-hái-kéyi. 'Zhōngwén-kǒng-pà-bù-tài-hǎo. 35
- Gāo : Yǔyánxué-ne?
- Bái : Dàgài-yě-'bù-zěnmoyàng.
- Gāo : Xiànzài-wǒ-gàosu-nǐ-yíjiàn-shìqing. Zuótiān-wǒ-fùqīn-mǔqīn-shuō-le, xiànzài-wǒ-fàngjià-le, xià-xīngqī jiào-wǒ-gēn-tāmen-yíkuài qu-lǚ-xíng. Nǐ-cǎi wǒmen-dào-nǎr-qu. 40 45
- Bái : Dào-'Rìběn-qu.
- Gāo : 'Ní-zěnmó-zhīdao-ne?
- Bái : Gāo-Xiānsheng-Gāo-Tàitai tāmen-liǎngwèi-'dōu-xǐhuan-Rìběn-me. Suóyi-nǐ-yì-shuō-lǚxíng wǒ-jiù-zhīdao shì-dào-Rìběn-qu. 50
- Gāo : Nǐ-zhēn-cōngming.
- Bái : Qù-duōshao-shíhou? 'Shén-mó-shíhou-huílai-ne? 55
- Yes.
- All right. Please wait a moment.
- Hello, Vincent. I guessed it was you right away. I thought you would surely call me this morning.
- You're really sharp. You guessed right on the first try. Meiyīng, how are things? Have you finished taking your exams? Did they go well?
- Gosh, don't bring that up. I did rather well in English and Chinese, but I messed up the math exam terribly. I misread a question.
- This is something that happens often in examinations.
- When I was taking the exam I wasn't at all aware of my mistake. After I finished [with the exam], as soon as I looked at the question I realized it was wrong. How did you make out?
- I think the English exam came off all right. I'm afraid the Chinese wasn't too good.
- How about linguistics?
- Most likely not so good either.
- I have something to tell you now. Yesterday my father and mother said that since I'm having vacation, next week I'm to go on a trip with them. Guess where we're going.
- To Japan.
- How did you know?
- Mr. and Mrs. Gao both like Japan, you see. So as soon as you mentioned a trip, I knew it was to Japan.
- You're really sharp.
- How long will you be gone? When are you coming back?

- Gāo: Wǒ-fùqin-mǔqin-tāmen-xiǎng  
zài-nèr-zhù-liǎngge-yuè,  
kěshi-wǒ-bù-gāoxìng zhù- 60  
'nènmo-duō-de-shíhou. Wó-  
xiǎng-gēn-tāmen-shuō 'yíge-  
yuè-jiù-huílai.
- Bái: Hǎojíle. Nènmo-wó-déi-  
qíng-ni-chī-fàn.
- Gāo: Zěnmō-'nènmo-kèqī-ne? 65
- Bái: Nǐ-'shénmo-shíhou yǒu-  
gōngfu? Wǒmen-yíkuàr-  
chī-fàn. Chī-fàn-yǐhòu  
wǒmen-zài-qu-kàn-diàn-  
yǐngr, 'hǎo-bu-hǎo? 70
- Gāo: Hǎo. Wǒmen-yǐjīng-fàng-  
jià-le. Wó-něitiān-dōu-  
yǒu-gōngfu.
- Bái: Háishi-nǐ-shuō shénmo-  
shíhou-hǎo. 75
- Gāo: Xīngqīsān 'hǎo-bu-hǎo? Ní-  
yǒu-gōngfu-ma?
- Bái: Hǎo. Ní-xǐhuan-chī-shén-  
mo-ne?
- Gāo: Wǒ-'shénmo-dōu-xǐhuan-chī. 80  
'Zhōngguo-fàn 'wàiguó-fàn  
wǒ-'dōu-xǐhuan. Wó-xiáng-  
qilai-le—shūdiàn-fùjìn yǒu-  
yíge-'běifāng-fànguǎr jiào-  
Wànnián-Fànguǎr. Nǐ-zhī- 85  
dao-ma?
- Bái: Zài-shūdiàn-něibiār?
- Gāo: Zài-shūdiàn-dōngbiār.
- Bái: Oh, nǐ-shuō-wó-xiángqilai- 90  
le. Kěshi-wǒ-méi-qu-chī-  
guo. Tīngshuō-nèrde-cài  
zuòde-hén-hǎo.
- Gāo: Wǒmen-dào-Wànnián-Fàn-  
guǎr chī-běifāng-fàn 'hǎo-  
bu-hǎo? 95
- Bái: Hǎojíle. Wó-hén-xǐhuan  
chī-běifāng-fàn. Wǒmen-  
jiù-dào-nèr-qu-chī.
- Gāo: Hǎo-ba.
- Bái: Wǒmen-dào-nǎr kàn-diàn- 100  
yǐngr-qu-ne?
- Gāo: Tīngshuō Zhōngguo-Diàn-
- My father and mother plan to  
stay there for two months, but  
I'm not happy about staying that  
long. I'm going to tell them that  
I'd like to come back in one  
month.
- Fine. So I must ask you to din-  
ner.
- Why so polite?
- When are you free? Let's have  
dinner together and [after eat-  
ing] go see a movie, O.K.?
- Fine. We're already on vaca-  
tion. I'm free every day.
- It would be better for you to set  
a time.
- Is Wednesday all right? Are you  
free?
- Fine. What would you like to  
eat?
- I like (to eat) everything. Chi-  
nese food, foreign food—I like  
them both. It's just occurred to  
me—near the bookstore there's  
a Northern restaurant called the  
Ten Thousand Years Restaurant.  
Do you know it?
- On which side of the bookstore?
- East of the bookstore.
- Oh, I realized it as you were  
speaking. But I've never gone  
there to eat. I hear their food is  
very good.
- Shall we go to the Ten Thousand  
Years Restaurant and have  
Northern Chinese food?
- Fine. I like Northern food very  
much. So let's go there for din-  
ner.
- Fine.
- Where shall we (go) see a  
movie?
- I hear the movie being shown at

yīngryuàn yǎn-de-nèibù-piānzi bú-cuò. Shi-yíbù-lì-shǐ-piānzi. Gùshi-xiěde-hǎo, yǎnyuán-yǎnde-hǎo. Ní-xǐhuan-lìshǐ-piānzi-ma?	105	the China Theater isn't bad. It's a historical movie. The story is well written, and the actors do their parts well. Do you like historical movies?
Bái : Wó-xǐhuan. Wǒmen-jiù-dào-Zhōngguo-Diànyīngryuàn qu-kàn-ba.	110	I do. So let's go to the China Theater.
Gāo : Tīngshuō-nèibù-piānzi hēnduō-rén-kàn. Pà-mǎibuzhǎo-piào-ba.		I hear a lot of people are seeing that movie. I'm afraid we may not be able to buy tickets.
Bái : Wǒ-xiǎn-qu-mǎi-piào. Wǒmen-kàn-jiúdiǎn-nèichǎng hǎo-ma?	115	I'll buy the tickets ahead of time. Let's take in the nine o'clock show, O. K. ?
Gāo : Kéyi.		O. K.
Bái : Xīngqī sān-wǎnshàng liù-diǎn-zhōng wǒ-dào-fǔshàng-qu-jiē-ni.	120	I'll come to your home for you Wednesday at six.
Gāo : Hǎo, xièxie-ni.		Fine, thank you.
Bái : Yídìng-le.		That's definite.
Gāo : Yídìng. Zàijiàn.		Sure. Good-bye.
Bái : Zàijiàn, zàijiàn.		Good-bye.

## VOCABULARY

běifāng	the North; northern region (PW)
bù	(measure for movies and sets of things, e.g. books)
cāi	guess (that), figure out (that) (TV)
chǎng	(measure for showings of movies)
dǎ	hit, strike (TV) (Note 3 below)
dǎkai	open (TV) [lit. strike open] (Note 3 below)
dàgài	likely, probable; probably, in all probability; approximately (MA) [lit. big outline]
diànhuà	telephone (N) [lit. electric speech]
diànyīngryuàn	movie theater (N) [lit. electric shadow hall]
fàngjià	have vacation (IV) [lit. release leave]
fùjìn	vicinity (PW) [lit. join near]
gāoxìng	be happy (SV) [lit. high spirits]
guówén	Chinese (N) [lit. national language] (Note 6 below)
gùshi	story, narrative (N) [lit. old matter]
hai	(sigh of dejection, regret, etc.)

jiàn	(measure for matters, tasks, etc.)
jiē	greet, meet; receive (guests, ships, letters) (TV)
kǒngpà	fear (that), be afraid (of), be afraid (to) (TV)
lìshǐ	history (N)
me	(particle indicating obviousness) (Note 9 below)
nánfāng	the South; southern region (PW)
pà	fear, be afraid of (V)
piānzi	reel, movie (N)
qǐlái	get up (IV) [lit. rise come] (Note 2 below)
shìqíng	affair, matter (N)
shùxué	mathematics (N) [lit. number study]
tí	carry, lift, take, bring (up), mention (TV)
tímu	topic (N)
yǎn	act (in); put on (a performance) (TV)
yǎnyuán	actor (N) [lit. act person]
yí, yì	as soon as (AD) (Note 1 below)
zāogāo	messed up (SV) (Note 8 below)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                                                                |                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| yì                                                             | once, as soon as                                                                  |
| wǒ-yì-tīng-ta-shuō-                                            | as soon as I heard him                                                            |
| huà                                                            | speak                                                                             |
| jiù-zhīdao ta-bú-shi-                                          | then I knew he wasn't Chi-                                                        |
| Zhōngguó-rén                                                   | nese                                                                              |
| 1. Wǒ-yì-tīng-ta-shuō-huà, jiù-zhīdao ta-bú-shi-'Zhōngguó-rén. | As soon as I heard him speak I knew he wasn't Chinese.                            |
| nǐ-yì-shuō                                                     | as soon as you spoke                                                              |
| wǒ-cái-zhīdao                                                  | I only then knew                                                                  |
| 2. Nǐ-yì-shuō wǒ-cái-zhīdao.                                   | I only found out about [lit. knew of] it when you mentioned it.                   |
| wǒ-yì-chī                                                      | I took a taste                                                                    |
| zhēn-shi-Guǎngdong-fàn                                         | it really was Cantonese food                                                      |
| 3. Wǒ-yì-chī zhēn-shi-Guǎngdong-fàn.                           | I took a taste and sure enough it really was Cantonese food.                      |
| gùshi                                                          | story                                                                             |
| yì-tīng-tā-yào-shuō-                                           | on hearing he was going to                                                        |
| gùshi                                                          | tell a story                                                                      |
| 4. Yì-tīng-tā-yào-shuō-gùshi háizi-'dōu-pǎolai-le.             | As soon as they heard he was going to tell a story the children all came running. |

fàngjià  
dàxué-yí-fàngjià

wǒ-jiù-huí-guó

5. Dàxué-yí-fàngjià wǒ-jiù-huí-guó.

guówén  
gēn-Yīngwén

6. Guówén-gēn-Yīngwén yíyàng-nán-ma?

pà  
xuésheng-dōu-pà-ta

7. Nèige-xiānsheng xuésheng-dōu-pà-ta.

kǒngpà

8. Kǒngpà chībúwán-nènmó-duō-cài.

qǐlai  
'shénmó-shíhou-qǐlai?

9. Ní-zǎochen-'shénmó-shíhou-qǐlai?

ná  
nákilai

10. Wǒmen-yíkuài-nákilai-ba.

nákilai  
nákí-shū-lai

11. Nákí-shū-lai-niàn-yí cì.

nákilai  
nábūqilái

12. Nènmó-duōde-dōngxi wǒ-ná-būqilái.

jiàn

zhèijiàn-shì

13. Zhèijiàn-shì 'hěn-róngyì-zuò.

shì  
shìqing

14. Zhèijiàn-shìqing hěn-nán-zuò.

diànyǐngr  
diànyǐngyuàn

have a vacation  
as soon as college vacation  
starts

I'll go back to my own country

As soon as college vacation starts I'll go back to my own country.

Chinese (literature)  
and English

Is Chinese as hard as English?

fear  
students all fear him

The students are all afraid of that teacher.

fear or be afraid that

I'm afraid we can't finish so many courses.

get up  
get up at what time?

When do you get up in the morning?

grasp  
lift up

Let's lift it together.

lift (up)  
take up your book

Pick up your book and take a turn reading.

lift up  
unable to lift (up)

I can't lift so many things.

(measure for matters,  
tasks, etc.)

this task

This job is easy to do.

affair, task

affair, task

This job is hard to do.

movie  
movie theater



15. Fànguǎr lí-diànyǐngyuàn-hěn-jìn.

dǎ

16. Bié-dǎ-ta.

diànhuà

dǎ-diànhuà

gěi-ta-dǎ-diànhuà

17. Wó-déi-gěi-ta-dǎ-diànhuà.

dǎ

dǎ-fànguǎr

18. Dǎ-fànguǎr-dào-shūdiàn  
yǒu-sānlǐ-lù.

dǎkai

19. Qíng-nǐmen-bǎ-shū-dǎkai.

dǎdao

fùjìn

20. Yǐjīng-dǎdao-chéngde-fùjìn.

tímu

wèn-tímu

21. Xiānsheng-wèn-ni 'shénmo-tímu?

lìshǐ

xué-Zhōngguó-lìshǐ

22. Wǒmen-jīntian kāishǐ-xué  
Zhōngguó-lìshǐ.

bù

zhèibù-shū

23. Zhèibù-shū yígòng-yǒu-sān-běn.

piānzi

nèibù-piānzi

24. Nèibù-piānzi hǎode-bùdé-liǎo.

yǎn

yǎn-diànyǐngr

25. Wǒmen-xuéxiào jīntian-yǎn-diànyǐngr.

yǎnyuán

yǎnde-hén-hǎo

26. Nèige-yǎnyuán yǎnde-hén-hǎo.

chǎng

The restaurant is close to the movie theater.

hit, strike

Don't hit him.

telephone

make a phone call

call him on the phone

I have to phone him.

from

from the restaurant

It's three miles from the restaurant to the bookstore.

open

Please open your books.

fight up to

vicinity

The fighting has already reached the vicinity of the city.

topic, problem

pose a problem

What problem did the teacher put to you?

history

study Chinese history

Today we begin the study of Chinese history.

set (of books)

this set of books

Altogether there are three volumes in this set of books.

movie

that movie

That movie is terrific.

put on a performance

show a movie

Our school is showing a movie today.

actor

act very well

That actor performs very well.

showing of a movie



- yǎnle-sānchǎng  
27. Nèibù-piānzi jīntian-yǎnle-  
'sānchǎng.  
shown three times  
That movie was shown three times today.
- nèichǎng  
bādiǎn-nèichǎng  
28. Wǒmen-kàn 'bādiǎn-nèichǎng  
'hǎo-bu-hǎo?  
that showing  
the eight o'clock show  
How about our seeing the eight o'clock show?
- dàgài  
dàgài-bù-lái  
29. Tā-míngtiān dàgài-bù-lái.  
probably  
probably isn't coming  
He probably isn't coming tomorrow.
- dàgài  
dàgài-yǒu-yìlǐ-lù  
30. Fànguǎn-lí-zhèr dàgài-yǒu-yìlǐ-lù.  
approximately  
about one mile  
The restaurant is about a mile from here.
- cāi  
31. Nǐ-cāi tā-shì-'něiguó-rén.  
guess  
Guess what nationality he is.
- shùxué  
32. Zhōngguó-rén duì-shùxué-hén-hǎo.  
mathematics  
Chinese are very good at mathematics.
- tí  
tíqilai  
tíqilai-nèige-rén  
33. Nǐ-tíqilai-nèige-rén 'wó-yě-rènshi.  
lift, raise; mention  
mention  
mention that man  
(Now that) you mention that man, I also know him.
- jiē  
34. Wó-děi-dào-chē-zhàn qu-jiē-ta.  
meet, greet  
I have to go to the bus station to meet him.
- jiēdào  
35. Nǐ-jiēdàole-nǐ-péngyoude-'xìn-méi-you?  
receive (a letter)  
Did you get a letter from your friend?
- jiēzhao  
méi-jiēzháo  
36. Wǒ-lái wǎn-le. Méi-jiēzháo-ta.  
succeed in meeting  
failed to meet  
I came late and missed him.
- běifāng  
37. Wǒ-zuì-xǐhuan-chī-de shì-běifāng-cài.  
northern region  
What I like to eat most is Northern cooking.
- nánfāng  
38. Guǎngdong-rén dāngrán-shì-nánfāng-rén.  
southern region  
Cantonese of course are Southerners.
- zāogāo  
39. Nèige-piānzi zāogāo-jíle.  
messed up, confused  
That movie was a mess.

hai  
40. Hai, wǒ-xuébuhuì-Zhōngwén.

me  
kǎodeshàng

tā-hěn-cōngming-me  
41. Wó-xiǎng tā-yídìng-kǎode-  
shàng, yīnwei-tā-hěn-cōng-  
ming-me.

gāoxìng  
gāoxìng-nín-néng-lái  
42. Wó-hěn-gāoxìng nín-néng-  
lái.

(a sigh)  
Gosh, I can't learn Chinese.

you see  
able to pass the entrance  
exams

he's intelligent, you see  
I think he can certainly pass the  
entrance exams since he's in-  
telligent, you see.

happy  
happy that you can come  
I'm very happy that you can  
come.

### PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 20.1. Use of yí as an Adverb (Note 1 below)

S	<u>yí/yì</u>	V	(O)
Subject	<u>yí/yì</u>	Verb	(Object)
nǐ	yí	gàosu	ta
'as soon as you tell him'			

1. Nèige-xuésheng 'zhēn-cōng-ming. Shàng-kè-de-shíhou, xiānsheng-yí-jiào tā-jiu-míngbai.
2. Wǒ-niàn-'Yīngwén, 'zěnmò-niàn-yě-bù-huì. Wǒ-niàn-'guówén 'yí-niàn-jiu-huì-le.
3. Wǒ-yí-kàn-biǎo, yǐjīng-bā-diǎn-zhōng-le. Kǒngpà-ta-bù-lái-le.
4. Wó-mǔqīn-shuō-le, wǒ-yí-fàng-jià wǒmen-jiu-dào-Húnán-qu-le.
5. Jīntian wǒ-yì-chūqu jiu-yùjian-'Bái-Xiānsheng-le.
6. Nèizhī-bǐ wǒ-yí-kàn jiu-zhī-dao-shi-'Gāo-Xiǎojiède.
7. Guǎngdong-fàn tài-hǎo-chī-le. Wǒ-yì-chī jiu-chīde-tài-bǎo-le.

That student is really bright. When he goes to a class, as soon as the teacher presents (something) he immediately understands it.

I can't master English no matter how I study. But whenever I study Chinese, I get it right away.

When I looked at my watch it was already eight o'clock. I'm afraid he isn't coming after all.

My mother said that as soon as I go on vacation we will go to Hunan.

Today I had no sooner gone out than I met Mr. White.

As soon as I saw that pen I knew it was Miss Gao's.

Cantonese food is too delicious. Whenever I eat it I overstuff myself.

- 8. 'Qián-Xiānshengde-nèi-jǐge-háizi 'hén-xǐhuan-tīng-gùshi. Wǒ-yí-qù tāmen-jiu-jiào-wǒ-shuō-gùshi.
- 9. Zuótian kànjian-nèige-nǚ-háizi. Wǒ-yí-kàn-ta jiu-shi-Yīngguo-rén.
- 10. 'Gāo-Tàitai-hǎojíle. Wǒ-yí-qù ta-jiu-qíng-wo zài-tā-jiā-chī-fàn. Pà-tài-máfan-ta-le.
- 11. Wó-hén-xǐhuan yánjiu-kēxué. Wǒ-yí-dào-túshūguǎn jiu-kàn-kēxué-shū.
- 12. 'Zhōngguo-zì hěn-nán-xiě. Wǒ-yì-xiě jiu-xiěcuò-le.
- 13. Nèige-xuésheng-hěn-qíguài. Yì-kǎoshì tā-jiu-bìng.
- 14. Wó-kǒngpà yòng-kuàizi-yòng-de-bú-tài-hǎo. Wǒ-yí-yòng-'kuàizi-chī-fàn, biéde-rén-dōu-kàn-wo.
- 15. Wǒ-yì-chī, zhēn-hǎo-chī-jíle.

Mr. Qian's children love to listen to stories. Whenever I go there they ask me to tell a story.

I saw that girl yesterday. I took one look and sure enough she was English.

Mrs. Gao is very nice. Whenever I go (there) she invites me to eat at her home. I'm afraid it's too much trouble for her.

I love to study science. Whenever I go to the library I read science books.

Chinese characters are hard to write. Whenever I write them I do it wrong.

That student is pretty queer. Whenever there are exams he gets sick.

I'm afraid I don't use chopsticks too well. Whenever I eat with chopsticks everyone looks at me.

I took a taste, and sure enough it really was delicious.

Pattern 20.2. Use of qǐlai as a Postverb (Note 2 below)

V	-qilai	
Verb	'up'	
ná	-qilai	'take up'
xiáng	-qilai	'recall'

- 1. Zuótian xiǎng-kàn-diànyǐngr. Dàole-diànyǐngyuàn cái-xiáng-qilai wàngle-ná-qián-le.
- 2. Nèige-háizi 'hén-xǐhuan-huà-huà. Yì-náqǐ-bǐ-lai jiu-huà-huà.
- 3. Kànqilai zhèijiàn-shìqing hěn-máfan.
- 4. Yǔyánxué yánjiuqilai 'hén-yǒu-yìsi.

Yesterday I planned to go to a movie. Only after reaching the theater did I remember that I'd forgotten to bring any money.

That child loves to draw. Whenever he picks up a pen he makes a drawing.

On examination, this matter is quite a nuisance.

Studying linguistics is very interesting.

- |                                                                         |                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5. Zuò-chē-hěn-jìn. Zóuqilai-hén-yuǎn.                                  | It's close if you go by car. It's quite far if you walk.                                                |
| 6. Nèige-rén wǒ-jiànguò, kěshi-wǒ-xiǎngbùqǐlái tā-xìng-shén-mo-le.      | I've seen that man, but I can't remember what his name is.                                              |
| 7. Shuōqilai wó-yé-déi-zǒu-le.                                          | Speaking (of it), I have to go too.                                                                     |
| 8. Shīzi-tóu hén-hǎo-chī. Kěshi-zuòqilai-hěn-máfan.                     | Lion's head is delicious. But making it is a lot of trouble.                                            |
| 9. Wó-xiǎngqilai-le. Jīntian shí-xīngqīliù. Wǒmen-děi-qu-kàn-diànyǐngr. | It has occurred to me that today is Saturday. We must go see a movie.                                   |
| 10. Nèige-zì wǒ-wàngle-niàn-shén-mo-le. 'Zěnmó-xiǎng yé-xiǎngbùqǐlái.   | I've forgotten how that character is read. No matter how (hard) I think of it, I still can't recall it. |
| 11. Nèiběn-shū wǒ-náqilai-yíkan shí-yìběn-gùshi-shū.                    | I took up the book and glanced at it, and sure enough it was a story book.                              |
| 12. Zuò-'Zhōngguó-fàn xuéqilai-hěn-róngyi.                              | Learning how to cook Chinese food is very easy.                                                         |
| 13. Nèige-háizi nǐ-yì-shuōqi-lǎo-hu-lai tā-jiù-pà.                      | As soon as you mention a tiger to that child, he gets scared.                                           |
| 14. Wǒ-nábuqi nèige-dōngxī-lai.                                         | I can't lift (up) that thing.                                                                           |
| 15. Nèige-háizi tài-xiǎo. Ta-ná-buqi nèiběn-dà-shū-lai.                 | That child is too small. He can't lift that big book.                                                   |

Pattern 20.3. Expressions with dǎ (note 3 below)

Pattern 20.3 a.

<u>dǎ</u>	Noun	
dǎ	mén	'knock on the door'
dǎ	diànhuà	'make a phone call'

Pattern 20.3 b.

<u>dǎ</u>	Place Word	
dǎ	zhèr	'from here'

Pattern 20.3 c.

<u>dǎ</u>	Verb	
dǎ	-kai	'open up'

- |                                                                           |                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Zuótiān wǒ-huí-jia-dǎ-mén. Dǎle-yǒu-yíge-zhōngtóu, yě-méi-rén-kāi-mén. | Yesterday I returned home and knocked on the door. I knocked for an hour, but no one opened the door. |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

2. Wǒ-'jiù-pà-wǒ-mèimei dǎ-diànhuà. Yì-dǎ jiu-shuō-liǎngge-zhōngtóu.

The only thing I'm afraid of is my younger sister making a phone call. Whenever she calls she talks for a couple of hours.
3. Shàng-kè-de-shíhou, jiàoyuán-shuō: "Qíng-nǐmen-bǎ-shū xiān-dǎkai."

When we go to class, the teacher says: "Please first open your books."
4. Zuótian-'Gāo-Xiǎojie géi-wó-dǎle-'sāncì-diànhuà.

Yesterday Miss Gao phoned me three times.
5. Liǎngge-háizi dáqilai-le.

The two children have begun to fight.
6. Rén-'dōu-pǎo-le, yīnwei-yǐ-jīng-dǎdào Nán-Hú-fùjìn-le.

Everyone has fled, as the fighting has already reached the vicinity of South Lake.
7. Nèige-jiàoyuán jiāo-shū-de-fázi 'zhēn-hǎo. Jiāo-lìshǐ-de-shíhou ta-bú-jiào-wǒmen-dǎkai-shū. Tā-xiān-wèn-wǒmen-tímu.

That teacher's method of teaching is really good. When teaching history he doesn't tell us to open our books. He first poses us problems.
8. Dá-Niǚyue-dào-Sānfánshì zuò-chuán bu-zhīdào-yào-jǐtiān.

I don't know how many days it takes from New York to San Francisco by boat.
9. Jīntian wó-gěi-'Gāo-Xiǎojie dǎ-diànhuà. Dǎle-sìcì, ta-dōu-bú-zài-jiā.

Today I called Miss Gao. I called four times, but she was never at home.
10. Dǎ-zhèr wàng-béi-guǎi jiu-dào-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā.

Turn north from here and you'll get to Mr. Gao's home.

Pattern 20.4. More Resultative Verb Compounds

V <sub>1</sub>	( <u>bu</u> / <u>de</u> )	V <sub>2</sub>
Verb <sub>1</sub>	( <u>bu</u> / <u>de</u> )	Verb <sub>2</sub>
tīng	bu	míngbai
'unable to understand (aurally)'		

1. Nèige-rén-zhēn-bèn. Lián-'mén-dōu-dǎbukāi.

That man is really a dope. He can't even open the door.
2. Zhèige-mén kāibukāi-le. 'Zěnmó-dǎ yé-dǎbukāi.

This door can't be opened. No matter how (hard) you try, you can't open it.
3. Wǒ-shuōle-bàntiān. Nǐ-tīng-'míngbai-le-méi-you?

I've been talking for a long time. Have you been understanding?
4. Tā-hěn-cōngmíng. Yì-'xué-jiu-xuéhuì.

He's very bright. As soon as he studies (something) he gets it.

5. Wǒ-chīgòu-le. Bù-néng-duō-chī-le.
6. Nèige-xuésheng zhēn-bu-cōng-míng. 'Nèige-zì-dōu-méi-xiěduì.
7. Nèige-xiānsheng cháng-bá-wǒ-de-míngzì xiěcuò-le.
8. Qíng-ni bǎ-chē-mén-dǎkai.
9. Xuéxiàode-fàn bù-hǎo-chī. Wó-měitiān dōu-chībubǎo.
10. Ní-bá-wǒde-shìqing gēn-ta-'shuōhǎo-le-méi-you?
11. Tā-shuō wǒ-'zuótian-qu-kàn-diànyǐngr-le. Tā-zhēn-cāi-duì-le.
12. Tā-shuō-de-huà wǒ-yìdiár-yě-tīngbumíngbai.
13. Kāi-qìchē 'zěnmò-xué wó-yě-xuébuhuì.
14. Wó-hén-xǐhuan chī-Zhōngguó-fàn. Wó-'zěnmò-chī yě-chī-bugòu.
15. Nèige-jiàoyuán-de-tímu hěn-tèbié. Ní-'zěnmò-cāi yě-cāi-buzháo.
16. Nǐ-wèi-'shénmò lái-late-le-ne?
17. Ní-xiǎng-wǒ-xué-Zhōngwén 'xuédehuì-xuébuhuì?
18. Tā-jīntian dào-xuéxiào qùwǎn-le.
19. Wǎnfàn 'liùdiǎn-zhōng 'zuò-dehǎo-zuòbuhǎo?
20. Wǒ-zuò-'qìchē-lái. Yíding-láibuwǎn.

I've eaten enough. I can't eat very much.

That student is really not very bright. He didn't write any characters correctly.

That teacher often writes my name wrong.

Please open the car door.

The school food is unappetizing. Every day I can't get filled (up).

Did you reach an agreement with him on that business of mine?

He said I went to the movies yesterday. He really guessed right.

I can't understand the least bit of what he's saying.

No matter how (hard) I study driving, I can't learn.

I love [to eat] Chinese food. No matter how (much) I eat I can't eat enough.

That teacher's questions are pretty peculiar. No matter how you guess you can't guess them.

Why have you come late?

Do you think I can learn Chinese?

He was late (in going) to school today.

Can you finish cooking dinner by six o'clock?

I'm coming by car. I certainly can't be late.

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

### I: 48 phrases (Note 1)

jiàoyuán	yí	kànjian	wǒ
jiàoshòu		gàosu	nǐ
xiānsheng		wèn	tā
tàitai		jiào	

PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

Review of Four-Syllable Expressions (II)

(Asterisks mark expressions which have undergone a change of third tone to second tone.)

0 0 1		1 0 1		2 0 1	
1	tāmende-shū		tā-hē-de-tāng		tīng-xuésheng-shuō
2	xuéshengde-chē		nín-kāide-chē		nín-xuéde-duō
3	nǐmende-jiā		nǐ-chīde-jī		wǒ-náde-shū
4	màile-de-chē		tài-duōde-chē		zuì-róngyi-shuō
3 0 1		4 0 1			
1	dōu-xǐhuan-chī		xiān-xiàle-shān		
2	Húběide-duō		shéi-kànde-duō		
3	wó-xiǎngbuchū *		wǒ-niànle-shū		
4	tài-hǎode-shū		zuì-dàde-shān		
0 1 1		1 1 1		2 1 1	
1	tāmen-jiēhūn		yīnggāi-duō-chī		tā-huí-jiā-chī
2	shéide-shū-duō		nín-hē-sānbēi		Húnán-shān-duō
3	nǐmen-duō-chī		yǒu-sānqiān-duō		wǒ-méi-tīngshuō
4	niànde-zhēn-duō		dà-shān-zhēn-gāo		jiào-shéi-xiān-chī
3 1 1		4 1 1			
1	tā-yě-tīngshuō		tā-niàn-gāozhōng		
2	shídidiǎn-duō-zhōng		shéi-zuò-fēijī		
3	wó-mǎi-sānzhī *		mǎi-lùyīnjī		
4	bìděi-jiēhūn		zuì-huì-jiāo-shū		
0 2 1		1 2 1		2 2 1	
1	tāmen-hái-shuō		tā-dāngrán-hē		Zhōngwén-nán-shuō
2	xuésheng-méi-tīng		nín-xiān-lái-chī		shéi-néng-lái-chī
3	wǒmen-hái-chī		wǒ-gāi-huí-jiā		wǒ-xué-shítian
4	wàngle-ná-shū		qìchē-shéi-kāi		zuò-chuán-huí-jiā
3 2 1		4 2 1			
1	tā-qīng-shéi-chī		tā-jiào-shéi-shuō		
2	shéi-xiǎng-huí-jiā		shéi-zuì-néng-chī		
3	ní-hěn-néng-chī *		nǐ-yào-ná-shū		
4	zuì-hǎo-rén-duō		xiànzài-hái-chī		



0 3 1	1 3 1	2 3 1
1 shuōde-hěn-duō	tā-jīāo-Měiyīng	tā-néng-xiě-shū
2 tiānde-hǎo-chī	nín-kāishǐ-shuō	nín-méi-mǎi-zhōng
3 yǒude-yě-shuō	bǐ-jī-hǎo-chī	yǒu-rén-kǎo-shū
4 rènshi-hěn-duō	qìchē-hěn-duō	tèbié-hǎo-chī
0 4 1	1 4 1	2 4 1
1 tāmen-yào-chī	fēijī-zuì-duō	tā-méi-zài-jiā
2 fángzi-tài-gāo	cháng-shuō-yào-chī	nín-xué-sì tiān
3 nǐmen-huì-shuō	wǒ-gāi-lù-yīn	yǒu-rén-yào-chē
4 dàde-qìchē	dì-sānhào-chē	jiào-shéi-lù-yīn
3 3 1	4 3 1	
1 tā-xiáng-mǎi-shū *	tā-yào-mǎi-shū	
2 hái-yóu-hěn-duō *	nín-zhù-wǔtiān	
3 wó-hén-xiǎng-shuō *	yě-tài-jiǎndān	
4 fàn-hén-hǎo-chī *	sìwàn-jiǔqiān	
3 4 1	4 4 1	
1 kāishǐ-niàn-shū	gōnggòng-qìchē	
2 nín-yě-yònggōng	shéi-huì-lù-yīn	
3 wó-xiǎng-mài-shū *	nǐ-yào-jiè-shū	
4 sì-wǔ-liù-qī	jiàoshòu-kàn-shū	

## A CONVERSATION

Translate the following conversation between Mr. White and Mr. Mao.

Máo: 'Bái-Xiānsheng, nín-hǎo-ma? 'Háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn-le.

Bái: Oh, Máo-Xiānsheng, ní-hǎo. Wǒmen-'háojǐu-bú-jiàn-le.

Máo: Zěnmoyàng, tài-máng-ma?

Bái: Duì-le. Yǒu-yìdiǎr-máng.

Máo: Nín-yào-dào-nǎr-qu?

Bái: Wǒ-'bú-dào-nǎr-qu. Wǒ-zài-zhèr dēng-péngyou.

Máo: Nín-dēng-shéi?

Bái: Wó-dēng-'Gāo-Xiáojie. Tā-jiào-wo-'sìdiǎn-zhōng zài-zhèr-dēng-ta.

Xiànzài-yǐjīng kuài-wúdiǎn-le. Tā-hái-méi-lái-ne.

Máo: 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-tāmen yào-dào-'Rìběn-qu-le. Shì-ma?

Bái: Duì-le. Dàgài-tāmen xià-xīngqī jiu-zǒu-le.

Máo: 'Gāo-Xiānsheng zuì-gāoxìng dào-'Rìběn-qu-le. Tāmen-zài-'Rìběn yào-zhù-'duōshao-shíhou-ne?

Bái: Kǒngpà-yào-zhù 'yì-liǎngge-yuè-ba.

Máo: Kěshi-nín-gēn-Gāo-Xiǎojie yào-'háo-jiǔ-bu-jiàn-le.

Bái: Duì-le.

Máo: Nín-yǐhòu qǐng-'cháng-dào-shūdiàn-lai.

Bái: Wǒ-xiànzài yǐjīng-kǎowán-le. Bú-tài-máng-le. Kéyì-cháng-dào-shū-diàn-qu. 'Máo-Xiānsheng, qǐng-wèn-ni. Zhè-fùjìn yǒu-diànhuà-ma? Wó-xiǎng-gěi-Gāo-jia dǎ-ge-diànhuà, wènwen-'Gāo-Xiǎojie yǐjīng-'chūlai-le-méi-you.

Máo: Gōngyuán-lǐbiar, wàng-'zuó-guǎi nège-xiǎo-fángzi jiu-shi-dǎ-diànhuà-de-dìfang.

Bái: Xièxie-ni.

Máo: Zàijiàn.

Bái: Zàijiàn.

#### ENGLISH TO CHINESE

Put yourself in the role of Mr. White narrating the following to a Chinese friend.

Our school has now begun its vacation. Vacation will last about two months. Some students have returned home, some have gone to other places on trips. I plan to do some more studying during vacation. When I left home, my father and mother hoped I would be a good student, so I must work hard. It will soon be almost a year since I've come to China. I've made a number of friends, and they have been very nice to me. Mr. and Mrs. Gao are awfully nice to me. Every time I go to their home they insist on my eating with them. Mrs. Gao knows I like red-cooked dishes. Then there's Miss Gao, who is also a good friend of mine. We often talk together, or study a little language and literature. She is both intelligent and attractive. They are going on a trip soon and I won't be able to see them for a month or two.

## ANSWERING QUESTIONS

1. 'Gāo-Xiáojie měi-yíge-xīngqī kàn-liǎngcì-diànyǐngr. 'Wàn-Xiáojie liǎngge-xīngqī kàn-yíci-diànyǐngr. 'Shéi-zuì-xǐhuan kàn-diànyǐngr?
2. Kǎoshì-de-shíhou, lìshǐ-tímu wǒ-yí-kàn-jiu-dǒng. Shùxué-tímu wǒ-kànle-bàntiān yě-méi-dǒng. Nǐ-shuō-'shénmo-róngyì?
3. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng yí-fàngjià jiu-kàn-diànyǐngr. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng suí-rán-fàngjià, 'háishi-niàn-shū-xiě-zì. Nǐ-shuō tāmen-liǎngge-rén 'shéi-shi-hǎo-xuésheng?
4. Zhèige-háizi xǐhuan-dǎ-rén. Nèige-háizi 'bù-dǎ-rén. Nǐ-shuō 'něige-háizi-hǎo?
5. Yǎn-diànyǐngr shi-zài-'nár-yǎn-ne?
6. 'Qián-Xiānsheng jiā lí-nǐ jiā-hěn-jìn. Tā-fùjìn jiù-shi-túshūguǎn. Nǐ jiā lí-túshūguǎn-yuǎn-ma?
7. Nǐ-xǐhuan-kàn-diànyǐngr. Nǐ-zhīdao-yǎn-diànyǐngr-de-rén jiào-shén-mo?
8. 'Bái-Xiānsheng kàn-'wúdiǎn-nèichǎng-diànyǐngr. 'Máo-Xiānsheng kàn-'qīdiǎn-nèichǎng-diànyǐngr. Nǐ-shuō-shéi-'xiān-huǐ-jiā, shéi-'hòu-huǐ-jiā?
9. Rúguó-nǐ-péngyou 'sāndiǎn-zhōng zuò-chuán-dào-zhèr-lái, nǐ-'sìdiǎn-zhōng cái-qu-jiē-ta, nǐ-'jiēdezháo-jiēbuzháo?
10. Wǒmen-kàn-diànyǐngr zài-'nǎr-kàn? Shi-zài-'jiā-lǐtou-kàn-ma?

## NOTES

1. Yí or yì 'one' as an adverb means 'as soon as.' The second clause is commonly introduced by jiù 'then':

Wǒ-yí-kàn-ta jiu-zhīdao tā-shi-'wàiguó-rén. 'As soon as I saw him, I knew he was a foreigner.'

Or, the second clause may be introduced by cái 'then and only then,' 'then for the first time':

Wǒ-yí-kàn-ta cái-zhīdao tā-shi-'wàiguó-rén. 'As soon as I saw him, then (for the first time) I realized he was a foreigner [though I had previously thought he was the same nationality as myself].'

The connection between the second clause and the yí + verb in the first clause is often implied rather than stated:

Wǒ-yí-kàn, tā-'zhēn-shi-wàiguó-rén. 'The minute I saw him (I knew) he was a foreigner.'

2. The verb qǐlai 'get up' is also used as a postverb, in two separate senses. First, it can correspond to 'up' in expressions like náqilai 'take up.' The object of such a verb is either introduced by the coverb bǎ 'take,' or inserted between the parts of the combination:

Bǎ-shū-náqilai. 'Pick up your book.'

Náqi-shū-lai. 'Pick up your books.'

In a second sense, qǐlai as a postverb means 'begin to [do]':

Nèige-háizi chīqǐ-fàn-lai jiu-yào-shuō-huà. 'When that child begins to eat he immediately wants to talk.'

Verbs compounded with qǐlai are resultative verbs:

xiánqilai 'recall'

xiǎngbuqǐlái 'unable to recall'

3. The basic meaning of dǎ is 'strike':

dǎ-mén 'knock on a door'

dáqilai 'begin to strike [each other]'—i.e. 'fight'

Dǎ in addition enters into phrases with nouns, with a variety of English equivalents:

dǎ-piào 'buy tickets'

dǎ-quán 'box' (i.e. 'have a boxing contest')

dǎ-diànhuà 'make a phone call'

After a place word, dǎ means 'from,' synonymous here with cóng:

Dǎ-zhèr-dào-fànguǎr yǒu-duō-yuǎn? 'How far is it from here to the restaurant?'

Note also the following special combination:

dǎkai 'open [a book, box, etc.]'—lit. 'hit open'

4. The stative verb duì 'correct, right' is used as a postverb to form resultative compounds:

shuōduì 'say correctly'

shuōbuduì 'unable to say correctly'

shuōdeduì 'able to say correctly'

The following sentences illustrate the last two forms given above:

Tā-hěn-bèn, yídìng-shuōbuduì. 'He's very stupid. He certainly can't say it right.'

Tā-hěn-cōngmíng. Yídìng-shuōdeduì. 'He's very bright. He can certainly say it right.'

Note the difference (in the written form only) between shuōdeduì 'able to say correctly' and shuōde-duì 'says correctly.' The former is a resultative verb, the latter a construction involving an adverb of manner (see Lesson 10, Note 2). A similar overlapping occurs when hǎo 'good' is used as a postverb:

shuōhǎo 'agree on (something)'

shuōbuhǎo 'unable to agree'

shuōdehǎo 'able to agree'

(Do not confuse shuōdehǎo with shuōde-hǎo 'speak well'; cf. Lesson 19, Note 10.)

5. Háishi . . . hǎo (see Dialogue, p. 338, lines 74–75) is the second part of the construction shì-A-hǎo háishi-B-hǎo? 'is A or B better?' (Lesson 7, Note 12); but the A is implied rather than expressed. Another example: if a friend who likes walking suggests going on foot to a movie some distance away, one might say—

Háishi-zuò-chē-hǎo. 'It's better (to go) by car.'

6. Guówén 'national literature' means 'Chinese' [as an academic subject].
7. The stative verb zāogāo 'confused, messed up' is also used as a mild exclamation comparable to English 'Darn!'
8. The sentence particle me has about the force of 'You see?' or 'Don't you see?':

Tā-'zěnmó-néng-mǎi nènmo-dàde-fángzi? 'How come he can buy such a large house?'

Tā-yǒu-qián-me! 'He has money, don't you see?'

## Lesson 21 EATING IN A RESTAURANT



“Qíng-ni-bāngzhu-wǒmen xiáng-liǎngge-cài.”

Dialogue: Mr. White takes Miss Gao out to dinner.

Huǒji: Xiānsheng, Xiáojie, liǎng-wèi-zuò-nǎr?

Sir, Miss, where would you like to sit?

Bái : Wǒmen jiù-zài-'zhèr-zuò-ba. Géi-wǒmen xiān-lái-yìhú-chá.

We'll sit right here. First bring us a pot of tea.

5

Huǒji: Shì, xiānsheng.

Yes, sir.

Bái : Qíng-bǎ-cài-'dār-nálai.

Please bring the menu.

Gāo : Wǒmen-jiǎndān-yìdiǎr-chī. Yàoburán diànyǐngr-gāi-wǎn-le.

Let's have a simple meal. Otherwise we're bound to be late for the movie.

10

Huǒji: Gěi-nín-cài-dār.

Here's the menu.

Bái : Qíng-ni-bāngzhu-wǒmen xiáng-liǎngge-cài.

Please help us order a couple of dishes.

Huǒji: Hǎo. Wǒ-jièshao-nín-jǐ-yàng wǒmen-zhèr-'zuì-hǎode-cài. Wǒmen-zhèr hóng-shāo-yú, chǎo-xiārér, kǎo-yāzi, dōu-hǎo. Yóuqíshì-nèige-kǎo-yāzi

Fine. I'll introduce you to a few of our best dishes. Our red-cooked fish, fried shrimp, and roast duck are all fine. The roast duck, in particular, we can say is the best in the whole

15

	dàgài-wǒmen-kéyī-shuō shì-quán-guó-dì-yī-le.	20	country.
Bái :	Wǒmen-liǎngge-rén yào- liǎngge-cài-yíge-tāng-chī- fàn. Nǐ-kàn 'gòu-chī-ba?		The two of us would like two dishes and a soup, and rice. Do you think that's enough (to eat)?
Huǒji:	Chābuduō. Wǒmen-zhèrde- jiǎozi, chǎo-miàn yě-bú- cuò. Hái-yǒu-chǎo-dòufu.	25	Just about. Our dumplings and fried noodles are also not bad. We also have fried bean curd.
Bái :	Hǎo. Měiyīng, nǐ-yào- shénmo?		Fine. Meiyīng, what would you like?
Gāo :	Wǒ-suíbiàn.	30	Anything.
Huǒji:	Xiǎojie, wǒmen-zhèr-chǎo- xiārér hǎode-hěn. Nín- yào-ge-chǎo-xiārér-ba.		Miss, our fried shrimp is awful- ly good. You might order one.
Gāo :	Kéyī. Wǒ-yào-chǎo-xiārér. Wénshān, 'nǐ-yào-shénmo?	35	O.K. I'll order fried shrimp. Vincent, what would you like?
Bái :	Wǒ-yào hóng-shāo-yú.		I'd like red-cooked fish.
Huǒji:	Liǎngwèi-lái-ge-shénmo- tāng-ne?		What soup do you want?
Bái :	Měiyīng, 'nǐ-shuō yào- shénmo-tāng-hǎo-ne?	40	Meiyīng, what do you say to soup?
Gāo :	Niú-ròu-báicài-tāng 'hǎo- bu-hǎo?		How's beef and cabbage soup?
Bái :	Hǎojíle. Géi-wǒmen-lái niú-ròu-báicài-tāng. Měi- yīng, wǒmen-zài-yào-diār- jiǎozi, 'hǎo-bu-hǎo?	45	Excellent. Bring us some beef and cabbage soup. Meiyīng, how about our also ordering a few dumplings?
Gāo :	Wó-xiǎng-gòu-le. Yào-duō- le wǒmen-chībuliǎo.		I think (this) is enough. If we order too much we won't be able to eat it.
Bái :	Huǒji, 'jiǎozi-zěnmō-yào? Mài-duōshao-qián?	50	Waiter, how does one order dumplings? How much do they sell for?
Huǒji:	Jiǎozi nín-chī-duōshao jiù-yào-duōshao. Yíkuài- liǎngmáo-qián-shíge.		Dumplings you order by the number you eat. They're \$1.20 for ten.
Bái :	Hǎo, wǒmen-bú-gòu-zài- shuō-ba.	55	Fine. If we don't have enough, we'll speak up again.
Gāo :	Chīwán-le wǒmen-yào-ge- 'tián-diǎnxīn.		After we've finished we'd like a [sweet] dessert.
Bái :	'Shénmo-tián-diǎnxīn?		What [sweet] dessert?
Gāo :	Xìngrér-dòufu.		Almond bean curd.
Bái :	Huǒji, xìngrér-dòufu-yǒu- ma?	60	Waiter, do you have almond bean curd?



Huǒji :	Duìbuqǐ, 'gāng-màiwán. Nín-yào-diār-biéde-ba?		I'm sorry, we're just sold out. Would you like something else?
Gāo :	Yǒu-xìngrér-chá-ma?		Do you have almond tea?
Huǒji :	Yǒu.	65	Yes.
Bái :	Qǐng-lái-liángwǎn. . . . (Cài-lái-le.)		Please bring two bowls. . . . (The food arrives.)
Bái :	Měiyīng, nǐ-kàn, cài- zuòde-bú-cuò.		Meiying, look, the food's very nice.
Gāo :	Nǐ-kàn, zhège-chǎo- xiārér duó-piàoliang.	70	See how attractive this fried shrimp is.
Bái :	Zhège-hóng-shāo-yú yě- bú-cuò, kěshi-wǒ-chī- fànguǎrde-cài dōu-méi- you-fǔshangde-cài-hǎo- chī.	75	This red-cooked fish isn't bad either, but none of the food I've had in restaurants is as deli- cious as what I've had in your home.
Gāo :	Yīnwei-wǒ-fùqīn-xǐhuan- chī, wó-mǔqīn-yě-méi- shì-zuò, tā-měitiān jiù- yǎnjiù zěnmó-zuò-fàn. Tā-hái-shuō jiānglái tā- bǎ-zuò-fàn-de-jīngyān yào-xiě-yìběn-shū-ne. Zuò-'Zhōngguó-fàn méi- yǒu-kēxuéde-fāngfǎ, jiù- shì-yìzhǒng-jīngyān.	80  85	Since my father likes to eat and my mother doesn't have a job, every day she experiments with (new ways of) cooking. She also says that [in the future] she's going to write a book about her experiences in cooking. There are no scientific procedures in cooking Chinese food, it's just a matter of experience.
Bái :	"Hóng-shāo-yú" zhège- míngzi wèi-shénmó-jiào- hóng-shāo-yú?		Why is "red-cooked fish" called that?
Gāo :	Hóng-shāode jiù-shì-duō- fàng-jiàngyóu, shāo-de- 'shíhou-cháng-yìdiǎr. Yīnwei-hóng-shāo-de-cài shì-jiàngyóu-yánse, suóyì- jiào-hóng-shāo-de.	90  95	Red-cooking is just putting in a lot of soy sauce and cooking for a long time. [Because] red- cooked dishes are the color of soy sauce, so they're called red- cooked.
Bái :	Zài-Měiguó-de-'Zhōngguó- fànguǎr chàbuduō-'dōu-shì- Guǎngdong-fànguǎr.		Almost all the Chinese restau- rants in America are Cantonese restaurants.
Gāo :	Ní-xǐhuan-chī-Guǎngdong- cài-ma?	100	Do you like [to eat] Cantonese food?
Bái :	Wó-yé-xǐhuan, kěshi-wǒ- juéde háishi-běifāng-fàn bǐjiào-hǎo-'chī-yìdiǎr. 'Nǐ-dōu-xǐhuan-nǎrde- cài-ne?	105	I [also] like it, but I think that Northern cooking is a little bet- ter. What kind of food do you like?
Gāo :	Dāngrán-'wó-yé-xǐhuan chī-běifāng-cài-le. Wǒ-		Naturally I also like Northern cooking. I don't much care for

	duì-ròu bú-dà-xǐhuan. Wǒ-tèbié-xǐhuan chī-yú, xiā, jī.	110	meat. I especially like fish, shrimp; and chicken.
Bái :	'Zhōngguo-fàn zhēn-hǎo- chī. Jiù-shi-zuòqilai-má- fan.		Chinese food is really delicious. The only thing is that it's a both- er to cook it.
Gāo :	Yě-'bù-zěnmó-máfan. . . . Jīntian-cài hái-bù-cuò.	115	It's not such a bother. . . . This food [lit. the food today] is not bad.
Bái :	Měiyīng, nǐ-chībǎo-le- ma? Zài-yào-diar-shén- mo?		Meiying, have you had enough [to eat]? What else should we have?
Gāo :	Wǒ-chībǎo-le. 'Shénmo- yě-bù-yào-le.	120	I'm stuffed. I don't want any- thing more.
Bái :	Zài-lái-diar-jiǎozi 'hǎo- bu-hǎo?		How about ordering a few dump- lings?
Gāo :	Wǒ-chīde-'tài-bǎo-le. Jiù- shi-nǐ-yào wó-yě-bù-chī- le.	125	I've eaten too much. Even if you order them I can't eat any more.
Bái :	Něnmó wǒmen-zài-hē- diar-chá. Huǒji, zài-lái- diar-chá.		Then let's have a little more tea. Waiter, some more tea.
Huǒji:	Lái-le.		Coming.
Gāo :	Bādiǎn-bàn-le. Wǒmen- gāi-zǒu-le.	130	It's eight-thirty. We should be leaving.
Bái :	Huǒji, suàn-zhàng.		Waiter, the bill.
Huǒji:	Shì. Yígòng-sìkuài-sān- máo-liù.		Yes. Altogether, four thirty- six.
Bái :	Zhè-shi-wǔkuài. Bù-bì- zhǎo-le. Shèngxia-de géi- xiǎofèi-le.	135	Here's five dollars. You don't need to make change. The rest is your tip.
Huǒji:	Xièxie-nín. Liǎngwèi- màn-zǒu. Zàijiàn.		Thank you. Don't be in a hurry to leave. Good-bye.

## VOCABULARY

bāngzhu	help (TV) [lit. help assist]
bíjiǎo	relatively (AD) [lit, compare compare]
cháng	long (SV)
dān, dār	list, bill (N)
dǎsuan	plan to (V)

diǎnxin	dessert, pastry, cakes, etc. (N) [lit. bit heart]
duìbuqǐ	sorry, excuse me [lit. face not begin]
fàng	put (TV)
gāngcái	just (now), just a moment ago (AD)
hú	pot (N, M)
huǒji	waiter, clerk (N) [lit. partner plan]
jiàngyóu	soy sauce (N) [lit. soy-sauce oil]
jiǎozi	dumplings (N)
jīngyan	experience (N, V) [lit. pass verify]
jiùshi	even (if) (MA) [lit. exactly is]
juéde	have the feeling that (TV)
kǎo	roast, cook by roasting (TV)
miàn	noodles (N)
quán	the whole
shèng(xia)	have left over, be left over (V)
suàn	reckon (as), calculate (TV)
wǎn	bowl, cup (N, M)
xiā	shrimp (N)
xiārér	shelled shrimp (N) [lit. shrimp kernel]
xiǎofèi	tip (N) [lit. small spend]
xìngrér	almond (N)
yā(zi)	duck (N)
yàoburán	otherwise (MA)
yóuqí(shi)	especially, above all (MA)
zhàng	bill (N)
zhǒng	kind of, sort of, variety of (M)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>jiàngyóu</p> <p>1. Zhèr mǎibuzháo-jiàngyóu.</p> <p>fàng</p> <p>néng-fàng-ròu</p> <p>2. Zhèige-càili néng-fàng-ròu-ma?</p> <p>fàng</p> | <p>soy sauce</p> <p>Soy sauce can't be bought here.</p> <p>put</p> <p>can put in meat</p> <p>Is it possible to put meat in this dish?</p> <p>put</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

- fàngzài  
3. Bǎ-shū fàngzài-zhèr.  
put (at)  
Put the books here.
- fàng  
fàngxia  
4. Bǎ-dōngxī-fàngxia.  
put  
put down  
Put the things down.
- nǐ-yào-chī-shénmo?  
fàng-shénmo?  
5. Nǐ-yào-chī-shénmo jiù-fàng-shénmo.  
what do you want to eat?  
put in what?  
Put in whatever you want to eat.
- shéi-yào-yòng-máobǐ?  
shéi-jiù-mǎi-máobǐ?  
6. Shéi-yào-yòng-máobǐ shéi-jiù-mǎi-máobǐ.  
who wants to use a brush?  
who then buys a brush?  
Whoever wants to use a brush (should) buy one.
- xìngrér  
xìngrér-chá  
7. Wǒ-méi-hēguo-xìngrér-chá.  
almond  
almond tea  
I've never had almond tea.
- diǎnxīn  
8. Nǐ-bù-chī-diǎnxīn-ma?  
dessert  
Aren't you eating any dessert?
- xiǎofèi  
9. Xiǎofèi-suíbiàn-gěi.  
tip  
Give whatever tip you want.
- jiùshi  
jiùshi-tā-géi-wo  
wó-yě-bù-yào  
10. Jiùshi-tā-géi-wo wó-yě-bù-yào.  
even, even if  
even if he gives it to me  
I still don't want it  
Even if he gives it to me I don't want it.
- jiùshi  
jiùshi-lián  
11. Jiùshi-lián-tā-géi-wo wó-yě-bù-yào.  
even, even if  
even, even if  
Even if he gives it to me I don't want it.
- jiùshi-tā  
bù-rènshi-zhèige-zì  
12. Jiùshi-tā yě-bù-rènshi-zhèige-zì.  
even he  
does not recognize this character  
Even he does not recognize this character.
- xiā  
13. Nǐ-xǐhuan-chī-xiā-ma?  
shrimp  
Do you like (to eat) shrimp?
- xiārér  
14. Chǎo-xiārér hén-hǎo-chī.  
shelled shrimp  
The fried shrimp is delicious.
- hú  
sānhú-chá  
15. Wǒmen-liǎngge-rén hēle-sānhú-chá.  
pot  
three pots of tea  
The two of us drank three pots of tea.

- hú  
chá-hú

16. Zhèige-chá-hú shi-Rìběn-zuò-de.

zhàng

17. Zhèige-zhàng-cuò-le.

suàn  
suàn-zhàng

18. Shūdiàn hái-méi-suàn-zhàng-ne.

suàn  
suàn-hǎo

19. Tāde-'Zhōngguo-huà bú-suàn-hǎo.

suàn  
suàn-shi

20. Shīzi-tóu suàn-shi-běifāng-cài-ma?

suàn  
dǎsuan

21. Wó-dǎsuan míngtiān-qu-kàn-ta.

bíjiǎo

22. Yīngwén bíjiǎo-róngyi.

wǎn  
liángwǎn-fàn

23. Wǒ-yíge-rén kéyi-chī-liáng-wǎn-fàn.

wǎn  
zhèige-wǎn

24. Zhèige-wǎn shi-'nár-mǎi-de?

cháng  
yìtiáo-bíjiǎo-chángde-lù

25. Zhōngshān-Lù shi-yìtiáo-bíjiǎo-chángde-lù.

dār  
kāi-yìzhāng-dār

26. Ní-bá-nǐ-yào-mǎi-de-dōngxī kāi-yìzhāng-dār.

dār  
cài-dār

27. Nǐ-néng-kàn 'Zhōngguo-cài-dār-ma?
- pot  
teapot

This teapot was made in Japan.

bill

This bill is in error.

reckon, figure  
figure out a bill

The bookstore hasn't yet figured out the bill.

be reckoned as  
be considered good

His Chinese can't be considered good.

reckoned as  
reckoned to be

Is lion's head considered a Northern dish?

reckon, plan to  
plan to

I plan to go see him tomorrow.

relatively

English is relatively easy.

bowl  
two bowls of rice

I can eat two bowls of rice by myself.

bowl  
this bowl

Where was this bowl bought?

long  
a relatively long road

Sun Yatsen Avenue is a relatively long road.

list  
make a list

Make a list of the things you want to buy.

list  
menu

Can you read a Chinese menu?

- bāngzhu  
bāngzhu-wo  
28. Qíng-ni bāngzhu-wo-zhǎo-shū.

- yǒu-bāngzhu  
duì-xué-yǔyán hén-yǒu-bāngzhu  
29. Tīng-lùyīn duì-xué-yǔyán hén-yǒu-bāngzhu.

- gāng  
gāng-zǒu-le  
30. 'Bái-Xiānsheng gāng-zǒu-le.

- gāng  
gāngcái  
31. Wǒ-gāngcái-chīwán-le-fàn.

- duìbuqǐ  
32. Duìbuqǐ, wó-zhǎobuzháo-dǎr-le.

- dà  
bú-dà-xǐhuan  
33. Wǒ-bú-dà-xǐhuan-chī-xiā.

- lǎo  
lǎo-kèqi  
34. Ní-lǎo-zènmo-kèqi.

- bái  
bái-lái-le  
35. Tā-zuótian-bái-lái-le. Wǒ-méi-zài-jiā.

- yā  
36. Yā-bǐ-jī-dà.

- yāzi  
37. Yāzi-méi-you-jī-hǎo-chī.

- kǎo  
kǎo-yāzi  
38. Běifāngde-kǎo-yāzi 'tèbié-hǎo.

- huǒji  
39. Zhèixiē-huǒji jiù-huì-shuō-Guǎngdong-huà.

- miàn  
fàn  
40. Nǐ-chī-fàn-chī-miàn?

help  
help me  
Please help me find the book.

be helpful  
be very helpful in studying languages  
Listening to recordings is very helpful in studying languages.

just (now)  
has just left  
Mr. White has just left.

just (now)  
just (now)  
I've just finished eating.

sorry, excuse me  
I'm sorry, I can't find the list.

big  
not much like  
I don't much like [to eat] shrimp.

old; always  
always polite  
You are always so polite.

white; uselessly  
come uselessly  
He came in vain yesterday. I wasn't at home.

duck  
Ducks are bigger than chickens.

duck  
Duck isn't as tasty as chicken.

roast  
roast duck  
Northern roast duck is especially good.

waiter  
These waiters can speak only Cantonese.

noodles  
rice  
Are you having rice or noodles?

- juéde

41. Wǒ-juéde zhèige-cài-tài-suān.
- feel (that), think (that)

I think this dish is too vinegary.
- jīngyan

42. Wǒ-juéde tāde-jīngyan-bú-gòu.
- experience

I think he doesn't have enough experience.
- quán

quán-xuéxiào

43. Wǒmen-quán-xuéxiào dōu-kǎo-shì.
- the whole

the whole school

Our whole school is having exams.
- zhǒng

zhèizhǒng-cài

44. Wǒ-juéde-'zhèizhǒng-cài bù-hǎo-chī.
- kind of

this kind of food

I think this kind of food is unappetizing.
- yóuqí

yóuqíshi

45. Wǒmen-dōu-chīde-hěn-duō,yóuqíshi-wǒ.
- especially

especially

We all ate a lot, especially I.
- yóuqíshi-děi

46. Nǐmen-yóuqíshi-děi duō-tīng-lùyīn.
- especially have to

You especially have to listen to recordings more.
- shèng

shèngle-hěn-duō-cài

47. Zuótiān shèngle-hěn-duō-cài.
- be left over

a lot of food was left over

Yesterday a lot of food was left over.
- shèng

shèng-wǔmáo-qián

48. Wǒ-jiù-shèng wǔmáo-qián.
- have left over

have fifty cents left

I have only fifty cents left.
- shèngxia

shèngxia-hěn-duō-cài

49. Jīntiān méi-shèngxia-hěn-duō-cài.
- be left over

a lot of food is left over

There isn't much food left over today.
- mài

mài-'duōshao-qián?

50. Zhèige-chá-hú mài-'duōshao-qián?
- sell or sell for

sell for how much?

How much does this teapot sell for?
- yàoburán

51. Kuài-zǒu-ba. Yàoburán-wǎn-le.
- otherwise

Let's hurry. Otherwise we'll be late.



## PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 21.1. Repetition of Question Words (Note 1 below)

Pattern 21.1 a.

V <sub>1</sub>	QW	<u>jiu</u>	V <sub>2</sub>	QW
Verb <sub>1</sub>	Question Word	'then'	Verb <sub>2</sub>	Question Word
Yào	shénmo	jiu	mǎi	shénmo.
'Buy whatever you want.'				

Pattern 21.1 b.

QW	V <sub>1</sub>	(QW)	<u>jiu</u>	V <sub>2</sub>
Question Word	Verb <sub>1</sub>	(Question Word)	'then'	Verb <sub>2</sub>
Shéi	yào-chī-fàn	shéi	jiu	chī-fàn.
'Whoever wants to eat, eat.'				

- Ní-xiǎng wǒ-chī-'shénmo-hǎo-ne? . . . Nǐ-'yào-chī-shénmo jiu-'chī-shénmo.  
What do you think (it) would be best for me to eat? . . . Eat whatever you want.
- Zuótiān-wǒ-fùqin-shuō wǒ-bìyè-yǐhòu 'xiǎng-dào-nǎr-niàn-shū jiu-dào-nǎr-niàn-shū.  
Yesterday my father said that after I graduate I'm to go anywhere I like, to study.
- Wǒ-míngtiān-fàngjià-le. Nǐ-shuō wǒ-dào-'nǎr-qu-lǚxíng-ne? . . . Nǐ-'yào-dào-nǎr-qu jiu-dào-nǎr-qu.  
I'm going on vacation tomorrow. Tell me where I should go on a trip. . . . Go anywhere you want.
- Wǒ-jīntiān shuō-huà-de-tímu bù-yídìng. Wǒ-'yào-shuō-shénmo jiu-shuō-shénmo.  
I have no definite topic to talk about today. I'll speak of whatever I want.
- Wǒ-xiǎng-chī-'jiǎozi. Nǐ-ne? . . . Nǐ-'chī-shénmo 'wǒ-jiu-chī-shénmo.  
I'd like to eat dumplings. What about you? . . . I'll eat whatever you eat.
- Wǒ-fùqin zuì-xǐhuan-wǒ-dìdile. Wǒ-dìdi-'yào-mǎi-shénmo tā-jiu-mǎi-shénmo.  
My father likes my younger brother best. Whatever my younger brother wants to buy he buys.
- Nǐ-shuō wǒ-'yào-'duōshao-jiǎozi-ne? . . . Nǐ-'chī-duōshao jiu-'yào-duōshao.  
Tell me how many dumplings I should order. . . . Order as many as you're going to eat.
- Wǒ-yīnggāi gěi-duōshao-xiǎofèi-ne? . . . Zhè-bù-yídìng.  
How much of a tip should I give? . . . There's no fixed amount.

- 'Yào-gěi-duōshao jiu-'gěi-duōshao.

9. Zhèige-cài yào-fàng-'duōshao-jiàngyóu-ne? . . . Bù-yídìng. 'Yào-fàng-duōshao jiu-'fàng-duōshao.

10. Zhèige-tián-diǎnxin hén-hǎochī. Wǒ-duō-chī-'yìdiǎrkéyi-ma? . . . Kéyi. Nǐ-'yào-chī-duōshao jiu-'chī-duōshao.

11. Zhèijiàn-shìqing nǐ-shuō-zěnmō-zuò-hǎo-ne? . . . Nǐ-'yào-zěnmō-zuò jiù-zěnmō-zuò.

12. Zhèi-jíbēn-shū nǐ-shuō wǒjiè-néibēn-hǎo-ne? . . . Nǐ-'yào-jiè-néibēn jiu-'jiè-néibēn.

13. Nǐ-shuō wǒ-kàn-něige-diànyíng-hǎo-ne? . . . Nǐ-'yào-kàn-něige jiu-'kàn-něige.

14. Nǐ-shuō wǒ-niàn-guówén-hǎone háishi-niàn-lìshí-hǎo-ne? . . . Nǐ-'yào-niàn-shénmōjiu-'niàn-shénmō.

15. 'Shéi-huì-zuò-jǎozi 'shéijiù-zuò-jǎozi.

16. 'Něige-hǎo jiu-'géi-wo-něige.

17. Nǐmen-shéi-huì-shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà jiu-shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà. Rúguǒ-bù-huì-shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà jiu-shuō-'Yīngguo-huà.

18. Ní-yǒu-duōshao jiu-'géi-wo-duōshao.

19. Nǐwèi-xuéde-zuì-hǎo jiu-bùbì-kǎoshì.

20. Nǐge-xiānsheng-jiāode-hǎowǒ-jiù-gēn-tā-niàn-shū.
- Give as much as you want to.

How much soy sauce should I put into this dish? . . . No fixed amount. Put in as much as you want.

This sweet dessert is delicious. May I have a little more? . . . Yes. You may have as much as you want.

What do you think would be the best way to do this? . . . Do it whatever way you want.

Which of these books do you think it would be best for me to check out? . . . Take out whichever one you want.

What movie would it be best for me to see? . . . See whichever one you want.

Do you think it would be better for me to study Chinese or history? . . . Study whatever you want.

Whoever knows how to make dumplings, do so.

Give me whichever one is better.

Those of you who can speak Chinese, do so. If you can't speak Chinese, speak English.

Give me as much as you have.

Whoever studies best doesn't need to take the exam.

I'll study with whichever teacher is best.

Pattern 21.2. Sentences with jiùshi 'even (if)' (Note 2 below)

## Pattern 21.2a. (Sentences 1-10)

<u>jiùshi</u>	S <sub>1</sub>	V <sub>1</sub>	S <sub>2</sub>	<u>dōu/yě</u>	V <sub>2</sub>
<u>jiùshi</u>	Subject <sub>1</sub>	Verb <sub>1</sub>	Subject <sub>2</sub>	<u>dōu/yě</u>	Verb <sub>2</sub>
Jiùshi	nǐ	qù	wó	yě	bú qù.

'Even if you go, I'm not going.'

## Pattern 21.2b. (Sentences 11-15)

<u>jiùshi</u>	S	<u>dōu/yě</u>	V
<u>jiùshi</u>	Subject	<u>dōu/yě</u>	Verb
Jiùshi	tā	yě	qù.

'Even he is going.'

- |                                                                                     |                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Nèiběn-shū wǒ-bù-xǐhuan.<br>Jiùshi-'ní-mǎi wó-yě-bù-mǎi.                         | I don't like that book. Even if you buy it, I'm not going to (buy it).                       |
| 2. 'Wǒ-'zuì-bù-xǐhuan chī-xìngrér-dòufu. Jiùshi-nǐ-yào-le wó-yě-bù-chī.             | I very much dislike [eating] almond bean curd. Even if you ordered it I wouldn't eat it.     |
| 3. Nèijiàn-shìqing wǒ-shi-'bú-huì gàosu-bié-rén-de. Jiùshi-'nǐ-shuō wǒ-dōu-bù-shuō. | I can't tell anyone about that matter. Even if you speak of it, I won't.                     |
| 4. Wǒ-jīntiān-hěn-máng. Jiùshi-wǒ-'fùqín-lái wó-yě-bù-néng-qu-jīe.                  | I'm very busy today. Even if my father comes I won't be able to go and meet (him).           |
| 5. Nèige-xiǎo-chá-hú 'tài-xiǎo-le. Jiùshi-'ní-mǎi wó-yě-bù-mǎi.                     | That little teapot is too small. Even if you buy one, I'm not going to.                      |
| 6. Zhèijiàn-shìqing 'tā-yě-bù-zhīdào. Jiùshi-tā-zhīdào tā-yě-bù-huì-shuō.           | Even he doesn't know about this matter. Even if he knew, he wouldn't be able to speak of it. |
| 7. Wǒ-zuì-xǐhuan chī-chǎo-xiārér. Jiùshi-nǐ-bù-chī wó-yě-yào.                       | I like fried shrimp best. Even if you don't eat it I'm going to order some.                  |
| 8. Tā-shuō nèige-biáo-hén-hǎo. Jiùshi-nǐ-bù-jào-wó-mǎi wó-yě-yào-mǎi.               | He said that watch is very good. Even if you tell me not to buy it I'm going to (buy it).    |
| 9. Jèi-jǐtiān bù-xiǎng-niàn-shū. Jiùshi-'nǐ-niàn wǒ-dōu-bù-niàn.                    | For a few days now I don't plan to study. Even if you study I'm not going to.                |
| 10. Tāde-nèige-chá-hú 'tài-                                                         | That teapot of hers is awfully                                                               |

- piàoliang-le. Jiùshi-nǐ-yào tā-yě-bù-gěi-ni.
11. Zhèige-xuéxiào zhēn-nán-kǎo. Jiùshi-'dàxué-bìyè-de-xué-sheng yé-kǎobushàng.
12. Zhèiběn-shū hěn-nán-niàn. Jiùshi-wǒ-'fùqin yě-bù-dōu-dǒng.
13. Chǎo-xiārér hén-hǎo-chī. Jiùshi-'bù-xǐhuan-chī-yú-de-rén dōu-xǐhuan-chī.
14. Zhèige-xuéxiào jiāo-Zhōngwén jiāode-hén-hǎo. Jiùshi-lián-yìniánjíde-xuésheng dōu-néng-shuō hén-hǎode-Zhōngguo-huà.
15. Wǒ-dìdi zì-xiěde-zhēn-hǎo. Jiùshi-'dà-xuéde-xuésheng yě-méi-yǒu-tā-xiěde-hǎo.
- pretty. Even if you asked for it she wouldn't give it to you.
- This school gives very tough exams. Even students who have graduated from college can't pass the entrance exams.
- This book is very hard to read. Even my father doesn't understand it all.
- Fried shrimp are delicious. Even people who don't like fish like [to eat] them.
- This school teaches Chinese very well. Even first-year students can speak very good Chinese.
- My younger brother writes characters very well. Even college students don't write as well as he does.

Pattern 21.3. Transformation of V-O to O-V (Note 3 below)

V	O	>	O	V
Verb	Object	>	Object	Verb
chī	fàn	>	fàn	chī
'eat food'		>	'food to eat'	

1. Nǐ-yìhuër qíng-wǒ-hē-chá, 'hǎo-bu-hǎo? . . . Bié-tí-hē-chá-le. Yīnwei-méi-you-shuǐ, wǒmen-jīntian-'dōu-méi-chá-hē.
2. Wǒmen-méi-yǒu-jiàngyóu fàngzài-chǎo-cài-lǐtōu.
3. Wǒ-yǐjīng-gēn-ta shuōle hěn-duō-huà. Xiànzài méi-yǒu-huà-shuō-le.
4. Xiànzài xuéxiào-fàngjià-le. Dǎsuan-kàn-diar-shū. Kěshi-túshūguǎn shū-tài-shǎo, méi-shū-jiè.
5. Nèige-háizi shíwǔsuì-lé hái-
- How about inviting me to have some tea in a little while? . . . Don't mention drinking tea. Since we haven't any water, none of us has any tea to drink today.
- We don't have any soy sauce to put into the fried dishes.
- I've already talked a lot with him. Now I don't have anything more to say.
- School's gone on vacation now. I had planned to read some books. But there are too few books in the library, and there are no books to take out.
- That child is fifteen and has not

- méi-niàn-shū. Yīnwei-jiǎli  
méi-yǒu-qian, suǒyǐ-méi-yǒu-  
shū-niàn.
6. Xiànzài fángzi-'tài-shǎo. Mǎi-  
buzháo-hǎo-fángzi-zhù.
7. 'Qián-Xiānsheng yǒu-chē-zuò.  
Bú-bì-zǒu-lù.
8. Qíng-ní-gěi-ta-wǔkuài-qian.  
... Wó-méi-qian-gěi-ta.
9. Wó-xiáng-mǎi-lùyīnjī. Yǒu-  
lùyīnjī-mài-ma?
10. Xiànzài rén-'tài-duō, shì-'tài-  
shǎo. Wó-zhǎobuzháo-shì-  
zuò.

yet read any books. Since his  
family doesn't have any money,  
he has no books to read.

Houses are in short supply now.  
One can't buy a good house to  
live in.

Mr. Qian has a car [to travel by].  
He doesn't have to walk.

Please give him five dollars. . . .  
I don't have any money to give  
him.

I'm thinking of buying a record-  
er. Do you have any recorders  
to sell?

Nowadays there are too many  
people, too few jobs. I can't find  
any work to do.

#### Pattern 21.4 Stative Verbs as Adverbs

SV	V
Stative Verb	Verb
lǎo	chī
'always eat'	

1. Diànyǐngyuàn lí-zhèr-hěn-  
jìn. Wǒmen-zài-hē-yìdiǎr-  
chá-ba. Wǒmen-kéyǐ-màn-  
zǒu.
2. Wǒ-bù-xǐhuan-nèige-rén. Měi-  
tiān-'lǎo-shuō-huà.
3. Zhèitiáo-lù chē-bù-róngyì-zǒu.  
Qíng-nǐ-màn-kāi.
4. Nǐ-shuōde-huà wǒ-bú-dà-míng-  
bai.
5. Wǒmen-zhèr lí-chéng-'tài-  
yuǎn. 'Shǎo-yǒu-rén-lái.
6. Zhèiběn-shū wǒ-bái-niàn-le.  
Xiānsheng-méi-kǎo.
7. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng xǐhuan-chī-  
yāzi. Tā-'lǎo-chī-kǎo-yāzi.

The movie theater is quite near  
here. Let's drink some more  
tea. We can take our time about  
leaving.

I don't like that man. He jabbars  
constantly [every day].

Cars can't get over this road  
easily. Please drive slowly.

I don't fully understand what  
you're saying.

We're too far from the city here.  
People rarely come (here).

I read this book for nothing. The  
teacher didn't examine (us on it).

Mr. Zhang likes (to eat) duck.  
He's always eating roast duck.

8. Tā-yí-dào-fànguǎr jiu-dà-chī. Bú-shi-hóng-shāo-ròu jiù-shi-shīzi-tóu.

Whenever he goes to the restaurant, he eats enormously. If it isn't red-cooked meat then it's lion's head.
9. Duìbuqǐ, wǒ-yào-kǎoshì-le. Wó-déi-'wǎn-huíqu.

Sorry, I'm going to have an exam. I'll have to go back (home) late.
10. Wǒ-bú-dà-xǐhuan kàn-diàn-yǐngr.

I don't much like to see movies.

SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 36 sentences (Note 1)

(Identical items in the 'A' columns are to be used together; similarly for the 'B' columns.)

		A	B			A	B
wǒ	xiǎng	chī	duōshao	jiu	chī	duōshao	
nǐ	yào	mǎi	shénmo		mǎi	shénmo	
tā		gěi			gěi		

II: 48 sentences (Note 2)

(Only identical items in the asterisked columns may be used together.)

*				*			
jiùshi	nǐ	—	qù	wǒ	yě	—	qù
	tā	bù	lái		dōu	bù	lái
			gěi				gěi

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## Review of Four-Syllable Expressions (III)

(Asterisks indicate changes of third tone to second tone.)

0 0 2		1 0 2		2 0 2	
1	xiānshengde-qián	1	tā-chīdewán		hē-chá-de-rén
2	lái-le-de-rén		nín-hē-de-chá		cóng-chéngli-lái
3	wǒmende-chá		děng-tāmen-lái		yě-róngyi-xué
4	zuòle-de-chuán		jiào-sānge-rén		tèbiéde-rén
		3 0 2		4 0 2	
		1	dōu-xīhuan-xué		tā-zuòdewán
		2	nín-xiědewán		Máo-Tàitai-lái
		3	wó-zhǎobuzháo*		nǐ-mài-de-chá
		4	tài-xiǎode-hú		jiào-tàitai-lái
0 1 2		1 1 2		2 1 2	
1	tāmen-chī-yú		xīngqī sān-lái		chī-tián-suān-yú
2	shíge-zhōngtóu		nín-yīnggāi-xué		shéi-xué-Yīngwén
3	wǒmen-dōu-lái		yǒu-sānbēi-chá		zhǎo-shéi-kāi-mén
4	dàde-gōngyuán		xià-xīngqī-lái		zuò-hóng-shāo-yú
		3 1 2		4 1 2	
		1	tā-yǒu-sānmáo		dōu-niàn-Zhōngwén
		2	nín-xiě-Zhōngwén		yígòng-sānmáo
		3	qíng-Měiyīng-lái*		yě-niàn-Yīngwén
		4	jiù-yǒu-sānshí		dàgài-tā-néng



0 2 2	1 2 2	2 2 2
1 tāmen-lái-wár	fēijī-méi-lái	shuō-nín-méi-lái
2 biéde-méi-ná	shéi-shuō-bié-ná	cóngqián-méi-xué
3 zěnmò-méi-lái	yǒu-sānmáo-qián	yě-xué-wénxué
4 wàngle-ná-qián	niàn-sānniánjí	kàn-shéi-néng-lái

3 2 2	4 2 2
1 tā-yě-néng-lái	tā-niàn-wénxué
2 nín-jǐniánjí	shéi-niàn-guówén
3 yǒu-wǔmáo-qián *	kǒngpà-méi-lái
4 niàn-yǔyánxué	màipiàoyuán-néng

0 3 2	1 3 2	2 3 2
1 xiānsheng-yě-lái	tā-shuō-yǐqián	tā-xué-yǎnyuán
2 tímu-hěn-nán	rén-dōu-hěn-máng	bái-táng-hěn-tián
3 xǐhuan-lǔxíng	měitīān-mǎi-táng	yǎnyuán-yǒu-míng
4 nèige-xiǎo-hú	kàn-shū-yǐqián	jiàoyuán-dǎ-mén

3 3 2	4 3 2
1 dōu-hén-yǒu-míng *	chī-fàn-yǐqián
2 nín-yé-yǒu-qián *	hái-niàn-xiǎoxué
3 wó-yé-hěn-máng *	yě-qù-lǔxíng
4 lì shí-hěn-nán *	dàgài-yě-lái

0 4 2	1 4 2	2 4 2
1 tāmen-tài-máng	tā-shuō-xìng-Máo	shū-shíkuài-qián
2 nínde-jiàoyuán	ná-sānkuài-qián	lái-xué-shùxué
3 xǐhuan-shùxué	wǒ-kāi-dà-mén	yě-néng-zuò-chuán
4 nèige-dà-chéng	dì-sāncì-lái	jiàoyuán-xìng-Máo

3 4 2	4 4 2
1 dōu-hěn-tèbié	tā-huà-dì tú
2 hái-qǐng-jiàoyuán	shéi-pà-shùxué
3 wó-mǎi-dì tú *	bǎ-cài-zuòwán
4 yìhuěr-jiù-lái	jiào-màipiàoyuán

## CHINESE MENU

This isn't exactly the way a Chinese menu would look, but the names of the dishes are authentic. Translate the names and practice them until you feel confident enough to order a full-course dinner for yourself and several friends.

CÀI DĀRTāng

zhū-ròu-tāng  
niú-ròu-tāng  
báicài-tāng  
dòufu-tāng  
jī-tāng  
báicài-jī-tāng

zhū-ròu-báicài-tāng  
báicài-dòufu-tāng  
zhū-ròu-báicài-dòufu-tāng  
niú-ròu-báicài-tāng  
zhū-ròu-dòufu-tāng

Chǎo-Cài

chǎo-dòufu  
chǎo-báicài  
chǎo-jī  
chǎo-xiārér  
chǎo-niú-ròu

niú-ròu-chǎo-dòufu  
zhū-ròu-chǎo-dòufu  
zhū-ròu-chǎo-báicài  
niú-ròu-chǎo-báicài  
chǎo-zhū-ròu

Fàn

bái-fàn  
chǎo-fàn  
jī-chǎo-fàn  
xiārér-chǎo-fàn

niú-ròu-chǎo-fàn  
zhū-ròu-chǎo-fàn  
niú-ròu-báicài-chǎo-fàn  
zhū-ròu-báicài-chǎo-fàn

Jiǎozi

xiārér-jiǎozi  
zhū-ròu-jiǎozi  
niú-ròu-jiǎozi

xiārér-zhū-ròu-jiǎozi  
zhū-ròu-báicài-jiǎozi  
niú-ròu-báicài-jiǎozi

Kǎo

kǎo-yāzi  
kǎo-jī

kǎo-zhū-ròu  
kǎo-niú-ròu

Hóng-Shāo

hóng-shāo-yú  
hóng-shāo-jī  
hóng-shāo-ròu  
hóng-shāo-yāzi

hóng-shāo-niú-ròu  
hóng-shāo-dòufu  
shī zi-tóu

Táng-Cù

táng-cù-yú  
táng-cù-báicài

táng-cù-ròu

Miàn

chǎo-miàn  
jī-chǎo-miàn  
xiārér-chǎo-miàn  
zhǔ-ròu-báicài-chǎo-miàn

niú-ròu-chǎo-miàn  
zhǔ-ròu-chǎo-miàn  
niú-ròu-báicài-chǎo-miàn

Diǎnxīn

xìngrér-dòufu

xìngrér-chá

Chá

hóng-chá\*



(a) báicài tāng



(b) hóng shāo yú



(c) chǎo xiārér



(d) liáng gāo fàn

\* Hóng-chá, literally ‘red tea,’ is ‘black tea’ to speakers of English. Xìngrér-chá, literally ‘almond tea,’ is not tea at all, but a porridge-like dessert made of rice meal, almonds, sugar, and cinnamon.

## ANSWERING QUESTIONS

1. Chīwánle-fànguǎr-yǐhòu, shèngde-qián-géi-huǒji, nà-jiào-'shénmo-qián?
2. Wáng-Xiānsheng kāi-chē-de-jīngyan-hěn-duō. 'Zhāng-Xiānshengde-jīngyan-bú-gòu. Shéi-kāi-chē-kāide-hǎo?
3. Máo-Xiǎojie shèngle-hěn-duō-chǎo-xiārér. Máo-Xiānsheng bǎ-hóng-shāo-yú-'dōu-chīwán-le. Shéi-méi-shèng-cài-ne?
4. Rúguó-liǎngge-rén qù-chī-fàn, nǐ-yào-shīzi-tóu, chǎo-báicài, wǒ-yào-hóng-shāo-yú, kǎo-yāzi, nǐ-shuō-shèngdeliǎo-ma?
5. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng xǐhuan-chī-jiǎozi. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng xǐhuan-chī-chǎo-miàn. Tāmen-liǎngge-rén shéi-chī-jiǎozi?
6. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie chī-chǎo-xiārér, 'Bái-Xiānsheng chī-hóng-shāo-yú. Nǐge-cài-lǐtou fàng-de-jiàngyóu fàngde-duō?
7. Wǒmen-dào-fànguǎr chīwánle-fàn-yǐhòu, jiào-'shéi-lái géi-wǒmen-suàn-zhàng?
8. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yào-xìngrér-dòufu. Huǒji-shuō-gāng-màiwán. Nèige-fànguǎr hái-yǒu-xìngrér-dòufu-ma?
9. 'Máo-Xiǎojie hěn-cōngmíng. Tā-dìdi-niàn-shū-niànde méi-tā-nènmohǎo. 'Máo-Xiǎojie 'néng-bu-néng-bāngzhu-tā-ne?
10. Zhèige-xuéxiào jiàoyuán dōu-shi-nǚ-rén, xuésheng dōu-shi-nǚ-xuésheng. Nǐ-shuō-quán-xuéxiào yǒu-'nán-rén-méi-you?

## WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

Imagine that you and a friend, Mr. Johnson, are both talking with a waiter in a North Chinese restaurant in the United States. Make up an appropriate dialogue along the following lines:

The waiter greets the two of you and asks where you want to sit. You suggest a place, and Johnson agrees to it. The waiter asks if you would both like some tea; you say you would, and tell him to bring a pot. Johnson adds that he should bring a menu, too. You ask about the specialties of the house. The waiter wants to know whether you're eating dumplings or rice, and Johnson says he wants to study the menu.

The waiter says you both speak Chinese very well, and asks where you studied and whether you have ever been to China. You answer that you haven't been, adding that your Chinese was studied in America. You ask whether your Chinese is really good or whether he's just being polite. The waiter says he's telling the truth, not being polite.

You ask Johnson what should be ordered, and Johnson suggests ordering ten dumplings, pork and fried bean curd, and fried shrimp. The waiter asks

what soup you want, and Johnson asks for beef and cabbage soup. The waiter asks if you often eat Chinese food. You say you often do, that you like to very much, but that this is the first time you've come here.

Johnson asks the waiter if he's a Northerner. The waiter says all of them here are. Johnson wants to know how long the waiter has been in America, and the waiter tells him twenty-odd years. You say the food is not bad. The waiter hopes you will come often.

## NOTES

1. Question words in pairs have meanings like 'whatever,' 'whoever,' 'which-ever,' etc. They occur in paired phrases the second of which usually contains the word jiù 'then':

Ní-xǐhuan-shénmo (ní-) jiù-'chī-shénmo. 'Eat whatever you like.'  
[lit. 'You like what, then eat what.']

Mǔqín-zuò-shénmo nǚ-háizi-jiù-'zuò-shénmo. 'Girls do whatever their mothers do.'

If the subject is the same for both verbs, its mention before the second verb is optional (see also the first sentence above):

'Shéi-yào-lǚxíng 'shéi-jiù-qù-lǚxíng. or  
'Shéi-yào-lǚxíng jiù-qù-lǚxíng.

'Whoever wants to make a trip can go on a trip.'

Sometimes the question word in the second phrase occurs in a different usage from that of the first phrase. Thus in the following sentence the first néiběn is the subject of the sentence, and the second is the object:

'Néiběn-shū-róngyì-kàn wǒ-jiu-yào-'néiběn. 'I want whichever book is easiest to read.'

Sometimes the question in the second phrase is interchangeable with some other word:

'Shéi-huì-zuò-Zhōngguó-fàn jiù-qǐng-shéi-zuò. or  
'Shéi-huì-zuò-Zhōngguó-fàn jiù-qǐng-tā-zuò.  
'Whoever can cook Chinese food is invited to do so.'

2. The adverbs yě 'also' and dōu 'all' are used in the patterns A yě B and A dōu B, in which B is a verb phrase and A is either a noun or a verb phrase. If A is a noun phrase, the construction means 'even A does B':

Wáng-Xiānsheng yě-bu-lái. or  
Wáng-Xiānsheng dōu-bu-lái.  
'Even Mr. Wang isn't coming.'

If A is a verb phrase, the construction means 'even if A (still) B':

Nǐ-lái Wáng-Xiānsheng-yě-bu-lái. or  
Nǐ-lái Wáng-Xiānsheng-dōu-bu-lái.  
'Even if you come, Mr. Wang isn't coming.'

The 'even' meaning can be made more explicit by using lián (lit. 'join') or jiùshi (lit. 'precisely is') or jiùshi lián before A:

Lián-'Wáng-Xiānsheng yě-bu-lái. or  
 Jiùshi-'Wáng-Xiānsheng yě-bu-lái. or  
 Jiùshi-lián-'Wáng-Xiānsheng yě-bu-lái.  
 'Even Mr. Wang isn't coming.'

Lián-nǐ-lái Wáng-Xiānsheng-yě-bu-lái. or  
 Jiùshi-nǐ-lái Wáng-Xiānsheng-yě-bu-lái. or  
 Jiùshi-lián-nǐ-lái Wáng-Xiānsheng-yě-bu-lái.  
 'Even if you come, Mr. Wang isn't coming.'

3. The transformation of the verb-object sequence into the inverted order of object-verb changes the meaning from 'do X' to 'X to do':

Tā-chī-fàn. 'He eats food.'  
 Tā-méi-yǒu-fàn-chī. 'He has no food to eat.'  
 Tā-zuò-shì. 'He is working.'  
 Tā-méi-yǒu-shì-zuò. 'He has no work to do.'

Kéyì 'can' may be inserted between the two elements of these phrases:

Tā-méi-yǒu-fàn-kéyì-chī. 'He has no food (which he) can eat.'

The inverted phrase is most often used with a preceding yǒu or méi-yǒu, as in the examples above.

4. We have seen (Lesson 8, Note 1, p. 100) that some stative verbs combine with transitive verbs to form compound descriptive phrases, such as hǎo-chī 'good to eat.' Another of these is gòu 'enough':

Fàn-gòu-chī-ma? 'Is there enough food to eat?'

We have also seen (Lesson 13, Note 6, p. 188) that kuài 'fast' means 'soon' when used before another verb:

Wǒmen-kuài-zǒu-ba. 'Let's leave right away.'

Màn 'slow' in a similar usage means 'not (so) soon'; a common phrase màn-zǒu [lit. 'go not (so) soon'] is said to departing guests—'Don't be in a hurry to go.' Màn in this usage also means 'slow,' 'slowly,' according to the context:

màn-zǒu 'go slowly'  
 màn-kāi 'drive slowly'

Other stative verbs acquire further shades of meaning when used adverbially:

Lǎo 'old' becomes 'always':

Wó-lǎo-chī-'Zhōngguó-fàn. 'I always eat Chinese food.'

Dà 'big' becomes 'much' or 'very':

Wǒ-bu-dà-huì-shuō-Zhōngguó-huà. 'I can't speak Chinese very well.'

Bái 'white' becomes 'uselessly':

Wǒ-bái-qù-le. Tā-méi-zài-jīā. 'I went to no purpose. He wasn't at home.'

5. Shi 'be' is added to a number of expressions, especially adverbs, to make them more emphatic:

yóuqí or yóuqíshi 'especially'

tèbié or tèbiéshi 'especially'

háí or háishi 'still'

Wǒ-shuōle-hě-n-duō-cì. Tā-'háishi-bù-dǒng. 'I said it several times.

He still didn't understand.'

6. The verb lái 'come' is also used in restaurants in the sense of 'cause to come, bring':

Lái-yìhú-chá-ba. 'Bring a pot of tea.'



## Lesson 22 DISCUSSING CHINESE



"Nǐ-shuō-pīnyīnde-fázi 'zěnmō-hǎo-ne?"

Dialogue: Mr. Gao and Mr. White exchange views on Chinese.

Gāo-Xiānsheng, Gāo-Tàitai, Gāo-Xiáojie lǚxíng-Rìběn huílai-yǐhòu, 'Bái-Xiānsheng lái-kàn-tāmen. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng hěn-gāoxìng, qǐng-'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-tāmen-jia-lǐ-tou chī-wǎnfàn, gēn-ta-tán guān-yú-Zhōngguó-yǔyán gēn-wénxué-de-yìxiē-wèntí.

(Bái-Xiānsheng-dǎ-mén.)

Gāo-Xiáojie: Shéi-a?

Bái: Shi-wǒ, Měiyīng.

(Měiyīng-kāi-mén.)

Gāo-Xiáojie: Wénshān, hǎo-ma? Ní-zǎochen-dǎ-diànhuà shuō-jīntian-lái wǒ-fùqin-hěn-gāoxìng, dēngzhe-nǐ-lái-ne.

5

After Mr. and Mrs. Gao and Miss Gao return from traveling in Japan, Mr. White comes to see them. Mr. Gao is delighted, and invites Mr. White to have dinner at their home and to chat with him about some problems concerning Chinese language and literature.

(Mr. White knocks on the door.)

Who is it?

It's me, Meiyīng.

(Meiyīng opens the door.)

Vincent, how are you? When you called this morning and said you were coming today my father was very happy. He's been waiting for you [to come].

15

- Bái: Měiyīng, nǐ-zuò-shénmo-ne?  
Huà-huàr-ne, hái-shì-niàn-shū-ne? 20  
Meiying, what are you doing?  
Are you painting or reading?
- Gāo-Xiǎojie: Yě-méi-huà-huàr yě-méi-niàn-shū. Bāngzhu-mǔ-qín-zuò-fàn-ne.  
Neither. I'm helping my mother cook dinner.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Wénshān, nǐ-lái-le. Hǎo-ma? 25  
Vincent, welcome [lit. you've come]! How are you?
- Bái: Gāo-Xiānsheng, nín-hǎo? Jǐntiān-méi-chūqu-ma?  
Hello, Mr. Gao. You haven't been out today?
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Méi-you. Qǐng-zuò. Wǒmen-hē-chá, chī-diǎnxīn. Měiyīng, ná-diār-'Rìběn-diǎnxīn. Zài-géi-wo-yìbēi-chá. Wǒ-zài-'Rìběn mǎile-jíbēn-guānyú-yǔyánxué-de-shū. Wǒ-kàn-guole, 'hěn-bú-cuò. Duì-ni-hén-yǒu-yòng. Sònggei-ni. 30 35  
No, I haven't. Sit down. Let's have some tea and cakes. Meiying, get some Japanese pastry. Give me a cup of tea too. In Japan I bought several books dealing with linguistics. I've read them. They're not bad at all. They'll be useful to you. I'm presenting them to you.
- Bái: Xièxie-nín.  
Thank you.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Wǒ-zhèng-xīwang-nǐ-lái. Wǒmen-'tántán zhè-jíbēn-shū-lǐtóu guānyú-yǔyán-gēn-wénxué-de-wèntí. 40  
I was just hoping you would come. Let's talk about some problems in these books concerning language and literature.
- Bái: Hǎojíle. Nín-zài-'Rìběn wárde-hěn-gāoxìng-ba?  
Excellent. I take it you were happy with your Japanese holiday.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Hén-hǎo. 'Rìběn-hén-yǒu-yìsi. Yuánlái-xiǎng 'duō-zhù-jǐtiān, Měiyīng-láo-xiǎng-huílai. 45  
It was fine. Japan is very interesting. I had originally planned to stay a few more days, but Meiying kept wanting to come back.
- Bái: Měiyīng, nǐ-zài-'Rìběn-huà-de-huàr náchulai-wǒ-kànkàn. 50  
Meiying, bring out the paintings you did in Japan so I can see them.
- Gāo-Xiǎojie: Nǐ-máng-shénmo? Dēng-yìhuěr màn-mārde-kàn. Wó-yě-méi-huà-jǐzhāng. Měitiān-gēnzhe-fùqín-mǔqín-qu-wár. 55  
What's the hurry? Wait a while and take your time looking. I didn't make many paintings. Every day I went around with my father and mother having fun.
- Bái: Gāo-Xiānsheng, nín-zài-'Rìběn hái-tiāntiān-xiě-zì-ma?  
Mr. Gao, when you were in Japan did you still practice calligraphy every day?
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Méi-you. Měitiān-dōu-chūqu-wár. Nár-yǒu-gōngfu-xiě-zì-ne? Wǒmen-zài-'Rìběn-de-shíhou nǐ-dōu- 60  
No. I spent every day having a good time. Where would I find time to write characters? When we were in Japan what did you

- zuò-xiē-shénmo-ne? Kéyì-gàosu-wǒmen-ma? do all the time? Can you tell us?.
- Bái: Wó-'nár-yě-méi-qù. Měitiān-kànkān-shū-zhāozhao-péngyou, 65 I didn't go anywhere. I read a bit and visited friends every day, saw a few movies, and wrote to my father and mother and friends.
- Gāo: Nǐ-zhēn-shì-yíge-hǎo-xué-shang. Zì-xiěde-nènmo-hǎo, 70 You really are a good student. You write so well, and speak with such accurate tones. If you hadn't studied so well how could you be so good?
- Bái: Nín-guòjiǎng. 75 You flatter me.
- Gāo: Xiànzài-wǒ-gàosu-ni wó-mǎi-de-nèi-jíbēn-shū-lǐtōu yǒu-yíběn shì-yíwèi-'Rìběn-jiàoshòu Zhōngshān\*-Xiānsheng-xiě-de. Tándào-pīnyīn\*\*-gēn-Hànzide-wèntí. Nǐ-kāishǐ-xué-Zhōngwén shì-'zěnmoxué-de-ne? Zài-Měiguoxuéxiào-lǐtōu jiāo-de-fázi-dōu-yíyàng-ma? 80 85 I want to tell you now that among the books I bought there's one written by a Japanese professor, Mr. Nakayama.\* It discusses the problem of alphabetic writing\*\* and Chinese characters. When you began to study Chinese how did you study? Is there a uniform method of teaching in American schools?
- Bái: Měiguoxuéxiào-lǐtōu jiāo-de-fázi-bù-yíyàng. 'Yǒude-kāishǐ-jiù-xué-Hànzì, 'yǒude-yòng-pīnyīn-xué. The teaching methods in American schools are not uniform. Some begin with studying Chinese characters, some use transcription.
- Gāo: Nǐ-juéde néizhǒng-fázi-hǎo? 90 Which method do you think is better?
- Bái: Wǒ-juéde pīnyīnde-fázi-bíjiào-hǎo. I think the transcription method is better.
- Gāo: Wó-xiǎng guānyú-Zhōngguoyǔyán wǒ-bù-xǐhuan-yòng-pīnyīnde-fázi. Rúguǒ-yòng- 95 I don't think I like using a romanization in connection with the Chinese language. If you use

\* The characters for the Chinese name Zhōngshān, which means 'middle mountain,' are read by the Japanese as Nakayama (naka 'middle,' yama 'mountain'), so that the name Nakayama is the Japanese equivalent of Chinese Zhōngshān. (Nakayama is a common Japanese name, and this is why Sun Yat-sen adopted the corresponding Chinese name Zhōngshān—by which most Chinese know him—while he was a political exile in Japan. The practice of giving Chinese readings for Japanese words and expressions is a common one, and the reverse practice is common in Japan.

\*\* The term pīnyīn [lit. 'spell sounds'] is used in two senses: (1) as a general term for transcription or romanization, and (2) as the designation for a specific system of transcription, that used in this book.

- pīnyīn-fázi nà-bú-shì-niàn-Yīngwén-le-ma? Nǎr-shì-xué-Zhōngwén-ne?
- Bái: Nín-'bù-xǐhuan-pīnyīn-de-fázi-ma? Wǒ-juéde yòng-pīnyīn-de-fázi bǐjiào-hǎo. Yòu-kuài-yòu-róngyì. 100
- Gāo: Nǐ-shuō-pīnyīn-de-fázi 'zěn-mo-hǎo-ne?
- Bái: Xiān-xué-huì-shuōle yǐhòu zài-niàn-shū-xiě-zì jiù-bù-nán-le. 105
- Gāo: Nǐ-shuō-'zěnmō-bù-nán?
- Bái: Huì-shuō-le-yǐhòu zhīdao-tāde-yìsi-le, zài-niàn-shū jiù-bǐjiào-róngyì-míngbailé. 110
- Gāo: Kěshì-nǐ-xué-pīnyīn bú-rènshi-Zhōngguó-zì, hái-děi-'zài-xué-Zhōngguó-zì. 115
- Bái: Kěshì-zìde-yìsi rúguó-yǐ-jīng-xuéguo-le, xué-Hànzì-de-shíhou zhǐ-xué-Hànzì, jiù-bù-bì-xué-yìsi-le.
- Gāo: Nǐ-nènmo-yì-shuō huòzhě-pīnyīn-de-fázi yé-yǒu-tāde-hǎochu. 120
- Bái: Wó-xiǎng-'shì-hén-hǎo. Yǔyán-shì-yǔyán, wénxué-shì-wénxué, shì-liǎng-bù-fen. 125
- Gāo: Nǐ-kāishǐ-xué yídìng-hěnyònggōng-le.
- Bái: Nèige-shíhou wó-hěn-yònggōng. Měitiān-tīng-lùyìn, zìjǐ-gēn-zìjǐ-shuō-huà, liànxī-fāyīn, bá-měitiān-xué-de dōu-jìzhu. Yuè-xué-yuè-yǒu-xìngqù. 130
- Gāo: Nǐ-kāishǐ shì-xiān-xué-shuō-huà-ma? 135
- romanization isn't that reading English? Where is there any studying of Chinese?
- You don't like the transcription method? I think it's better to use this method. It's faster as well as easier.
- Tell me how transcription is better.
- (If you) first learn to speak and afterwards go on to reading and writing, then it is no longer difficult.
- How come it's not difficult?
- After mastering speech you've learned what it means and so in going on to reading it's relatively easier to understand.
- But in learning romanization you don't become familiar with Chinese characters, and you still have to study them.
- But if the meanings of the characters have been learned already, when you study characters you just study characters, and so it's no longer necessary to study meanings.
- From what you say, perhaps the transcription method has some advantages.
- I believe it is very good. Language is language, literature is literature, and they're two different things [lit. two parts].
- When you began your studies you must have been very diligent.
- At that time I did work hard. Every day I listened to recordings, carried on monologues, practiced pronunciation, and fixed in my memory all that we studied every day. The more I studied the more interested I became.
- At the beginning did you first study speaking?

- Bái: Shì, wǒ-xiān-xué-shuō-huà.  
 Gāo: Nǐ-xiān-xué-shuō-huà shì-zěnmó-xué-ne?  
 Bái: Wǒ-kāishǐ-xué-sìshēng gēn-qīngzhōngyīn, yǐhòu-xué-cér (bǐfang-shuō shū, tàitai jiù-shì-cér) gēn-duǎn-jùzi, zài-xué-huìhuà. 140  
 Gāo: Xué-yǔyán 'tèbié-yīnggāi-zhùyì-de shì-shénmo? 145  
 Bái: Tèbié-yào-zhùyì-de shì-fā-yīn-gēn-yúfǎ.  
 Gāo: Pīnyīn-duì-fāyīn yǒu-bāng-zhu-ba. 150  
 Bái: Pīnyīnde-fázi-duì-fāyīn hén-yǒu-bāngzhu. Zhōngguó-huà zuì-yào-zhùyì-de shì-sìshēng. Bǐfang-shuō tàitai-zhèige-cér jiù-shì-liǎngge-yīnjié. Dì-yīge-yīnjié shì-yǒu-shēng-de, dì-sìshēng. Dì-èrge-yīnjié shì-qīng-shēng, jiù-shì-méi-you-shēng. 155  
 Gāo: Rúguǒ-yòng-Hànzì 'duǎnchū-zài-nǎr?  
 Bái: Bǐfang-shuō tàitai-zhèige-cér. Rúguǒ-yòng-Hànzì-xiě, jiù-yòng-liǎngge-yíyàngde-zì. Yòng-Hànzì yě-bù-zhī-dào zhèi-liǎngge-zì zài-yíkuàr-niàn háishi-'bú-zài-yíkuàr-niàn. Shì-'jǐshēng yě-bù-zhīdào. Rúguó-liǎngge-zì yíyàng-niàn jiù-shì-tàitai, nà-jiu-'bú-shì-shuō-huà-le. 160  
 Gāo: Nǐ-shuōde-yě-bú-cuò, kěshì-bù-'dōu-duì. Nǐ-yòng-Hànzì-xué yídìng-yǒu-ge-Zhōngguó-xiānsheng-jiāo-ni. Yàobu-rán-ní-'zěnmó-xué? Xiānsheng yídìng-gàosu-nǐ zěnmó-niàn. Tā-yídìng-gàosu-nǐ-niàn-tàitai. Tā-bú-huì-jiāo-nǐ-niàn-tàitai. 170  
 Gāo: Nǐ-shuōde-yě-bú-cuò, kěshì-bù-'dōu-duì. Nǐ-yòng-Hànzì-xué yídìng-yǒu-ge-Zhōngguó-xiānsheng-jiāo-ni. Yàobu-rán-ní-'zěnmó-xué? Xiānsheng yídìng-gàosu-nǐ zěnmó-niàn. Tā-yídìng-gàosu-nǐ-niàn-tàitai. Tā-bú-huì-jiāo-nǐ-niàn-tàitai. 180

Yes, I first learned to speak.  
 When you began with speech, how did you study?

I began by studying the four tones and stress. Afterwards I studied words (for example, shū and tàitai are words) and phrases, and then studied conversation.

In studying languages what must you pay special attention to?

What needs most attention is pronunciation and grammar.

I take it transcription is helpful in pronunciation.

The transcription method is very helpful in pronunciation. In Chinese what needs the most attention is the four tones. For example, the word tàitai is two syllables. The first syllable has a tone, the fourth tone. The second syllable is a neutral tone, that is, it has no tone.

If you use Chinese characters where are the disadvantages?

Take this word tàitai for example. If you write it in Chinese characters, you use two identical characters. If you use Chinese characters you don't know whether these two characters are read together or not. Neither can you tell what tones they are. If the two characters are read in the same way, it becomes tài tài, and that's no longer a spoken form.

Your ideas aren't bad, but they aren't entirely correct. If you study by means of Chinese characters you will certainly have a Chinese teacher to teach you. Otherwise how would you study? The teacher would certainly tell you how to read it. He would [certainly] tell you to read it tàitai. He couldn't tell you to read it tài tài.



Bái: Rúguǒ-yòng-Hànzì xué-  
Zhōngguo-yǔyán, méi-xué-  
guo-de-zì nǐ-méi-fázi zì-  
jǐ-huì-niàn-le. Xiàng-tā-  
zhèige-zì, zuǒbiār-shi-rén,  
yòubiār-shi-yě. Méi-yǒu-  
tā-zìde-yīn. Rúguǒ-zìjǐ-  
liànxi-de-shíhou wǒmen-yí-  
kàn-pīnyīn jiù-huì-niàn-le.  
Suóyi-pīnyīn shi-zuì-hǎode-  
fāngfǎ-le.

亻 + 也 = 他  
rén + yě ≠ tā

Gāo: Néng-bù-néng Hànzì-gēn-  
pīnyīn yí-'kuàr-xué-ne? 195

Bái: Yòng-pīnyīnde-fázi-xué,  
kéyi-xiān-xué-fāyīn, cǎrde-  
yìsi, gēn-yúfǎ. Yǐhòu-zài-  
xué-Hànzì. Rúguǒ-tóngshí  
yòu-xué-fāyīn, cǎr, Hànzì,  
wénfǎ, xué-de-dōngxi-'tài-  
duō-le, jiù-xuéde-bíjiǎo-  
màn-le. 200

Gāo: Xué-Hànzì yé-bu-tài-nán-  
ne. Jiù-shi-duō-liànxi-me. 205

Bái: Xué-Hànzì yóu-liǎngge-nán-  
chu Yíge shi-wǒ-gāngcái-  
shuōguo méi-fázi-zhīdao-  
zěnmo-niàn. Yíge-shi-bì-  
děi-jìzhu zěnmo-xiě, yóu-  
jǐhuà. Bǐfang-tā-zhèige-zì  
yóu-wǔhuà, shi-liǎng-bùfen.  
Xiān-xié-zuǒbiār hòu-xiě-  
yòubiār. Bìděi-jìzhu xiěde-  
fázi. Nín-kàn xiān-xué-  
Hànzì bǐ-xiān-xué-pīnyīn  
nán-de-duō. 210 215

If you use Chinese characters to study the Chinese language, there is no way of knowing by yourself how to read a character which you have not previously studied. For example, the character for tā is rén on the left and yě on the right. There is no sound of the character tā. When we practice by ourselves, as soon as we see the transcription then we're able to read it. That's why a transcription is the best system.

Would it be possible to study Chinese characters together with the romanization?

If you study using the transcription method, you can first study pronunciation, the meaning of words, and the grammar of the language. Later you also study characters. If you study pronunciation, vocabulary, characters, and grammar at (one and) the same time, there are too many things to learn, and so progress is relatively slow.

Learning characters is not too hard. It's just a matter of practicing more, of course.

There are two difficulties in studying Chinese characters. One, as I've just mentioned, is that there is no way to know how to read them. Another is that one must memorize how to write them, how many strokes they have. For example, the character for tā has five strokes and consists of two parts. First you write the left and then you write the right. You must memorize how to write. You see that studying characters first is a lot harder than studying transcription first.

Gāo: Pīnyīnde-fázi hǎo-shi-hǎo,  
kěshi-kànqilai háishi-Hànzì-  
piàoliang. 220

Alphabetic writing is good, all  
right; but still to the eye the  
Chinese characters are more  
beautiful.

## VOCABULARY

bǐfang	example (N) (Note 12 below)
bùfen	section, part, member (M) [lit. section part]
cí, cé	word (N)
duǎn	short (SV)
duǎnchu	disadvantage, shortcoming (N) (Note 5)
fā	put out, emit (TV)
fāyīn	pronunciation (N) [lit. emit sound]
guānyú	concerning, regarding (CV)
Hàn	China, Chinese (N) (Note 3)
Hànzì	Chinese characters (N) (Note 14)
hǎochu	advantage (N) (Note 5)
huá	stroke (in a character) (M)
huìhuà	dialogue, conversation (N) [lit. assembly speech]
jì(zhu)	remember, memorize (TV) (Note 5)
jùzi	sentence (N)
liànxì	practice, learn how to (TV) [lit. practice practice]
nánchu	difficulty (N) (Note 5)
pīn	spell (out), write in alphabetic script (TV)
pīnyīn	alphabetic writing, spelling, transcription, romanization (N)
qīng	light (in weight) (SV)
qīngzhòngyīn	stress (N) (Note 9)
shēng	sound, tone (N, M) (Note 10)
shēngyīn	noise, sound (N) (Note 5)
sìshēng	(four) tones (N) (Note 11)
sòng	escort, send, give (TV)
tóngshí	same time, simultaneously (TW) (Note 5)
wénfǎ	grammar (N) (Note 14)
wèntí	problem, question, theme (N) [lit. ask topic]
yīn	sound (N)



yīnjié	syllable (N) [lit. sound joint]
yúfǎ	grammar (N) (Notes 5, 14)
yuè	the more (AD) (Note 1)
zhèng	just (now), precisely, exactly (AD) (Note 11)
zhòng	heavy (SV)
zhǔn	accurate (SV)
zhùyì	pay attention to (TV) [lit. note idea]
zìjǐ	self (lit. self self)

# SENTENCE BUILD-UP

1. Yuè-duō-yuè-hǎo.	the more . . . the more The more the better.
2. Wǒ-yuè-chī-Zhōngguó-fàn yuè-xǐhuan-chī.	the more I eat Chinese food the more I like to eat The more I eat Chinese food the more I like [to eat] it.
3. Rén-yuè-lái-yuè-duō.	more and more People are becoming more and more numerous.
4. Nǐde-biǎo 'zhǔn-bu-zhǔn?	accurate Is your watch accurate?
5. Zhōngguó-huà yǒu-sìshēng.	sound, tone four tones Chinese has four tones.
6. Tā-shuō-huà yīn-hěnduì.	sound, pronunciation pronunciation quite correct [In speaking] his pronunciation is quite correct.
7. Zhèr-shēngyīn-tàidà.	sound, noise noise is too great There's too much noise here.
8. Zhèige-yīn-zěnmopīn?	spell alphabetically How is this sound spelled?
9. Pīnyīn hěn-róngyì-niàn.	spelling, alphabetic writing Alphabetic writing is easy to read.
fā	put out, emit

- fā-yīn  
10. Tā-fā-de-yīn hěn-duì.
- fāyīn  
fāyīn-bú-cuò  
11. Tā-shuō-Zhōngguo-huà fāyīn-bú-cuò.
- zhùyì  
12. Kāishǐ-děi-zhùyì-fāyīn.
- liànxì  
13. Ní-děi-duō-liànxì-fāyīn.
- wèntí  
wèn-wèntí  
14. Wǒ-xiànzài wèn-nǐmen-jǐge-wèntí.
- hǎo  
hǎohāorde  
15. Ní-děi-hǎohāorde-niàn-shū.
- wén  
wénfǎ  
'Zhōngwénde-wénfǎ  
16. Zhōngwénde-wénfǎ gēn-Yīng-wénde-wénfǎ bù-yíyàng.
- yúfǎ  
17. 'Wénfǎ-gēn-yúfǎ yìsi-yíyàng.
- jùzi  
dì-sìge-jùzi  
18. Qíng-nǐ-niàn dì-sìge-jùzi.
- cér  
jǐge-cér?  
19. Zhèige-jùzili yóu-jǐge-cér?
- sòng  
sòng-péngyou  
sòng-péngyou-shàng-chuán  
20. Wǒ-míngtiān sòng-péngyou-shàng-chuán.
- sòng-qián  
sòng-ta-yìdiǎr-qián

utter sounds, pronounce  
The sounds he makes are quite correct.

pronunciation  
pronunciation is not bad  
(When) he speaks Chinese his pronunciation isn't bad.

pay close attention to  
At the beginning one must pay close attention to pronunciation.

practice  
You should practice pronunciation more.

problem, question  
ask a question  
Now I'll put several problems to you.

good, well  
well  
You must study well.

literature, language  
grammar  
grammar of Chinese  
Chinese grammar is not the same as English grammar.

grammar  
Wénfǎ and yúfǎ mean the same thing.

sentence  
the fourth sentence  
Please read the fourth sentence.

word  
how many words?  
How many words are there in this sentence?

see [a person] off  
see a friend off  
see a friend off on the boat  
I'm seeing him off on the boat tomorrow.

send money  
send him a little money

21. Wǒ-míngtiān sòng-tā-yìdiǎr-qián.  
       sòng-qián  
       sòng-qián-gěi-ta  
 I'll send him a little money tomorrow.  
       send money  
       send money to him
22. Wǒ-míngtiān sòng-qián-gěi-ta.  
       sònggei  
 I'll send him some money tomorrow.  
       send to
23. Nǐ-míngtiān bǎ-qián-sònggei-ta.  
       yuè  
       yuèyuèr  
 Send him the money tomorrow.  
       month  
       every month
24. Wǒ-yuèyuèr-qù-Hángzhou.  
       yíge-cér  
       gège-cér  
 I go to Hangchow every month.  
       one word  
       every word
25. Nǐ-gège-cér dōu-shuōcuò-le.  
       rén  
       'rénrén  
 You've said every word wrong.  
       person  
       everyone
26. 'Rénrén-dōu-děi-chī-fàn.  
       bú-shì-'rénrén  
 Everybody has to eat.  
       it isn't everybody
27. Bú-shì-'rénrén dōu-xǐhuan-xué-Zhōngwén.  
       qīng  
       qīng-shēng  
 Not everybody likes to study Chinese.  
       light (in weight)  
       neutral tone
28. Chule-sìshēng-yǐwài hái-yǒu-qīng-shēng.  
       zhòng  
       zhòng-yīn  
 Apart from the four tones there is also a neutral tone.  
       heavy  
       heavy sound, stress
29. Zhèige-cérde-zhòng-yīn zài-nǎ?  
       qīngzhòngyīn  
 Where is the stress in this word?  
       stress
30. Xué-yǔyán děi-zhùyì-qīng-zhòngyīn.  
       bùfen  
       yíbùfen  
 In studying a language one must pay attention to stress.  
       part  
       one part
31. Wǒde-shū yíbùfen-zài-Zhōng-guó.  
       huá  
       jǐhuá?  
 Part of my books are in China.  
       stroke (of a character)  
       how many strokes?
32. Zhèige-zì-yóu-jǐhuá?  
       duǎn  
 How many strokes are there in this character?  
       short

- hén-duǎnde-lù  
33. Nà-shi-yítiao hén-duǎnde-lù.

a very short road  
That is a very short road.

- huìhuà  
liànxì-huìhuà  
34. Ní-déi-hǎohǎorde-liànxì-huì-  
huà.

conversation  
practice conversation  
You must carefully practice conversation.

- Hàn  
Hàn-Yīng  
35. Xué-Zhōngwén bìdèi-yǒu-Hàn-  
Yīng-zìdiǎn.

Chinese  
Chinese-English  
In studying Chinese one should have a Chinese-English dictionary.

- Hànzì  
36. Hànzì bù-róngyì-xiě.

Chinese characters  
Chinese characters are not easy to write.

- zìjǐ  
wǒ-zìjǐ  
37. Fàn wǒ-zìjǐ-zuò zìjǐ-chī.

self  
I myself  
I make and eat the food by myself.

- guānyú  
guānyú-tāde-shìqing  
38. Guānyú-tāde-shìqing bié-gēn-  
wǒ-shuō.

regarding  
regarding his affairs  
Don't speak to me regarding his affairs.

- yīnjié  
39. Zhèige-duǎn-jùzi yǒu-jǐge-  
yīnjié?

syllable  
How many syllables are there in this phrase?

- zhèng  
40. Wǒ-zhèng-xiě-zì-ne.

just now, at this moment  
I'm just now writing characters.

- zhèng  
zhèng-zài  
41. Wǒ-zhèng-zài-xiě-zì-ne.

just now, at this moment  
just in the act of  
I'm just now writing characters.

- duǎn  
duǎnchū  
42. Tāde-duǎnchū 'tài-duō-le.

short  
shortcoming, inadequacy  
He has too many shortcomings.

- jì  
43. Hànzide-xiěfǎ hěn-nán-jì.

remember  
It's difficult to remember the way to write Chinese characters.

- jì  
jìzhu  
44. Xué-'Zhōngguo-huà yào-jì-  
zhu-sìshēng.

remember  
fix in mind  
In studying Chinese one must fix the tones in mind.

bǐfang

example

- zuò-ge-bǐfang

45. Yòng-zhèige-zì zuò-ge-bǐ-fang.
- make up an example

Make up an example using this word.
- máng

máng-shénmo?

46. Nǐ-máng-shénmo?
- busy

in a hurry over what?

What are you in a hurry about?
- tóngshí

47. Tāmen-liǎnge-rén tóngshí-lái-le.
- same time

They both came at the same time.

PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 22.1. Expressing ‘the more . . . the more . . .’ (Note 1 below)

<u>yuè</u>	V <sub>1</sub>	<u>yuè</u>	V <sub>2</sub>
‘the more’	Verb <sub>1</sub>	‘the more’	Verb <sub>2</sub>
yuè	gāo	yuè	hǎo
‘the higher the better’			

1. Wǒ-yuè-yánjiu-'Zhōngguo-yǔyán yuè-juéde-yǒu-xìng-qu.

The more I study the Chinese language the more interested I become.
2. Wǒ-yuè-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn yuè-juéde-hǎo-chī.

The more Chinese food I eat the more delicious I consider it to be.
3. Xué-pīnyīn-zì yuè-xué-yuè-róngyì.

When you study transcription, the more you study the easier it gets.
4. Měiguó-qìchē yuè-lái-yuè-duō.

American cars are becoming more and more numerous.
5. Zuótian-wǒ-jiè-de-nèiběn-shū, yuè-kàn-yuè-xiǎng-kàn.

That book I borrowed yesterday, the more I read the more I want to read.
6. Wǒ-'yuè-bu-xǐhuan-ta ta-yuè-gēn-wǒ-shuō-huà.

The more I dislike him the more he talks to me.
7. Nǐ-Zhōngguo-huà yuè-lái-yuè-shuōde-hǎo.

You're speaking Chinese better and better.
8. 'Gāo-Xiáojie-shuō ta-huà-de-huàr yuè-huà-yuè-bù-hǎo.

Miss Gao says that the more paintings she does the worse they get.
9. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng yuè-gāoxìng yuè-xǐhuan-shuō-huà.

The happier Mr. Gao gets the more he likes to talk.

10. Kāishǐ-xué-sìshēng-de-shí-hou, yuè-xué-yuè-zhǔn.

When you first study the four tones, the more you study the more correct they become.

Pattern 22.2. Reduplicated Stative Verbs (Note 2 below)

SV <sub>1</sub>	SV <sub>1</sub>	(-r)	(-de)
hǎo	hǎo	-r	-de
= hǎohǎorde 'well'			

- |                                                                             |                                                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Wó-déi-hǎohǎorde niàn-shū-le, yàoburán-kǎobushàng.                       | I must study hard, otherwise I can't pass the exam.                                                       |
| 2. Nimen-jǐge-rén dōu-xǐhuan-chī-shízi-tóu, xià-cì wǒ-duōduōrde-zuò-diar.   | (Since) you all like to eat lion's head, next time I'll make a few more.                                  |
| 3. Wǒmen-děi-kuàikuārde-zǒu. Yàoburán diànyǐngr-yào-kāi-yǎn-le.             | We must hurry. Otherwise the movie will have started.                                                     |
| 4. Wó-yuǎnyuārde jiù-kànjian-ta wàng-zhè-lái-le.                            | From far off I saw him coming here.                                                                       |
| 5. Rúguó-yǒu-yíge-wèntí bìděi-mànmārde-yánjiu.                              | If there is a problem you must take your time in studying it.                                             |
| 6. Ní-xiáng-bǎ-'Zhōngguo-huà shuō-de-hén-hǎo, bìděi-duōduōrde-liànxi-fāyīn. | If you want to speak Chinese very well, you must do a lot of practicing of pronunciation.                 |
| 7. Liànxi-xiě-'Zhōngguo-zì bìdēi-hǎohǎorde-zhùyì xiě-de-fázi.               | In learning how to write Chinese characters, you must pay careful attention to the way of writing (them). |
| 8. Wǒ-chībǎo-le. Qǐng-nín-mànmārde-chī-ba.                                  | I'm full. Please take your time eating.                                                                   |
| 9. Qíng-nǐmen-bié-shuō-huà. Hǎohǎorde-tīng-lùyīn.                           | Please don't talk. Listen carefully to the recording.                                                     |
| 10. Qíng-nǐ-kuàikuār-gàosu-wo, zhèige-zì shì-shénmo-yīn.                    | Please tell me quickly how to pronounce this character.                                                   |

Pattern 22.3. Reduplication of Measures (Note 3 below)

M	M
Measure	Measure (-r)
běn	běn/běr
= bénběr 'every volume'	

1. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng yǒu-sìge-háizi. Gèger dōu-nènmo-yònggōng-niàn-shū.	Mr. King has four children. Each one studies so diligently.
2. 'Zhāng-Tàitai zuì-xǐhuan-lǚxíng. Tā-niánniár dōu-dào-biède-dìfang-qu-yíci.	Mrs. Johnson likes most to travel. Once every year she goes somewhere [else].
3. 'Máo-Xiānsheng zuótian-sònggei-wo-wúběnn-shū. Běnběi-dōu-hǎo-kàn.	Mr. Mao sent me five books yesterday. Every volume was beautiful.
4. Xué-yǔyán bìděi-zhùyì-gègēcérde-fāyīn.	When you study a language, you must pay attention to the pronunciation of every word.
5. Wǒ-tiāntiār bāngzhu-wó-mǔ-qín-zuò-fàn.	Every day I help my mother cook.
6. Wǒ-yuèyuèr dōu-qu-Niǔyue-wár-yíci.	I go to New York to have fun once every month.
7. Nèige-háizi hén-hǎo. 'Rén-rén dōu-xǐhuan-ta.	That child is very nice. Everyone likes him.
8. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-xué-'Zhōng-guó-huà fāyīn, jùzi, wénfǎ yàngyàng-dōu-hǎo.	In studying Chinese, Mr. King is good in every aspect of pronunciation, sentences, and grammar.
9. 'Wáng-Xiǎojie-huà-de-huàr zhāngzhāngr-dōu-hén-hǎo.	Every one of the paintings that Miss Wang has painted is excellent.
10. Nèige-dàxuéde-jiàoshòu gèger-dōu-hén-yǒu-míng.	Every one of the professors in that university is famous.

SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 12 phrases (Note 1)

yuè	róngyì	yuè	—	hǎo
	nán		bu	
	duō			
	kuài			
	màn			
	lái			



## II: 36 sentences (Note 1)

(In the columns marked by asterisks, only items from the same row may be used together: chī with chī, hē with hē, etc.)

		*			*
wǒ	yuè	chī	yuè	xǐhuan	chī
nǐ		hē		xiǎng	hē
tā		kàn		yào	kàn
		mǎi			mǎi

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## Review of Four-Syllable Expressions (IV)

(Asterisks mark forms which have undergone changes of third to second tone.)

0 0 3		1 0 3	2 0 3
1	tāmende-jiǔ	tā-shuōde-hǎo	tā-huódeliǎo
2	máfande-hěn	Wáng-Xiānsheng-yǒu	ná-biéde-bǐ
3	mǎile-de-zhǐ	jiǎndānde-hǎo	nǚ-háizi-xiǎo
4	kèrende-bǐ	wàng-xībiar-zǒu	yì zhíde-zǒu
3 0 3		4 0 3	
1	dōu-mǎibuliǎo	tā-zuòde-hǎo	
2	nín-dǒng-bu-dǒng	nán-kàn-de-hěn	
3	hén-hǎode-shuǐ *	wǒ-kànbudǒng	
4	gèng-hǎode-jiǔ	tài-dàde-bǐ	
0 1 3		1 1 3	2 1 3
1	bēizi-dōu-xiǎo	xīngqīyī-zǒu	jiānglái-dōu-mǎi
2	shénmo-fāngfǎ	shí zhī-gāngbǐ	chá-shífēn-hǎo
3	nǐmen-xiān-qǐng	mǎi-sānzhī-bǐ	qǐng-shéi-hē-jiǔ
4	gùshi-shū-shǎo	yào-sānzhāng-zhǐ	zài-túshūguǎn
3 1 3		4 1 3	
1	tā-mǎi-qiānbǐ	tā-huì-hē-jiǔ	
2	lí-wǒ-jiā-yuǎn	yí gòng-sānběn	
3	wúdiǎnzhōng-zǒu *	bǐ-ròu-dōu-hǎo	
4	jiù-yǒu-sānběn	kuài-dào-sāndiǎn	

0 2 3		1 2 3	2 2 3
1	bēizi-nán-mǎi	tīngshuō-hái-yǒu	tā-huǐ-Húběi
2	juéde-hái-hǎo	hóng-shāo-yú-hǎo	quán-guó-méi-yǒu
3	yǒude-méi-dǒng	kǎo-yā-méi-yǒu	yǎnyuán-méi-zǒu
4	tàitai-méi-mǎi	qìchē-nán-mǎi	jiàngyóu-hái-yǒu

3 2 3		4 2 3
1	tā-yǒu-chá-wǎn	chē-zài-mén-kǒur
2	érqiě-nán-xiě	táng-cù-yú-hǎo
3	wó-yǒu-máobǐ *	kǒngpà-méi-yǒu
4	zhèiběn-hái-hǎo	hòu-dào-Húběi

0 3 3		1 3 3	2 3 3
1	tīanqi-hén-hǎo *	tā-chī-liángwǎn *	xiārér-yé-yǒu *
2	názhe-bí-xiě *	ná-gāngbǐ-xiě *	cóngqián-yé-yǒu
3	běnzǐ-yé-yǒu *	wǒ-jiā-hén-yuǎn *	yǒu-qián-mái-bǐ *
4	zuòde-hén-hǎo *	cài-dār-hén-xiǎo *	jiàngyóu-hén-hǎo *

3 3 3		4 3 3
1	tā-yé-hén-lǎo *	zhōngjià-r-yé-yǒu *
2	érqié-hén-shǎo *	niú-ròu-yé-hǎo *
3	wó-yé-yóu-bǐ *	nǐ-wàng-béi-guǎi *
4	fàn-yé-hén-hǎo *	zhèiyàng-hén-hǎo *

0 4 3		1 4 3	2 4 3
1	Zhōngguo-lìshǐ	tā-chī-fànguǎr	tiāntáng-zài-nǎr
2	yánjiu-lìshǐ	lí-jiā-tài-yuǎn	wénxué-tài-hǎo
3	yǎnde-tài-hǎo	wǒ-chī-fànguǎr	yě-lí-zhèr-yuǎn
4	wàngle-dài-biǎo	yào-sān-sìběn	jiàngyóu-zài-nǎr

3 4 3		4 4 3
1	sāndiǎn-nèichǎng	tā-dào-fànguǎr
2	shéi-yǒu-zìdiǎn	Wáng-Jiàoshòu-hǎo
3	ní-děng-yìhuěr *	wǒ-niàn-lìshǐ
4	guòjiǎng-guòjiǎng	qù-kàn-diànyǐngr

## COMBINING FORMS

This exercise contains a number of expressions which are not included in the Vocabulary but are made up from the combining forms discussed in Note 5 below.

- |                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Wàiguo-rén-xué-Hànyǔ 'zuì-dàde-nánchu shi-xué-fāyīn.                                                                            | When foreigners study the Chinese language, the biggest difficulty is learning pronunciation.                                                             |
| 2. Wǒ-zuì-dàde-duǎnchu shi-xué-yǔyán bù-tīng-lùyīn.                                                                                | My biggest shortcoming is that when I study a language I don't listen to recordings.                                                                      |
| 3. Zhōngwénde-'xiéǎ gēn-Yīngwénde-'xiéǎ bù-yíyàng. Zhōngwén shi-cóng-shàngtou-wàng-xià-xiě, Yīngwén shi-cóng-zuǒbiar-wàng-yòu-xiě. | The way of writing Chinese and the way of writing English are not the same. Chinese is written from top to bottom, English is written from left to right. |
| 4. Xué-wénxué bìděi-xiān-xué-wénfǎ. Tóngyàng xué-yǔyán bìděi-xiān-xué-yǔfǎ.                                                        | When you study literature, you must first learn the grammar. Similarly, when you study a language, you must first learn its grammar.                      |
| 5. Qǐng-wèn, zhèige-cérde-'niànfǎ shi-zěnmó-niàn?                                                                                  | I'd like to ask how this word is read.                                                                                                                    |
| 6. Zhōngwén-gēn-Yīngwén shuōfǎ-bù-yíyàng.                                                                                          | The way of speaking Chinese and English is not the same.                                                                                                  |
| 7. Lùyīnjīde-hǎochu shi-yíjù-huà kéyì-'suíbiàn-tīng-jǐcì.                                                                          | The advantage of a recorder is that you can hear a sentence as many times as you please.                                                                  |
| 8. Xué-wénxué gēn-xué-shùxué-de-'xuéfǎ bù-yíyàng.                                                                                  | The way to study literature and mathematics is not the same.                                                                                              |
| 9. Huà-shānshuǐ-de-fázi gēn-huà-rén-de-fázi huàfǎ-bu-yíyàng.                                                                       | With respect to [the technique of] painting landscapes and [the technique of painting] portraits, the methods of painting are not the same.               |
| 10. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng mǎigei-wo hěn-duō-shū. Dōu-hén-yǒu-yòngchu.                                                                    | Mr. King sold me a lot of books. They are all very useful.                                                                                                |
| 11. Xièxie-ni. Qíng-ní-bǎ-nèiběn-shū nágei-wo.                                                                                     | [Thank you.] Please hand me that book.                                                                                                                    |
| 12. Xué-Zhōngguo-yǔyán bá-měige-                                                                                                   | When you study the Chinese lan-                                                                                                                           |

- cérde-sìshēng-jì zhu. Bié-shuōcuò.

13. Nǐ-shuō-tā-yóu-hěnde-  
chángchū. Tā-yìdiár-duǎn-  
chū-dōu-méi-yǒu-ma?

14. Nèijiàn-shìqing wǒde-kānfǎ  
gēn-nǐde-kānfǎ bù-yíyàng.

15. Nǐde-wènǎ-bú-duì.

16. Táng-cù-yú gēn-hóng-shāo-  
yú-de-zuǒfǎ bù-yíyàng.

17. Ní-bǎ-nèige-wǎn nǎzhù-le.

18. Ní-bǎ-nèijiàn-shìqing xiě-  
zai-běnzishang. Yàoburán-  
jìbuzhù.

19. Wǒ-gàosu-nǐ-de-shìqing 'jì-  
dezhù-jìbuzhù?

20. Shuō-huà yídìng-děi-zhùyì-  
qīngzhòng-yīn. Yàoburán  
jiù-xiàng-niàn-shū-le.

21. Yíge-rén tóngshí-zuò-liǎng-  
jiàn-shìqing yídìng-zuòde-  
bù-hǎo.

22. 'Gāo-Xiáojie gēn-'Qián-Xiáo-  
jie tāmen-shì-tóngxué.

23. Xué-wénxué gēn-xué-yǔyán-  
xué tóngyàngde-nán.

24. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng 'Máo-Xiān-  
sheng dōu-zài Sān-Yǒu-Shū-  
diàn-zuò-shì. Tāmen-shì-  
tóngshì.

25. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu gēn-'Gāo-  
Xiānsheng tāmen-liǎngwèi-  
tóngsuì.
- guage, fix in mind the tones of  
every word. Don't say them  
wrong.

You say he has a lot of good  
points. Doesn't he have any  
shortcomings at all?

In that matter, your way of look-  
ing at it and my way of looking  
at it differ.

Your way of asking the question  
is not right.

The way of making sweet-and-  
sour fish and red-cooked fish is  
not the same.

Take a firm hold on that bowl.

Write that business in your  
notebook. Otherwise you won't  
be able to remember it.

Can you bear in mind that  
business I told you about?

When you speak, you must be  
sure to pay attention to stress.  
Otherwise it will be like reading  
a book.

If a person does two things at  
the same time he will certainly  
do them badly.

Miss Gao and Miss Qian are  
fellow students.

Studying literature and linguis-  
tics is equally difficult.

Mr. Gao and Mr. Mao both work  
in the Three Friends Bookstore.  
They are fellow workers.

Professor Wanamaker and Mr.  
Gao are both the same age.

## MONOLOGUE

Wǒ-shì-yíge-Měiguó-xuésheng. Wǒ-zài-zhōngxué-de-shíhou jiù-kāishǐ-xué-Zhōngguó-yǔyán-le. Wó-hén-xiǎode-shíhou jiù-tīngshuō-Zhōngguó, suó-yì-jiù-xiǎng zhǎng-dà-le dào-'Zhōngguó-qu-niàn-shū. Zài-gāozhōng niàn-shū-de-shíhou wó-yǐjīng-shíjǐsuìle, yé-dǒngle-hěn-duō-de-shìqing. Wǒ-jiù-xiǎng rén-gēn-rén-zuò-péngyou bìděi-yòng-yǔyán cái-néng-míngbai-liǎngge-rénde-yìsi. Wǒ-rúguǒ-dào-Zhōngguó-qu wǒ-jiù-děi-rènshi-'Zhōngguó-péngyou, nènmo-wǒ-bìděi-xué-Zhōngguó-huà, suóyì-zài-zhōngxué jiù-kāishǐ-xué. Suí-rán-méi-xuéhǎo kěshi-yòngle-bù-shǎode-gōngfu.

Zài-kāishǐ-xué-de-shíhou hěn-bu-róngyì, kěshi-wǒ-duì-ta hén-yǒu-xìng-gu. Wǒ-kāishǐ-xiān-xué-sìshēng, fāyīn, pīnyīn. Wàiguó-rén kāishǐ-xué-Zhōngguó-yǔyán duì-fāyīn shì-hěn-bu-róngyide-yíjiàn-shì. Yīnwei-Zhōngguó-huà gēn-Yīngguó-huà-de-fāyīn yìdiár-yě-bù-yíyàng, suóyì-hěn-bù-róng-yì. Yǐhòu-mànmǎrde-liànxi bíjiǎo-róngyì-duō-le.

Wǒ-kāishǐ-xué-Zhōngguó-huà shì-yòng-pīnyīnde-fāngfǎ-xué-de. Zhèige-fázi-hǎojíle. Xuéhuì-le-pīnyīn yí-kàn-jiù-huì-niàn-le. Yǒude-rén-shuō Zhōngguó-yǔyán bìděi-yòng-Hànzì-xué, rúguǒ-yòng-pīnyīn xué-le-bàntiān háishi-bù-rènshi-Zhōngguó-zì; xué-Zhōngguó-yǔyán-gēn-wénxué bìděi-yòng-Hànzì-xué-cái-duì. Wǒ-juéde-shuō-de bù-hěn-duì. Wó-xiǎng xiān-xuéhuì-le-pīnyīn, fāyīn, sìshēng yě-míngbai-tāde-yìsi-le yě-huì-shuō-yǐhòu, zài-kāishǐ-xué-Hànzì bíjiǎo-róngyide-duō. Yàoburán Hànzì-shì-měige-yīnjié dōu-yǒu-shēng-de.

Rúguǒ yíge-kāishǐ-xué-Zhōngguó-huà-de-wàiguó-rén jiù-yòng-Hànzì-xué nènmo-sìshēng-qīngzhòngyīn dōu-bù-zhīdào. Měige-yīnjié-fāyīn méi-yǒu-qīngzhòngyīn, dōu-yíyàng. Nà-nǎr-shì-shuō-huà-ne? Shì-niàn-zì-ne. Bǐfang-shuō-cér wǒmen-shuō-huà-shì-'yíge-yīnjié. Pīnchulai yě-shì-yíge-yīnjié. Hànzì shì-liǎngge-zì liǎngge-yīnjié, jiù-shì-cí, ér. Zhè-bù-shì-shuō-huà-ne. Zhè-shì-niàn-zì.

## ANSWERING QUESTIONS

1. Bái-Wénshān-dǎ-mén. Gāo-Xiǎojie-kāi-mén. Shéi-dào-Gāo-jiā-lái-le?
2. Gāo-Xiānsheng Gāo-Tàitai dōu-xǐhuan-zài-Rìběn-'duō-zhù-jǐtiān. Měiyīng-láo-xiǎng-huīlai. Shéi-bu-xǐhuan zài-Rìběn-duō-zhù-ne?
3. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō xué-yǔyán zuì-hǎode-fázi shì-yòng-pīnyīnde-fázi.

- 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-shuō pīnyīnde-fázi-bù-hǎo. Shéi-xǐhuan-pīnyīnde-fázi-ne?
4. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-shuō Bái-Xiānsheng-sìshēng-hén-zhǔn. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-de-Zhōngguo-huà shuōde-'hǎo-bu-hǎo?
5. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-shuō xué-Zhōngguo-huà xiān-xué-Hànzì zuì-róngyì. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-shuō xiān-xué-pīnyīn zuì-róngyì. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-shuō pīnyīn-zuì-róngyì háishi-'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-shuō pīnyīn-zuì-róngyì?
6. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-shuō yīnggāi-xiān-liànxì-xiě-jùzi. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō xiān-xué-yúfǎ. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō yīnggāi-xiān-zuò-shénmo?
7. Qíng-ni-shuō nǐ-xiànzài-niànde-zhèige-jùzi shì-yòng-pīnyīn-xiě-de hái-shì-yòng-Hànzì-xiě-de?
8. Gāoxìng-zhèige-cér shì-jǐge-yīnjié?
9. Hànzì-de-Hàn shì-dì-jǐshēng?
10. Zìjǐ-zhèige-cér něige-yīnjié-shì-dì-sìshēng?

## NOTES

1. The adverb yuè 'more' is used twice, before successive verb expressions, to mean 'the more . . . the more . . .':

Diǎnxīn-yuè-tián-yuè-hǎo. 'As for desserts, the sweeter the better.'  
Tā-yuè-shuō wǒ-yuè-bù-dǒng. 'The more he talks the less I understand.'

Similarly, yuè-lái-yuè means '(become) more and more':

Tā-yuè-lái-yuè-yònggōng. 'He's becoming more and more diligent.'  
Tā-yuè-lái-yuè chīde-duō. 'He's eating more and more.'

2. Stative verbs expressing manner (Lesson 10, Note 2) sometimes occur in reduplicated form (that is, doubled) before the verb. The second occurrence is always in the first tone (e.g. mànmǎn); the whole expression often has the Pekingese r suffix, which may modify the syllable to which it is attached (e.g. mànmǎr); and the suffix de is generally attached at the end (e.g. mànmǎrde). Here are some examples:

hǎo : hǎohǎorde 'well,' 'diligently,' 'carefully'  
kuài : kuàikuārde 'quickly'  
duō : duōduōrde 'in a large quantity'  
màn : mànmǎrde 'slowly'

3. Measures are often reduplicated, with or without the suffix r at the end, to mean 'every [occurrence of the measure]':

tiāntiān 'every day'



bénběr 'every volume'

Wǒ-tiāntiān-chī-Zhōngguo-fàn. 'I eat Chinese food every day.'

Zhèixiē-shū bénběr-dōu-hěn-nán-niàn. 'Every one of these books is hard to read.'

The noun rén reduplicated means 'everyone, everybody':

Rénrén-dōu-xǐhuan-ta. 'Everybody likes him.'

Dōu 'all' is often used with these expressions, reinforcing the all-inclusive meaning.

4. Nearly all Chinese characters (zì) represent single syllables of Chinese speech. Because so many Chinese words are monosyllabic, zì is also often used in the meaning 'word' as well as 'syllable,' so that it overlaps in meaning with cí and cér, both of which mean 'word [monosyllabic or polysyllabic].'
5. The syllabic units of Chinese have varying degrees of freedom. Wǒ 'I' is a FREE FORM—for example, it can occur alone (as in answer to the question 'Who's there?'). The syllable mén in wǒmen, on the other hand, is a COMBINING FORM—it never occurs by itself but is always suffixed to something, and is always neutral in tone. Both free forms and combining forms are used with a great deal of freedom to form compound words and phrases. In this lesson we see the following examples:
  - (a) The combining form fǎ 'method' occurs as an initial syllable, with second tone, in fázi 'method'; it also occurs as a suffixed element, in third tone, in combinations:
 

fāngfǎ	'method'	wénfǎ	'grammar (of writing)'
huàfǎ	'way of painting'	wènfǎ	'way of asking'
kànfǎ	'way of looking (at something)'	xiéfǎ	'way of writing'
niànfǎ	'way of reading or studying'	xuéfǎ	'way of studying'
shuōfǎ	'way of speaking or saying'	yúfǎ	'grammar (of speech)'
		zuòfǎ	'way of doing'
  - (b) The combining form chu, a neutral-toned syllable, is suffixed to a few verbs, chiefly stative, to form related noun expressions:
 

hǎo 'good'	: hǎochu 'benefit'
duǎn 'short'	: duǎnchu 'shortcoming'
nán 'difficult'	: nánchu 'difficulty'
cháng 'long'	: chángchu 'advantage'
yòng 'use [verb]'	: yòngchu 'use [noun]'
  - (c) Gěi 'give' in its neutral form gei is suffixed to some verbs in the meaning 'to':
 

nágei	'bring to'
sònggei	'send to'
màigei	'sell to'
  - (d) The neutral syllable zhu, which is derived from the free form zhù 'live (in a place),' is suffixed to verbs in the meaning 'firmly':



názhu 'hold firmly'  
jìzhu 'bear firmly in mind'

Expressions with zhu are resultative compounds:

nábuzhù 'unable to hold firmly'  
jìdezhu 'able to bear firmly in mind'

(Note that in these last forms the tone reappears on zhù.)

- (e) The syllable tóng 'same' is joined as a prefix to various elements to form special phrases:

with shí (short for shíhou) 'time' :

tóngshí 'at the same time'

with shì 'job' :

tóngshì 'co-worker'

with sui 'year of age' :

tóngsuì 'be of the same age'

with yàng 'kind' :

tóngyàng 'be similar,' '(be) equal (to)'

- (f) The syllable yǔ 'speech,' which we have encountered in yǔyán 'speech,' occurs also in the combination yúfǎ 'grammar (of speech)' and in the names of specific spoken languages:

Hànyǔ 'Chinese'

Yīngyǔ 'English'

6. The suffix zi, which has the function of signaling a noun, is attached to a number of syllables, most of them combining forms. The following are the nouns we have had so far with this ending:

fázi 'method'	kuàizi 'chopsticks'
háizi 'child'	shīzi 'lion'
fángzi 'house'	piānzi 'movie'
běnzì 'notebook'	jiǎozi 'dumpling'
míngzi 'name'	yāzi 'duck'
bēizi 'cup'	jùzi 'sentence'

7. The Pekingese suffix r is attached to various kinds of words:

infrequently to verbs:

wán, wár 'have fun'

more often to measures:

běn, běr 'volume'

and most often to nouns:

mén, mér 'door'

cí, cér 'word'

dān, dār 'list'

The process of suffixing an r often alters or modifies the spelling of a syllable. (See pp. xxvii–xxviii.)

8. Reduplication of xiě 'write' and zhǎo 'seek' results in the forms xiéxie 'write (a bit)' and zháozhao 'look (for a while),' in which the original third tone shifts to second under the influence of the second syllable—the latter also having been third tone originally but here occurring in the neutral tone. Another example of this sort of shift is fǎ becoming fá in fázi 'method.'
9. The term zhòng-yīn—literally 'heavy sound'—means '[a specific instance of] stress or emphasis'; qīngzhòngyīn, literally 'light and heavy sound,' means 'stress [in general, and of any degree].'
10. The term sìshēng, literally 'four tones,' refers either specifically to the four full tones of Chinese, or to the tones of the language in general.
11. The adverb zhèng 'just (now)' modifies verbs whose action is in progress at the time of speaking. Zhèng is often combined with zài 'at' and followed at the end of the sentence by the particle ne:  
 Wǒ-zhèng-chī-fàn-ne. 'I'm eating right now.'  
 Tā-zhèng-zài-niàn-shū-ne. 'He's [just in the act of] studying.'
12. Bǐfang 'example' combined with shuō 'say' results in the phrase bǐfang-shuō 'for example.'
13. From the Han dynasty (B.C. 221–220 A.D.), one of the periods of greatest Chinese grandeur, comes Hàn, a slightly more literary name for China and the Chinese than Zhōngguó. The phrase Zhōngguó-rén has a broader application than Hànrén: Zhōngguó-rén refers to a citizen of China of whatever national origin, while Hànrén refers specifically to a Chinese person (as against a Mongol or any other member of a minority nationality).
14. The expressions wénfǎ and yǔfǎ, both meaning 'grammar,' are sometimes used in the senses 'grammar of the written language' and 'grammar of the spoken language' respectively. Many people use them synonymously, however, and that is the practice we have adopted in this textbook.

## Lesson 23 LEAVING CHINA



"Yílù-píng'ān!"

Dialogue: Mr. and Mrs. Gao and Miss Gao see Mr. White off at the airport.

'Bái-Xiānsheng yào-huái-guó-le.  
Tā-shi-zuò-fēijī-huíqu. Zǎo-  
chen Gāo-Xiānsheng, Gāo-Tàitai,  
Měiyīng sāngē-rén dōu-dào-Bái-  
Xiānsheng-zhù-de-dìfang qu-jiē-  
ta, bāngzhu-ta yíkuà-r-dào-fēijī-  
chǎng-qu.

5

Mr. White is about to return to the United States. He is going back by plane. In the morning Mr. Gao, Mrs. Gao, and Meiying all go to the place where Mr. White lives to meet him, help him, and go to the airport together.

Bái: Zǎo! 'Tài-láojià-le. Zhēn-bùgǎndāng.

Good morning! I've put you to too much trouble. I really don't deserve this.

Gāo-Xiānsheng: Nǎrde-huà-ne.  
Wǒmen-yīnggāi-lái-de-me.  
Dōngxī dōu-shōushihǎo-le-  
ma?

10

Nonsense. Of course we should come. Are your things all packed?

Bái: 'Méi-shénmo-dōngxī-le. Wǒ-de-shū qián-jǐtiān yǒu-ge-péngyou-zuò-chuán-huíqu  
'dōu-ràng-ta-dàizǒu-le.

15

I don't have anything much left any more. A few days ago I had a friend who is returning by boat take all my books.

- Gāo-Tàitai: Zǒu-ba. Wǒmen-xiān-dào-fēijīchǎng-cāntīng zài-nèr-mànmǎrde-tán-ba. 20  
Let's go. Supposing we go to the airport cafeteria first and have a leisurely talk there.
- Gāo-Xiáojie: Dào-Rìběn-yào-'jǐ-ge-zhōngtóu? 25  
How many hours does it take to Japan?
- Bái: Dàgài-sān-sì-ge-Zhōngtóu. Chàbuduō-xiàwǔ liángdiǎn-zhōng kēyī-dào-le. Měiyīng, yíkuār-dào-Měiguó-qu 'hǎo-bu-hǎo? 25  
About three or four hours. We will [lit. can] get there about two P.M. Meiyīng, how about our going to America together?
- Gāo-Xiáojie: Zènmo-máng nǐ-hái-shuō-xiàohuā. 30  
Even being in a hurry doesn't keep you from joking.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Wǒmen 'zǎo-yì-diǎr-dào-fēijīchǎng-yé-hǎo. (Tāmen-zài-mén-kǒu-shàng-qìchē.) Nǐmen-sānge-rén zài-'hòubiār-zuò. Wǒ-zuò-qiánbiār. 35  
It's not a bad idea for us to get to the airport a little early. (They get in the car at the door.) You three sit in back. I'll sit in front.
- Bái: Háishi-ràng-wǒ zài-qiánbiār-zuò-ba. 35  
Let me sit in front.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Yíyàng, yíyàng. 40  
It's all the same.
- Gāo-Tàitai: Wénshān, zhè-jǐtiān-shōushi-dōngxī yídìng-mángde-bùdéliǎo. Hěn-lèi-ba. 40  
Vincent, you must have been terribly busy these days packing your things. I suppose you're very tired.
- Bái: Méi-shénmo. Wǒde-dōngxī-shǎo, suóyī-'hěn-róngyì-shōushi. 45  
Not particularly. I don't have many things, so it was quite easy to pack.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Xīwang-nǐ-míng-nián-bìyè-yǐhòu 'zài-dào-Zhōngguó-lái. 50  
I hope after you graduate next year you will come to China again.
- Bái: Wó-hěn-xīwang 'zài-huīlai. 50  
I hope very much to come back again.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Nǐ-huīdào-Měiguó háishi-jìxué-Zhōngguó-yǔyán gēn-wénxué-ma? 50  
When you return to America will you go on studying Chinese language and literature?
- Bái: Shì. Búdàn-'jìxué, wǒ-hái-děi hǎohǎorde-xué-ne. 50  
Yes. I'll keep on with it, and I'll have to study hard too.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Xué-yìzhōng-xué-wen rúguǒ-xīwang-xuédehǎo, zuì-yào-jǐn-de shì-yào-yǒng-yuǎn-xuéxiā-qu. 55  
When you study anything [lit. any branch of learning], if you hope to [be able to] master it, the most important thing is to keep on studying all the time.
- Bái: Nín-shuōde-hěn-duì. Nínde-huà dōu-shì-yǒu-'jīngyan-de-huà. 60  
What you say is quite right. Your words are the words of experience.

Gāo-Xiānsheng: Dào-'Rìběn dǎ-suan-zhù-jǐtiān-ne?		How many days do you plan to stay in Japan?
Bái: Dàgài-bú-dào-yíge-xīngqī. Zài-Dōngjīng-Dàxué wó-yǒu-yíwèi-lǎoshī wǒ-bì-děi-qu-kànkān-ta. Nèi-wèi-lǎoshī shì-yíwèi-hén-yǒu-míng-de-yǔyánxuéjiā. Guān-yú-yǔyánxué-yìfāngmiàn wǒ-gēn-ta-dédào-bù-shǎo-de-xuéwen.	65 70	Perhaps less than a week. At Tokyo University I have a teacher I must see. He's a famous linguist. I've acquired quite a lot of knowledge from him about linguistics.
Gāo-Xiānsheng: Duì-le. Yīng-gāi-qu-kànkān.		That's right. You should go see him.
Bái: Wǒ-zhèicì-dào-Zhōngguo-lái-niàn-shū péngyoumen-duì-wǒ-dōu-hén-hǎo. Yóu-qíshì-nín-liǎngwèi. Zhè-shì-wó-yóngyuǎn bù-néng-wàng-de.	75 80	On this (occasion of my) coming to China to study, (my) friends have been very good to me. Especially you two. This is something I can never forget.
Gāo-Xiānsheng: Bié-kèqi.		Don't mention it.
Bái: Měiyīng-sòng-wǒ-de-nèi-zhāng Hángzhōu-shānshuǐ-huà, wǒ-dào-jiā-yǐhòu bǎ-ta-guàqilai, qíng-wǒde-péngyoumen-kànkān.	85	That Hangchow landscape that Meiyang presented to me--after I get back home I'm going to hang it up and invite my friends to see it.
Gāo-Xiáojie: Déle, déle. Bié-guà. Huàde-bù-hǎo.		[Enough, enough.] Don't hang it up. It's no good.
Bái: 'Hén-hǎo.		It's very good.
Gāo-Xiānsheng: Cóng-'Rìběn jǐge-zhōngtóu-jiù-dào-Měiguó-le. Bǐ-zuò-chuán kuàide-duō.	90	From Japan you'll be getting to America in just a few hours. It's a lot faster than traveling by boat.
Gāo-Tàitai: Wénshān, Gāo-Xiānsheng hén-xǐhuan-lǚxíng. Shuōbùdìng wǒmen-huòzhè-dào-Měiguó-qu-zhào-ni.	95	Vincent, Mr. Gao loves to travel. Perhaps we might be going to America to see you.
Bái: Nà-huānyíng-jíle. Wǒ-fù-qín-mǔqín-tāmen 'hén-xī-wang rénshì-nín-liǎngwèi. Wó-gěi-fùqín-mǔqín-tāmen-xiě-xìn, cháng-tídào-nín-jǐwèi. Rúguǒ-jiànzhào-nín-jǐwèi tāmen-'yíding-huān-yíngde-bùdéliǎo.	100 105	Then you'd be most welcome. My father and mother hope very much to get to know both of you. In (writing) letters to them, I have often spoken of you. If they did manage to see you they would welcome you most cordially.
Gāo-Tàitai: Wénshān, jiānglái-nǐ-dìdi-mèimei yě-dào-'Zhōngguo-lái-niàn-shū-ma?		Vincent, will your younger brother and sister also come to China later to study?

- Bái: Bù-zhīdào jiānglái-tāmen-xué-shénmo. Rúguǒ-tāmen-xué 'Dōngfāngde-wénhuà tāmen-kěnéng-dào-Zhōng-guo-lái. 110 I don't know what they'll study [later]. If they study Oriental civilization there's a possibility that they will come to China.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Dào-le. Shíhou-zǎode-hěn. Wǒmen-xiān-dào-cāntīng. 115 Here we are. It's quite early. Let's go first to the cafeteria.
- Bái: Hǎo-ba. Very good.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Wénshān, nǐ-chī-shénmo? 120 Vincent, what would you like to eat?
- Bái: Wǒ-shénmo-yě-bù-chī. Wó-yǐjīng-chīguo-zǎofàn. Nín-liǎngwèi-gēn-Měiyīng 'chī-diar-shénmo. I'm not having anything. I've already had breakfast. You two and Meiyang have something.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Wǒmen-chīguo-zǎofàn cái-dào-nǐ-nèr-qù-de. Nènmo-wǒmen 'dōu-hē-chá-ba. 125 We didn't go to your place until after we'd had breakfast. Then let's all have tea.
- (Gāo-Xiānsheng, Gāo-Tàitai kàn-jian-tāmen-de-lǎo-péngyou Wáng-Xiānsheng Wáng-Tàitai xià-fēijī, zǒuguoqu-gēn-tāmen-tán-huà.) 130 (Mr. and Mrs. Gao, seeing some old friends of theirs, Mr. and Mrs. Wang, getting off a plane, walk over and chat with them.)
- Bái: Měiyīng, nèi-liǎngwèi-shi-shéi? Meiyang, who are those two?
- Gāo-Xiǎojie: Shi-Wáng-Xiānsheng Wáng-Tàitai. Tāmen-gēn-fùqīn-mǔqīn shi-lǎo-péngyou. Tāmen-qùnián-chūqu-lǚxíng. Xiànzài-bu-zhīdào cóng-'nǎr-huīlai-le. 135 They're Mr. and Mrs. Wang. They're old friends of father and mother. They went on a trip last year. I don't know where they're coming back from now.
- Bái: Měiyīng, zài-zhèi-yìnián-lǐtōu wǒmen-liǎngge-rén shi-zuì-hǎode-péngyou-le. Chàboduō wǒmen-měi-xīng-qī dōu-yào-jiànzhào liǎng-sāncì. Xiànzài-wǒmen-yào-hěn-'chángde-shíhou bú-jiàn-le. Xīwang-nǐ-cháng-géi-wo-xiě-xìn. 140 Meiyang, (in) this year the two of us have become very good friends. We've seen each other almost two or three times a week. Now we won't be seeing each other any more for a long time. I hope you will write me often.
- Gāo-Xiǎojie: Dāngrán-géi-ni-xiě-xìn-le. 150 Of course I'll write you.
- Bái: Ní-'jǐtiān géi-wo-xiě-yì-fēng-xìn? How often will you write me?
- Gāo-Xiǎojie: Ní-géi-wo-xiě-xìn, wó-mǎshàng-jiù-géi-ni-xiě-xìn. 155 Whenever you write me, I'll write you immediately.



Bái: Hǎo-ba.		Fine.
Gāo-Xiǎojie: Nǐ-gāngcái-shuō kěnéng-zài-huílai. Xī- wang-nǐ-'zhēnde-huílai.	160	You said a moment ago it was possible that you would come back again. I hope you really will come back.
Bái: Zhēnde. Wǒ-xīwang-bù- jiǔ jiu-huílai.		I really will. I hope I can come back before long.
(Gāo-Xiānsheng Gāo-Tàitai huí- lai-le.)		(Mr. and Mrs. Gao return.)
Gāo-Xiānsheng: Wénshān, shí- hou-chàbuduō-le. Gāi- shàng-fēijī-le.	165	Vincent, it's just about time. You should get on the plane.
Gāo-Xiǎojie: Nǐ-zài-dào-Zhōng- guo-lái zuò-fēijī-shì-zuò- chuán?	170	When you come to China again, will you travel by plane or by boat?
Gāo-Xiānsheng: Zhèi-háizi! Tā- hái-méi-zǒu-ne, nǐ-jiu-wèn- ta zuò-shénmo-huílai. Tā- xiànzài-'zěnmó-zhīdao-ne? Wénshān, xīwang-ni-zǎo- yìdiǎr-huílai.	175	This child! He hasn't left yet, and you ask him how he's returning. How could he know now? Vincent, I hope you will be coming back soon.
Bái: Hǎo.		Yes.
Gāo-Xiānsheng: Zhù-ni-yílù- píng'ān.		I wish you a pleasant trip.
Bái: Xièxie. Zàijiàn.	180	Thank you. Good-bye.
Gāo-Tàitai: Yílù-píng'ān. Huí- jiā-wèn-hǎo.		Have a nice trip. When you get back home give my best.
Bái: Xièxie-nín.		Thank you.
Gāo-Xiǎojie: Xiě-xìn. Zàijiàn. Yílù-píng'ān!	185	Write me. Good-bye! Bon voyage!
Bái: Zàijiàn, zàijiàn.		Good-bye!



Wó-mǎshàng-jiu-lái!



## VOCABULARY

bùgǎndāng	(I'm) not equal to the honor, I don't deserve it (Note 12)
cāntīng	cafeteria (N) [lit. meal room]
dài	carry; take along (a thing or person) (TV)
dé	get, attain (TV) (Note 10)
Dōngfāng	Orient, the East (PW) [lit. east region]
fāngmiàn	side (figurative), aspect (M) [lit. side face]
fēijīchǎng	airport, airfield (N)
fēng	(measure for letters, i.e. mail)
guā	hang (TV)
jīng	capital (N) (Note 5)
jìxù	continue (doing something) (AV)
kěnéng	possible (SV) [lit. may able]
láoqiū	I've caused you trouble. Sorry to trouble you. (Note 13)
lǎoshī	teacher, tutor (N) [lit. old teacher] (Note 4)
lèi	tired (SV)
mǎshàng	immediately (AD) [lit. on horseback]
míngnián	next year (TW)
píng'ān	peaceful, at peace, safe (SV) [lit. even peace] (Note 11)
qiántian	day before yesterday (TW) [lit. front day]
ràng	let, request (TV) by (CV) (Note 7)
shōushì	straighten up, put in order, pack (TV) [lit. collect gather]
wénhuà	culture, civilization (N) [lit. literature change]
wǔ	noon (TW) (Note 8)
xiào	laugh (at) (V)
xiàohuà(r)	joke (N) [lit. laugh speech]
xíngli	baggage (N)
yàojǐn	important (SV) [lit. important urgent]
yóngyuǎn	forever, always (AD) [lit. eternal far]
zǎo	early (SV) (Note 9) long since (AD) (Note 9)
zhù	wish (someone something) (TV)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                                                   |                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Yì-gōngyuándē-rén dōu-zǒu-le.                  | the whole<br>the people in the whole park<br>Everyone in the park has left.                     |
| 2. Tā-yì-tiān-dào-wǎn zuò-shì.                    | the whole day<br>the whole day until late<br>He works all day long until late.                  |
| 3. Fēijīchǎng 'zěnmō-méi-yǒu-fēijī?               | airplane<br>airfield<br>How come there are no planes at the airfield?                           |
| 4. Yì-cāngtīngde-rén dōu-shì-wàiguó-rén.          | cafeteria<br>people in the whole cafeteria<br>Everyone in [the whole] cafeteria is a foreigner. |
| 5. Zhèi-jǐtiān túshūguǎn yào-shōushi-shū.         | put in order<br>For these few days the library will be putting books in order.                  |
| 6. Wǒ-jǐntiān-yì-tiān shōushi-xíngli.             | baggage<br>put baggage in order, pack<br>I've been packing the whole day.                       |
| 7. Wó-xiǎng wó-yóngyuǎn-bù-huì-shuō Zhōngguó-huà. | forever<br>never able to speak<br>I think I shall never be able to speak Chinese.               |
| 8. Wó-xīwang-zuò-kēxuéjiā.                        | science<br>scientist<br>I hope to become a scientist.                                           |
| 9. Tāde-lǎoshī yòu-shì-kēxuéjiā yòu-shì-huàjiā.   | teacher<br>is a scientist<br>is a painter<br>His teacher is both a scientist and an artist.     |
| 10. Házimen 'dōu-xǐhuan-wár.                      | child<br>children<br>All children like to play.                                                 |
| 11. Nǐ-xiào-shénmo?                               | laugh<br>What are you laughing at?                                                              |
| xiào                                              | laugh                                                                                           |

- xiàohua  
shuō-xiàohua  
12. Wǒde-lǎoshī hěn-huì-shuō-xiàohua.  
joke  
tell jokes  
My teacher is very good at telling jokes.
- wénhuà  
xīfāng-wénhuà  
13. 'Xīfāng-wénhuà méi-yǒu-'  
'Dōngfāng-wénhuà nènmo-lǎo.  
culture  
Western civilization  
Western civilization isn't as old as Oriental civilization.
- kěnéng  
14. Zhèijiàn-shì hén-kěnéng.  
be possible  
This matter is quite possible.
- kěnéng  
zuò-huàjiā-de-kěnéng  
15. Wǒ-méi-yǒu zuò-huàjiā-de-kěnéng.  
possibility  
possibility of being an artist  
There's no possibility of my becoming an artist.
- jìxu  
16. Qíng-nǐ-jìxu-niàn.  
continue (to do something)  
Please continue reading.
- lèi  
17. Nǐ-yídìng-hěn-lèi-le-ba.  
tired  
You must be very tired.
- ràng  
18. Ràng-tā-zuò.  
let  
Let him do it.
- ràng  
ràng-wǒ  
19. Shū-ràng-wó-mǎilái-le.  
by  
by me  
The books were bought by me.
- ràng-tā  
ràng-tā-máizǒu  
ràng-tā-géi-máizǒu-le  
20. Shū-dōu-ràng-tā géi-máizǒu-le.  
by him  
bought by him  
bought by him  
The books were all bought by him.
- guà  
guàqilai  
21. Zhèizhāng-huà shì-'shéi-guàqilai-de?  
hang  
hang up  
By whom was the painting hung up?
- fēng  
zhèifēng-xìn  
22. Zhèifēng-xìn shì-'shéi-xiě-de?  
(measure for letters)  
this letter  
By whom was this letter written?
- dài  
dài-bǐ  
23. Zāogāo! Wǒ-wàngle-dài-bǐ-le.  
carry, bring, take  
bring a pen  
Darn! I forgot to bring a pen.
- zǎo  
early

hén-záo-qǐlai  
24. Wǒ-tiāntian hén-záo-qǐlai.

get up early  
I get up early every day.

zǎo  
zǎo-huí-jiā-le  
25. Tāmen-dōu-zǎo-huí-jiā-le.

long ago  
long since returned home  
They have all long since returned home.

míngnian  
míngnian-kāishǐ-niàn  
26. Wǒ-míngnian kāishǐ-niàn-dàxué.

next year  
begin studying next year  
I'll begin studying at the university next year.

nán  
Nánjīng  
27. Nǐ-qùguo-Nánjīng-ma?

south  
Nanking (southern capital)  
Have you ever been to Nanking?

běi  
Běijīng  
28. Nánjīng-méi-you-Běijīng-dà.

north  
Peking (northern capital)  
Nanking isn't as big as Peking.

Běijīng  
Běijīng-huà  
29. Tāde-Běijīng-huà shuōde-hǎojíle.

Peking  
Peking dialect  
He speaks excellent Pekingese.

dōng  
Dōngjīng  
30. Xiànzài-Dōngjīng bǐ-Niǔyue-rén-duō.

east  
Tokyo (eastern capital)  
There are now more people in Tokyo than New York.

-wǔ  
zhōngwǔ  
31. Wǒ-míngtian-zhōngwú-zǒu.

noon  
noon  
I'm leaving at noon tomorrow.

shàngwǔ  
32. Chuán shàngwǔ-shídiǎn-zhōng-kāi.

forenoon, A.M.  
The boat leaves at ten A.M.

xiàwǔ  
33. Qǐng-nín xiàwǔ-sāndiǎn-bàn-lái.

afternoon, P.M.  
Please come at three-thirty P.M.

wǔfàn  
34. Wǒmen-wǔfàn bù-chī-ròu.

lunch  
We don't have meat at lunch.

yàoǐn  
zuì-yàoǐnde  
35. Zuì-yàoǐnde shì-fāyīn.

important  
the most important thing  
The most important thing is pronunciation.

bú-yàoǐn  
36. Tā-'qù-bu-qù dōu-bú-yàoǐn.

not important  
It doesn't matter whether he goes or not.

zhù  
37. Zhù-ní-kǎo-dì-yī.

wish, hope  
I hope you get first on the exams.

píng'ān  
píng'ān-huì-jī  
38. Xīwang-nǐ-píng'ān-huì-jīā.

peaceful, safe and sound  
return home safe and sound  
I hope you return home safe and sound.

fāngmiàn  
39. Zhèige-wèntí yǒu-'liǎngfāng-miàn.

side, aspect  
There are two sides to this question.

jǐfāngmiàn  
40. Zhōngguó-wénhuà 'yóu-jǐfāng-miàn.

several aspects  
There are several aspects to Chinese civilization.

yìfāngmiàn  
duì-yǔyán-yìfāngmiàn  
41. Wǒ-duì-'yǔyán-yìfāngmiàn  
hěn-yǒu-xìngqù.

one aspect  
regarding the one aspect of language  
I am very much interested in the linguistic aspect.

dé  
42. Èr-sì-dé-bā.

get, obtain  
Two fours are eight.

déle  
43. Fàn-déle-ma?

finished, ready  
Is the food ready?

déle  
xiědéle  
44. Nǐ-xiědéle-ma?

finished  
finished writing  
Have you finished writing?

dédào  
dédào-tāde-xìn  
45. Wǒ-zuótiān dédào-le-tāde-xìn.

obtain, receive, get  
receive a letter from him  
I received a letter from him yesterday.

láojià  
46. Láojià ní-géi-wo mǎi-yìzhī-bǐ-lai.

I trouble you  
May I trouble you to buy a pen for me?

bùgǎndāng  
47. Xièxie-ni, wǒ-bùgǎndāng.

I don't deserve it  
Thank you, I don't deserve it.

qián  
qiántian  
48. Tā-shì-'qiántian-zǒu-de.

front  
day before yesterday  
He left day before yesterday.

'qián-jǐtiān  
49. Tā-shì-'qián-jǐtiān-zǒu-de.

a few days ago  
He left a few days ago.

mǎshàng

immediately

- |                             |                                |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 50. Wó-mǎshàng-jiù-lái.     | I'm coming right away.         |
| Dōngfāng                    | Orient                         |
| Dōngfāng-lìshǐ              | Oriental history               |
| 51. Wǒ-niàn-Dōngfāng-lìshǐ. | I'm studying Oriental history. |

# PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 23.1. Use of yī 'one' as 'the whole' (Note 1 below)

<u>yī</u>	N/M	
'whole'	Noun/Measure	
yì	xuéxiào	'the whole school'
yì	tiān	'the whole day'

- |                                                         |                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Yì-chéng-rén dōu-pǎo-le.                             | Everyone in the city has fled.                             |
| 2. Yì-fēijīchǎngde-rén dōu-shì-jiē-péngyou-de.          | Everyone in the airport is meeting friends.                |
| 3. Yì-cāntīngde-rén dōu-hē-chá chī-diǎnxīn.             | Everyone in the cafeteria is having tea and dessert.       |
| 4. Yì-túshūguǎnde-rén 'dōu-shì-lái-kàn-shū-de-ma?       | Has everyone in the library come to read?                  |
| 5. Yì-fángzi-rén dōu-shì-bāng-zhu-ta shōushi-xíngli-de. | Everyone in the house is helping him pack.                 |
| 6. Wǒ-yì-tiān méi-chū-mér.                              | I haven't been out of the house [lit. door] the whole day. |
| 7. Yì-jia-rén yǒngyuǎn-nènmohǎo.                        | The whole family is always so nice.                        |
| 8. Tā-yì-bēizi-shuǐ 'dōu-hē-le.                         | He drank the whole cup of water.                           |
| 9. Yì-xuéxiàode-xuésheng dōu-zǒu-le.                    | All the students in the school have left.                  |
| 10. Yì-lùshangde-rén dōu-shì-dào-'gōngyuán-qù-de.       | Everyone on the avenue has gone to the park.               |
| 11. Wǒ-yì-nián yě-méi-zuò-shì-le.                       | I haven't worked all year.                                 |
| 12. Nèige-xuésheng yì-'xīngqī-dōu-méi-niàn-shū-le.      | That student hasn't studied all week.                      |
| 13. Wǒ-yì-tiān shénmo-shì-yě-bù-zuò 'jiù-niàn-shū.      | I do nothing but study the whole day long.                 |
| 14. Yì-chuán-de-rén yì-tiān-dōu-méi-chī-fàn-le.         | Everyone on the ship has gone all day without eating.      |

15. Yì-běnzide-zì dōu-shi-'Bái-Xiānsheng-xiě-de.

All the characters in the notebook were written by Mr. White.

Pattern 23.2. Use of Suffixes jiā and men (Notes 2-3 below)

Pattern 23.2 a.

N	- <u>jiā</u>	
Noun	- <u>jiā</u>	
lì shǐ 'history'	-jiā	'historian'

Pattern 23.2 b.

N	- <u>men</u>	
Noun	- <u>men</u>	
háizi 'child'	-men	'children'

- |                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Tāde-lǎoshī shi-yíwèi 'zuì-yǒu-míngde-yǔyánxuéjiā.                                        | His teacher is a very famous linguist.                                                                                             |
| 2. Tā-shi-yíge yánjiū-Dōngfāng-wénhuàde-lìshǐjiā.                                            | He is a historian who does research in Oriental civilization.                                                                      |
| 3. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng suírán-shi-yíge-hén-yǒu-míng-de-huàjiā-le, kěshi-tā-hái jìxué-xué.        | Although Mr. Wang is a famous artist, he continues to study.                                                                       |
| 4. Nèiwèi-wénxuéjiā zuì-xǐhuan shuō-xiàohuà.                                                 | That literary man delights in telling jokes.                                                                                       |
| 5. Nèiwèi-kēxuéjiā zhēn-cōng-míng. Yánjiūchū-hěn-duō-dōngxì.                                 | That scientist is really brilliant. He has discovered [lit. searched out] a lot of things.                                         |
| 6. Nèige-háizi shùxué-hén-hǎo. Yónguǎn-shi-tā-kǎo-dì-yī. Jiānglái kěnéng-shi-yíge-shùxuéjiā. | That youngster is very good in math. He always scores first in exams. It's possible that in the future he will be a mathematician. |
| 7. Jīntian-wǒmen xià-kè-hén-zǎo. Xiānshengmen-yǒu-shì.                                       | Today we left class very early. The teachers had something to do.                                                                  |
| 8. Gēn-péngyoumen-zài-yíkuài shi-'zuì-gāoxìngde-yíjiàn-shì.                                  | It is a great pleasure to be with friends.                                                                                         |
| 9. Háizimen-zuì-xǐhuan tīng-rén-shuō-xiàohuà.                                                | Children delight in hearing people tell jokes.                                                                                     |
| 10. Xuéshengmen-'dōu-xǐhuan dào-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-kāi-de-nèige-shūdiàn qu-mǎi-shū.              | All the students like to go to the bookstore run by Mr. Gao to buy books.                                                          |



Pattern 23.3. Passive with ràng and jiào (Note 7 below)

S	<u>ràng</u> / <u>jiào</u>	O	( <u>gěi</u> )	V	( <u>le</u> )
Subject	<u>ràng</u> / <u>jiào</u>	Object	( <u>gěi</u> )	Verb	( <u>le</u> )
Fàn	ràng	tā		chī	le.

‘The food was eaten by him.’

- |                                                                        |                                                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Nǐ-sòng-wǒde-nèizhāng-huàràng-tā-gěi-guàqilai-le.                   | That painting that you presented to me was hung up by him.                 |
| 2. Xiǎo-háizi jiào-dà-háizi géi-dǎ-le.                                 | The little child was beaten by a big child.                                |
| 3. Nèixiē-diǎnxin ràng-wǒ-dìdì gěi-chī-le.                             | Those cakes were eaten by my little brother.                               |
| 4. Nèifēng-xìn hěn-yàojǐn. Ràng-ta-gěi-wàngle-sòng-le.                 | That letter is very important. (And) he forgot to send it.                 |
| 5. Zhèiběn-shū shūdiànli zhí-yǒu-zhèi-yìběn-le. Jiào-tā-géi-mǎilai-le. | The bookstore had only one copy of this book (left). It was bought by him. |
| 6. Nèixiē-shū jiào-'Wáng-Xiān-sheng gěi-dàiqu-le.                      | Those books were carried away by Mr. King.                                 |
| 7. Nǐde-bǐ jiào-'tā-náqu-le.                                           | Your pen was taken away by him.                                            |
| 8. Nèiběn-shū yǐjīng-ràng-yí-ge-xuésheng jièqu-le.                     | That book has already been taken out by a student.                         |
| 9. Nèisuǒr-fángzi záo-yǐjīng-jiào-bié-rén mǎiqu-le.                    | That house has long since been purchased by someone else.                  |
| 10. Nǐde-zìdiǎn ràng-wǒ-dìdì géi-názǒu-le.                             | Your dictionary was taken away by my [younger] brother.                    |

SUBSTITUTION TABLE

I: 64 sentences (Note 7)

huàr	ràng	shéi	—	mǎiqu	le
shū	jiào	tā	gěi	jièqu	
				názǒu	
				dàiqu	

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## Review of Four-Syllable Expressions (V)

(Asterisks indicate changes of third tone to second tone.)

0 0 4	1 0 4	2 0 4
1 tāmende-piào	tā-cāibudui	gēn-xuésheng-qù
2 róngyide-shì	shéi-shuōde-huà	nán-háizi-dà
3 nǐmende-huàr	nǐ-chīde-màn	nǐ-xuéde-kuài
4 kèqide-huà	tài-duōde-cài	tèbiéde-cài
	3 0 4	4 0 4
	1 tā-xiěde-xìn	shuō-kèqi-huà
	2 nín-zěnmoyàng	nín-suànde-zhàng
	3 ní-zěnmoyàng *	wǒ-kànbujiàn
	4 yào-wǔge-cài	yào-sìge-cài
0 1 4	1 1 4	2 1 4
1 tāmen-chī-fàn	tā-chī-zhū-ròu	chī-hóng-shāo-ròu
2 fángzi-zhōngjiàn	lí-Zhōngshān-Lù	nín-méi-cāidui
3 wǒde-dōu-duì	nǐ-gāi-shuō-huà	nǐ-lái-chī-fàn
4 shèngxia-sānkuài	xià-xīngqīliù	zuò-tián-suān-ròu
	3 1 4	4 1 4
	1 dōu-hěn-gāoxìng	tā-zài-zhōngjiār
	2 érqiě-dōu-huì	yíkuàr-chī-fàn
	3 wó-yǒu-sānkuài *	yě-yòng-zhū-ròu
	4 liùdiǎn-zhōng-jiàn	kuài-dào-shūdiàn

0 2 4	1 2 4	2 2 4
1 xiānsheng-bié-wèn	tā-dōu-néng-zuò	dāngrán-néng-zuò
2 lán-de-shéi-yào	cháng-chī-báicài	cóngqián-cháng-qù
3 xǐhuan-niú-ròu	wǒ-shuō-nán-zuò	dǒng-Húnán-huà
4 kuàizi-nán-yòng	dào-Sānfánshì	shùxué-méi-niàn

3 2 4	4 2 4
1 chī-chǎo-báicài	gēn-huàr-yí yàng
2 méi-yǒu-shíkuài	yí gòng-shí wàn
3 yé-hěn-qíguài *	wǒ-yào-báicài
4 zài-nǎr-tán-huà	xiànzài-lái-kàn

0 3 4	1 3 4	2 3 4
1 duōshao-xiǎofèi	fēijī-hěn-kuài	jiānglái-yě-zuò
2 yíng-le-wǔcì	lí-jiā-hěn-jìn	bié-tí-kǎoshì
3 zǒude-hěn-màn	yǒu-sānlǐ-lù	zǒu-shílǐ-lù
4 zhèige-yǐwài	huà-shānshuǐ-huàr	dàxué-yǐwài

3 3 4	4 3 4
1 tā-yé-xiě-zì *	chī-fàn-yǐhòu
2 nín-láo-xiě-xìn *	lí-zhèr-hěn-jìn
3 wó-yóu-wǔkuài *	fǔshàng-jǐhào
4 bìdéi-kǎoshì *	dào-diànyǐngyuàn

0 4 4	1 4 4	2 4 4
1 xiānsheng-guìxìng	pīnyīn-huìhuà	guānyú-zhèijiàn
2 róngyi-huà-huàr	nín-jiā-fùjìn	nín-suíbiàn-zuò
3 wǒmen-fàngjià	yě-dōu-bìyè	qǐng-shéi-zuò-shì
4 nánchu-zài-zhèr	zài-shuō-sì cì	pà-Wáng-Jiàoshòu

3 4 4	4 4 4
1 tā-yě-fàngjià	jiē-Wàn-Jiàoshòu
2 nín-yě-bìyè	tí-zhèijiàn-shì
3 yé-děi-zhùyì *	hěn-huì-zuò-cài
4 fànguǎr-fùjìn	dàgài-zài-zhèr

## MISCELLANEOUS SENTENCES

1. Zuótian-mǎi-de-diànyǐngr-piào wǒ-jìcuò-shíhou-le.  
Piào shi-'wúdiǎn-nèichǎng-de-piào. Wǒ-qīdiǎn-zhōng cái-qù.  
I made a mistake about [lit. remembered incorrectly] the tickets I bought yesterday. The tickets were for the five o'clock show. I didn't go until seven o'clock.
2. Cóng-xiànzài-kāishǐ, wǒ-děi-jìxu-xiě Hànzì-le.  
Beginning [from] now, I must keep on writing Chinese characters.
3. Guānyú-xué-Zhōngguo-huà-yì-fāngmiàn, 'zuì-yàojiǎnde shi-fāyīn.  
With respect to studying Chinese, what is most important is pronunciation.
4. Wǒmen mǎshàng-zǒu-bā.  
Liángdiǎn-chǎng-diànyǐngr kuài-kāi-yǎn-le.  
Let's leave right away. The two o'clock show will start soon.
5. Wǒ-zuì-jìn duì-Rìběn-wén-huà-yìfāngmiàn hén-yǒu-xìngqu.  
Quite recently I've become very interested in Japanese culture.
6. Qián-jǐtiān wǒ-dédào-le  
'Wáng-Jiàoshòu géi-wǒ-de-yìfēng-xìn.  
A few days ago I received a letter from Professor King.
7. Wǒ-yǐjīng-gēn-wǒ-fùqīn shuō-hǎo-le, míngnián-dào-Yīngguo-qu-niàn-shū.  
I've already reached an agreement with my father to go to England next year to study.
8. Zuótian-'Zhāng-Xiānsheng zài-diànhuà-lǐtōu gēn-wǒ-shuōle-'hěn-duōde-shìqīng.  
Yesterday Mr. Johnson discussed a lot of things with me on the telephone.
9. Zuótian-yí-xià-kè 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu mǎshàng-jiu-pǎo-dào-fēijīchǎng qu-jiē-péng-you.  
As soon as he left class yesterday Professor Wanamaker immediately hurried to the airport to meet a friend.
10. Nèige-xuésheng hěn-huì-shuō-xiàohuà. Tā-shuō-de-xiàohuà 'zhēn-kě-xiào.  
That student is awfully good at telling jokes. His jokes are really funny.
11. Nèige-lǎoshī bìngle-hén-jiǔ. Hǎobuliǎo-le. Tā-wán-le.  
That teacher was sick for a long time. He couldn't get well. He died [lit. he's finished].
12. Zài-hén-záo-yǐqián Zhōngguo-jiu-kāishǐ yǒu-le-wén-huà.  
Very early in the past China began to become civilized.
13. Rúguó-nǐ-zuì-hǎode-péng-you yǒngyuǎn-kànbujiàn-le, ní-zěnmoyàng-ne?  
If you could never see your best friend again, how would you feel?

14. Wǒ-zuótian dài-wǒ-dìdi dào-fēiji chāng-qu-kàn-fēiji.  
Yesterday I took my younger brother to the airport to see the planes.
15. Wǒ-zhèi-jǐge-yuè shì-'tài-duō-le. Mángde-bùdéliǎo. Suǒyi-wǒ-lèijíle.  
These (past) few months I've had too much to do. I've been terribly busy. So I'm awfully tired.
16. Zhèrde-shānshuǐ 'duómo-piàoliang! Wó-déi-bǎ-tā-huàxiālai.  
How beautiful the scenery here is! I must paint it [down].
17. Guòqude-yíge-xīngqī-lǐtōu wǒ-dōu-bāngzhu-péngyou shōushi-dōngxī.  
I've spent the whole of the past week helping a friend put things in order.
18. Guò-yì-liǎngtiān wó-děi-láojià-ni bāngzhu-wǒ-shōushi-xíngli.  
After a day or two I must trouble you to help me pack my baggage.
19. Tiān-bu-zǎo-le. Wǒmen-déi-zǒu.  
The day's getting on. We must go.
20. Zuótian-nèige-háizi gēn-tā-fùqīn yào-wúkuài-qián-mǎishū.  
Yesterday that youngster asked his father for five dollars to buy a book.
21. Wǒde-yìsi-shi xiān-xué-xiě-zì, hòu-xué-niàn-shū. 'Nǐde-yìsi-zěnmóyàng?  
My idea is first to study writing and then to study reading. What do you think?
22. Wǒmen-zài-cāntīng-hē-chá-de-shíhou tánde-hén-yǒu-yìsi.  
We had a very interesting conversation while having tea in the cafeteria.
23. Tā-jiàole-bàntiānde-mén yě-méi-rén-kāi. Tā-háishi-jìxude-jiào.  
He knocked [lit. called] at the door for a long time but no one came. He continued to knock.
24. Zhèrde-shānshuǐ rúguǒ-huàchulai hěn-piàoliang.  
If you paint [lit. paint out] the landscape here it will be very beautiful.
25. Yīnwei-wǒmen-shi-lǎo-péngyou, bú-yòng-tài-kèqì. 'Suǐbiàn-chī-yìdiǎr.  
Since we're old friends, there's no need to be too formal. Let's have a little snack.
26. Wǒ-tài-máng. Zhí-háo-qǐng-péngyou bāngzhu-wǒ-shōushi-xíngli.  
I'm too busy. The only thing I can do [lit. only good] is to ask a friend to help me pack.
27. Wǒde-lǎoshī xiěle-yìběn shuō-Zhōngguó-wénhuà-de-shū.  
My teacher has written a book on Chinese culture.
28. Wǒ-ràng-cāntīngde-huǒji géiwǒ-ná-càidān-lai.  
I asked the waiter in the cafeteria to bring me a menu.
29. Wǒ-dào-'Rìběn-qu, kěnéng-bú-dào-'liǎngge-xīngqī jiùhuílai.  
I'm going to Japan, and it's possible I'll return in less than two weeks.

30. Wǒ-míngnián dào-'Zhōngguo-lǔxíng huílai-yǐhòu jiù-kāi-shǐ-xué-Zhōngwén.

I shall begin the study of Chinese next year after I get back from my trip to China.

### MONOLOGUE

Miss Gao, shortly after leaving the airport, meets a friend and tells her about Mr. White.

Wǒ-gēn-fùqin-mǔqin gāng-cóng-fēijīchǎng-huílai. Shi-sòng-yíge-péngyou-huì-guó. Zhèige-péngyou míngzi-jiào-Bái-Wénshān. Shi-Měiguó-rén. Tā-de-Zhōngwén hén-hǎo. Tā-shuō-de-Zhōngguo-huà gēn-Zhōngguo-rén-yíyàng. Nǐ-gēn-ta-zài-yíkuàr yídiár-yě-bù-juéde tā-shi-yíge-'wàiguó-rén. Wǒmen-kāishǐ-rènshi shi-zài-wǒmen-nèige-shūdiàn-lǐtou. Yǒu-yìtiān, wǒ-gēn-fùqin-mǔqin wǒmen-dào-shūdiàn-qu-le. Zhèng-yùjian-Bái-Wénshān 'yě-qu-mǎi-shū. Fùqin-jiù-gēn-ta-shuō-huà, érqíe-yě-jièshao-mǔqin-gēn-wǒ-rènshi-ta.

Yǒu-yíci fùqin-qǐng-ta dào-wǒmen-'jiā-lǐtou-lái-chī-fàn. Zhèng-hǎo wǒ-zài-gōnggòng-qìchēshang yùjian-ta. Wǒmen-liǎnge-rén yíkuàr-huídào-jiā-lǐtou-lái. Cóng-zhèige-shíhou, wǒmen-mànmǎrde jiù-shi-hén-hǎode-péngyou-le.

Cóng-nèige-shíhou-kāishǐ, guānyu-'shùxué-yìfāngmiàn rúguó-wó-yǒu-wèntí huòzhě-bù-míngbai-de-dìfang, tā-'dōu-néng-gàosu-wo.

Tā-láidào-Zhōngguo-yìnián-le. Zài-zhèi-yìnián-lǐtou, qián-jǐge-yuè wǒmen-'bù-zěnmò-cháng-jiàn. Kěshi-yǐhòu měige-xīngqī wǒmen-dōu-jiàn-liǎng-sāncì. Yǒude-shíhou wǒmen-yíkuàr dào-túshūguǎn-qù-kàn-shū, huòzhě-yíkuàr qu-kànkàn-diànyǐngr.

Tā-shi-yíge-hěn-yònggōng, érqíe yé-hěn-cōngmíng-de-rén. Fùqin-hén-xǐhuan-ta. Tā-'yí-dào-wǒmen-jiā-lǐtou-lái, fùqin-hěn-gāoxìng. Fùqin-hén-xǐhuan-gēn-tā-tán guānyu-'Zhōngguo-yǔyán gēn-wénxué-de-wèntí. Tóngshí-mǔqin duì-tā-yé-hén-hǎo. Tā-xǐhuan-chī-hóng-shāo-cài. Měicì-dào-wǒmen-jiā, mǔqin-chàbuduō 'dōu-shi-zuò-hóng-shāo-cài gěi-ta-chī.

Xiànzài-tā-huì-guó-le. Yíge-'zuì-hǎode-péngyou-zǒu-le, nǐ-xiǎng shi-zěnmoyàng-ne? Tā-suírán-zǒu-de-shíhou-shuō tā-huìqu-bìyè-yǐhòu hái-huílai, kěshi-tā-shì-bu-shi 'zhēnde-néng-huílai-ne?

ANSWERING QUESTIONS

- 1. Lǎoshī dōu-shi-lǎo-rén-ma? Yíge-èrshi-duō-suǐde-xiānsheng 'k'éyì-bu-kéyì suàn-shi-lǎoshī?
- 2. Dài-biǎo-de-dài gēn-dài-dōngxi-de-dài yòng-Hànzì-xiě shi-bu-yíyàng-de. Rúguǒ-yòng-pīnyīn-xiě yíyàng-ma?
- 3. Zhōngguo yǒu-sānqiān-duō-niánde-wénhuà. Měiguó-ne?
- 4. Yíge-péngyou shi-sānhào-líkai-Dōngjīng liùhào-dàode-Niǚyue. Nǐ-shuō-shi-zuò-fēiji-lái-de háishi-zuò-chuán-lái-de-ne?
- 5. Rúguó-wǒ-shuō míngtiān shi-míngniánde-dì-yītiān, nènmo-jīntiān shi-jǐyuè-jǐhào?
- 6. Chuán shi-shàngwǔ-qīdiǎn-zhōng-kāi-de, xiàwǔ-sìdiǎn-zhōng-dào-de. Yígòng-zǒule-'jǐge-zhōngtóu?
- 7. Měiguó-zuì-dàde-chéng shi-Niǚyue. 'Rìběn-ne?
- 8. Rúguó-nǐ-yào-dài-hěn-duō-xínglǐ, shi-zuò-fēiji-hǎo háishi - zuò - chuán-hǎo?
- 9. Wǒde-xínglǐ ràng-yíge-péngyou gěi-shòushihǎo-le. Wǒ-yīngdāng-duì-ta-shuō "Nǐ-tài-kèqì" háishi-"Tài-láojià"-ne?
- 10. Zhèiběn-shū nǐ-kuài-yào-niànwán-le. Niànwán-le-yǐhòu, nǐ - hái - jìxu-niàn-Zhōngwén-ma?

NOTES

- 1. Yī 'one' is used before a noun or measure in the meaning 'the whole of.' In this meaning, the yī expression comes before the verb and is often accompanied by the adverb dōu 'all':  

Yì-jia-rén dōu-hěn-cōngmíng. 'The whole family is very intelligent.'  
Tā-yì-tiān jiùshì-niàn-shū. 'He does nothing but study the whole day long.'
- 2. The pluralizing suffix -men, which we have encountered attached to pronouns (as in wǒmen 'we'), is also attached to nouns relating to people:  

háizimen 'children'  
péngyoumen 'friends'

The resulting form has a general collective meaning. Hence the suffix is never attached to a noun that is specifically quantified; note wǔshíge háizi 'fifty children.'
- 3. The suffix -jiā, derived from jiā 'house,' is attached to nouns, and more rarely to verbs, to form a noun relating to a profession:  

lìshǐ 'history'	: lìshǐjiā 'historian'
shùxué 'mathematics'	: shùxuéjiā 'mathematician'
huà 'paint'	: huàjiā 'painter'



4. The term lǎoshī, literally 'old teacher,' is applied to teachers of any age, but is a more honorific term than xiānsheng 'teacher.'
5. The syllable jīng 'capital' is a combining form which enters into the names of many capital cities:

Nánjīng 'Nanking' [lit. 'Southern Capital']

Běijīng 'Peking' [lit. 'Northern Capital']

Dōngjīng 'Tokyo' [lit. 'Eastern Capital']

The city known to English speakers as Peking or Peiping has been called Běijīng 'Peking' [Northern Capital] at various times when governments have designated it the capital: during the Ch'ing Dynasty (1644–1911); during the years 1912–1928 of the Republic of China; and since the establishment of the Chinese People's Republic in 1949. In 1928, Chiang Kai-shek's government established Nanking as the capital, renaming the former capital Běipíng 'Peiping' [Northern Peace]. In spite of political fluctuations, many fixed phrases—for example, Běijīng Dàxué 'Peking University'—have retained the original name continuously.

6. The verb ràng 'permit,' 'let,' like qǐng 'invite' and jiào 'tell,' can have a sentence as a direct object:

Wó-qǐng-ta-lái. 'I invited him to come.'

Wǒ-jiào-ta-lái. 'I told him to come.'

Wǒ-ràng-ta-lái. 'I let him come.'

Wǒ-ràng-ta-xiě-zì. 'I let him write characters.'

7. An active sentence of the pattern S-V-O (Subject-Verb-Object) can be transformed into a passive sentence of the pattern O-ràng-S-V, with ràng 'by' as the coverb of agent:

Wó-dǎ-ta-le. 'I hit him.'

Tā-ràng-wó-dǎ-le. 'He was hit by me.'

Ràng may here be replaced by jiào, and the main verb may be preceded by gěi 'give' (cf. English 'He was given a beating by me'). Hence, 'He was beaten by me' can be expressed in the following ways:

Tā-ràng-wó-dǎ-le.

Tā-ràng-wó-géi-dǎ-le.

Tā-jiào-wó-dǎ-le.

Tā-jiào-wó-géi-dǎ-le.

The passive is used most often to refer to completed (past) activity. In general, it is far less common in Chinese than in English.

8. The syllable wǔ 'noon,' a combining form, joins with shàng 'up,' xià 'down,' zhōng 'middle,' and fàn 'food' to make the following expressions:

shàngwǔ 'forenoon, morning, A.M.'

xiàwǔ 'afternoon, P.M.'

zhōngwǔ 'noon'

wǔfàn 'lunch'

9. The word zǎo is used as a stative verb meaning 'early,' as an adverb meaning 'long ago,' 'long since,' and as a conventional greeting meaning 'Good morning.'

10. The verb dé 'get' is used in reciting the multiplication table when the product is an expression of one syllable, as in sān-sān-dé-jiǔ 'three times three is nine.' With the perfective suffix le it becomes déle and means 'finished, ready,' as:

Fàn-déle. 'The food is ready.'

Déle is frequently used by itself:

Déle-ma? 'Ready?'

Déle. 'Finished.'

It also occurs by itself as a sort of exclamation, usually in answer to excessive praise ('Stop!' 'That's enough!'), as in the Dialogue (line 87); this usage is very informal, restricted to conversations between close friends.

11. Yílù-píng'ān, literally '(may things) be peaceful the whole way,' is a conventional expression equivalent to Bon Voyage!
12. Bùgǎndāng, literally 'not dare undertake,' is a conventional response to praise. It means something like 'You do me too much honor' or 'I don't deserve (your praise, attention, etc.).'
13. Láojià is a conventional expression used when one has caused trouble to someone, or expects to do so. In the former case, it is about equivalent to English 'Sorry to have troubled you' or 'Much obliged.' In the latter, it has the force of 'Sorry to trouble you,' 'Excuse me,' 'May I trouble you?'
14. The conventional phrase nǎrde-huà 'where (is there any such) talk?' often corresponds to the phrase 'Not at all' as a response to expressions of thanks:
- A. Nǐ-tài-kèqi. 'You're too polite.' 'You're too kind.'
- B. Nǎrde-huà. 'Not at all.'
15. Shuōbudìng has the form of a resultative verb phrase and means 'unable to say for sure'; but no corresponding form exists with de replacing bu. Besides its literal meaning, 'one can't say for sure,' it often means simply 'perhaps.'

16. The place word qián 'front' occurs in the following combinations:

qiántian 'day before yesterday'

qiánnian 'year before last'

qián-jǐtiān 'a few days ago,' 'the first few days'

qián-jǐge-xīngqī 'a few weeks ago,' 'the first few weeks'

qián-jǐge-yuè 'a few months ago,' 'the first few months'

qián-jǐnián 'a few years ago,' 'the first few years'

## Lesson 24 REVIEW

### PRONUNCIATION REVIEW

#### I. Sentences Distinguished Only by Context

In Chinese, as in English, sentences occur which are pronounced exactly alike but have different meanings. In isolation, such sentences are ambiguous; but people do not say things in isolation. The context of an utterance almost always makes its meaning clear.

The following sentences are examples. Invent suitable contexts for both members of each pair.

- |                             |                                                                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Nǐ-zuò-shénmo?           | (a) What are you doing?<br>(b) What [conveyance] are you taking?            |
| 2. Nèige-hú-hěn-dà.         | (a) That lake is quite large.<br>(b) That pot is quite large.               |
| 3. Wǒ-jiào-Měiyīng.         | (a) I'm calling Meiyīng.<br>(b) I'm called Meiyīng.                         |
| 4. Zhí-yǒu-sānzhāng.        | (a) There are only three sheets.<br>(b) (Of) paper, there are three sheets. |
| 5. Wǒ-míngtiān-sòng-tā.     | (a) I'll see him off tomorrow.<br>(b) I'll present it to him tomorrow.      |
| 6. Tāmen-kǎode-zhēn-bú-cuò. | (a) They roasted it really well.<br>(b) They did really well in the exams.  |

#### II. Sentences Distinguished by Tonal Contrasts

In contrast to the sentences presented in the foregoing exercise, which are capable of two different interpretations as determined by context, the exercise below gives pairs of sentences which are almost identical, differing only with respect to a single tone. (The first pair, for example, are identical except for mǎi in the first and mài in the second.) A tone distinction like this is as significant to Chinese ears as a vowel or consonant difference is to ours; each pair below is as different as the English pair Bake the pie and Take the pie.

Practice the following by pronouncing ONE sentence from each pair, testing yourself by asking the Chinese teacher to identify what you think you said by

giving the English for what he thinks he heard. When you have had a perfect score on every sentence at least twice, reverse the process and try to identify the meanings of the sentences pronounced one at a time by the Chinese teacher.

- |                                                    |                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Tāmen-mǎi-shū.<br>Tāmen-mài-shū.                | They buy books.<br>They sell books.                                     |
| 2. Wǒ-míngtiān-qu-jie.<br>Wǒ-míngtiān-qu-jie.      | I'm going to meet (him) tomorrow.<br>I'm going to borrow (it) tomorrow. |
| 3. Nǐmen-yǒu-tāng-ma?<br>Nǐmen-yǒu-táng-ma?        | Do you have soup?<br>Do you have sugar?                                 |
| 4. "Dōng-xī" zěnmó-xiě?<br>"Dōngxi" zěnmó-xiě?     | How do you write "East-West"?<br>How do you write "thing"?              |
| 5. Tāmen-bu-dǎ.<br>Tāmen-bu-dà.                    | They're not hitting.<br>They're not big.                                |
| 6. Tā-xiǎng-ta-fùqin.<br>Tā-xiàng-ta-fùqin.        | He's thinking of his father.<br>He resembles his father.                |
| 7. Tā-yào-nèizhāng-dìtú.<br>Tā-yào-'něizhāng-dìtú? | He wants that map.<br>What map does he want?                            |
| 8. Tā-wán-le.<br>Tā-wǎn-le.                        | He's done for.<br>He's late.                                            |
| 9. Jiǔ-zài-zhèr.<br>Jiù-zài-zhèr.                  | The wine is here.<br>It's right here.                                   |
| 10. Yígòng-yǒu-shíwǎn.<br>Yígòng-yǒu-shíwàn.       | Altogether there are ten bowlfuls.<br>Altogether there are 100,000.     |
| 11. Chá-sānkuài-qián.<br>Chà-sānkuài-qián.         | The tea is three dollars.<br>(I'm) short three dollars.                 |
| 12. Wǒ-jiāo-Měiyīng.<br>Wǒ-jiào-Měiyīng.           | I'm teaching Meiyīng.<br>I'm calling Meiyīng.                           |

PATTERN REVIEW

Each of the patterns studied in this book is reviewed below, generally in a more complicated form and with different vocabulary than when first presented. If you have difficulty with any pattern, go back to the lesson in which it first appeared and review it. (For this purpose, each pattern is identified by lesson and drill number: 2.4, for example, means Lesson 2, Pattern Drill 4.

## Unit I

- 1.1. Xíngli-bú-tài-duō.
- 1.2. Wǒmen-dōu-chī-xìngrér-dòufu.
- 1.3. Fēijīchǎng bú-'tài-yuǎn-ma?
- 2.1. 'Zhāng-Jiàoshòu bú-shi-Nánjīng-rén-ma?
- 2.2. Wǒmen-yīngdāng-yánjiu-zhèijiàn-shì qing.
- 2.3. Nǐ-'huì-bu-huì yòng-kuàizi chī-Zhōngguo-fàn?
- 2.4. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng shì-nǐde-lǎoshī-bu-shi?
- 3.1. Yìwǎn-fàn 'gòu-bu-gòu?
- 3.2. Zhèisuǒr-fángzi mài-'duōshao-qian?
- 3.3. Zhèi-sānzhāng-huār dōu-shi-'tā-huà-de.
- 5.1. Tāde-xuéwen yě-bú-cuò.
- 5.2. Zuì-cōngmingde-xuésheng shi-shéi?

## Unit II

- 7.1. Fànguǎr zài-túshūguǎn gēn-shūdiàn-de-zhōngjiār.
- 7.2. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng zài-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué niàn-kēxué.
- 7.3. Zài-tā-jia-fùjìn yǒu-yíge-xiǎo-fēijīchǎng.
- 7.4. Zài-nèr-niàn-shū-de-rén chàbuduō-dōu-shi-'wàiguó-rén.
- 7.5. Wǒmen-xiě-Hànzì háishi-xiě-pīnyīn?
- 8.1 a. Tā-jia-lí-fēijīchǎng 'tài-jìn.
- 8.1 b. Diànyīngyuàn lí-Sān-Yǒu-Shūdiàn yǒu-yìlǐ-duō-lù.
- 8.2. Yǒu-hěn-duō-yǎnyuán yǎnde-bù-hǎo.
- 8.3. Shǐzi-tóu bù-róngyi-zuò.
- 8.4. Shi-'zìjǐ-zuò-hǎo háishi-qǐng-'biéde-rén-zuò-hǎo?
- 9.1. Wó-měitiān dào-Sān-Yǒu-Shūdiàn-qu.
- 9.2 a. Wǒmen-'shénmo-shíhou qu-jiē-ta?
- 9.2 b. Tāmen-liùdiǎn-zhōng kàn-diànyīng-qu.
- 9.3. Tā-'xiàwǔ wúdiǎn-bàn cóng-túshūguǎn-lái.
- 9.4. Cóng-zhèr-yìzhíde wàng-xībēi-zǒu-sānlǐ-lù jiù-dào-le.
- 9.5. Rúguó-wǒ-zuò-chuán-qù wǒ-jiu-zǎo-yìdiár-zǒu.
- 10.1. Zhèi-xīngqīde-piānzi bǐ-shàng-xīngqīde-hǎo.
- 10.2. Nǐ-shuōde-hěn-duì.
- 10.3 a. Nán-háizi bí-nǚ-háizi chīde-duō.
- 10.3 b. Tā-láide bí-wó-wǎn.
- 10.4. Tā-shuō-xiàohuà shuōde-zhēn-hǎo.

- 10.5 a. Wǒ-kàn-diànyǐngr bǐ-tā-kànde-duō.
- 10.5 b. Tā-dài-xíngli dàide-bí-nǐ-duō.
- 11.1. Tā-dǎsuan míngnián-èryuè-sānhào líkai-Zhōngguo.
- 11.2. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng shì-qùnián-liùyuè bìyè-de.
- 11.3 a. Tā-shì-zài-'Rìběn niàn-shū-de.
- 11.3 b. Wǒ-shì-zài-'fànguár-mǎi-de-chá.

Unit III

- 13.1 a. Wó-bá-suóyǒude-xíngli dōu-shōushihǎo-le.
- 13.1 b. Zuótian-wǎnshang wǒmen-kàn-le-diànyǐngr-le.
- 13.2 a. Wǒmen-chīwánle-fàn jiù-qu-kàn-diànyǐngr.
- 13.2 b. Wó-'mǎile-shū jiù-huǐ-jiā-le.
- 13.3 a. Wǒ-chīde-tài-bǎo-le.
- 13.3 b. Xiànzài-yǐjīng wǔyuè-báihào-le.
- 13.4 a. Wǒmen-yàole-wǔge-cài yíge-tāng.
- 13.4 b. Wó-yǐjīng-xiěle wǔfēng-xìn-le. Hái-yào-xiě-sānfēng.
- 13.5. Xiànzài tiānqi-nuǎnhuo-le.
- 13.6 a. Xué-niàn-shū-yǐqián děi-xiān-xué-shuō-huà.
- 13.6 b. Wǒ-zài-Zhōngguo-de-shíhou cháng-qu-kàn Zhōngguo-diànyǐngr.
- 13.7. Cóng-yī-jiǔ-liù-èr-nián-kāishǐ tā-jiù-bú-niàn-Zhōngwén-le.
- 14.1. Wǒde-lǎoshī duì-Rìběn-lìshǐ hén-yǒu-yánjiu.
- 14.2 a. Wàn-Jiāoshòu-xiě-de-shū dōu-hěn-nán-dòng.
- 14.2 b. Néng-yòng-Hànzì-xiě-xìn-de-wàiguó-rén hén-shǎo.
- 14.3 a. Nǐ-méi-tīngshuōguo zhèige-xiàohua-ma?
- 14.3 b. Wǒde-nèijiàn-shì tā-zuótian-tígúo-le-ma?
- 14.4. Wǒ-yídìng-jìbuzhù nènmo-duō-Hànzì.
- 14.5 a. Měiguó-zuì-dàde-dàxué yóu-liǎngwàn-sānqiān-duō-xuésheng.
- 14.5 b. Nèige-túshūguǎn chàbuduō-yǒu-yìbái-wǔshi-wàn-běn-shū.
- 15.1. Wǒ-hái-děi-xué liǎngniánde-shùxué.
- 15.2. Cóng-Měiguó wǒ-zuòle-liǎngge-xīngqī-chuán cái-dào-'Rìběn.
- 15.3. Wǒ-shōushile-'liùge-zhōngtóude-xíngli-le, 'hái-méi-shōushihǎo.
- 15.4. Tāmen-zài-diànhuàlì-shuō-huà yǐjīng-yǒu-'yíge-duō-zhōngtóu-le.
- 15.5. Wǒ-kànle-liǎngcì 'Zhōngguo-diànyǐngr.
- 16.1. Xiǎo-háizi-guò-lù yào-zhùyì-chē.
- 16.2. Wó-měitiān qīdiǎn-zhōng-qīlai.
- 16.3. Rúguó-wó-yǒu-jīhui wǒ-yídìng shàng-Guǎngdong-qu-lǚxíng.



- 16.4. Wó-xiángqilai-zhèige-zìde-yìsi-le.  
 16.5. Qíng-nǐmen dōu-náqi-shū-lai.  
 16.6. Wǒde-xíngli dōu-nádao-nǎr-qu-le?  
 16.7. Bú-yào-bǎ-zhèijiàn-shìqing gào-su-ta.  
 16.8 a. Lián-wǒde-lǎoshī yě-bú-rènshi-zhèige-zì.  
 16.8 b. Zhèige-jùzi lián-yíge-zì wǒ-dōu-bú-rènshi.  
 16.9. Wó-xiáng-mǎi-zhèi-jíbēn-shū sònggei-ta.  
 16.10. Jiǎozi yě-shi-nǐ-zuò-de-ma?  
 17.1. Zhōngguo-kuàizi gēn-Rìběn-kuàizi yíyàng-ma?  
 17.2. Guǎngdong-cài gēn-běifāng-cài yíyàng-hǎo-chī-ma?  
 17.3. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie méi-yǒu-tā-fùqin nènmo-xǐhuan-xiě-zì.  
 17.4. Nǐ-zuò-táng-cù-yú zuòde-gēn-tā-yíyàng-hǎo.  
 17.5. Wǒ-chī-jiǎozi-chīde yóu-nǐ-zhènmo-duō.  
 17.6. Wǒ-lèide-lián-fàn yě-bù-xiǎng-chī.

## Unit IV

- 19.1 a. Nǐ-yīngdāng duō-liànxi-xiě-Hànzì.  
 19.1 b. Wǒmen-zǒu-'kuài-yìdiǎr, yàoburán-wǒmen-qùwǎn-le.  
 19.1 c. Qíng-nǐ-míngtian zǎo-yìdiǎr-lái.  
 19.2 a. Tāmen-zài-cāngtīngli tánzhe-huà-ne.  
 19.2 b. Tā-dàizhe-xíngli shàng-chuán-qu-le.  
 19.3. Tā-bú-shi-'Hàn rén jiù-shi-'Rìběn-rén.  
 19.4. Tā-shuōle-hǎoxiē-xiǎohuà yě-méi-yǒu-rén-xiào.  
 19.5. Chùle-fāyīn-yǐwài tāde-'Zhōngwén-bú-cuò.  
 19.6. Tā-sìshēng liànxi-shi-liànxi, kěshi-hái-shuōde-bù-zhǔn.  
 20.1. Tā-yí-dào-fēijīchǎng jiù-shàng-fēijī-le.  
 20.2. Zhèizhāng-huàr nǐ-'shénmo-shíhou-guàqilai?  
 20.3 a. Wó-dǎle-bàntiān-mén dōu-méi-rén-kāi.  
 20.3 b. Dǎ-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā dào-fēijīchǎng yǒu-bāilǐ-duō-lù.  
 20.3 c. Qíng-nǐmen-dǎkai-shū yíkuàr-niàn.  
 20.4. Zhèi-liǎngge-zì ní-xiěcuò-le.  
 21.1 a. Ní-'yǒu-duōshao jiù-'gěi-duōshao.  
 21.1 b. 'Shéi-yào-míngtian-qù 'shéi-jiù-míngtian-qù.  
 21.2 a. Jiùshi-nǐ-'bù-xiě-xìn wó-yé-xiě.  
 21.2 b. Jiùshi-'wàiguó-rén duì-Hànzì yé-yǒu-xìngqu.  
 21.3. Rúguó-wó-yǒu-qián wǒ-yídìng-gěi-ta, kěshi-wǒ-méi-yǒu-qián-gěi-ta.



- 21.4. Tā-tiāntian-dà-chī-dà-hē.  
 22.1. Wǒ-yuè-xué-Zhōngguo-huàde-fāyīn yuè-juéde-nán.  
 22.2. Ní-hǎohāorde tīng-wǒde-huà.  
 22.3. Ní-xiě-de-zì gèger-dōu-shi-cuò-de.  
 23.1. Yì-jiā-rén dōu-duì-wó-hén-hǎo.  
 23.2 a. Měiguó-wénxuéjiā bú-tài-zhùyì 'Zhōngguó-wénxué.  
 23.2 b. 'Zhōngguó-háizimen 'wàiguó-háizimen dōu-shi-yíyàngde-xǐhuan-wár.  
 23.3. Wǒde-shū ràng-'shéi-gěi-názǒu-le?

FOREIGN CORRESPONDENCE

After returning to America, Mr. White starts corresponding with Miss Gao. Here is his first letter and her reply. Note the format of Chinese letters: salutation at the beginning, body of the letter, complimentary close set off as indicated, signature at the end, and date after the name.

Měiyīng:

Zhèi-shi-wó-géi-nǐ-de-dì-yìfēng-xìn. Wǒ-dàole-'Rìběn xiàle-fēijī jiù-qu-kàn-wǒde-lǎoshī. Tā-hěn-gāoxìng, qíng-wǒ-chīle-yíci-fàn, hái-géi-wo-jièshaole liǎngwèi-'Rìběn-péngyou, yíwèi-'Měiguó-péngyou. Zhèi-sānge-péngyou duì-wǒ-dōu-hén-hǎo. Wǒ-shi-dì-èrcì lái-'Rìběn-le. Wǒ-juéde-'Rìběn hén-yǒu-yìsi. Nǐ-ne? Chule-zhèige-yíwài zài-'Rìběn yě-méi-yǒu-shénmo-tèbié-yǒu-yìside-shìqing gàosu-ni.

Wǒ-xiànzài yǐjīng-dàole-jiā. Wǒ-kànjian-fùqīn-mǔqīn, bá-ni-sònggei-wǒde nèizhāng-shānshuǐ-huà náchulai-gěi-tāmen-kàn. Fùqīn-mǔqīn-dōu-shuō nǐ-huà-de-hǎo. Wó-yě-gàosu-tāmen nǐ-shi-wǒ-zuì-hǎode-péngyou. Tāmen-dōu-hěn-gāoxìng, shuō-xīwang-nǐ-néng-dào-'Měiguó-lái. Wó-yé-bǎ-Gāo-Xiānsheng Gāo-Tàitai duì-wǒ-nènmó-hǎo gàosu-tāmen. Fùqīn-mǔqīn dōu-shuō xièxie-tāmen-liǎngwèi.

Wǒ-líkai-jiā-yìnián. Fùqīn-mǔqīn hái-gēn-qùnnián-yíyàng, kěshi-dìdi-mèimei zhǎnggāo-le-hěn-duō. Dìdi-gēn-wǒ-yíyàng-gāo. Mèimei-yuè-zhǎng yuè-piàoliang. Fùqīn-mǔqīn yīnwei-wǒ-líkai-tāmen-yìnián-le wǒ-huǐlai-le tāmen-gāoxìngde-bùdéliǎo. Mǔqīn-měitiān zuò-hén-hǎode-cài gēi-wǒ-chī.

Wó-yě-qu-kànguo-jǐge-péngyou. Dōu-gēn-yǐqián-chàbuduō. Wǒ-zhèi-jǐtiān-hěn-lèi. Guò-yì-liǎngtiān wǒ-dào-dàxué-qu-kànkàn 'shénmo-shíhoushàng-kè, yīnggāi-mǎi-'shénmo-shū yìxiē-wèntí. Wó-xiǎng-zài-zhèi-yìnián-lǐtōu wǒ-bìdēi-yònggōng-niàn-shū.

Wǒ-cóng-shàng-fēijiāo dào-xiànzài dōu-hén-hǎo, kěshi-kànbujiàn-nǐ-le. Bù-zhīdào 'shénmo-shíhou wǒmen-zài-jiàn. Xīwang-nǐ-cháng-géi-wó-xiě-xìn. Zài-tán. Zhù-nǐ  
Píng'ān

Wénshān

jiǔyue-báohào

Wénshān:

Zuótian-jiědào-nǐde-xìn gāoxìng-jíle. Zhīdao-ní-yǐjīng píng'ān-huídào-fúshàng-le. Wó-bá-ní-zǒule-yǐhòu-de-yìxiē-shìqing gàoosu-nǐ-yìdiǎr.

Qián-jǐtiān wǒ-dào-Yuǎn-Dà-qùguo-le. Wǒmen-xià-xīngqī jiù-kāishǐ-shàng-kè-le. Wǒmen 'yìniánjīde-xuésheng hái-děi-xué yìnián-de-shùxué. Zāogāo! Wǒde-shùxué bú-tài-hǎo. Nǐ-shi-zhīdao-de. Érqǐě wǒde-shùxué-lǎoshī yǐjīng-huídào-hén-yuǎnde-Měiguó-le. Rúguó-wó-yǒu-wèntí, 'shéi-gàoosu-wo? Wǒ-duì-shùxué-méi-xìngqu. Ràng-wǒ-zài-xué-yìnián-shùxué wǒ-zhēn-bù-gāoxìng-xué. Wǒ-bù-míngbai xué-wénxué wèi-shénmo hái-yào-xué-yìnián-shùxué-ne? Shì-bu-shi-měi-yíge-dàxué dōu-shi-yíyàng-ne?

Wó-xiǎng-shàng-kè-yǐhòu wǒ-bìdéi-hǎohǎorde yònggōng-niàn-shū-le. Yóuqíshì-duì-'xiě-zì-yìfāngmiàn. Wó-xiěde-'tài-bù-hǎo-le. Fùqin-cháng-jiào-wó-xiě-zì. Kěshi-láo-yě-méi-hǎohǎorde yònggōng-xiěguo.

Qián-jǐtiān yǒu-yíwèi-péngyou ràng-wó-gěi-ta-huà-yìzhāng-huà. Xiǎng-lái-xiǎngqù gěi-ta-huà-'shénmo-hǎo-ne? Xiǎngqilai-le bǎ-túshūguǎn-huàxialai. Nǐ-kàn-túshūguǎn duómo-piàoliang-a! Huàxialai yídìng-'hén-hǎo-kàn. Nǐ-shuō-shì-bu-shi?

Ní-zǒule-yǐhòu fùqin-mǔqin-tāmen měitiān-tídào-nǐ. Tāmen-shuō nǐ-shi-cōngmíngde-hǎo-xuésheng. Xīwang-bù-jiǔ nǐ-'zài-dào-Zhōngguó-lái.

Guòqude-yìnián-lǐtōu hén-yǒu-yìsì. Nǐ-duì-wǒde-shùxué bāngzhu-hěnduō. Wó-hěn-xièxie-nǐ. Wó-xiǎng-yǐhòu měi-xīngqīliù-xiě-xìn, bǎ-yíge-xīngqīde-shìqing xiěchulai. Nǐ-juéde-zěnmóyàng? Zhù  
Hǎo.

Měiyīng

jiǔyue shísān

## DIALOGUE SUMMARIES

The Dialogues are summarized below, lesson by lesson. They are told in narrative style here, and provided with background material and explanations, but do not exceed the vocabulary and grammar presented in the book.

## Unit I

## Dì-yíkè

'Gāo-Xiānsheng kāile-yíge-Sān-Yǒu-Shūdiàn, lí-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué-bù-yuǎn.  
'Bái-Xiānsheng cóng-Měiguó-dào-Zhōngguó-yǐhou, zài - shūdiànli - mǎi - shū  
jiù-rènshi-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-le. Tóngshí-yě-rènshi-le-Gāo-Tàitai Gāo-Xiǎo-  
jie. Yǒu-yìtiān 'Bái-Xiānsheng-chūqu suíbiàn-zài-lùshang-zóuzou, yùjian-  
le-'Gāo-Xiānsheng. 'Bái-Xiānsheng wèn-'Gāo-Xiānsheng zuì-jìn-hǎo-ma.  
'Bái-Xiānsheng yòu-wèn-Gāo-Tàitai Gāo-Xiǎojie dōu-hǎo-ma. Gāo-Xiān-  
sheng-xièxie-ta, gàosu-'Bái-Xiānsheng Gāo-Tàitai-Gāo-Xiǎojie dōu-hǎo.

## Dì-èrkè

Yǒu-yíci yíge-'Zhōngguó-rén qíng-hěn-dōu-péngyou dào-ta-jiā-lǐtōu qu-  
hē-chá. Tā-qǐng-de-péngyou-lǐtōu yǒu-'Zhōngguó-rén yé-yǒu-'wàiguó-rén.  
'Bái-Xiānsheng gēn-'Qián-Xiānsheng tāmen-liǎngge-rén zài-yíkuàr-zuòzhe.  
Yīnwei-rén-tài-duō yě-méi-yǒu-rén gěi - tāmen - liǎngge - rén - jièshao, 'Bái-  
Xiānsheng xiǎng-gēn-Qián-Xiānsheng-shuō-huà, tā-jiù-wèn-Qián-Xiānsheng-  
guìxìng. Qián-Xiānsheng-gàosu-tā-xìng-Qián. Kěshi 'Qián-Xiānsheng jìcuò-  
le. Tā-xiǎng-'Bái-Xiānsheng shi-'Wáng-Xiānsheng. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō ta-  
'bú-shi-Wáng-Xiānsheng, tā-xìng-Bái. Qián-Xiānsheng - yòu - wèn - ta shi-  
'Yīngguó-rén-bú-shi. Bái-Xiānsheng-yòu-gàosu-ta 'bú-shi-Yīngguó-rén, ta-  
shi-Měiguó-rén. 'Bái-Xiānsheng wèn-'Qián-Xiānsheng huì-shuō - 'Yīngguó-  
huà-bú-huì. 'Qián-Xiānsheng-shuō ta-bú-huì, zhǐ-huì-shuō-'Zhōngguó-huà.

## Dì-sānkè

'Bái-Xiānsheng xiǎng-mái-jǐzhī-Zhōngguó-bǐ, suóyī-tā-jiù-dào Gāo-Xiān-  
shengde-shūdiàn-qu-le. Tā-kànjian-yǒu-yìběn-Zhōngguó-Wénxué. Shi-yíwèi-  
Yuǎn-Dà-jiàoshòu-xiě-de. Yīnwei-tā-yánjiu-Zhōngguó-wénxué ta-xiǎng-mǎi,  
tā-jiù-wèn-shūdiànli mài-shū-de-rén 'Máo-Xiānsheng zhèiběn-shū-'duōshao-

qián. Máo-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta yíkuai-èrmáo-qián-yìběn. Tā - yào - mái - liángběn. Tā-juéde-zhèiběn-shū hén-hǎo. Tā-xiǎng-sònggei-péngyou - yìběn, suóyi-mái-liángběn.

Tā-yòu-wèn máobǐ-duōshao-qián-yìzhī. Tā-xiǎng-tā-niàn-Zhōngwén bì-déi-xiě-Hànzì. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-shuō liǎngmáo-qián-yìzhī. Tā-mǎile-wǔ-zhī-bǐ, liángběn-shū. Yígòng-yòngle wǔkuài-sìmáo-qián. Máihǎo-le-yǐhòu tā-názhe-shū-gēn-bǐ jiù-huíqu-le.

#### Dì-sìkè

Yuǎndōng-Dàxué yǐjīng-shàng-kè-le. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yīnggāi mǎi-de-dōngxì hěn-duō, bǐfang-běnzì, dìtú, zìdiǎn, mòshuǐ, gāngbǐ, qiǎnbǐ tā-dōu-déi-mǎi. Tā-yòu-pǎodào-shūdiàn-qu. Tā-xiànzài gēn-'Máo-Xiānsheng jiànguo - hěn-duō-cì. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-wèn-ta yào-mǎi-shénmo-dōngxì. Tā-yào-mǎi-'hóng-mòshuǐ, kěshi-shūdiàn-lǐtou 'hóng-mòshuǐ-dōu-màiwán-le. Zhí-yǒu-'lán-mòshuǐ, 'hēi-mòshuǐ-le. Tā-mǎi-zìdiǎn, dìtú, gāngbǐ, qiǎnbǐ, zhǐ. Tā-bǎ-dōngxì-máihǎo-le-yǐhòu, Máo-Xiānsheng-gěi-ta-suànsuan-zhàng. Yígòng-shí-liùkuài-jiǔmáo-èrfēn-qián. Tā-gēn-Máo-Xiānsheng shuō-zàijiàn, názhe-dōngxì jiù-zǒu-le.

#### Dì-wǔkè

'Bái-Xiānsheng láidào-Zhōngguó yǐjīng-chàbuduō-bànnián-le. Tā-cháng-dào-shūdiàn-qu-mǎi-shū, suóyi-cháng-kànjian-'Gāo-Xiānsheng. Tā-gēn-Gāo-Xiānsheng mànmarde-jiù-shi-hén-hǎode-péngyou-le. Gāo-Xiānsheng tèbié-xǐhuan-ta. Gāo-Xiānsheng yǒu-yíwèi-Yīngguó-péngyou, 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu. Hén-záo-yǐqián Gāo-Xiānsheng jiù-xiáng-qǐng-'Wàn - Jiàoshòu gēn-'Bái-Xiānsheng dào-tāmen-jiā-lǐtou-chī-fàn, kěshi-Wàn-Jiàoshòu-tài-máng, lǎo-méi-gōngfu. Yǒu-yìtiān 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu xiàwǔ-sāndiǎn-duō-zhōng tā-gěi - Gāo - Xiānsheng-dǎ-diànhuà shuō-ta-jīntian-wǎnshang yǒu-gōngfu, kéyi-dào-Gāo-jia-chī-wǎn-fàn.

'Wàn-Jiàoshòu gěi-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-dǎle-diànhuà-yǐhòu, 'Gāo-Xiānsheng mǎshàng-jiù-gěi-Bái-Xiānsheng-dǎ-diànhuà, qǐng-ta-jīntian-wǎnshang lái-chī-wǎnfàn. Érqiě-gàosu-ta jīntian-wǎnshang hái-qǐngle-yíwèi-'Yīngguó-péngyou. Qǐng-'Bái-Xiānsheng wǎnshang-qīdiǎn-zhōng-yídìng-lái.

## Unit II

## Dì-qíkè

'Bái-Xiānsheng jīntian-'yòu-dào-shūdiàn-qu-le. Tā-bú-shi-qu-mǎi-shū. Tā-shi-wèn-'Máo-Xiānsheng 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-qǐng-chī-fàn shi-zài-nǎr, shi-zài-shūdiàn shi-zài-ta-'jiā-lǐtou. Yīnwei-'Gāo-Xiānsheng gěi-ta-dǎ-diàn-huà-de-shíhou ta-wàngle-wèn, suóyi-ta-lái-wèn-'Máo-Xiānsheng. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta shi-zài-jiāli. Yòu-gàosu-ta Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā zài-chéng-'wàitou yíge-xiǎo-shānshang. Nèige-shānshang yǒu-sānsuǒr-fángzi. Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā shi-zhōngjiār-nèisuǒr-fángzi. Shān-xiàtou shi-Zhōngshān-Lù, fùjìn-hái-yǒu-yíge-hú, yǒu-gōngyuán. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-tīngmíngbaile-yǐhòu jiù-zǒu-le.

## Dì-bākè

'Bái-Xiānsheng gēn-'Máo-Xiānsheng wènle-Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā-zài-nár-yǐ-hòu, ta-zǒu-le. Kěshi-ta-'yòu-xiángqilai-le. Ta-xiǎng ta-'xiān-dào-túshūguǎn-jiè-shū 'hòu-zài-dào-Gāo-jia-qu, yīnwei-ta-xiǎng-jiè-de-shū Yuǎn-Dàde-túshūguǎn-lǐtou-méi-yǒu. Zhèrde-túshūguǎn ta-yě-méi-qùguo háishi-děi-wèn-'Máo-Xiānsheng. Yòu-huídào-shūdiàn.

Máo-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta túshūguǎn-lí-shūdiàn-hén-yuǎn, lí-Gāo-jia-yě-bú-jìn. Máo-Xiānsheng-wèn-ta yào-jiè-'shénmo-shū. Tā-shuō tā-yào-jiè liáng-běn-'Yīngwén-shū. Máo-Xiānsheng-hái-wèn-ta zài-dàxué-xué-shénmo. Tā-gàosu-'Máo-Xiānsheng Zhōngguo-wénxué Yīngguo-wénxué ta-'dōu-xué.

## Dì-jiǔkè

Suírán-'Bái-Xiānsheng wènle-'Máo-Xiānsheng túshūguǎn-zài-nǎr, kěshi-ta-méi-'gàosu-Bái-Xiānsheng 'zěnmō-zǒu, wàng-'něibiār-zǒu. Bái-Xiānsheng-yòu-wèn cóng-shūdiàn-dào-túshūguǎn 'zěnmō-zǒu. Máo-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta wàng-nán-zǒu, zài-wàng-xī-guǎi, guò-báge-lù-kǒur jiù-shi-túshūguǎn. Túshūguǎnde-fángzi-hěn-dà, hěn-róngyì-kànjian.

Bái-Xiānsheng-yòu-wèn zuò-'shénmo-chē. Yīnwei-shūdiàn-fùjìn yǒu-gōnggòng-qìchē-zhàn keyi-zuò-gōnggòng-qìchē-qu. Máo-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta zuò-gōnggòng-qìchē, túshūguǎn-fùjìn yǒu-gōnggòng-qìchē-zhàn, xià-chē jiù-shi-túshūguǎn.

Bái-Xiānsheng yòu-wèn-'Máo-Xiānsheng dào - Gāo - jia-qu-yǒu-gōnggòng-qìchē-ma. Máo-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta cóng - tú shū guǎn - fùjìn - de - chē-zhàn shàng-chē dào-Zhōngshān-Lù, zài-gōngyuán-mén-kǒu-xià-chē, shàng-yíge-xiǎo-shān jiù-dào-le.

### Dì-shíkè

'Bái-Xiānsheng wénwánle-Máo-Xiānsheng-yǐhòu, tā-jiù-zài-shūdiàn-fùjìn nèige-gōnggòng-qìchē-zhàn shàng-le-chē yào-dào-túshūguǎn-qù-le. Nèige-gōnggòng-qìchēshangde-màipiàoyuán hěn-kèqì. Tā - ràng - Bái - Xiānsheng - mǎi-piào, kěshi-'Bái-Xiānsheng bù-zhīdào-duōshao-qián, jiù-wèn-ta. Tā-jiù-gēn-'Bái-Xiānsheng shuōqì-huà-lai-le.

Tā-yí-kàn-'Bái-Xiānsheng shì-yíge-'wàiguó-rén kěshi-shuō-nènmo-hǎo-de-Zhōngguó-huà, ta-shuō-'Bái-Xiānshengde-Zhōngguó-huà shuōde-'zhēn-hǎo. Hái-wèn-'Bái-Xiānsheng shì-'něiguó-rén, zuò-shì-háishi-niàn-shǔ. Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta zài-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué-niàn-shǔ. Tā-yòu-wèn-'Bái-Xiānsheng Yuǎn-Dàde-wàiguó-xuésheng 'duō-bu-duō. Ta-wèn-'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-Měiguó yǒu-méi-yǒu-'wàiguó-xuésheng. Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta Měiguode-dàxué-lǐ-tou wàiguó-xuésheng-'gèng-duō.

Bái-Xiānsheng-wèn-màipiàoyuán dào-túshūguǎn děi-'duōshao-shíhou. Mài-piàoyuán-gàosu-'Bái-Xiānsheng chàbuduō-'èrshífēn-zhōng jiù-dào-le. Tā-wèn-Bái-Xiānsheng jiā-zài-nǎr. Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta jiā-zài-Měiguó, jiā-lǐ-tou yǒu-fùqīn-mǔqīn dìdì-mèimei. Mài-piàoyuán yòu-wèn-Bái-Xiānsheng fùqīn-zuò-'shénmo-shì. Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta fùqīn-mǔqīn - dōu - shì - jiàoyuán.

Bái-Xiānsheng-yě-wèn-tā jiā-lǐtou-dōu-yǒu-'shénmo-rén. Mài-piàoyuán-shuō yǒu-tàitai hái-yǒu-liǎngge-háizi. Nán-háizi jiào-Láohu. Bái-Xiānsheng-juéde zhèige-míngzi-hěn-qíguài, kěshi-ta-méi-'shuō-shénmo. Nǚ-háizi jiào-Xiǎomèi. Mài-piàoyuán gàosu-'Bái-Xiānsheng nǚ-háizi 'yísuì - jiù - huì-zǒu-lù. Ta-zìjǐ-juéde yísuìde-háizi-huì-zǒu-lù-hěn-qíguài, kěshi-yísuìde-háizi-huì-zǒu-lù 'yìdiár-yě-bù-qíguài.

### Dì-shíyīkè

'Bái-Xiānsheng xiàle-gōnggòng-qìchē-yǐhòu jiù-dào-túshūguǎn-lái-le. Gāng-yí-jìnqu tā-tīngjian-yǒu-rén gēn-ta-shuō-huà. Yí-kàn jiù-shì-qián-jǐ-ge-yuè zài-péngyou-nèr-hē-chá-yùjian-de nèiwèi-'Qián-Xiānsheng. Qián-



Xiānsheng-wèn-ta shì-bu-shi-dào-túshūguǎn-lái-kàn-shū. Tā-gàosu-'Qián-Xiānsheng ta-'bú-kàn-shū, ta-xiǎng-'jiè-shū. Qián-Xiānsheng-wèn-ta dá-'nǎr-lái, shì-bu-shi-zuò-'chē-lái-de. Tā-gàosu-'Qián-Xiānsheng zuò-gōng-gòng-qìchē-lái-de. Qián-Xiānsheng-hái-wèn-ta shì-bu-shi-'cháng-lái-túshū-guǎn. Ta-gàosu-'Qián-Xiānsheng zhè-shi-dì-'yí-cì. 'Qián-Xiānsheng suí-rán-'qián-jǐge-yuè 'jiànguo-Bái-Xiānsheng, kěshi-méi-jīhui gēn-ta-'duō-tántan. Jīntian-zài-túshūguǎn-yùjian-le, jiù-wèn-'Bái-Xiānsheng 'shénmo-shíhou-lái Zhōngguo-de, zuò-'chuán-lái-de háishi-zuò-'fēijī-lái-de. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-dōu-gàosu-ta-le. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yě-wèn-Qián-Xiānsheng 'shénmo-shíhou-líkai-túshūguǎn. Qián-Xiānsheng-shuō ta-yǒu-yídiǎr-shì, ta-'jiù-yào-zǒu. Tā-hái-gàosu-'Bái-Xiānsheng zhèrde-shū-hěn-duō, keyi-suíbiàn-jiè. Tā-hái-shuō yùjian-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-le. Gāo-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta jīntian-wǎnshang qīng-Bái-Xiānsheng-chī-fàn. Qián-Xiānsheng-shuō rúguo-wǎnshang Bái-Xiānsheng-yǒu-gōngfu, yé-qīng-dào-ta-jiā-lǐtou 'zuòyìzuò, yīnwei-ta-jiā lí-Gāo-jia hěn-jìn.

Unit III

Dì-shísānkè

'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-túshūguǎn jièhǎo-le-shū-yǐhòu, yòu-dào-gōnggòng-qìchē-zhàn-qu-děng-chē. Gāng-yí-shàng-qìchē kànjian-Gāo-Xiáojie zài-chēshang-ne. Tā-jiù-gēn-Gāo-Xiáojie-shuō-huà.

Gāo-Xiáojie-gàosu-ta jīntian-xuéxiào-yǒu-shìqing, suóyì-huì-jiā wǎn-le-yídiǎr. Gāo-Xiáojie-wèn-ta shì-bu-shi-dào-tāmen-jiā-lǐtou-qu. Tā-gàosu-Gāo-Xiáojie-shì. 'Bái-Xiānsheng hái-wèn-'Gāo-Xiáojie zài-'nǎr-niàn-shū. Gāo-Xiáojie-gàosu-ta zài-'zhōngxue-niàn-shū, jīnnian-jiù-bìyè-le. Gāo-Xiáojie-wèn-ta zài-dàxué-'jǐniánjí. Tā-gàosu-Gāo-Xiáojie tā-zài-'sānnián-jí. Tāmen-liǎngge-rén-shuōhǎo-le kǎoshì-yǐhòu 'Bái-Xiānsheng qīng-'Gāo-Xiáojie kàn-diànyīng. Gāo-Xiáojie-zài-chēshang gàosu-'Bái-Xiānsheng ta-fùqin-jīntian-wǎnshang hái-qīngle-yíwèi-'Yīngguo-péngyou. Yīnwei-'Gāo-Xiānsheng méi-gàosu-'Bái-Xiānsheng shì-nán-rén-shi-nǚ-rén, Gāo-Xiáojie-gàosu-ta shi-yíwèi-xiānsheng. Tāmen-liǎngge-rén zai-chēshang-tánde-hěnggāoxìng.

Dì-shísìkè

'Bái-Xiānsheng yòu-wèn-'Gāo-Xiáojie xuéxiào-lǐtou yǒu-'duōshao-xué-



sheng. Tóngshí-'Gāo-Xiáojie yě-wèn-'Bái-Xiānsheng Yuǎn-Dà-yǒu-duōshao-xuésheng. Tā-hái-wèn-Gāo-Xiáojie jiānglái-bìyè-yǐhòu xué-shénmo? Gāo-Xiáojie-kǒngpà zìjǐ-kǎobushàng-dàxué. Bái-Xiānsheng-xīwang-Gāo-Xiáojie 'yě-xué-wénxué, kěshi-Gāo-Xiáojie-shuō rúguó-kǎobushàng-dàxué jiù-xué-huàr, yīnwei-ta-duì-huà-huàr hén-yǒu-xìngqu.

Tāmen-liǎngge-rén hái-tándào-xué-yǔyán-de-wèntí, yīnwei-Bái-Xiānsheng shì-xué-Zhōngguo-yǔyán gēn-wénxué-de. Gāo-Xiáojie-jiù-wèn-ta xué-yǔyán 'zěnmoxué. Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta xué-yǔyán-de-'fāngfǎ, érqǐe-gàosu-ta xué-yǔyánxué shì-yòng-kēxuéde-fázi yánjiu-yǔyán. Tāmen-yòu-shuōdao xiě-'zì-yīfāngmiàn. 'Bái-Xiānsheng néng-yòng-máobí-xiě-zì. Gāo-Xiáojie-gàosu-ta xiànzài-'Zhōngguo-rén dōu-'bú-zěnmoxuē-máobí-xiě-zì-le.

'Gāo-Xiānsheng zì-xiěde-hén-hǎo, kěshi-ta-měitiān 'háishi-jìxude-xiě-zì. Tā-xiěde-zì cháng-sònggei-péngyou. Yé-yóu-hěn-duō-rén gēn-ta-yàota-xiěde-zì. Gāo-Xiānsheng-péngyou-'jiā-lǐtou, chàbuduō-dōu-guàzhe Gāo-Xiānsheng-xiěde-zì.

#### Dì-shíwǔkè

'Gāo-Xiáojie cháng-tīng-ta-fùqīn-shuō Bái-Xiānsheng-hěn-cōngmíng, shūniànde-bú-cuò. Tā-jīntiān-gēn-Bái-Xiānsheng zài-chēshang-tánle-hěn-duò-huà zhīdao-'Bái-Xiānsheng 'shì-hén-hǎo, suóyī-tā-wèn-'Bái-Xiānsheng niàn-'duōshao-nián Zhōngguo-shū-le. Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta yǐjīng-niànguowǔnián-le. Tā-hái-gàosu-'Gāo-Xiáojie zài-'zhōngxué-zěnmoxué, zài-'dàxué-zěnmoxué. Tā-hái-shuō xué-de-shíhou yòng-lùyìnjī tīng-lùyīn. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yòu-gàosu-'Gāo-Xiáojie xué-yǔyán shì-hén-yǒu-yìsi-de. Kāishǐ-nán, yǐhòu-jiù-bíjiǎo-róngyī-le.

Gāo-Xiáojie-wèn-ta cóng-Měiguó-zěnmoxué-lái-de. Tā-shuō shì-cóng-Niǔyue-zuò-qìchē-dào-Sānfánshì, zuò-chuán-dào-'Rìběn, yǐhòu-zuò-fēijī dào-Zhōngguo-lái-de. Gāo-Xiáojie-gēn-Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō ta-méi-zuòguo-fēijī. Fùqīn-mǔqīn-hén-xǐhuan-qù-Rìběn-wár. Huòzhě-ta-bìyè-yǐhòu gēn-ta-fùqīn-mǔqīn zuò-fēijī-dào-'Rìběn-qu. Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō huàjiā-bìdēi-dào-biéde-dìfāng qu-kàn-shānshuǐ, duì-huà-huàr hén-yǒu-bāngzhu.

#### Dì-shíliùkè

'Gāo-Xiáojie 'Bái-Xiānsheng tánde-hén-yǒu-yìsi. Zài-chēshang-yuǎnyuǎnde jiù-kànjiàn-shānshang Gāo-jia-nèisuǒ-fángzi-le. Bái-Xiānsheng-yí-kàn

Gāo-jia-zhù-de-zhèige-dìfang hén-hǎo. Yǒu-shān-yóu-shuǐ. 'Gāo-Xiáojie gào-su-'Bái-Xiānsheng ta-fùqīn-hén-xǐhuan-zhèige-dìfang, suóyī-tāmen jiù zài-zhèr-zhù-le.

Liǎngge-rén xià-chē-le, zǒuzhe-lù-tánzhe-huà, yìhuěr-jiù-dào-le-Gāo-jia-mén-kǒu-le. Gāo-Xiáojie-jiù-jiào-mén. Gāo-Tàitai-chūlai-kāi-mén. Tā-kànjian-Bái-Xiānsheng-lái-le hěn-gāoxìng. Zhèige-shíhou Gāo-Xiānsheng-yě-chūlai-le gēn-Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō-huà hái-gěi-ta-jièshao zhèiwèi-Yīngguo-rén. Yīngguo-rén shì-yíwèi-jiàoshòu, shì-Gāo-Xiānshengde yíwèi-lǎopéngyou. Tāde-Zhōngguo-xuéwen hén-hǎo, érqǐ yě-néng-shuō 'hén-hǎode-Zhōngguo-huà. Gāo-Xiānsheng-juéde jīntian-hén-yǒu-yìsi. Suírán-qíngliǎngwèi-'wàiguó-péngyou lái-chī-fàn, kěshì-'dōu-shuō-Zhōngguo-huà.

Zhèige-shíhou 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu gēn-'Bái-Xiānsheng liǎngge-rén-tánqilai-le. Wàn-Jiàoshòu-wèn-'Bái-Xiānsheng shénmo-shíhou-láide, hái-tán-yìxiē-guānyú-xuéxiào-de-wèntí. Yòu-wèn-ta shì-xué-shénmo-de. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu shì-yíwèi-wénxuéjiā. Tā-xiě-le-hěn-duō-shū. Tā-xiě-de-Zhōngguo-Wénxué-Yánjiū nèiběn-shū 'Bái-Xiānsheng yǐjīng-kànguo-le. Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō tā-xiě-de-hǎo, tā-hěn-gāoxìng. Yīnwei-'Gāo-Xiānsheng hén-xǐhuan-'Bái-Xiānsheng, tā-gào-su-'Bái-Xiānsheng Wàn-Jiàoshòude-xuéwen-hǎo, ràng-ta-yǐhòu cháng-gēn-Wàn-Jiàoshòu zài-yíkuàr-'yánjiū-yánjiū.

'Bái-Xiānsheng zhīdao-'Gāo-Xiáojie néng-huà-huàr, suóyī-ta-xiǎng-kànkàn. Kěshì-'Gāo-Xiáojie shì-yíge-nǚ-háizi, tā-bù-xiǎng-ràng-tāmen-kàn-ta-huàde-huàr, suóyī-Gāo-Xiānsheng yídìng-jiào-ta-náchulai, qǐng-tāmen-kànkàn. Tóngshí-'Gāo-Xiānsheng hái-gào-su-tāmen Gāo-Xiáojie hén-xiǎode-shíhou jiù-xǐhuan-huà-huàr. Tā-yě-méi-xué duōshao-shíhou. Huàr-lǐtou-yǒu-yìzhāng Hángzhou-shānshuǐ-huàr. Hángzhoude-shānshuǐ shì-'hén-yǒu-míngde, suóyī-huàchulai hěn-piàoliang. 'Bái-Xiānsheng hén-xǐhuan-nèizhāng-huàr.

### Dì-shíqīkè

Tāmen-zhèng-zài-kànzhe Gāo-Xiáojie-huàde nèizhāng-Hángzhou-shānshuǐ-huàr-de-shíhou, 'Gāo-Xiānsheng jiù-gào-su-'Wàn-Jiàoshòu gēn-'Bái-Xiānsheng tā-yuánlái-shì-'Hángzhou-rén, èrshíjǐsuì tā-líkai-tāde-lǎo-jīa-Hángzhou. Wàn-Jiàoshòu-shuō Hángzhou-yǒu-míng, Yīngguo-rén-dōu-zhīdao. Gāo-Xiānsheng-'gào-su-tāmen Hángzhou-yǒu-yíge-hú jiào-Xī-Hú, hěn-piàoliang. Tā-shuō-cóngqián-yǒu-rén ná-Xī-Hú-bǐ-zuò-Xī-Shī. Xī-Shī zài-

Zhōngguo-lìshǐshang-xiěde shì-zuì-piàoliangde-nǚ-rén. Suírán-'Wàn-Jiàoshòu dàoguó-Zhōngguo-hěn-duō-cì, kěshì-tā-méi-qùguó-Hángzhou. 'Bái-Xiānsheng tīng-tāmen-bǎ-Hángzhou shuōde-nènmo-hǎo, suóyì-tā-shuō jiānglái rúguó-yǒu-jīhuì tā-yě-dào-Hángzhou-qu-lǚxíng.

'Bái-Xiānsheng kànjian-Gāo-Xiáojie-huà-de-nèizhāng-Hángzhou-huàr gēn-tāmen-xiānzài-zhù-de-dìfang-chàbuduō, tā-hěn-qíguài jiù-wèn-'Gāo-Xiānsheng. Gāo-Xiānsheng-xiào-le, gàosu-ta yīnwei-tā-xǐhuan-tāde-lǎo-jia tā-kànjian-zhèige-dìfang hěn-xiàng-Hángzhou jiù-zài-zhèr mǎile-zhèisuǒr-fáng-zi-le.

'Bái-Xiānsheng tīng-rén-shuōguo Sūzhou-nǚ-rén-piàoliang tā-jiù-wèn-'Gāo-Xiānsheng 'duì-bu-duì. Wàn-Jiàoshòu-shuō-shì-zhēnde, hái-gàosu-ta Gāo-'Tàitai-shì-Sūzhou-rén, suóyì-Gāo-'Xiáojie-nènmo-piàoliang.

'Wàn-Jiàoshòu hén-xǐhuan-hē-jiǔ-huá-quán. Zhèige-shíhou tā-gēn-'Gāo-Xiānsheng huáqì-quán-lai-le. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yǐqián-méi-kànjianguo. Tā-kànle-bàntiān tā-hěn-qíguài wèi-shénmo-yíngle bù-hē-jiǔ-ne. Tā-kàn-tāmen-huále-jǐcì ta-cái-míngbai.

#### Unit IV

#### Dì-shíjiǔkè

'Gāo-Xiānsheng 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu zhèng-zài-huá-quán-de-shíhou, Gāo-Tàitai bǎ-fàn-zuòhǎo-le, ràng-tāmen-chī-fàn. Gāo-Tàitai zuòle-hěn-duōde-cài. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu shì-Gāo-Xiānshengde-lǎo-péngyou, 'Bái-Xiānsheng shì-xuésheng, suóyì-bù-yòng-zěnmò-kèqì. Tāmen-suíbiàn-zuòzhe suíbiàn-chī. Gāo-Tàitai-děi-zuò-cài, bù-néng-gēn-tāmen yíkuàr-chī-fàn. Kèren-dāngrán-déi-qǐng-Gāo-Tàitai-lái yíkuàr-chī-le.

Gāo-Tàitai-cài zuòde-zhēn-hǎo. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu gēn-'Bái-Xiānsheng tāmen-liǎngge-rén, suírán-cháng-chī-Zhōngguo-fàn, kěshì-yǒude-cài tāmen-hái-bù-zhīdao jiào-shénmo. Jī-zuòde-hén-hǎo-chī. Tāmen-wèn nèige-jī-shì-zěnmò-zuòde, jiào-shénmo-míngzi. Gāo-jia-jīntian-zuò-le wǔge-cài-yíge-tāng. Yóu-chǎo-báicài, shīzi-tóu, táng-cù-yú, chǎo-dòufu, hóng-shāo-jī, niú-ròu-tāng. Tāmen-'dōu-hén-xǐhuan-chī, érqǐ zhèi-liǎngwèi-wàiguó-péngyou yòng-kuàizi-yòngde-hén-hǎo.

Jīge-rén chīzhe-fàn tánzhe-huà, dōu-hěn-gāoxìng. 'Bái-Xiānsheng wèn-'Gāo-Xiáojie huì-zuò-'fàn-bú-huì. 'Gāo-Xiáojie dāngrán-shuō-ta-bú-huì-le, kěshì-Gāo-Tàitai-shuō tā-huì-zuò.

Dì-èrshikè

Cóng-Gāo-jia-qǐng- 'Bái-Xiānsheng chī-fàn-yǐhòu, Gāo-Xiáojie màn-mǎr-de-gēn- 'Bái-Xiānsheng tāmen-liǎngge-rén-hén-hǎo. Liǎngge-rén chàbùduō-měige-xīngqī dōu-jiàn-liǎng-sāncì. Érqǐě 'Bái-Xiānsheng cháng-gěi-Gāo-Xiáojie-dǎ-diànhuà.

Liùyuède-kǎoshì-wánle-yǐhòu, yǒu-yìtiān 'Bái-Xiānsheng gěi-Gāo-Xiáojie-dǎ-diànhuà. Gāo-Xiáojie zài-diànhuà-lǐtōu gào-su-Bái-Xiānsheng tā-zhèicì-kǎode-bú-dà-hǎo. Tā-yě-wèn- 'Bái-Xiānsheng kǎode-zěnmoyàng. 'Bái-Xiānsheng dāngrán-yé-děi-shuō zìjǐ-kǎode-'bù-zěnmoyàng-le.

Gāo-Xiáojie-yòu-shuō fùqīn-mǔqīn yào-dài-ta dào-Rìběn-qu-lǚxíng-le. Tā-fùqīn-mǔqīn-xiǎng-zài- 'Rìběn zhù-liǎngge-yuè-cái-huílai, kěshì-tā-bù-xiǎng-zhù-nènmo-jiǔ. Tā-xiǎng-gēn-fùqīn-mǔqīn-shuō zhù-'yíge-yuè-jiù-huílai. Bái-Xiānsheng-dāngrán-xīwang Gāo-Xiáojie-kuài-huílai-le.

Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō xiáng-qǐng-ta chī-fàn-kàn-diànyǐngr, wèn-tā-shénmo-shíhou-yǒu-gōngfu. Gāo-Xiáojie-shuō 'měitiān-dōu-kéyi, yīnwei-yǐjīng-fàngjià-le. Bái-Xiānsheng-xiǎng háishi-ràng- 'Gāo-Xiáojie shuō-yíge-shíhou bíjiào-hǎo, suóyi-Gāo-Xiáojie-shuō xīngqīsān. Tā-yòu-wèn-Gāo-Xiáojie xǐhuan-chī-shénmo. Gāo-Xiáojie-zhīdao Bái-Xiānsheng-yé-hén-xǐhuan chī-běifāng-fàn, tā-gào-su- 'Bái-Xiānsheng shūdiàn-fùjìn yǒu-ge-běifāng-fànguǎr, dào-nèige-fànguǎr-chī 'hǎo-bu-hǎo. 'Bái-Xiānsheng 'dāngrán-xǐhuan-qù-le.

Tāmen-yòu-yánjiū zài-nǎr-kàn-diànyǐngr. 'Gāo-Xiáojie tīng-biéde-péng-you-shuō Zhōngguo-Diànyǐngyuàn-yǎn-de-nèibù-piānzi bú-cuò, shì-yíbié-lì-shǐ-piānzi. Tāmen-shuōhǎole chīle-wǎnfàn qù-kàn-'jùdiǎn-nèi-yìchǎng. Kěshì-bìděi-xiān-qu-mǎi-piào, yīnwei-piānzi-hǎo, kàn-de-rén-tài-duō.

Dì-èrshiyīkè

Bái-Wénshān-Xiānsheng xīngqīsān-xiàowǔ-liùdiǎn-zhōng jiù-dào-Gāo-jia-qù-jiē-Gāo-Měiyīng-Xiáojie. Liǎngge-rén yíkuàr-dào-fànguǎr-qu-le. Dào-le-fànguǎr-yǐhòu huōji-guòlai wèn-tāmen-yào-chī-shénmo. 'Bái-Xiānsheng qíng-huōji bǎ-càidār-gěi-ta-nálai. Gāo-Xiáojie-gào-su-ta bú-yào-tài-duōde-cài, jiǎndān-yìdiǎr-chī, yàoburán diànyǐngr-kāi-yǎn-le, jiù-kànbujiàn gùshi-de-kāishǐ-shì-shénmo. Huōji-'gào-su-tāmen zhèige-fànguǎr-zuì-hǎode-cài yǒu-shīzi-tóu, hóng-shāo-yú, kǎo-yāzi, chǎo-xiārér. Tā-hái-shuō yóuqíshì-tāmen-zhèrde-kǎo-yāzi shì-quán-guó-dì-yī-le.

Tāmen-liǎngge-rén xiǎng-yào-liǎngge-cài-yíge-tāng. Huōji-gēn-Gāo-Xiáo-

jie-shuō, tāmende-chǎo-xiārér-hǎojíle. 'Gāo-Xiáojie jiu-yàole-ge-chǎo-xiārér. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yào-yíge-hóng-shāo-yú. Tā-yòu-wèn-'Gāo-Xiáojie yào-shénmo-tāng. Gāo-Xiáojie-shuō yào-zhū-ròu-báicài-tāng. Bái-Xiānsheng-hái-xiǎng zài-yào-yìdiǎr-jiǎozǐ. Gāo-Xiáojie-juéde liǎngge-rén liǎngge-càiyíge-tāng yídìng-gòu-chī-le. Tā-bú-ràng-'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-yào-jiǎozǐ-le. Kěshi-'Gāo-Xiáojie xiǎng-chī-fàn-yǐhòu chī-diar-tián-diǎnxīn. Tā-zhīdao-běifāng-fànguǎr chàbuduō-dōu-yǒu-xìngrér-dòufu. Yí-wèn huǒji-shuō-yǐjīng-màiwán-le.

Huǒji-bǎ-cài-nálai. Liǎngge-rén-yí-kàn zhèrde-cài zuòde-zhēn-piàoliang. Kěshi-Bái-Xiānsheng-juéde háishi-'Gāo-jiade-cài-hǎo-chī. Gāo-jiade-cài zuòde-hǎo-shi-zhēnde, yīnwei-Gāo-Tàitai tā-tiāntian-yánjiu-zuò-fàn. 'Gāo-Xiáojie gàosu-'Bái-Xiānsheng tā-mǔqīn-xiǎng-bǎ-zuò-fàn-de-jīngyan xiě-yìběn-shū-ne. Bái-Xiānsheng-juéde Zhōngguó-fàn hǎo-chī-shi-hǎo-chī, kěshi-zuòqilai-tài-máfan-le. Gāo-Xiáojie-juéde yě-bù-zěnmò-máfan.

Nèige-shíhou yǐjīng-bādiǎn-bàn-le. Tāmen-liǎngge-rén hēle-yìdiǎr-chá, ràng-huǒji-bǎ-zhàng-suàn-le, gěile-qíán yé-gěile-huǒji-yìdiǎr-xiǎofèi, jiù-zǒu-le.

#### Dì-èrshí'èrkè

Gāo-Xiānsheng, Gāo-Tàitai, Gāo-Xiáojie dào-Rìběn-lǚxíng-huílai-de-shíhou, suírán-'Bái-Xiānsheng dào-fēijīchǎng-qu-'jiē-tāmen, kěshi-méi-shuōhěn-duōde-huà. Dì-èrtiān-zǎochen 'Bái-Xiānsheng gěi-Gāo-jia-dǎ-ge-diàn-huà, shuō-xiàwǔ dào-Gāo-jia-qu-'kàn-tāmen. Gāo-Xiānsheng-hěn-gāoxìng gàosu-Gāo-Tàitai ràng-'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-tāmen-jiā-lǐtou-chī-wǎnfàn.

Bái-Xiānsheng-'lái-de-shíhou, Gāo-Xiáojie-kāi-de-mén. Yí-kànjian-'Bái-Xiānsheng jiu-gàosu-ta Gāo-Xiānsheng-děng-ta-ne. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng tīngjian-'Bái-Xiānsheng-lái-le, yě-chūlai-le. Tā-ràng-Gāo-Xiáojie bǎ-Rìběn-mǎilai-de-diǎnxīn náchulai, qǐng-Bái-Xiānsheng-chī.

'Gāo-Xiānsheng zài-Rìběn-jiu-xiǎng mǎi-yìdiǎr-dōngxī huílai-sònggei-'Bái-Xiānsheng. Tā-zài-shūdiàn-mǎi-shū kànjian-yìběn shuō-pīnyīn-gēn-Hànzì-wèntí-de-shū, tā-jiu-mǎi-le dǎsuān-huílai-jiù-sònggei-'Bái-Xiānsheng. Tā-jiànle-'Bái-Xiānsheng wèn-ta-zhèixiē-shíhou dōu-zuò-xiē-shénmo. Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta 'nár-yě-méi-qù, tiāntian-kàn-shū, kànkān-péngyou, gěi-fùqīn-mǔqīn-péngyoumen-xiě-xìn, hái-kànle-jǐcì-diànyǐngr.

Gāo-Xiānsheng-gàosu-'Bái-Xiānsheng Rìběn-jiàoshòu-Zhōngshān-Xiānsheng xiě-de-yìběn-shū-lǐtou shuō-guānyú-Hànzì gēn-pīnyīn-de-wèntí. Tā-wèn-



'Bái-Xiānsheng kāishǐ-xué-Zhōngwén shì-zěnmò-xuéde, Měiguó-xuéxiào-jiāo-Zhōngwén dōu-yòng-shénmò-fāngfǎ, jiào-Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta.

Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta měige-xuéxiào-bù-yíyàng. Kāishǐ-xuéde-shíhòu yǒude-yòng-'Hànzì-jiāo yǒude-yòng-'pīnyīn-jiāo. Gāo-Xiānsheng-juéde xué-'Zhōngwén yīnggāi-yòng-'Hànzì-jiāo, rúguǒ-yòng-pīnyīn gēn-niàn-'Yīngwén-chàbudo-le, nà-jiù-'bù-shì-xué-Zhōngwén-le.

Kěshi-'Bái-Xiānsheng-juéde yòng-pīnyīn-fázi-hǎo. Xiān-huì-shuō-le-yǐ-hòu, zài-xué-Hànzì jiù-róngyi-le. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-xiǎng 'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuōde-bù-duì. Tā-shuō xuéle-'bàntiānde-pīnyīn lián-'yíge-Zhōngguó-zì yě-bu-rènshi. Rúguǒ-niàn-Zhōngguó-shū hái-děi-zài-kāishǐ-xué-Hànzì. Bái-Xiānsheng-gēn-tā-shuō xiān-míngbai-le cér-gēn-jùzì-de-yìsi-yǐhòu, zài-xué-Hànzì-jiù-róngyi-duō-le. Bù-bì-jì-yìsi-le, zhǐ-jì-Hànzì jiù-kéyi-le.

'Gāo-Xiānsheng tīng-'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuōde yé-yǒu-yìdiǎr-duì tā-yòu-wèn Bái-Xiānsheng-kāishǐ-xué shì-zěnmò-xuéde. Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta kāishǐ-xué shì-tīng-lùyīn zìjǐ-liànxi-fāyīn. Gāo-Xiānsheng-yòu-wèn-ta xué-shuō-huà shì-zěnmò-xué. Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta xiān-xué-sìshēng zài-xué-cér, jùzì, qīngzhòngyīn-zài-nǎr yǐhòu-zài-xué-huìhuà. Tā-shuō xué-yǔyán-zuì-yào-jīnde shì-zhùyì-fāyīn. Pīnyīn-duì-fāyīn yǒu-bāngzhu. Zuì-yào-jīnde-shì sìshēng-yào-zhǔn. Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō yòng-Hànzì-xué, nǐ-bù-rènshi-de-zì (bǐfang-shuō-zhèige-tā-zì), nǐ-jiù-méi-fázi zhīdao-zěnmò-niàn. Rúguǒ-yòng-pīnyīn yí-kàn-jiù-zhīdao tāde-yīn-shì-shénmò, jiù-huì-niàn-le. Gāo-Xiānsheng-juéde Bái-Xiānsheng-shuōde yé-yǒu-yìdiǎr-duì. Tā-méi-fázi-le. Zhí-hǎo-shuō pīnyīnde-fázi hǎo-shì-hǎo, kànqilai kěshi-méi-yǒu-Hànzì-piàoliang.

### Dì-èrshisānkè

'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-Zhōngguó-niànle-yìnián-shū, xiànzài-yào-huídao-Měiguó-qu niàn-dàxué-sìniánjí. Gāo-Xiānsheng Gāo-Tàitai Gāo-Xiáojie zài-zǒude-nèi-yìtiān zǎochen-hén-zǎo jiù-dào-ta-zhù-de-dìfang-qù-le, bāngzhu-ta shòushi-dōngxì, érqǐe xīwang-gēn-ta-duō-tán-yihuě. Yǐhòu bù-zhīdào-shénmò-shíhòu cái-néng-zài-kànjian-ta.

'Bái-Xiānsheng kànjian-tāmen-hén-zǎo-jiù-lái-le, hěn-'xièxie-tāmen. Gāo-Tàitai-juéde yīnggāi-zǎo-yìdiǎr-dào-fēijīchǎng. Tāmen-zuòzhe-chē jiù-dào-fēijīchǎng-qù-le.

Gāo-Xiānsheng-tāmen dōu-hěn-xīwang Bái-Xiānsheng-'zài-huīlai. Gāo-Xiānsheng-wèn-ta huíqu-yǐhòu shì-bu-shì jìxù-xué-yǔyánxué-gēn-wénxué.

Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta hái-jìxu-xué. Tā-hái-yào-yònggōng-xué. Gāo-Xiānsheng-wèn-ta zài-Rìběn-zhù-'jǐtiān. Tā-dǎsuan-zài-nèr-zhù bú-dào-yíge-xīngqī jiù-huī-Měiguó. Tā-zài-Rìběn yào-qu-kàn-tāde-lǎoshī. Tā-zài-Měiguó-de-shíhou gēn-nèiwèi-lǎoshī dédao-bù-shǎo-de-xuéwen. Tā-gēn-Gāo-Xiānsheng-shuō hěn-xièxie-Gāo-Xiānsheng-Gāo-Tàitai tāmen-duì-ta-nènmo-hǎo. Tāmen-zhèng-zai-cāntīng zuòzhe-hē-chá-de-shíhou, 'Gāo-Xiānsheng kànjian-tāmende-péngyou Wáng-Xiānsheng-Wáng-Tàitai xià-fēiji. Gāo-Xiānsheng-Gāo-Tàitai gēn-tāmen-shuō-huà-qu-le.

Zhèr-zhí-yǒu Bái-Xiānsheng-gēn-Gāo-Xiáojie tāmen-liǎngge-rén-le. 'Bái-Xiānsheng jiù-gēn-Gāo-Xiáojie-shuō ta-zǒule-yǐhòu yǎo-hén-jiǔ-bú-jiàn-le, xīwang-Gāo-Xiáojie gěi-ta-duō-xiě-xìn. Gāo-Xiáojie-wèn-ta zǒule-yǐhòu, shì-bu-shi-'zhēnde-néng-huílai. Tā-shuō xīwang-'zhēnde-néng-huílai.

Tāmen-liǎngge-rén zhèng-shuōzhe-huà-ne, Gāo-Xiānsheng-Gāo-Tàitai huílai-le. Gāo-Xiānsheng-shuō shíhou-dào-le. 'Bái-Xiānsheng jiu-shàng-le-fēiji.



## UNIT V



## Lesson 25 INTRODUCTION TO CHINESE CHARACTERS

- I. Introductory Remarks (p. 443)
- II. Evolution of mǎ 'horse' and yú 'fish' (p. 446)
- III. Examples of Chinese Characters (p. 447)
- IV. Explanations of Chinese Characters (p. 448)
- V. Stroke Order of Chinese Characters (p. 450)
- VI. The Numbers from One to Ten (p. 451)
- VII. Styles of Writing Chinese Characters (p. 452)
- VIII. The Art of the Character-Scroll (p. 453)

### I. Introductory Remarks

The earliest specimens of Chinese writing which have come down to us consist of characters written on bones, tortoise shells, and bronze vessels which were used in connection with certain ritual practices of the Shang Dynasty (about 1500–1028 B.C.). In the 3,500 years since then the characters have been modified and formalized, but the basic principles have remained unaltered, so that the contemporary Chinese script is more closely related to the literary past than any other writing system. One of the most stimulating aspects of the study of Chinese is the feeling of continuity and of contact with the past which is provided by a knowledge of the characters.

The evolution of the Chinese script through the past three and a half millennia is a fascinating but complicated subject. Relationships between the written symbols and the spoken words of the Chinese language present even more complex problems. Perhaps as your study of Chinese progresses, you will want to pursue some of these matters further. Here, we give you only a brief introduction to the Chinese characters.

Some contemporary Chinese characters are formalized pictographs whose origins can be traced back to antiquity. Two examples of these are the characters for mǎ 'horse' and yú 'fish,' for which we give below the evolution from the Shang Dynasty to the present. Some contemporary characters are obscure in origin and others have a complex history. A few characters with varied origins are illustrated below (III, "Examples of Chinese Characters"). In Section IV, "Explanation of Chinese Characters," a few notes are provided, including the modern pronunciation.

Although the characters with a clearly pictographic origin are perhaps of greatest interest, they now form only a small part of the total. As the Chinese script developed and became more complex, various new devices were intro-

duced into it. One device was to combine two or more characters to form a new one whose meaning was related to that of the original characters. No. 18 in the "Examples of Chinese Characters" illustrates this sort of character compounding. Another device was to assign additional extended meanings to a character; this is illustrated in the "Explanations" for character No. 14 (yīn). Hardly anyone reading the characters for yīnwei 'because' would now associate yīn with a man resting on a mat.

Indeed, sometimes there is no connection at all between the original significance of a character and a meaning it has subsequently acquired. Characters were often borrowed to represent sounds rather than meanings; an analogous English example would be to write the word 'too' with the figure '2.' Borrowings like these overloaded some characters to the point where it became necessary to suggest specific areas of meaning by adding another element, called a radical; thus, character No. 16 (mén 'door' or 'gate') is taken (in neutral tone) for its phonetic value and combined with a variant form of No. 2 (rén 'man'), to form a new character (No. 17) which is pronounced mén and has a meaning connected with 'man' or 'person': it functions as the pluralizing suffix for personal pronouns, as well as a few nouns denoting persons.

All this would be complicated enough if this were the end of the story. The fact, however, is that in the past three and a half millenia, so many changes have occurred in the ways characters are pronounced and written that many of them are now inconsistent and ambiguous, and others are shrouded in mystery. The origin of No. 19 (yě 'also'), for example, is unknown; there is no indication in the symbol itself of its sound or its meaning. In the case of No. 20 (tā 'he'), although the left-hand part (a variant of rén 'man') tells us that the character probably has something to do with human beings, the right-hand part—a character which when used independently means 'also' and is pronounced yě—not only fails to identify a meaning more specifically but adds an element of confusion regarding pronunciation.

As a result of these factors, although it is a stimulating and pleasurable experience to learn some of the Chinese characters, learning many others involves a great deal of hard work.

One aspect of writing Chinese characters is learning the order in which the strokes are written. The general rule is: top before bottom, left before right, and inside before outside. There are so many exceptions to this, however, that we have provided a table entitled "Stroke Order of Chinese Characters" (Section V below) to show the sequence of strokes for each of the characters discussed in Section III, as well as for the numbers from one to ten.

If one does not write the strokes in the proper sequence, the characters will simply not look right. Pleasing appearance of characters is very important to the Chinese, who have elevated calligraphy to the rank of a fine art. Some Chinese, like Mr. Gao, practice calligraphy the way a musician practices his music. (This applies, of course, only to characters written with a brush; those written with a pencil or fountain pen, as in ordinary usage, lack altogether the aesthetic appeal of characters done with a Chinese writing brush.)

There are several styles of writing Chinese characters. In the regular style, each character is written deliberately and each stroke is made distinctly. In another style, the Running Hand, some of the strokes are run together, but the relationship of these characters to the regular forms is usually fairly clear. A still more cursive style, sometimes called Grass Writing or Grass Characters, departs widely from the original. It is in this latter form that Chinese writing has been most highly developed into an art in

which flow of line, relative thickness of strokes, and other elements give scope for the diverse talents of Chinese calligraphists.

Handwritten characters, in whatever style, differ in appearance from printed characters. There are also several styles of the latter, including some which are analogous to our italic, boldface, and even the distorted forms used in advertisements.

The various styles of writing Chinese, together with one printed version, are illustrated in this and the next lesson. In Lesson 26 (which repeats the contents of Lesson 1, so that you can study in characters the same material you learned the first time in transcription), the Dialogue is shown in a printed version and the rest in handwritten form. In the present lesson, the table "Styles of Writing Chinese Characters" (Section VII below) presents a group of characters each written in various styles: the regular form (written first with a fountain pen and again with a brush), the Running Hand, and the Grass Characters. The latter style also appears in "The Art of the Character-Scroll" (Section VIII below).\*

---

\* The brush-written characters in "Styles of Chinese Writing" below were done by Dr. John C. H. Wu, who—besides being a noted jurist—is also a poet and a calligraphist. Dr. Wu also contributed the character-scroll to illustrate this distinctively Chinese art form. The remaining characters in this lesson and the following one were written by Mrs. Teng Chia-ye. A former student of Professor Tung Tso-pin, one of China's leading authorities on the early script, Mrs. Teng also contributed to the analysis of the characters presented here.

II. Evolution of mǎ 'horse' and yú 'fish'

mǎ



yú



Shang Dynasty (about 1500-1028 B.C.). Earliest known form, found on bronze vessels and oracle bones.

About 200 B.C. "Small Seal" characters developed in the Ch'in Dynasty (221-206 B.C.).

About 100 B.C. A scriptal script developed as a simplification of the "Small Seal" and other complex forms.

About 100 A.D. "Model Script," a standardized form which replaced the previous variety of styles and has continued in use to the present.

III. Examples of Chinese Characters

(The first form shown is the modern form; the second is the earliest known form.)

- |       |   |       |   |
|-------|---|-------|---|
| 1. 馬  | 𠩺 | 11. 車 | 車 |
| 2. 魚  | 𩺰 | 12. 上 | 二 |
| 3. 人  | 亼 | 13. 下 | 冫 |
| 4. 大  | 大 | 14. 因 | 囙 |
| 5. 天  | 𠂇 | 15. 黑 | 𩚑 |
| 6. 水  | 𠂔 | 16. 門 | 門 |
| 7. 山  | 山 | 17. 們 | 們 |
| 8. 日  | 日 | 18. 明 | 明 |
| 9. 月  | 月 | 19. 也 | 也 |
| 10. 中 | 中 | 20. 他 | 他 |



## IV. Explanations of Chinese Characters

1. Mǎ 'horse.' Pictograph showing an eye, body and four legs, and a tail.
2. Yú 'fish.' Pictograph showing scales and flippers.
3. Rén 'man.' This is a sort of stick drawing of a man, showing only the two legs and a simple line for the rest of the body.
4. Dà 'big.' Drawing of a man with arms.
5. Tiān 'heaven; deity.' Drawing of a deity in the form of a man. From this comes the meaning 'heaven,' and from the latter the meaning of 'day.'
6. Shuǐ 'water.' Pictograph of flowing water.
7. Shān 'mountain.' Drawing of mountain peaks.
8. Rì 'sun.' Pictograph of the sun. The character is used to represent the first syllable of Rìběn 'Japan.'
9. Yuè 'moon' or 'month.' Early Chinese chronology was based on the lunar calendar. The solar calendar used in the West was officially adopted after the establishment of the Chinese Republic in 1911.
10. Zhōng 'middle.' Picture of a target being pierced by an arrow.
11. Chē 'cart, vehicle.' Bird's-eye view showing two wheels, the axle, and the body.
12. Shàng 'above.' A somewhat more abstract pictograph showing the earth as a straight line and a dot or stroke above it.
13. Xià 'below.' Based on the same principle as No. 12.
14. Yīn. Pictograph of a man lying sprawled on a square mat. The character had an original meaning of 'rest upon.' From this came the extended meanings 'rely on; based on, owing to, because of.' The character is used to represent the first syllable of yīnwei 'because.'
15. Hēi 'black.' Pictograph of a man with face and body covered with spots, perhaps black war paint.
16. Mén 'door, gate.' Pictograph reminiscent of the doors in old-style saloons of America's West.
17. Mén. Pluralizing suffix for pronouns. The right-hand part, mén 'gate,' is used here for its phonetic value. The left-hand part, a variant form of rén 'man,' indicates that the character has to do with human beings.
18. Míng 'bright.' Compounded from the pictographs for rì 'sun' and yuè 'moon' to represent the somewhat more abstract idea of 'bright.' As in

the corresponding English word, míng has acquired a figurative meaning in addition to its literal one. It is used to represent the first syllable of míngbai 'understand, be clear about' and the second syllable of cōng-míng 'bright, clever.'

19. Yě 'also.' Origin unknown.

20. Tā 'he, she.' Character compounded from rén on the left and yě on the right. The pronunciation tā is related to neither of the components.



VI. The Numbers from One to Ten

	1	2	3	4	5
1.	一	一			
2.	二	二	二		
3.	三	三	三		
4.	四	四	四	四	四
5.	五	五	五	五	
6.	六	六	六	六	
7.	七	七	七		
8.	八	八	八		
9.	九	九	九		
10.	十	十	十		

## VII. Styles of Writing Chinese Characters

Columns 1 and 5. Regular characters written with a fountain pen.

Columns 2 and 6. Regular characters written with a brush.

Columns 3 and 7. Running Hand characters written with a brush.

Columns 4 and 8. Grass characters written with a brush.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
馬	馬	馬	馬	車	車	車	車
魚	魚	魚	魚	上	上	上	上
人	人	人	人	下	下	下	下
大	大	大	大	因	因	因	因
天	天	天	天	黑	黑	黑	黑
水	水	水	水	門	門	門	門
山	山	山	山	們	們	們	們
日	日	日	日	明	明	明	明
月	月	月	月	也	也	也	也
中	中	中	中	他	他	他	他

VIII. The Art of the Character-Scroll

The following example of Grass Characters illustrates how they might appear on a scroll hung on a wall for decorative purposes.

長不惟君子為善百  
祥集聖人漢明  
樹及時結古如實  
德報先生平

四明黃德書



## Lesson 26 LESSON 1 IN CHARACTER FORM

### VOCABULARY

#### I. Transcription

The following transcriptions represent the sounds of the characters as they occur in actual usage in Lesson 1. Those in parentheses show their sounds as spoken in isolation, when this is different.

1. a	7. jiàn	13. nín	19. xiáo (xiǎo)
2. bái	8. jie (jiě)	14. sheng (shēng)	20. xiè, xie
3. dōu	9. ma	15. tā	21. yě
4. gāo	10. men	16. tài	22. zài
5. hǎo	11. ne	17. wǒ	
6. hěn	12. nǐ	18. xiān	

#### II. Stroke Order

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
1. 啊	ㄚ	ㄛ	ㄜ	ㄝ	ㄞ	ㄟ	ㄠ	ㄡ	ㄢ	ㄣ	ㄤ	ㄥ
2. 白	丿	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏
3. 都	一	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏
4. 高	丶	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏
5. 好	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏
6. 很	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏
7. 見	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏
8. 姐	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏	㇏
9. 嗎	ㄚ	ㄛ	ㄜ	ㄝ	ㄞ	ㄟ	ㄠ	ㄡ	ㄢ	ㄣ	ㄤ	ㄥ



	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
10. 們	ㄇˊ	ㄣˊ	ㄣˊ	ㄣˊ	ㄣˊ	ㄣˊ	ㄣˊ	們	們	們		
11. 哪	ㄋㄚˇ	ㄛ	ㄛ	ㄛ	ㄛ	哪	哪	哪	哪			
12. 你	ㄋㄧˇ	ㄣˊ	ㄣˊ	你	你	你						
13. 您	ㄋㄧㄣˊ	ㄣˊ	ㄣˊ	你	你	你	你	您	您	您		
14. 生	ㄕㄨㄥ	ㄣˊ	ㄣˊ	生	生							
15. 他	ㄊㄚˊ	ㄣˊ	ㄣˊ	他	他							
16. 太	ㄊㄞˋ	ㄊㄞˋ	太	太								
17. 我	ㄉㄨˇ	ㄣˊ	我	我	我	我						
18. 先	ㄒㄧㄢ	ㄣˊ	ㄣˊ	先	先							
19. 小	ㄒㄧㄠˇ	ㄒㄧㄠˇ	小									
20. 謝	ㄒㄧㄝˋ	ㄒㄧㄝˋ	ㄒㄧㄝˋ	ㄒㄧㄝˋ	ㄒㄧㄝˋ	ㄒㄧㄝˋ	ㄒㄧㄝˋ	謝	謝	謝	謝	謝
	ㄒㄧㄝˋ	ㄒㄧㄝˋ	謝	謝	謝							
21. 也	ㄧㄝˇ	ㄧㄝˇ	也									
22. 再	ㄗㄞˋ	ㄗㄞˋ	再	再	再	再						

DIALOGUE

白：高先生，您好啊？  
高：我很好，你呢？  
白：好，謝謝您。高太太，高小姐也好嗎？  
高：他們都好，謝謝。  
白：再見，高先生。  
高：再見，再見。

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- 你  
好  
1. 你好。

- 您  
2. 您好。

- 你  
你們  
3. 你們好。

- 好啊?  
4. 你好啊?

- 好嗎?  
5. 你好嗎?

- 白  
先生  
白先生  
6. 白先生, 您好嗎?

- 高  
高先生  
7. 高先生, 您好嗎?

- 小姐  
高小姐  
8. 高小姐, 您好嗎?

- 太太  
高太太  
9. 高太太, 您好嗎?

- 謝謝  
10. 謝謝你。

- 我  
我們  
11. 我們謝謝你。

- 他  
他們  
12. 他們謝謝你。

- 很  
很好  
13. 我很好。

- 也  
也很好  
14. 他也很好。

- 都  
都高  
15. 他們都高嗎?

- 我好  
你哪  
16. 我好, 你哪?

- 再見  
17. 再見高太太。

PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 1.1.

- |        |               |
|--------|---------------|
| 1. 好   | 6. 也很高        |
| 2. 很好  | 7. 他們都好       |
| 3. 也好  | 8. 他們都很高      |
| 4. 我好  | 9. 高小姐也好      |
| 5. 我很好 | 10. 白先生白太太都很高 |

Pattern 1.2.

1. 我謝謝他
2. 他謝謝我
3. 他謝謝你
4. 我也謝謝他
5. 他們都謝謝你

Pattern 1.3.

1. 你好嗎?
2. 他們都高嗎?
3. 白先生也好嗎?
4. 白太太白小姐都好嗎?
5. 你們都好嗎?

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I				II			
你	好	...	白	先生	...	好	...
您		啊	高	太太	你		啊
你們		嗎		小姐	您		嗎
III							
	白	先生	謝謝	我	...		
	高	太太		你	們		
		小姐		他			
IV							
	白	先生	也	好	...		
	高	太太	很	高	嗎		
		小姐					

## BOY MEETS GIRL

白 高 小姐你好？  
 高 好 您好嗎？  
 白 很好 高先生 高太太 都好嗎？  
 高 都好 謝謝您、  
 白 再見、再見、  
 高 再見、白先生。

## APPENDIXES AND INDEXES



# COMPARATIVE TRANSCRIPTION TABLE

Pinyin—Yale—Wade-Giles

<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>	<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>
a	a	a	ceng	tseng	ts'eng
ai	ai	ai	cha	cha	ch'a
an	an	an	chai	chai	ch'ai
ang	ang	ang	chan	chan	ch'an
ao	au	ao	chang	chang	ch'ang
			chao	chau	ch'ao
ba	ba	pa	che	che	ch'e
bai	bai	pai	chen	chen	ch'en
ban	ban	pan	cheng	cheng	ch'eng
bang	bang	pang	chi	chr	ch'ih
bao	bau	pao	chong	chung	ch'ung
bei	bei	pei	chou	chou	ch'ou
ben	ben	pen	chu	chu	ch'u
beng	beng	peng	chuai	chwai	ch'uai
bi	bi	pi	chuan	chwan	ch'uan
bian	byan	pian	chuang	chwang	ch'uang
biao	byau	piao	chui	chwei	ch'ui
bie	bye	pieh	chun	chwun	ch'un
bin	bin	pin	chuo	chwo	ch'o
bing	bing	ping	ci	tsz	tz'u
bo	bwo	po	cong	tsung	ts'ung
bou	bou	pou	cou	tsou	ts'ou
bu	bu	pu	cu	tsu	ts'u
			cuan	tswan	ts'uan
ca	tsa	ts'a	cui	tswei	ts'ui
cai	tsai	ts'ai	cun	tswun	ts'un
can	tsan	ts'an	cuo	tswo	ts'o
cang	tsang	ts'ang			
cao	tsao	ts'ao	da	da	ta
ce	tse	ts'e	dai	dai	tai
cen	tsen	ts'en	dan	dan	tan



<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>
dang	dang	tang
dao	dau	tao
de	de	te
dei	dei	tei
deng	deng	teng
di	di	ti
dian	dyan	tien
diao	dyau	tiao
die	dye	tieh
ding	ding	ting
diu	dyou	tiu
dong	dung	tung
dou	dou	tou
du	du	tu
duan	dwan	tuan
dui	dwei	tui
dun	dwun	tun
duo	dwo	to
e	e	e, o
ei	ei	ei
en	en	en
eng	eng	eng
er	er	erh
fa	fa	fa
fan	fan	fan
fang	fang	fang
fei	fei	fei
fen	fen	fen
feng	feng	feng
fo	fwo	fo
fou	fou	fou
fu	fu	fu
ga	ga	ka

<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>
gai	gai	kai
gan	gàn	kan
gang	gang	kang
gao	gau	kao
ge	ge	ke, ko
gei	gei	kei
gen	gen	ken
geng	geng	keng
gong	gung	kung
gou	gou	kou
gu	gu	ku
gua	gwa	kua
guai	gwai	kuai
guan	gwan	kuan
guang	gwang	kuang
gui	gwei	kuei
gun	gwun	kun
guo	gwo	kuo
ha	ha	ha
hai	hai	hai
han	han	han
hang	hang	hang
hao	hau	hao
he	he	he, ho
hei	hei	hei
hen	hen	hen
heng	heng	heng
hong	hung	hung
hou	hou	hou
hu	hu	hu
hua	hwa	hua
huai	hwai	huai
huan	hwan	huan
huang	hwang	huang
hui	hwei	hui

<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>	<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>
hun	hwun	hun	la	la	la
huo	hwo	huo	lai	lai	lai
			lan	lan	lan
ji	ji	chi	lang	lang	lang
jia	jya	chia	lao	lau	lao
jian	jyan	chien	le	le	le
jiang	jyang	chiang	lei	lei	lei
jiao	jyau	chiao	leng	leng	leng
jie	jye	chieh	li	li	li
jin	jin	chin	lia	lya	lia
jing	jing	ching	lian	lyan	lien
jiong	jyong	chiung	liang	lyang	liang
jiu	jyou	chiu	liao	lyau	liao
ju	jyu	chü	lie	lye	lieh
juan	jywan	chüan	lin	lin	lin
jue	jywe	chüeh	ling	ling	ling
jun	jyun	chün	liu	lyou	liu
			long	lung	lung
ka	ka	k'a	lou	lou	lou
kai	kai	k'ai	lu	lu	lu
kan	kan	k'an	luan	lwan	luan
kang	kang	k'ang	lun	lwun	lun
kao	kau	k'ao	luo	lwo	lo
ke	ke	k'e, k'o	lǔ	lyu	lǔ
ken	ken	k'en	lüe	lywe	lüeh
keng	keng	k'eng			
kong	kung	k'ung	ma	ma	ma
kou	kou	k'ou	mai	mai	mai
ku	ku	k'u	man	man	man
kua	kwa	k'ua	mang	mang	mang
kuai	kwai	k'uai	mao	mau	mao
kuan	kwan	k'uau	mei	mei	mei
kuang	kwang	k'uang	men	men	men
kui	kwei	k'uei	meng	meng	meng
kun	kwen	k'un	mi	mi	mi
kuo	kwo	k'uo	mian	myan	mien

<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>
miao	myau	miao
mie	mye	mieh
min	min	min
ming	ming	ming
miu	myou	miu
mo	mwo	mo
mou	mou	mou
mu	mu	mu
na	na	na
nai	nai	nai
nan	nan	nan
nang	nang	nang
nao	nau	nao
ne	ne	ne
nei	nei	nei
nen	nen	nen
neng	neng	neng
nong	nung	nung
nou	nou	nou
ni	ni	ni
nian	nyan	nien
niang	nyang	niang
niao	nyau	niao
nie	nye	nieh
nin	nin	nin
ning	ning	ning
niu	nyou	niu
nu	nu	nu
nuan	nwan	nuan
nuo	nwo	no
nü	nyu	nü
nüe	nywe	nüeh
pa	pa	p'a
pai	pai	p'ai

<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>
pan	pan	p'an
pang	pang	p'ang
pao	pau	p'ao
pei	pei	p'ei
pen	pen	p'en
peng	peng	p'eng
po	pwo	p'o
pou	pou	p'ou
pi	pi	p'i
pian	pyan	p'ien
piao	pyau	p'iao
pie	pye	p'ieh
pin	pin	p'in
ping	ping	p'ing
pu	pu	p'u
qi	chi	ch'i
qia	chya	ch'ia
qian	chyan	ch'ien
qiang	chyang	ch'iang
qiao	chyau	ch'iao
qie	chye	ch'ieh
qin	chin	ch'in
qing	ching	ch'ing
qiong	chyung	ch'iung
qiu	chyou	ch'iu
qu	chyu	ch'ü
quan	chywan	ch'üan
que	chywe	ch'üeh
qun	chyun	ch'ün
ran	ran	jan
rang	rang	jang
rao	rau	jao
re	re	je
ren	ren	jen

<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>	<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>
reng	reng	jeng	shuo	shwo	shuo
ri	r	jih	si	sz	szu
rong	rung	jung	song	sung	sung
rou	rou	jou	sou	sou	sou
ru	ru	ju	su	su	su
ruan	rwan	juan	suan	swan	suan
rui	rwei	jui	sui	swei	sui
run	rwen	jun	sun	swun	sun
ruo	rwo	jo	suo	swo	so
sa	sa	sa	ta	ta	t'a
sai	sai	sai	tai	tai	t'ai
san	san	san	tan	tan	t'an
sang	sang	sang	tang	tang	t'ang
sao	sau	sao	tao	tau	t'ao
se	se	se	te	te	t'e
sen	sen	sen	teng	teng	t'eng
seng	seng	seng	ti	ti	t'i
sha	sha	sha	tian	tyan	t'ien
shai	shai	shai	tiao	tyau	t'iao
shan	shan	shan	tie	tye	t'ieh
shang	shang	shang	ting	ting	t'ing
shao	shau	shao	tong	tung	t'ung
she	she	she	tou	tou	t'ou
shei	shei	shei	tu	tu	t'u
shen	shen	shen	tuan	twan	t'uan
sheng	sheng	sheng	tui	twei	t'ui
shi	shr	shih	tun	twun	t'un
shou	shou	shou	tuo	two	t'o
shu	shu	shu			
shua	shwa	shua	wa	wa	wa
shuai	shwai	shuai	wai	wai	wai
shuan	shwan	shuan	wan	wan	wan
shuang	shwang	shuang	wang	wang	wang
shui	shwei	shui	wei	wei	wei
shun	shwen	shun	wen	wen	wen

<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>	<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>
weng	weng	weng	zan	dzan	tsan
wo	wo	wo	zang	dzang	tsang
wu	wu	wu	zao	dzau	tsao
			ze	dze	tse
xi	syi	hsi	zei	dzei	tsei
xia	sya	hsia	zen	dzen	tsen
xian	syau	hsien	zeng	dzeng	tseng
xiang	syang	hsiang	zha	ja	cha
xiao	syau	hsiao	zhai	jai	chai
xie	syé	hsieh	zhan	jan	chan
xin	syin	hsin	zhang	jang	chang
xing	sying	hsing	zhao	jau	chao
xiong	syung	hsiung	zhe	je	che
xiu	syou	hsiu	zhei	jei	chei
xu	syu	hsü	zhen	jen	chen
xuan	sywan	hsüan	zheng	jeng	cheng
xue	sywe	hsüeh	zhi	jr	chih
xun	syun	hsün	zhong	jung	chung
			zhou	jou	chou
ya	ya	ya	zhu	ju	chu
yan	yan	yen	zhua	jwa	chua
yang	yang	yang	zhuai	jwai	chuai
yao	yau	yao	zhuan	jwan	chuan
ye	ye	yeh	zhuang	jwang	chuang
yi	yi	i	zhui	jwei	chui
yin	yin	yin	zhun	jwun	chun
ying	ying	ying	zhuo	jwo	cho
yong	yung	yung	zi	dz	tzu
you	you	yu	zong	dzung	tsung
yu	yu	yü	zou	dzou	tsou
yuan	ywan	yüan	zu	dzu	tsu
yue	ywe	yüeh	zuan	dzwan	tsuan
yun	yun	yün	zui	dzwei	tsui
			zun	dzwen	tsun
za	dza	tsa	zuo	dzwo	tso
zai	dzai	tsai			

## SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

Some 500 additional vocabulary items are provided here for those who wish to acquire a greater stock of words concurrently with learning the basic patterns of the language. The items fit into the grammatical patterns studied in each lesson. Many can also be used in ways not covered by the patterns, but it is not advisable to spend too much effort studying these expanded usages, as it would conflict with the emphasis this book places on rapid mastery of the basic patterns of Chinese.

For those who wish to limit the classroom language to Chinese as soon as possible, a list of useful classroom phrases is given first. (Some of these also occur elsewhere in the book but are included here for ease in reference.)

### Classroom Phrases

Zǎo. Good morning.

Qíng-nǐmen-ānjing. Please be quiet.

Xiànzài-shàng-kè-le. Class has begun.

Wǒmen-xià-kè-le. Class is over.

Zuòxia. Sit down.

Zhànqilai. Stand up.

Zhànqilai-shuō. Stand up and recite.

Jú-shǒu. Raise your hand.

Wǒ-shuō, nǐmen-tīng. Listen to what I say.

Nǐ-tīng wǒ-shuō. Listen to me.

Wǒ-shuō, nǐmen-xiě. Write down what I say.

Gēnzhe-wǒ-shuō. Repeat after me.

Zài-shuō. Repeat.

Zài-shuō-yíbiàn. Repeat once.

Ní-dǒng-ma? Do you understand?

Wó-dǒng. I understand.

Wǒ-bù-dǒng. I don't understand.

Nǐ-dōu-dǒng-ma? Do you understand everything?

Xiānsheng, wǒ-bù-dǒng. Teacher, I don't understand.

Qǐng-nín zài-shuō-yíbiàn. Please say it again.

Qǐng-wèn... May I ask...

Zhèige-zì shì-dì-jǐshēng? What is the tone of this word?

Zhèige Zhōngguó-huà jiào-shénmo? What's this called in Chinese?

Jīntiān niàn-dì-jǐkè? What lesson are we studying today?

Dǎkai-shū. Open your books.

Bǎ-shū héqilai. Close your books.

Kàn-dì-shíyè. Look at page 10.

Nǐ-'tīngyitīng. (You) listen.

Nǐ-'niànyiniàn. (You) read.

Nǐ-'xiěyixiě. (You) write.

Wǒ-shuōde-huà, nǐmen-zhùyì. Pay attention to what I say.

Wǒ-shuō-yíjù, nǐmen-gēnzhe-shuō-yíjù. I'll say a sentence, and you repeat it after me.

Zhùyì-sìshēng. Pay attention to the four tones.

Jìzhù. Fix in mind.

Jìzhù-le-ma? Have you got it firmly in mind?

Zài-hēibǎnshang-xiě. Write it on the blackboard.

Wǒmen-dàjiā yíkuàr-shuō. Let's say it all together.

Dàjiā 'yíkuàr-shuō. (You) say it all together.

(Qǐng)-shuō kuài-yìdiǎr. (Please) speak more quickly.

(Qǐng)-shuō màn-yìdiǎr. (Please) speak more slowly.

Bié-shuō-huà. Don't talk.

Nǐmen yǒu-wèntí-ma? Do you have any questions?

Wǒ-wèn, nǐmen-dá. I'll ask, you answer.

Nǐmen-wèn, wǒ-dá. You ask, I'll answer.

Qíng-ni 'dà-shēng-shuō. Please speak loudly.

## Lesson 1

The following syllables, some of which are full words and others only combining forms, are used also as surnames:

duàn	section (N)	jiāng	(large) river (N)
fèng	phoenix (N)	kǒng	hole (N)
gǔ	ancient (SV)	lǐ	plum (N)
huáng	yellow (SV)	lì	chestnut (N)



tián	field (N)	yún	cloud (N)
xióng	bear (N)	zhū	vermilion (SV)
yáng	poplar (N)	zǔ	ancestor (N)

The following nouns are also used as titles :

bóshi	Ph.D. , Dr.	xiàozhǎng	principal, headmas- ter
jiāngjun	general		
lǚshi	lawyer, attorney	yīsheng	doctor, M.D.
mùshi	minister, preacher	zhǎngguǐde	manager
shénfù	priest, Father	zhǔxí	chairman
tóngzhì	comrade		

Lesson 2

The following are additional names of countries :

Āiji	Egypt	Jiānádà	Canada
Àodaliyǎ	Australia	Ménggǔ	Mongolia
Àoguo	Austria	Miǎndiàn	Burma
Bājisītǎn	Pakistan	Mòxīgē	Mexico
Bǐlishí	Belgium	Nuówēi	Norway
Cháoxiǎn	Korea	Ruìdiǎn	Sweden
Dānmài	Denmark	Ruìshi	Switzerland
Déguo	Germany	Sūlián	Soviet Union
Ēguo, Èguo	Russia	Xībānyá	Spain
Fàguo, Fǎguo	France	Yuènnán	Vietnam
Gǔbà	Cuba	Yìdàlì	Italy
Hélán	Holland	Yìndu	India

Lesson 3

For new nouns, an appropriate measure—if other than ge—is given in parentheses.

bǎ	(measure for chairs)	dēngpàor	light bulb (N)
chǐ	ruler (N) (gēn)	dèngzi	stool (N)
dēng	lamp (N) (zhǎn)	fénbǐ	chalk (N) (gēr)

gēn	(measure for sticks)	suànpan	abacus (N)
gēr	(measure for chalk)	táidēng	desk lamp (N)
kèběr	textbook (N)	xiàngpí	eraser (N) (kuài)
kuài	(measure for solids)	yǐzi	chair (N) (bǎ)
qiānbǐdāor	pencil sharpener (N)	yuánguī	compasses (N)
shǒutíbāo	briefcase (N)	zhǎn	(measure for lamps)
shūbāo	book bag (N)	zìláishuǐbǐ	fountain pen (N)

## Lesson 4

bào	newspaper (N) (fèr)	Xībānyá-	Spanish (language and
bàozhǐ	newspaper (N) (fèr)	wén	literature) (N)
Déwén	German (language and	Yìdàlì-wén	Italian (language and
	literature) (N)		literature) (N)
Ēwén,	Russian (language and	zázhì	periodical, magazine
Èwén	literature) (N)		(N) (běn)
Fàwén,	French (language and	Zhōng-Dé	Chinese-German, Si-
Fǎwén	literature) (N)		no-German
fěnhóng	pink (SV)	Zhōng-Ē	Chinese-Russian, Si-
fèr	(measure for news-		no-Russian
	papers)	Zhōng-Fà	Chinese-French, Si-
hēibǎn	blackboard (N) (kuài)		no-French
huàbào	illustrated journal (N)	Zhōng-	Chinese-Spanish, Si-
	(běn)	Xībānyá	no-Spanish
kǎpiànr	card (N) (zhāng)	Zhōng-Yì	Chinese-Italian, Si-
lǜ	green (SV)		no-Italian
shūzhuō	desk (N) (zhāng)	zhuōzi	table (N) (zhāng)

## Lesson 5

ài	love (TV)	huítóu	a little later (MA)
báitiān	daytime (TW)	jiàn	cheap (SV)
chéng	be O.K. (IV)	kěn	be willing (AV)
guì	expensive (SV)	kòngr	leisure time (N)
hèn	hate (TV)	lìngwài	additionally (MA)

piányi	cheap (SV)	yèli	night (TW)
qīnqi	relative (N)	yuànyi	be willing (AV)
shēng	not well acquainted (SV)	zǎoshang	morning (TW)
shú	well acquainted (SV)	zhái	residence (N)
xíng	be O.K. (IV)	zhōngwǔ	noon (TW)

Lesson 7

bǎihuòdiàn	department store (N)	jiē	street (N) (tiáo)
bàndǎo	peninsula (N)	jǐngchájú	police station (N)
bówuguǎn	museum (N)	lǚguǎn	hotel (N)
chéngshì	metropolis (N)	mǎlù	highway (N) (tiáo)
dàjiē	avenue (N) (tiáo)	mǎtou	dock (N)
diànbàojú	telegraph office (N)	miào	temple (N) (zuò)
dòngwuyuán	zoo (N)	pùzi	store (N)
dūshì	metropolis (N)	shì	metropolis (N)
hǎi	sea, ocean (N)	shūpù	bookstore (N)
háidǎo	island (N)	wūzi	room(s) (N) (jiān)
hé	river (N) (tiáo)	xiāngxià	the country (PW)
Héběi	Hopeh province (PW)	yínháng	bank (N)
Hénán	Honan province (PW)	yóuzhèng-	post office (N)
huǒchēzhàn	railroad station (N)	jú	
hútòng	alley (N) (tiáo)	záhuòdiàn	grocery store (N)
jiān	(measure for rooms in a house)	zuò	(measure for build- ings)

Lesson 8

In the following names for subjects of study, the suffix xué 'study' is optional if enclosed in parentheses.

cáizhèng(xué)	finance (N)	huàxué	chemistry (N)
dìzhǐ(xué)	geology (N)	jiàoyù(xué)	education (N)
dòngwùxué	zoology (N)	jīngjì(xué)	economics (N)
gōngchéng(xué)	engineering (N)	jīxiè(xué)	mechanics (N)

nóngxué	agriculture (N)	wùlǐ(xué)	physics (N)
shāngyè(xué)	business studies (N)	xīnlǐxué	psychology (N)
shèhuìxué	sociology (N)	yàoji(xué)	pharmacology (N)
shēngwù(xué)	biology (N)	yīxué	medicine (N)
shénxué	religion (N)	zhèngzhì(xué)	political science (N)
tiānwénxué	astronomy (N)	zhíwùxué	botany (N)

## Lesson 9

bǐdiàn	pen store (N)	píxiédiàn	shoe store (N)
cèsuǒ	toilet (N)	rénlìchē	ricksha (N) (liàng)
dàxuéshēng	college student (N)	sānlúnchē	pedicab (N) (liàng)
dǐng	(measure for hats)	shǒushi	jewelry, ornament (N)
duìhuàndiàn	money-exchange place (N)	shǒushílóu	jewelry store (N)
gúdǒng	antiques (N)	shuāng	pair (M)
gúdǒngdiàn	antique store (N)	shuǐguǒ	fruit (N)
gǔwán	antiques (N)	shuǐguǒdiàn	fruit store (N)
gǔwándiàn	antique store (N)	tào	(measure for suits of clothes)
huǒchē	train (N) (liè)	xiǎoxuéshēng	elementary-school student (N)
kǎchē	truck (N) (liàng)	xīfú	Western-style clothing (N) (tào)
liàng	(measure for vehicles)	xīfúdiàn	clothing store (N)
liè	(measure for trains)	yángchē	ricksha (N) (liàng)
lífǎdiàn	barber shop (N)	yùnshūchē	truck (N) (liàng)
mǎchē	horse-drawn vehicle (N) (liàng)	zǎotángzi	bath house (N)
màozi	hat (N) (dǐng)	zhōngxué-	middle-school stu-
màozidiàn	hat store (N)	shēng	dent (N)
píxié	leather shoes (N) (shuāng)		

## Lesson 10

bófù	father's elder brother (N)	fùmǔ	parents (N)
érzi	son (N)	gēge	elder brother (N)

gōnggong	husband's father (N)	xīungdì	brothers (N)
gūgu	father's sister (N)	yí	mother's sister
gūniang	girl (N)		(N)
jiějie	elder sister (N)	yuèfù	wife's father (N)
jiùjiu	mother's brother (N)	yuèmǔ	wife's mother (N)
nǚ'er	daughter (N)	zhínǚ'er	brother's daughter
pópo	husband's mother (N)		(N)
shūshu	father's younger	zhízi	brother's son (N)
	brother (N)	zǐmèi	sisters (N)
wài zǔfù	mother's father (N)	zǔfù	father's father (N)
wài zúmǔ	mother's mother (N)	zúmǔ	father's mother (N)

Lesson 11

bàiwang	visit, call on (TV)	qiántian	day before yesterday
chūcì	the first time (TW)		(TW)
dà-qián-	year before year be-	qiáo	see, visit (TV)
nian	fore last (TW)	Rìwén	Japanese (language
dà-qián-	day before day before		and literature) (N)
tian	yesterday (TW)	shèxià	(my) home (N)
dànshi	however (MA)	wǔfàn	lunch (N)
dìquè	actually (AD)	yàoshi	if (MA)
huòchuán	freighter (N) (tiáo)	zǎocān	breakfast (N)
jìrán	since (MA)	záodiǎn	breakfast (N)
lúnchuán	steamship (N) (tiáo)	zhōngfàn	lunch (N)
pèngjian	encounter (TV)		
qiánnian	year before last (TW)		

Lesson 13

ǎi	short (SV)	héqi	congenial (SV)
bàngōngshǐ	office (N)	huài	bad (SV)
chéngshì	honest, reliable (SV)	jiāo'ào	proud, arrogant (SV)
chūzhōng	lower middle school (N)	jùyuǎn	playhouse, theater (N)

kèshǐ	classroom (N)	shànliáng	kind (SV)
lǎn	lazy (SV)	shòu	thin (SV)
lǎoshi	honest (SV)	xì	`drama (N)
lǐbài	week (N)	xìju	(modern) play, drama (N)
pàng	fat (SV)	yǎngjìngr	eyeglasses (N)
qiānxū	modest (SV)		
qióng	poor (SV)		

## Lesson 14

bànfǎ	method (N)	tú	drawing, sketch (N)
běnlái	originally (N)	wànyī	by chance (MA)
búguò	only (MA)	xiāngdāng	fairly, rather (AD)
dāngchū	at first (MA)	xiāngxìn	believe (TV)
jiù	old (of things) (SV)	xīn	new (SV)
liáojiē	understand (TV)	xìnfēngr	envelope (N)
qīngchu	be clear, be clear about (SV)	xìnzhi	writing paper (N)
qùwei	interest (N)	yòuzhiyuán	kindergarten (N)
sǐ	die (IV)	zhìshǎo	at least (MA)
tǐng	very (AD)	zǒng(shì)	always (AD)
		zuì shǎo	at least (MA)

## Lesson 15

Bālí	Paris (PW)	liúshēngjī	phonograph (N)
Bólín	Berlin (PW)	lìyòng	use (TV)
bù-shūfu	uncomfortable; in- disposed (SV)	Lómǎ	Rome (PW)
chàngpiān	phonograph record (N) (zhāng)	Lúndun	London (PW)
diànshì	television (N)	Mòsīkē	Moscow (PW)
fēiděi	must (AV)	Shànghǎi	Shanghai (PW)
guàng	sightsee (TV)	shūfu	comfortable (SV)
Huáshèng-	Washington (PW)	tàng	(measure for trips)
dùn		wúxiàndiàn	radio (N)
		xūyào	require, need (TV)

yìqí	together (AD)	zìrán	naturally (AD)
------	---------------	-------	----------------

Lesson 16

béng	don't (AV)	měilì	beautiful (SV)
bícǐ	mutually, among our-selves (AD)	qíngxíng	situation, condition (N)
bìngqiě	but also (MA)	qíshí	(but) actually, in fact (AD)
chéngjì	record (of achieve-ment) (N)	sànbù	stroll (IV)
fēngjǐng	scenery, view (N)	tǎolùn	discuss (seriously) (TV)
jiǎnzhí(de)	simply, just (AD)	xīnshǎng	admire, enjoy (TV)
kāishuǐ	boiled water (N)	yùbei	prepare (TV)
lái huí	back and forth (AD)	zhāodài	entertain (IV)
liáoliao	discuss casually, chat about (TV)	zhāodàishǐ	reception room (N)
liúda	take a stroll	zuì jìn	most recently (AD)

Lesson 17

chūmíng	famous (SV)	kě	thirsty (SV)
dāngshí	at that time (MA)	lěng	cold (SV)
diū	lose (TV)	liángkuai	cool (SV)
duǒ	(measure for single flowers)	líhūn	divorce (IV)
è	hungry (SV)	píng	bottle (N)
fēng	wind (N)	píngzi	bottle (N)
gànmá?	why? what for?	qìhou	climate (N)
guā	blow (IV)	rè	hot (SV)
guā fēng	the wind blows	shū	lose (IV)
háojǐ	good many (NU)	xià xuě	it is snowing
hǎoxiàng	seem as if	xià yǔ	it is raining
huār	flower (N)	xuě	snow (N)
káfēi	coffee (N)	yǔ	rain (N)



## Lesson 19

biǎndòu	string beans (N)	lizi	chestnut (N)
bízi	nose (N)	lóbo	turnips (N)
bōcài	spinach (N)	méimao	eyebrow (N)
bózi	neck (N)	mógu	mushroom (N)
chāzi	fork (N)	pánzi	(large) plate (N)
chízi	spoon (N)	píngguǒ	apple (N)
chúzi	cook (N)	pútao	grapes (N)
dāozi	knife (N)	qíncai	celery (N)
dàshifu	cook (N)	sháor	spoon (N)
diézi	(small) plate (N)	shìzi	persimmon (N)
dōngsǔn	bamboo shoots (N)	shǒu	hand (N) (zhǐ)
dòuyár	beansprouts (N)	suàn	garlic (N)
ěrdùo	ear (N)	tóufa	hair (on head) (N)
gēbei	arm (N)		(gēr)
guā	melon (N)	tuǐ	leg (N) (tiáo)
huánggua	cucumber (N)	wāndòu	peas (N)
huāshēng	peanuts (N)	xiāngjiāo	banana (N)
hújiāo-	(ground) pepper	xuědòu	snow peas (N)
miànr	(N)	yán	salt (N)
jiāng	ginger (N)	yǎnjing	eye(s) (N)
jiǎo	foot (N) (zhǐ)	yáng	sheep (N) (zhǐ)
jīdàn	eggs (N)	zuǐ	mouth (N)
júzi	orange (N)		

## Lesson 20

bàn	manage, do (V)	gǎnkuài	hurry up (and do something) (AV)
bìxū	necessary (SV)		
bùguǎn	no matter, don't care	gàojià	ask for leave <u>or</u> time off (IV)
fāngbian	convenient (SV)		
fǎnzhèng	anyway, anyhow (MA)	hūrán	suddenly (AD)
fēicháng	extremely (AD)	jiǎ	false (SV)
gǎn	dare (AV)	juédìng	decide (V)

kěxí	too bad, it's a pity (that)	mà	scold, abuse (TV)
líng	zero	pèifu	admire (TV)
lìngwài	separately, extra (MA)	xìngkuī	fortunately (MA)
liúli	fluent (SV)	xiūxi	rest (V)
		yǐwéi	think (wrongly) that (V)

Lesson 21

bāozi	stuffed steamed bread (N)	guāzǎ	melon seeds (N)
bǐng	cake (N)	kètīng	living room (N)
bǐnggān	cookies (N) (kuài)	mántou	steamed bread (N)
chàng	sing (V)	miànbāo	bread (N)
chōu yān	smoke (VO)	pángbiā	side (PW)
chuáng	bed (N) (zhāng)	pǔtōng	ordinary (SV)
chuānghu	window (N)	tàiyang	sun (N)
chúfáng	kitchen (N)	tiān	heaven (N)
dàjiā	everybody (present)	wòfáng	bedroom (N) (jiān)
dàngāo	cake (N)	xīngxing	star (N)
dī	low (SV)	yīfu	clothes (N)
dì	earth (N)	yīshang	clothes (N)
gē, gēr	song (N)	yuèbing	moon-cakes (N)
		yuèliang	moon (N)

Lesson 22

báihuà	colloquial language (N)	cǎo zì	grass characters, cursive writing (N)
báihuàwén	vernacular literature (N)	dáying	agree (to), answer affirmatively (TV)
bàogào	report (N)	fānchéng	translate into (V)
bèi	memorize, recite by heart (TV)	fāngyán	dialect (N)
biǎo	table, chart (N)	fānyì	translate (TV)
		fēnbié	difference (N)

gēnběn	fundamentally (MA)	qiángdiào	intonation (N)
guóyǔ	national language (N)	shàngxiàwén	context (N)
huì	meeting (N)	tǔhuà	` dialect, patois (N)
huídá	answer (V)	wénzhāng	essay, article (N)
jiǎngyǎn	lecture (N, V)	wèntí	problem (N)
jù	according to (CV)	wényán	literary language (N)
kāi huì	open a meeting (VO)	xíng shū	Running Hand (N)
kǎi shū	regular characters (N)	yánjiǎng	lecture (N, V)
kóuyǔ	spoken language (N)	yìjian	view(s) (N)

## Lesson 23

bànyè	midnight (TW)	nào	be noisy, make a noise, disturb (V)
bùhǎoyìsi	embarrassed, diffident (SV)	pī	(measure for horses)
chūntiān	spring (season) (TW)	qiūtiān	fall (season) (TW)
dàlù	continent, mainland (N)	rènao	bustling, full of life (SV)
dàodǐ	after all (MA)	shàng	morning (TW)
dōngtiān	winter (TW)	bàntiān	
gǒu	dog (N) (tiáo)	wǎn bàn-	late afternoon (TW)
kuàihuo	happy (SV)	tiān	
kuàilè	happy (SV)	xià bàn-	afternoon (TW)
lóng	dragon (N) (tiáo)	tiān	
lú	donkey (N) (tiáo)	xiàtiān	summer (TW)
mǎ	horse (N) (pī)	xǔ	permit (TV)
māo	cat (N) (zhī)	zháojí	nervous, upset (SV)
nánguò	saddened, depressed (SV)	zhǔn	permit (TV)

## SUGGESTED STUDY GUIDE

At the beginning, it is advisable to spend a great deal of time studying the Sounds of Chinese (pages xviii–xxx). Vocabulary and grammar can be added at any stage of your studies, but if you start with a poor pronunciation of Chinese it will be difficult—if not impossible—to remedy it later. The ideal procedure would be to spend several weeks on pronunciation alone, including not only the introductory material but also the Pronunciation Drills presented in the Lessons. Even after you have started the Lessons, it is a good idea to set aside some time every day for pronunciation. The Pronunciation Drills center on specific points of difficulty, so that you can concentrate on your own pronunciation problems.

In the Lessons, it is best to follow the order given below. If you do so, you will generally start with the Pronunciation Drills (though not all need to be done right at the beginning). Then take up a Substitution Table, which will present both vocabulary and grammar in context, not as separate entities. Each Table is correlated with sentences in the Sentence Build-Up and in the Pattern Drills. Study all related material at the same time.

When you have completed the Substitution Tables, Sentence Build-Up, and Pattern Drills, you have covered all the new vocabulary and constructions of the Lesson. You can then go on to the other exercises, in the order suggested below.

You should memorize as much as you can. Some of the shorter Dialogues can be memorized in their entirety; in others, and in the exercises, select particular passages that seem important and memorize these also. At the bare minimum, memorize every one of the illustrative sentences and phrases at the beginning of each Pattern Drill.

Pay strict attention to the material as spoken by your teacher or as presented on tape recordings. First listen, then listen and repeat. Practice until you can repeat without stumbling and without taking time to puzzle out what you are saying. If you have to stop and think a lot, whether in repeating, translating, or conversing, it is a sign that you have gone too fast. Slow up and learn the material better—indeed, overlearn it. Remember: language learning is overlearning. If you study no more than a dozen Lessons in this book, but genuinely master the material so that your pronunciation and delivery sound natural to a Chinese, you will have accomplished much more than someone who has “completed” the book but speaks with a strong foreign accent and gropes for every word.

In the breakdowns below, the new vocabulary items introduced in the Substitution Tables, Sentence Build-Ups, and Pattern Drills are listed in parentheses. These have been limited to a maximum of six in any subsection. Note that the breakdowns are not all of the same size or difficulty. In some cases you may be able to study only one section at a time, in others several together.

The first ones in each Lesson should be taken in the order indicated (except for Pronunciation Drills).

The following abbreviations are used:

ST	Substitution Table
SBU	Sentence Build-Up
Pron.	Pronunciation Drill
Pat.	Pattern Drill

### Lesson 1

1. Pron. I-VI.
2. ST I. SBU 1-5. (nǐ, nín, nǐmen, hǎo, a, ma)
3. ST II. SBU 6-9. (Bái, Gāo, xiānsheng, tàitai, xiáojie)
4. ST III. SBU 10-12. (xièxie, wǒ, tā)
5. ST IV. SBU 13-17. Pat. 1.1-1.3. (yě, hěn, dōu, ne, zàijiàn)
6. Boy Meets Girl.
7. Dialogue.

### Lesson 2

1. Pron. I-II.
2. ST I. SBU 1-3. (bu, xìng, wáng)
3. ST II. SBU 4-7. (shì, Měiguó, Yīngguó, Zhōngguó, rén)
4. ST III. SBU 8-18. Pat. 2.1-2.3. Pron. (huì, shuō, huà, ba, jiù, qián)
5. SBU 19-23. Dialogue. (qǐng, wèn, qǐng-wèn, guìxìng)
6. Snatches of Conversation.
7. To Be or Not To Be.
8. Putting On an Act.

### Lesson 3

1. Pron. I-II.
2. ST Ia. SBU 1-4. (zhè, nà, shénmo, shū, bǐ)
3. ST Ib. SBU 5-9. (zhèi, nèi, máobǐ)
4. ST II. SBU 10. (yào)
5. ST III. SBU 11-13. (běn, zhī)
6. ST IV a. SBU 14-18. (yī, èr, sān, sì, wǔ, mào)
7. ST IV b. SBU 19-20. (kuài, liǎng)
8. ST V. SBU 21-24. Pat. 3.1-3.2. (jǐ)
9. ST VI. SBU 25-29. Pat. 3.3. (něi, duōshao, yígòng, hái)
10. SBU 30-35. (mǎi, mài, wàiguó)
11. Dialogue.
12. Questions and Answers.
13. True or False.
14. What Would You Say?

## Lesson 4

1. Pron. I-II.
2. SBU 1-5. (yǒu, méi, qiānbǐ, gāngbǐ, ge)
3. SBU 6-10. (běnzi, wén, Zhōngwén, Yīngwén, zìdiǎn)
4. SBU 11-15. (dìtú, zhāng, zhǐ, mòshuǐ, hēi)
5. ST I. SBU 16-20. (hóng, lán, yánse, fēn)
6. ST II-III. SBU 21-27. (liù, qī, bā, jiǔ, shí)
7. Number Practice.
8. Multiplication Table.
9. Boom!
10. Dialogue.
11. Information, Please!
12. Numbers and Measures.
13. A Charge Account.

## Lesson 5

1. Pron. I-II.
2. SBU 1-6. (chī, fàn, gōngfu, jīntian, wǎnshang, shíhou)
3. ST I. SBU 7-12. Clock Time. (zhōng, diǎn, xiànzài, shéi)
4. ST II-III. SBU 13-26. Pat. 5.1-5.2. (de, péngyou, zhǎo, wèi, xiǎng, jiā)
5. SBU 27-32. Pidgin Chinese. (kéyi, wai, jiù, jiàn, háo-jiǔ bú-jiàn)
6. Dialogue.
7. Listening In.
8. Brain Twister.

## Lesson 6

1. Pron. I-II.
2. Analogy Drill.
3. Single Replacement Drill.
4. Double Replacement Drill.
5. Insertion Drill.
6. Narrative.
7. Raise You One.
8. Answering Questions.
9. Questioning Answers.

## Lesson 7

1. Pron. I-III.
2. ST Ia. SBU 1-5. (zài, zhèr, nèr, qián, tou, hòu)
3. ST Ib. SBU 6-10. (biān, biār, lǐ, wài, shàng, xià)
4. ST IIa. SBU 11-16. (fángzi, shān, dōng, xī, nán, běi)
5. ST IIb. SBU 17-22. (dà, xiǎo, gōngyuán, hú, zuǒ, yòu)
6. ST III. SBU 23-27. (chéng, Shāndong, Shānxi)
7. ST IV. SBU 28-31. Pat. 7.1. (Dōngběi, Húnán, Húběi, zhīdao)

8. ST V-VII. SBU 32-38. Pat. 7.2. (suǒr, tiáo, lù, zhōngjiàn, Zhōngshān)
9. ST VIII-IX. SBU 39-42. Pat. 7.3-7.4.
10. Definite vs. Indefinite.
11. SBU 43. Pat. 7.5. (háishi)
12. Dialogue.
13. Relativity Problems.

## Lesson 8

1. Pron. I-II.
2. ST I-III. SBU 1-9. (lí, lǐ, duō, dàxué, túshūguǎn, yuǎn)
3. ST IV. SBU 10-19. Pat. 8.1. (duó[mo], tài, jìn, xuésheng)
4. ST V. SBU 20-25. (kàn, měi, xǐhuan, xiě, zì)
5. SBU 26-34. Pat. 8.2-8.3. (nán, róngyì, niàn, xué, shǎo)
6. ST VI. SBU 35-41. Pat. 8.4. (jiè, jiǎndān, duì, néng, wénxué)
7. Checkerboard Problem.
8. Dialogue.

## Lesson 9

1. Pron. I-II.
2. ST I-IV. SBU 1-11. Pat. 9.1-9.2. (lái, qù, dào, shūdiàn, míngtiān)
3. ST V-VII. SBU 12-20. Pat. 9.3-9.4. (cóng, zěnmò, zǒu, wàng, guǎi)
4. ST VIII. SBU 21-26. (chē, qìchē, diànchē, gōnggòng, qìchē, zuò)
5. SBU 27-31. Let's Be Contrary. (shàng, xià, xiān, hòu, zài)
6. SBU 32-36. (mén, kǒur, guò, zhàn)
7. SBU 37-42. Take Your Choice. (yìzhí, hào, huòzhě)
8. Dialogue.
9. Checking Up.

## Lesson 10

1. Pron. I-II.
2. ST I. SBU 1-9. Pat. 10.1. (bǐ, yìdiǎr, gèng, jiàoyuán, láohu)
3. ST II. SBU 10-15. (pǎo, kuài, màn)
4. ST III. SBU 16-20. Pat. 10.2-10.3. (fùqin, mǔqin)
5. ST IV. SBU 21-26. Pat. 10.4. (zuò, nán, nǚ, háizi, shì)
6. ST V. SBU 27-35. Pat. 10.5. (jiào, míngzi, zhēn, mèimei, dìdi)
7. ST VI. SBU 36-42. (fēn, chà, chàbuduō, kè)
8. SBU 43-46. What's in a Name? (suì, Yuǎndōng, piào, mài piàoyuán)
9. SBU 47-54. Frère Tiger. (xiǎoxué, zhōngxué, tán, qíguài, jiù)
10. Match and Finish.
11. Dialogue.

## Lesson 11

1. Pron. I-II.
2. ST I. SBU 1-8. (nián, qùnián, jīnnián, zuótian, hào, yue)
3. SBU 9-12. (Rìběn, wǎnfàn, yùjian, kànjian)
4. ST II-IV. SBU 13-18. Pat. 11.1. (fēijī, chuán, yídìng, cháng)



- 5 SBU 19-25. (yìsi, xīwang, gàoosu, líkai)
6. ST V. SBU 26-30. (dì, cì, rúguǒ, suírán, kěshi)
7. SBU 31-35. Pat. 11.2. (bàifang, fǔshang, bàn, rènshi)
8. Let's Be Reasonable.
9. Questions and Answers.
10. Dialogue
11. Double Jeopardy.

## Lesson 12

1. Pron. I-II.
2. Analogy Drill.
3. Replacement Drill.
4. Insertion Drill.
5. Answering Questions.
6. Narrative.
7. Dialogue.
8. Questionnaire.

## Lesson 13

1. Pron. I-III.
2. ST I-II. SBU 1-6. Pat. 13.1. (le, bìyè, zǎochen)
3. ST III. SBU 7-13. Pat. 13.2. (huí, zǎofàn, biǎo, dài)
4. ST IV. SBU 14-19. Pat. 13.3. (wǎn, cōngmíng, bèn, máng, kèqi)
5. ST V. SBU 20-25. Pat. 13.4. (yǐjīng, xīngqī, diànyǐng)
6. ST VI. SBU 26-34. Pat. 13.5. (kǎo, kǎoshì, kè, xuéxiào, yòu)
7. ST VII. SBU 35-41. Pat. 13.6. (máfan, yǐqián, yǐhòu, yīnwei, suóyi)
8. ST VIII. SBU 42-47. Pat. 13.7. (yònggōng, niánjí, gāozhōng, 'huānyíng, jíle)
9. SBU 48-60. (wàng)
10. Expansion Drills.
11. Questions and Answers.
12. Dialogue.
13. Monologue.
14. Setting Things Right.
15. What Would You Say?

## Lesson 14

1. Pron. I-III.
2. ST I-III. SBU 1-7. Pat. 14.1. (yòng, duì, xìngqu, gěi, xìn)
3. SBU 8-11. (zuì, huà, huà, dòng)
4. ST IV-V. SBU 12-20. Pat. 14.2. (yánjiu, kēxué, yǔyán, yǔyánxué, fāngfǎ)
5. ST VI. SBU 21-26. Pat. 14.3. (guò, tīng, tīngshuō, lǎo)
6. ST VII. SBU 27-33. Pat. 14.4. (liǎo, kǎoshàng, huó, zhǐ)
7. ST VIII. SBU 34-40. Pat. 14.5. (wàn, qián, bǎi, yuánlái)
8. SBU 41-49. (fēn, shífēn, yìhuǐ)
9. The Topic-Comment Construction.
10. Dialogue.
11. Monologue.
12. Checking Up.

## Lesson 15

1. Pron. I-IV.
2. ST I-III. SBU 1-6. (yuè, zhōngtóu, lù-yīn, lùyīnji, kāishǐ)
3. ST IV. SBU 7-15. Pat. 15.1. (zhù, jiāo, Niǔyue, Sānfánshì)
4. ST V. SBU 16-25. Pat. 15.2. (bìng, wár, cài, dāngrán, wán)
5. ST VI. SBU 26-30. Pat. 15.3. (biéde, dìfang, dōngxi, jiānglái)
6. ST VII. SBU 31-36. Pat. 15.4. (bì, bìdǐ, dǐ, gāi, yīngdāng, yīnggāi)
7. ST VIII. SBU 37-44. Pat. 15.5. (gēn, nènmo, zènmo, zhènmo, jīhui, yí-kuà)
8. SBU 45-47.
9. Expansion Drills.
10. Dialogue.
11. A Little Variety.
12. Answering Questions.

## Lesson 16

1. Pron.
2. ST I. SBU 1-4. Pat. 16.1. (jìn, chū, ná, bié)
3. ST II. SBU 5-15. Pat. 16.2. (nèiren, jiàoshòu, kèrén)
4. ST III. SBU 16-21. Pat. 16.3. (Hángzhou, Sūzhou, lǔxíng, mā)
5. ST IV. SBU 22-28. Pat. 16.4. (yǒude, suóyǒude, fāzi, shuǐ)
6. ST V. SBU 29-35. Pat. 16.5. (kāi, jù, xuéwen)
7. ST VI. SBU 36-42. Pat. 16.6. (piàoliang, shānshuǐ, búdan, érqǐě)
8. SBU 43-49. Pat. 16.7. (bǎ, cuò, jièshao)
9. SBU 50-54. Pat. 16.8. (lián, jiúyǎng, tiāntáng)
10. SBU 55-58. Pat. 16.9.
11. SBU 59. Pat. 16.10.
12. Dialogue.
13. Answering Questions.

## Lesson 17

1. Pron. I-II.
2. ST I. SBU 1-13. Pat. 17.1. (xiàng, yàng, jiǔ, tiānqi)
3. ST II. SBU 14-26. Pat. 17.2. (méigui, nuǎnhuo, lù, bēi, bēizi, xiàng)
4. ST III. SBU 27-34. Pat. 17.3. (jiēhūn, hē, chá, yǒu-míng)
5. ST IV. SBU 35-42. Pat. 17.4. (zhǎng, gòu, huá, quán, cóngqián)
6. ST V. SBU 43-47. Pat. 17.5. (yíng, míngbai)
7. SBU 48-51. Pat. 17.6. (wèi-shénmo, děng, zěnmoyàng)
8. SBU 52-65. Pat. 17.7. (xiě, bǐ, bùdeliǎo, hǎoxiě)
9. Expansion Drills.
10. Sentence Conversion.
11. Dialogue.
12. Answering Questions.

## Lesson 18

1. Pronunciation Review.
2. Analogy Drills.

3. Replacement Drill.
4. Insertion Drill.
5. Transformation Drills.
6. Crossword Puzzle.
7. Miscellaneous Sentences.
8. Dialogue.
9. Narrative.
10. Answering Questions.

## Lesson 19

1. Pron.
2. ST I-II. SBU 1-8. Pat. 19.1. (cài, tāng, táng, kuàizi, dòufu)
3. SBU 9-15. Pat. 19.2. (báicài, Guǎngdong, fànguǎr, zhe, chǎo)
4. SBU 16-23. Pat. 19.3. (zhū, niú, shīzi, tóu, ròu)
5. SBU 24-35. Pat. 19.4. (shāo, zhao, tèbié, cù, yú)
6. ST III. SBU 36-41. Pat. 19.5. (chúle, yǐwài, tián, suān, guòjiǎng)
7. SBU 42-55. Pat. 19.6. (bǎo, biàn-fàn, jī, suíbiàn, he)
8. Sentence Conversion.
9. Dialogue.
10. Answering Questions.
11. What Would You Say?

## Lesson 20

1. Pron.
2. ST I. SBU 1-8. Pat. 20.1. (yī, guówén, gùshi, fàngjià, pà, kǒngpà)
3. SBU 9-15. Pat. 20.2. (qǐlai, jiàn, shìqing, diànyǐngyuàn)
4. SBU 16-22. Pat. 20.3. (dǎ, dǎkai, diànhuà, tímu, lìshǐ, fùjìn)
5. SBU 23-28. (bù, piānzi, yǎn, yǎnyuán, chǎng)
6. SBU 29-36. Pat. 20.4. (dàgài, cǎi, shùxué, tí, jiē)
7. SBU 37-42. (běifāng, nánfāng, zāogāo, hai, me, gāoxìng)
8. Dialogue.
9. Chinese to English.
10. Answering Questions.
11. English to Chinese.

## Lesson 21

1. Pron.
2. ST I. SBU 1-9. Pat. 21.1. (jiǎozi, jiàngyóu, xiǎofèi, diǎnxin, fàng, xìng-rér)
3. ST II. SBU 10-17. Pat. 21.2. (xiā, xiārér, zhàng, jiùshi, hú)
4. SBU 18-27. Pat. 21.3. (suàn, dǎsuan, wǎn, bíjiǎo, cháng, dǎr)
5. SBU 28-38. Pat. 21.4. (bāngzhu, gāng, gāngcái, yā(zi), duìbuqǐ, kǎo)
6. SBU 39-44. (huǒji, miàn, juéde, jīngyàn, quán, zhǒng)
7. SBU 45-51. Chinese Menu. (shèng, shèngxia, yàoburán)
8. Dialogue.
9. Answering Questions.
10. What Would You Say?

## Lesson 22

1. Pron.
2. SBU 1-9. Pat. 22.1. (yuè, zhǔn, pīn, yīn, pīnyīn, shēng, shēngyin)
3. SBU 10-15. Pat. 22.2. (fā, fāyīn, wèntí, zhùyì, liànxì)
4. SBU 16-27. Pat. 22.3. (wénfǎ, yúfǎ, jùzi, sòng, cér, cí)
5. SBU 28-33. (qīng, zhòng, bùfen, huá, duǎn)
6. SBU 34-39. (huìhuà, Hàn, Hànzì, zìjǐ, guānyú, yīnjié)
7. SBU 40-47. (zhèng, duǎnchū, jì(zhū), tóngshí, bǐfang)
8. Combining Forms.
9. Dialogue.
10. Monologue.
11. Answering Questions.

## Lesson 23

1. Pron.
2. SBU 1-9. Pat. 23.1. (fēijīchǎng, cāntīng, shōushi, xínglǐ, yóngyuǎn, lǎoshī)
3. SBU 10-17. Pat. 23.2. (jìxù, xiào, xiàohuà, kěnéng, wénhuà, lèi)
4. ST I. SBU 18-25. Pat. 23.3. (ràng, guà, fēng, dài, zǎo, míngnián)
5. SBU 26-37. (-jīng, -wǔ, yào jǐn, zhù, píng'ān)
6. SBU 38-51. (fāngmiàn, dé, láojià, bù gǎndāng, mǎshàng, Dōngfāng)
7. Miscellaneous Sentences.
8. Dialogue.
9. Monologue.
10. Answering Questions.

## Lesson 24

1. Pron.
2. Pattern Review.
3. Foreign Correspondence.
4. Dialogue Summaries.

## Lesson 25

Some of the material in this and the following lesson may be studied simultaneously with Lesson 1, but study of the characters must not interfere with study of the spoken material. First read the Introductory Remarks, then study the Examples of Chinese Characters, Explanations of Chinese Characters, Stroke Order of Chinese Characters, Styles of Writing, and other material.

## Lesson 26

1. Vocabulary, Stroke Order.
2. Substitution Tables.
3. Sentence Build-Up.
4. Pattern Drills.
5. Dialogue.
6. Boy Meets Girl.

## INDEX OF PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

(Numbers in parentheses refer to pages)

### Unit I

- Lesson 1. I. The Unaspirated-Aspirated Contrast (8)  
II. Contrasts in Tones (8)  
III. Combinations of Tones (8)  
IV. Changes in Third Tones (9)  
V. Intonation Contrast (9)
- Lesson 2. I. The e-en, e-eng Contrast (18)  
II. Lip-rounding versus No Lip-rounding (18)
- Lesson 3. I. Non-Palatals versus Palatals (30)  
II. The i-in, i-ing Contrast (30)
- Lesson 4. I. Contrast of Retroflexes and Sibilants (41)  
II. Practice on Initial r (41)
- Lesson 5. I. Contrast of Retroflexes and Palatals (52)  
II. Some Sibilant-Retroflex-Palatal Contrasts (52)
- Lesson 6. I. Review of the Four Tones (57)  
II. Review of the Neutral Tone (57)

### Unit II

- Lesson 7. I. The i-ü Contrast (80)  
II. The ie-üe Contrast (80)  
III. The in-ün Contrast (80)
- Lesson 8. I. The u-ü Contrast (98)  
II. The un-ün Contrast (99)  
III. The uan-üan Contrast (99)
- Lesson 9. I. Contrast of "i" after Retroflexes and "i" after Sibilants (115)  
II. Contrast of "i" and i (115)
- Lesson 10. I. Contrast of "i" and e after Retroflexes (132)  
II. Contrast of "i" and e after Sibilants (132)
- Lesson 11. I. The Tone-Toneless Contrast (148)  
II. Tonal Shifts in Stressed bù and yī (149)

- Lesson 12.        I. Review of Two-Syllable Combinations (154)  
                  II. Review of "i" and i (155)

## Unit III

- Lesson 13.        I. The in-ian-an Contrast (182)  
                  II. The ou-uo Contrast (182)  
                  III. Contrast between h and Zero Initial (183)
- Lesson 14.        I. Contrasts in ui (212)  
                  II. Contrasts in iu and you (212)  
                  III. Contrasts in Stress (213)  
                  IV. Contrasts in Juncture (213)
- Lesson 15.        I-IV. Suffixed r (235)
- Lesson 16.        Contrast of Initials in Two-Syllable Pairs (263)
- Lesson 17.        I. Contrast of Finals in Two-Syllable Pairs (287)  
                  II. Tonal Shifts in Three-Syllable Expressions (288)
- Lesson 18.        Review of Three-Syllable Expressions (295)

## Unit IV

- Lesson 19.        Review of Four-Syllable Expressions (I) (328)
- Lesson 20.        Review of Four-Syllable Expressions (II) (349)
- Lesson 21.        Review of Four-Syllable Expressions (III) (370)
- Lesson 22.        Review of Four-Syllable Expressions (IV) (392)
- Lesson 23.        Review of Four-Syllable Expressions (V) (414)
- Lesson 24.        I. Sentences Distinguished Only by Context (422)  
                  II. Sentences Distinguished by Tonal Contrasts (422)

## GLOSSARY AND INDEX

Items both in Vocabularies (V) and in Notes (N) are included here. References after each item are to lesson and section. The notation 4V, for example, refers to the Vocabulary of Lesson 4; 4N3 refers to Lesson 4, Note 3.

Entries are arranged alphabetically by syllables. Thus jìzhu (jì + zhu) precedes jīn.

The following abbreviations designate Chinese parts of speech:

AD	Adverb	NU	Number
AV	Auxiliary verb	PR	Pronoun
CV	Coverb	PW	Place word
EV	Equational verb	RV	Resultative verb
IV	Intransitive verb	SP	Specifier
M	Measure	SV	Stative verb
MA	Movable adverb	TV	Transitive verb
N	Noun	V	Verb
		VO	Verb-Object

a (question particle) 1V, 1N14  
 abbreviated forms 4N2  
 abbreviations 10N9  
 adverbs 1N12, 7N4, 8N3,  
     10N2  
 aspect 13N1-9, 19N6  
 auxiliary verbs 2N9, 7N4  
 bā eight (NU) 4V  
 bǎ take (CV) 16V, 16N10, 17N7,  
     20N2  
 ba (final particle) 2V, 2N7, 5N8  
 bái white (also, a surname) (SV) 1V;  
     uselessly (AD) 21N4  
 bǎi hundred (NU) 14V, 14N7  
 báicai cabbage (N) 19V  
 bāifang make a call on (someone) (TV)  
     11V  
 bàn half (M) 11V  
 bǎngzhu help (TV) 21V  
 bǎo full, satiated (SV) 19V, 19N9  
 bēi cup (M, N) 17V, 17N8  
 běi north (PW) 7V  
 Běi-Dà Peking University 10N9  
 běifāng the north, northern region (PW)  
     20V  
 Běijīng Peking (PW) 23N5

Běijīng Dàxué Peking University  
     10N9  
 bēizi cup (N) 17V, 17N8  
 běn volume, copy (M) 3V, 3N4,  
     4N4  
 bèn stupid (SV) 13V  
 běnzi notebook (N) 4V  
 bǐ pen, pencil (N) 3V  
 bǐ compare (TV); compared to (CV)  
     10V, 10N1, 11V  
 bì must, have to (AV) 15V  
 bìděi must, have to (AV) 15V, 15N14  
 bǐfang example (N) 22V, 22N12  
 bǐfang shuō for example 22N13  
 bǐjiào relatively (AD) 21V  
 bixìng my surname is... 13N16  
 bìyè graduate (IV) 13V  
 biān, biār side (PW) 7V  
 biàn-fàn plain food (N) 19V  
 biǎo watch (N) 13V  
 bìng sick (SV); sickness (N) 15V  
 bié don't (AV) 16V  
 bié(de) other 15V  
 bù, bú, bu not, no (AD) 2V, 7N4,  
     13N7, 14N6  
 bù (measure for movies, sets of books)  
     20V



- bú-bì don't have to 15N4  
 bú-cuò not bad 16N19  
 búdàn not only, not merely (MA) 16V  
 bùdéliǎo awfully 17V, 17N10, 19N12  
 bùfēn section, part, member (M) 22V  
 bùgǎndāng (I'm) not equal to the honor,  
 I don't deserve it 23V, 23N12  
 bú(-shì) . . . jiù(-shì) 19N3  
  
 cǎi guess (that), figure out (TV) 20V  
 cái (only) then, not until then (AD)  
 15V, 15N13, 20N1  
 cài dish, course; vegetable (N) 19V,  
 19N15  
 calendar years 11N7  
 cāntīng cafeteria (N) 23V  
 cí word (N) 22N4  
 chá tea (N) 17V  
 chà differ, fall short, lack (TV) 10V,  
 10N5  
 chàbuduō almost 10V  
 cháng long (SV) 21V  
 cháng often (AD) 11V  
 chāng (measure for showings of movies)  
 20V  
 chángchū advantage (N) 22N5  
 chǎo sauté, fry (TV) 19V  
 chǎo báicài fried cabbage 19N15  
 chǎo dòufu fried beancurd 19N15  
 characters 22N4  
 chē vehicle (N) 9V  
 chéng city (N) 7V  
 chī eat (TV) 5V  
 choice-type questions 2N4  
 chū exit from (TV) 16V  
 chu (noun suffix) 22N5  
 chùle except for (MA) 19V, 19N5  
 chuán boat, ship (N) 11V  
 cí word (N) 22V  
 cì time, occasion (M) 11V, 11N4, 15N8  
 clock hours 5N6  
 combining forms 17N8, 22N5  
 comparison 10N1, 3, 6  
 compass directions 7N14  
 compound descriptive phrases 8N1  
 compound verbs 16N6-8, 19N7  
 cóng from (CV) 9V, 9N2-5  
 cōngmíng clever, bright, intelligent (SV)  
 13V  
 cóngqián formerly (TW) 17V  
 conjunctions 11N5  
 coordinate expressions 1N18, 10N7, 12  
 countries, names of 2N1  
 coverbs 7N2-4, 9, 8N3-4, 9N1-5,  
 10N1, 14N1, 15N16, 16N10-11  
 cù vinegar (N) 19V  
  
 cuò wrong, mistaken (CV) 16V,  
 16N18  
  
 dǎ hit (TV); from (CV) 20V, 20N3  
 dà big (SV) 7V, 10N6; much (AD)  
 21N4  
 dǎ diànhuà call on the phone (VO)  
 20N3  
 dǎ mén knock on the door (VO) 20N3  
 dàgài likely, probably, in all probabili-  
 ty, approximately (MA) 20V  
 dǎkai open (VO) 20V, 20N3  
 dǎsuan plan to (V) 21V  
 dàxué college, university (N) 8V  
 dài wear (TV) 13V  
 dài carry, take along (TV) 23V  
 dān, dār list, bill (N) 21V  
 dāngrán naturally, of course (MA) 15V  
 dào go to (TV); arrive at (IV); to (CV):  
 9V, 9N1, 3, 5; (postverb) 16N8  
 dé get, attain (TV) 23V, 23N10  
 de (subordinating particle) 5V, 5N2-  
 5, 7N5, 7, 14N10, 16N13; (after  
 stative verbs) 17N10; (in subordi-  
 nate clauses) 14N2, 4; (in expres-  
 sions of manner) 10N2; (in resulta-  
 tive verbs) 14N6  
 de-duō by much 10N1  
 de-shíhou when 13N7  
 definite object 16N10  
 definite references 7N9  
 déle O.K., enough 23N10  
 děi must, have to (AV) 15V, 15N14,  
 19N1  
 děng wait (for) (V) 17V  
 dì (ordinalizing prefix) (SP) 11V  
 dìdì younger brother (N) 10V  
 dìfang place, space (N) 15V  
 dītù map (N) 4V  
 diǎn dot, hour (of the clock) (M) 5V,  
 5N6  
 diànchē streetcar (N) 9V  
 diànhuà telephone (N) 20V  
 diànyǐng motion picture, movie (N)  
 13V  
 diànyǐngyuàn movie theater (N) 20V  
 diǎnxīn dessert, pastry, cakes (N)  
 21V  
 diār a little 10N1, 19N1  
 directive verbs 16N2, 4, 20N2  
 disjunctive questions 7N12, 8N6  
 disparity 17N2-6  
 distance 8N3-5  
 dōng east (PW) 7V  
 dǒng understand (TV) 14V  
 Dōngběi Manchuria (PW) 7V, 7N11

- Dōngfāng Orient, the East 23 V  
 Dōngjīng Tokyo 23 N 5  
 Dōngshēng 'East Born' 10 N 10  
 dōngxì (concrete) thing, object (N) 15 V  
 dōu all, both, entirely (AD) 1 V, 7 N 7, 16 N 11, 19 N 4, 21 N 2, 23 N 1  
 dòufu bean curd (N) 19 V  
 doubling see reduplication  
 duǎn short (SV) 22 V  
 duǎnchū disadvantage, shortcoming (N) 22 V, 22 N 5  
 duì correct (SV) 8 V; (postverb) 20 N 4  
 duì (facing) toward, to, regarding (CV) 14 V, 14 N 1  
 duìbuqǐ sorry, excuse me 21 V  
 duō numerous, many, much (SV); -odd 8 V, 8 N 7, 10 N 1, 19 N 1  
 duó(mo)? how? to what degree? (AD) 8 V, 8 N 7  
 duōshao? how many? how much? 3 V, 3 N 9, 14  
 duration of time 15 N 3-7  
 equational verbs 2 N 3  
 èr two (NU) 3 V, 3 N 9, 11  
 érqiě but, also (MA) 16 V  
 fā put out, emit (TV) 22 V  
 fā method, way (N) 22 N 5  
 fā yīn pronounce 22 V  
 fāyīn pronunciation (N) 22 V  
 fāzì method, plan (N) 16 V  
 fàn rice, food (N) 5 V  
 fāng region, part (N) 20 V  
 fàng put (TV) 21 V  
 fāngfǎ method, technique (N) 14 V, 22 N 5  
 fàngjià have vacation (IV) 20 V  
 fāngmian side, aspect (M) 23 V  
 fānguǎr restaurant (N) 19 V  
 fángzi house (N) 7 V  
 fēijī airplane (N) 11 V  
 fēijīchǎng airport, airfield 23 V  
 fēn part, cent (M) 4 V, 4 N 7  
 fēn (measure for minutes) 10 V  
 fēn tenth 14 N 13  
 fēng (measure for letters) 23 V  
 free forms 22 N 5  
 fùjìn vicinity (PW) 20 V  
 fùqīn father (N) 10 V  
 fùshang (your) residence (N) 11 V  
 full forms 4 N 2  
 gāi should, ought to (AV) 15 V, 15 N 15  
 gāngbǐ steel pen (i.e. fountain pen, ball point, etc.) (N) 4 V  
 gāng(cái) just (now), just a moment ago (AD) 21 V  
 gāo tall, high (also, a surname) (SV) 1 V  
 gào song inform (TV) 11 V  
 gào su inform (TV) 11 V  
 gāoxìng be happy (SV) 20 V  
 gāozhōng higher middle school (N) 13 V  
 gē (general measure) 4 V, 4 N 3-4  
 gěi give (TV); for, to (CV) 14 V, 14 N 1; (suffix) 22 N 5; (in passive) 23 N 7  
 gēn (together) with (CV) 15 V, 15 N 16  
 gèng (still) more (AD) 10 V, 10 N 1  
 gōngfú (leisure) time (N) 5 V  
 gōnggòng public 9 V  
 gōngyuán park (N) 7 V  
 gòu be enough (SV) 17 V, 21 N 4  
 gùshi story, narrative 20 V  
 guà hang (TV) 23 V  
 guǎi turn (IV) 9 V  
 guānyú concerning, regarding (CV) 22 V  
 Guǎngdong Canton, Kwangtung Province (PW) 19 V  
 guìxìng? What is your name? 2 V  
 guó country, nation (N) 2 V, 2 N 1, 4 N 9  
 guò (in time expressions) 10 N 5  
 guò pass (TV) 9 V  
 guo (verb suffix) 14 V, 14 N 5  
 guòjiǎng you flatter me 19 V  
 guówén Chinese (N) 20 V, 20 N 6  
 hái additionally, in addition, still more (AD) 3 V, 7 N 12, 10 N 1, 15 N 2, 19 N 5  
 hai (sigh of dejection, regret, etc.) 20 V  
 háishi or 7 V, 7 N 12, 8 N 6  
 háishi... hǎo better 20 N 5  
 hái zi child (N) 10 V  
 Hàn China, Chinese (N) 22 V, 22 N 14  
 Han Dynasty 22 N 13  
 Hànrén Chinese (person) 22 N 13  
 Hànyǔ Chinese language 22 N 13  
 Hànzì Chinese characters 22 V, 22 N 13  
 Hángzhou Hangchow (PW) 16 V  
 hǎo good, well, fine, O.K. (SV) 1 V, 19 N 13  
 hǎo (postverb) 19 N 10  
 hào number; day of the month (M) 9 V, 11 V  
 hǎo-bu-hǎo? O.K.? 5 N 8  
 háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn Haven't seen you for a long time 5 V

- hǎo-ma? O.K.? 5N8  
 hǎochu advantage (N) 22V, 22N5  
 hǎoxiē good many 17N9  
 hē drink (TV) 17V  
 he! Gosh! My! 19V  
 hēi black (SV) 4V  
 hěn very (AD) 1V, 14N11, 17N10  
 hóng red (SV) 4V  
 hóng chá black tea 21N7  
 hóng shāo red-cooked (see footnote, p. 313)  
 hòu rear (PW) 7V  
 hòu afterwards (AD) 9V  
 hú lake (N) 7V  
 hú pot (N, M) 21V  
 Húběi Hupeh Province (PW) 7V, 7N11  
 Húnán Hunan Province (PW) 7V, 7N11  
 huá stroke (M) 22V  
 huà speech, language (N) 2V  
 huà paint, draw (TV) 14V  
 huá quán play 'guess-fingers' (see footnote, p. 273)  
 huàfǎ way of painting (N) 22N5  
 huānyíng welcome (TV) 13V  
 huàr painting, drawing (N) 14V  
 huí return (to) (TV) 13V  
 huì able to, can (V) 2V, 8N8  
 huìhuà conversation (N) 22V  
 huó live (IV) 14V  
 huǒji waiter, clerk (N) 21V  
 huòzhě perhaps (MA) 9V  
 if 19N3  
 imminent action 13N6  
 indefinite reference 7N9  
 inferiority 17N4  
 intensification 13N15, 14N10-11  
 Japanese (see footnote, p. 380)  
 jī chicken (N) 19V  
 jī how many? (NU) 3V, 3N9  
 jì remember, memorize (TV) 22V, 22N5  
 jīhui opportunity (N) 15V  
 jíle in the extreme, extremely 13V, 13N15, 14N11  
 jìxù continue (AV) 23V  
 jiā home, house (SV); (suffix) 23N3  
 jiàn see, meet (TV) 5V  
 jiàn (measure for matters, tasks, etc.) 20V  
 jiǎndān simple, uncomplicated (SV) 8V  
 jiānglái in the future, hereafter (TW) 15V  
 jiàngyóu soy sauce 21V  
 jiāo teach (TV) 15V  
 jiào be called (IV) 10V  
 jiào (in passive) 23N7  
 jiàoyuán teacher (N) 10V  
 jiàoshòu professor (also, a title) (N) 16V  
 jiǎozi dumplings (N) 21V  
 jiē greet, receive (TV) 20V  
 jiè borrow (TV) 8V  
 jiēhūn marry (IV) 17V  
 jièshào introduce (TV) 16V  
 jìn near (SV) 8V  
 jìn enter (TV) 16V  
 jīnnián this year (TW) 11V  
 jīntiān today (TW) 5V  
 jīng capital (N) 23V, 23N5  
 jīngyan experience (N, V) 21V  
 jiǔ nine (NU) 4V  
 jiǔ wine (N) 17V  
 jiù immediately, then (AD) 10V, 11N5, 13N3, 19N3  
 jiù (with question words) 21N1  
 jiù (with yí) 20N1  
 jiù definitely, indeed, precisely (AD) 5V  
 jiù only, merely (AD) 2V  
 jiùshi even (MA) 21V, 21N2  
 jiùshi... dōu even if... still 21N2  
 jiùshi... yě even if... still 21N2  
 jiǔyǎng Pleased to meet you 16V  
 jù (measure for sentences) 16V  
 juéde have the feeling that (TV) 21V  
 jùzi sentence (N) 22V  
 kāi open (door, etc.), drive (car) (TV) 16V  
 kāishǐ begin (to do) (AV) 15V  
 kàn look at, see, read (TV) 8V  
 kànfǎ way of looking (at something) (N) 22N5  
 kànjian see, visit (TV) 11V  
 kǎo roast (TV) 21V  
 kǎo take or give an examination (in a subject, for a school) (TV) 13V  
 kǎoshì take or give an examination (IV) 13V  
 kè quarter (of an hour) (M) 10V  
 kè class (N); lesson (M) 13V  
 kěnéng possible (SV), possibility (N) 23V  
 kèqì polite, ceremonious, formal (SV) 13V  
 kèren guest (N) 16V  
 kěshì however, but (MA) 11V, 11N5, 14N10

- kēxué science (N) 14 V  
kéyi, kéyǐ may, can (AV) 5 V, 8 N 8, 19 N 13, 21 N 3  
'kéyi-bu-kéyi? O.K.? 5 N 8  
kéyi-ma? O.K.? 5 N 8  
kǒngpà fear, be afraid of, afraid to (TV) 20 V  
kǒu, kǒur mouth, opening (N) 9 V  
kuài fast (SV) 10 V, 19 N 1  
kuài soon (AD) 21 N 4  
kuài lump, dollar (M) 3 V, 3 N 4  
kuàizi chopsticks (N) 19 V  
  
lái come (IV) 9 V, 9 N 1, 6, 15 N 11  
lái (as postverb) 16 N 2-8, 20 N 2  
lái bring (TV) 21 N 6  
lán blue (SV) 4 V  
lǎo old (of animate things) (SV) 14 V  
lǎo (combined with names) (see footnote, p. 246)  
lǎo (as adverb) 21 N 4  
láohu tiger (N) 10 V  
lǎojià Sorry to trouble you 23 V, 23 N 13  
lǎoshī teacher, tutor (N) 23 V, 23 N 4  
le (suffix indicating perfective aspect) 13 V, 13 N 1-9; (in duration of time) 15 N 5-7; (not used with cái) 15 N 13  
lèi tired (SV) 23 V  
lí (separated) from (CV) 8 V, 8 N 3-4  
lǐ inside (PW) 7 V  
lǐ Chinese mile (=  $\frac{1}{3}$  English mile) (M) 8 V, 8 N 4  
líkai leave, depart from (TV) 11 V  
lìshǐ history (N) 20 V  
lián even, even including (CV) 16 V, 16 N 11, 21 N 2  
liànxī practice, learn how to (TV) 22 V  
liǎng two, a couple (NU) 3 V, 3 N 10-12  
liǎo (resultative verb ending) 14 V, 14 N 6  
liù six (NU) 4 V  
location 7 N 1. See also place words  
lù dew (N) 17 V  
lù road (N) 7 V, 7 N 10, 8 N 4  
lù record, make a recording of (TV) 15 V  
lù-yīn record (sound) (VO) 15 V  
lǔxíng travel (IV) 16 V  
lùyīn recording (N) 15 V  
lùyīnjī (tape) recorder (N) 15 V  
ma (question particle) 1 V, 1 N 13  
mā (one's own) mother 16 V, 16 N 15  
máfan cause trouble to, disturb (TV); troublesome (SV) 13 V  
mǎshàng immediately 23 V  
mǎi buy (TV) 3 V  
mài sell (TV) 3 V  
  
màigei sell to 22 N 5  
màipiàoyuán ticket seller (N) 10 V  
màn slow (SV) 10 V, 19 N 1, 21 N 4  
máng busy (SV) 13 V  
manner of actions 10 N 2-4, 19 N 1  
manners, Chinese 13 N 16  
máo hair, feather, dime (N) (also, a surname) 3 V, 3 N 12  
mǎobǐ Chinese writing brush (N) 3 V  
me (particle indicating obviousness) 20 V, 20 N 8  
measures 3 N 2-3, 5-6, 4 N 3, 15 N 2, 22 N 3  
méi not (AD) 4 V, 13 N 7, 10, 17 N 4, 21 N 3  
měi beautiful (SV) 16 N 14  
měi each, every (M) 8 V  
méigui rose (N) 17 V  
Méigui Lù Rose Dew (see footnote, p. 273)  
Měiguo America, the United States (PW) 2 V, 2 N 1  
mèimei younger sister (N) 10 V  
Měiyīng (girl's name) 16 N 14  
men (pluralizing suffix with pronouns) 1 V; (with nouns) 23 N 2  
mén door, gate (N) 9 V  
miàn noodles (N) 21 V  
míngbai understand (TV) 17 V  
míngnian next year (TW) 23 V  
míngtian tomorrow (TW) 9 V  
míngzi name (N) 10 V, 10 N 10  
modification 5 N 1-5  
mòshuǐ ink (N) 4 V  
movable adverbs 9 N 9  
multiplication table 4 N 6  
mǔqīn mother (N) 10 V  
  
ná hold, grasp, carry, take (TV) 16 V  
nà that (SP) 3 V, 3 N 7  
nǎgei give to (V) 22 N 5  
názhu hold firmly (TV) 22 N 5  
Nakayama (Japanese surname) (see footnote, p. 380)  
names 10 N 10-11, 16 N 14, footnote, p. 380  
nán south (PW) 7 V  
nán difficult (SV) 8 V  
nán male 10 V  
nánchu difficulty (N) 22 V, 22 N 5  
nánfāng the South, southern region 20 V  
Nánjīng Nanking 23 N 5  
nǎr? where? (PW) 5 V, 16 N 12  
nǎrde huà not at all 23 N 13  
ne (question particle) 1 V, 1 N 15

- ne (with disjunctive questions) 7 N12  
 ne (with question words) 9 N8  
 ne (showing continuation) 3 N17, 19 V2, 22 N11  
 negation 13 N7-8, 17 N4, 19 N3-4  
 nǐ which? (SP) 3 V  
 nèi that (SP) 3 V, 3 N7  
 nēiren (one's own) wife (N) 16 V, 16 N16  
 néng able to (AD) 8 V, 8 N8  
 nènmo in that case (MA); so, that (AD) 15 V, 15 N18, 17 N4  
 nèr there (PW) 3 V  
 nǐ you (PR) 1 V  
 niàn study, read (aloud) (TV) 8 V, 13 N14  
 nián year (M) 11 V  
 niànfǎ way of reading or studying (N) 22 N5  
 niánjí year of school (M) 13 V  
 nín you (singular, polite form) (PR) 1 V  
 niú cow, ox (N) 19 V  
 niú ròu tāng beef soup 19 N6  
 Niǔyue New York (PW) 15 V  
 nouns 1 N2, 3 N2, 4-6, 3 N11, 7 N5-7, 9, 10 N7, 14 N2, 4, 15 N2  
 nouns, omission of 3 N11, 4 N7  
 nuǎnhuo warm (SV) 17 V  
 numbers 3 N1-2, 4 N5-6, 10 N8, 12, 11 N7, 17 N7  
 nǚ female 10 V  
  
 objects 10 N4, 11 N3, 14 N8, 15 N4, 16 N4, 6, 10-11, 13, 19 N7  
 or 3 N13  
  
 pà fear, be afraid of (V) 20 V  
 pǎo run (IV) 10 V  
 parts of speech 1 N1, 3 N2, 15 N2, 22 N7  
 passive 23 N7  
 péngyou friend (N) 5 V  
 piānzi reel, movie (N) 20 V  
 piào ticket (N) 10 V  
 piàoliang attractive, elegant, beautiful (SV) 16 V  
 pīn spell (out), write in alphabetic script (TV) 22 V  
 pīnyīn alphabetic writing, transcription, spelling, pīnyīn (N) 22 V, footnote, p. 380  
 píng'ān peaceful, at peace, pacific, safe (SV) 23 V  
 place names 7 N11  
 place words 7 N1, 5-8, 11  
 plural 23 N2  
 postverbs 16 N2-7, 20 N2, 4  
 potential form (of resultative verbs) 14 N6  
 pronouns 1 N2-3, 10  
  
 qī seven (NU) 4 V  
 qìchē motor vehicle (N) 9 V  
 qíguài amazing, amazed (SV) 10 V  
 qǐlái get up (IV) 20 V, 20 N2  
 qiān thousand (NU) 14 V, 14 N7  
 qián money (N) (also, a surname) 2 V, 3 N11, 4 N7  
 qián front (PW) 7 V, 23 N16  
 qiānbǐ pencil (N) 4 V  
 qiánnián year before last (TW) 23 N16  
 qiántian day before yesterday (TW) 23 V, 23 N16  
 qīng light (in weight) (SV) 22 V  
 qǐng invite, request, ask, please (TV) 2 V  
 qǐng-wèn? May I ask? 2 V  
 qīngzhòngyīn stress 22 N10  
 qù go (IV) 9 V, 9 N1, 15 N11  
 qù (as postverb) 16 N2-8  
 qùnián last year (TW) 11 V  
 quán fist (N) 17 V  
 quán the whole 21 V  
 questions 2 N4-6, 7 N12, 8 N6, 13 N9  
 question particles 1 N13, 15  
 question words 3 N8-9  
 question words as indefinites 16 N12, 21 N1  
  
 r (suffix) 22 N2-3, 7  
 ràng let, request (TV); by (CV) 23 V, 23 N6-7  
 reduplication 11 N6, 22 N2-3, 8  
 relative time 13 N11  
 rén person, man, people (N) 2 V  
 rènshi recognize, acquainted with (TV) 11 V  
 repetition of verbs 19 N6  
 resultative verbs 14 N6, 16 N7, 9, 19 N8-10, 20 N4  
 Rìběn Japan (PW) 11 V  
 róngyi easy (SV) 8 V  
 ròu meat (N) 19 V  
 rúguǒ if (MA) 11 V, 11 N5, 19 N3  
  
 sān three (NU) 3 V  
 Sān Yǒu Shūdiàn Three Friends Book-store (see footnote, p. 138)  
 Sānfánshì San Francisco (PW) 15 V  
 school system 10 N8  
 sentences without verbs 3 N15  
 separation 8 N3-5  
 shān hill, mountain (N) 7 V  
 Shāndong Shantung Province (PW) 7 V



- shānshuǐ scenery, landscape (N) 16 V  
 Shānxī Shansi Province (PW) 7 V  
 shàng top (PW) 7 V  
 shàng ascend, go to (TV); to (CV) 9 V,  
 13 N 13, 16 N 5  
 shàng last 13 N 14  
 shàngwǔ forenoon (TW) 23 N 8  
 shāo roast, braise (V) 19 V  
 shǎo few, scarce, rare (SV) 8 V,  
 19 N 1  
 sharing 8 N 2, 9 N 7  
 shéi? who? 5 V, 16 N 12  
 shēng sound, tone (N) 22 V, 22 N 10  
 shēng be born (IV) 17 V  
 shèng(xia) have left over, be left over  
 (V) 21 V  
 shēngyīn noise, sound (N) 22 V  
 shénmo? what? 3 V, 3 N 14, 16 N 12  
 shí ten (NU) 4 V  
 shì affair, matter, work (N) 10 V  
 shì be, am, is, are (EV) 2 V, 2 N 3  
 shì (in concessive construction)  
 19 N 6  
 shì (in disjunctive questions) 7 N 12,  
 8 N 6, 20 N 5  
 shì (joining verbal phrases) 16 N 17  
 shì (stressed) 15 N 17  
 shì (with stative verbs) 14 N 9  
 shì (as suffix) 21 N 5  
 shì (in 'if' clauses) 19 N 3  
 shì...de 11 N 2, 14 N 9, 16 N 13  
 shífēn very (AD) 14 V, 14 N 13  
 shíhou(r) time (calendar or clock) (N)  
 5 V, 13 N 11  
 shìqīng matter, affair, business (N)  
 20 V  
 shīzi lion (N) 19 V  
 shīzi tóu lion's head (see footnote, p. 311)  
 shōushi straighten up, put in order, pack  
 (TV) 23 V  
 shū book (N) 3 V  
 shūdiàn bookstore (N) 9 V  
 shùxué mathematics 20 V  
 shuǐ water (N) 16 V  
 shuō speak, talk, say (TV) 2 V  
 shuōbùdìng unable to say for sure, per-  
 haps 23 N 15  
 shuōfǎ way of speaking or saying (N)  
 22 N 5  
 sì four (NU) 3 V  
 similarity 17 N 1-6  
 sìshēng (four) tones 22 N 10  
 sòng escort, send, give (TV) 22 V  
 sònggei give to (V) 22 N 5  
 specifiers 3 N 7, 14 N 3  
 split-choice-type questions 2 N 5  
 stative verbs 1 N 11, 8 N 1, 3, 10 N 2,  
 14 N 9, 11, 13 N 4, 17 N 1, 10, 19 N 1,  
 21 N 4, 22 N 2  
 stress 2 N 6, 7 N 13, 11 N 2, 14 N 11,  
 15 N 17  
 Sūzhou Soochow 16 V, 17 N 12  
 suān sour (SV) 19 V  
 suàn reckon, calculate (TV) 21 V  
 subject 1 N 19, 16 N 11  
 subordination 5 N 1-5, 14 N 2  
 suì year (of age) (M) 10 V  
 suíbiàn as you please, any way one  
 likes (MA) 19 V, 19 N 13  
 suírán although (MA) 11 V, 11 N 5  
 Sun Yatsen 7 N 10, footnote, p. 380  
 suǒ, suǒr (measure for buildings) 7 V  
 suǒyī therefore (MA) 13 V  
 suǒyǒude 'all (before nouns) 16 V  
 surnames 1 N 4-7  
 syllables 1 N 17, 22 N 5  
 tā he, she, him, her (PR) 1 V  
 tāmen (as summarizing expression)  
 7 N 7  
 tài too, excessively (AD) 8 V,  
 14 N 10-11  
 tàitai married lady (N); Mrs. 1 V,  
 2 N 2, 16 N 16  
 tán converse, talk (IV) 10 V  
 tāng soup (N) 19 V  
 táng sugar (N) 19 V  
 táng cù yú sweet-and-sour fish  
 19 N 15  
 tèbié special (SV) 19 V  
 telephone style of numbers 11 N 7  
 tense 15 N 3-7  
 tí carry, lift, bring (up), mention (TV) 20 V  
 tímu topic, problem 20 V  
 tiān day (M) 8 V, 13 N 13  
 tián sweet (SV) 19 V  
 tián suān yú sweet-and-sour fish  
 19 N 15  
 tiānqi weather (N) 17 V  
 tiāntáng heaven (N) 16 V  
 tiáo (measure for roads) 7 V  
 time 10 N 5, 11 N 1  
 time, relative 13 N 7  
 time words 5 N 7, 15 N 4  
 times, number of 15 N 8  
 tīng listen (to) (TV) 14 V  
 tīngshuō hear (it said) that (TV) 14 V  
 titles 1 N 7, 2 N 2  
 tones 1 N 10, 3 N 14, 8 N 7, 22 N 2, 8  
 tóngshí at the same time 22 V  
 topic and comment 14 N 8  
 tóu head (N) 19 V

tou (substantive suffix) 7V  
 transitive verbs 1N9, 8N1  
 transformations 16N13, 21N3, 23N7  
 túshūguǎn library (N) 8V  
 two 3N9

verbal expressions 8N6  
 verbs 1N8, 3N2, 3N16, 10N2, 4,  
 13N1-6, 8-10, 14N8, 16N1  
 voice 14N8

wài outside (PW) 7V  
 wai Hello! 5V  
 wàiguó foreign country (PW) 3V  
 wán finished, completed, done (TV) 15V  
 wǎn late (SV) 13V  
 wǎn bowl, cup (N, M) 21V  
 wàn ten thousand, myriad (NU) 14V  
 wǎnfàn dinner (N) 11V  
 wǎnshang evening (TW) 5V  
 wáng king (N) (also, a surname) 2V  
 wàng, wǎng toward (CV) 9V, 9N4  
 wàng forget (V) 13V  
 wár amuse oneself (with), play (with)  
 (TV) 15V  
 Warring Kingdom Period 17N11  
 wèi (polite measure for persons) 5V  
 wèi shénmo? why? 17V  
 wěiba tail footnote, p. 134  
 wén language, literature (N) 4V  
 wèn inquire, ask (TV) 2V  
 wénfǎ grammar (N) 22V, 22N14  
 wénhuà culture, civilization (N) 23V  
 Wénshān 'Literature Mountain'  
 10N10, footnote, p. 336  
 wèntí problem, question, theme (N)  
 22V  
 wénxué literature (N) 8V  
 wǒ I, me (PR) 1V  
 words 1N17  
 wǔ five (NU) 3V  
 wǔ noon (TW) 23V, 23N8  
 wǔfàn lunch (N) 23N8

xī west (PW) 7V  
 Xī Shī (name of a person) footnote, p. 271  
 xǐhuan like, like to (V) 8V  
 xīwang hope (N, V) 11V  
 xiā shrimp (N) 21V  
 xià bottom, below (PW) 7V  
 xià next 13N14  
 xià descend (TV) 9V  
 xiārér (shelled) shrimp (N) 21V  
 xiàwǔ afternoon (TW) 23N8  
 xiān first (AD) 9V

xiānsheng gentleman, husband, Mr. (N)  
 (N) 1V, 2N2  
 xiānzài now (TW) 5V  
 xiǎng think (of), think to, plan to (V)  
 5V  
 xiàng resemble (TV) 17V, 17N4  
 xiàng such as 19N11  
 xiǎo small (SV) 7V, 10N6  
 xiào laugh at (V) 23V  
 xiǎofèi tip (N) 21V  
 xiàohua(r) joke (N) 23V  
 xiáojie young (unmarried) lady, daughter (N); Miss 1V  
 xiǎoxué elementary school (N) 10V, 10N8  
 xiē few (M) 17V, 17N8  
 xiě write (TV) 8V  
 xiěfǎ way of writing (N) 22N5  
 xièxie thank (TV); thanks 1V  
 xìn letter (N) 14V  
 xìng have such-and-such a name, be  
 called, be named (EV) 2V, 10N10  
 xíngli baggage (N) 23V  
 xīngqī week (N) 13V, 13N12  
 xìngqù interest (in) (N) 14V  
 xìngrér almond (N) 21V  
 xìngrér chá almond tea 21N7  
 xué study (TV) 8V  
 xuéfǎ way of studying (N) 22N5  
 xuésheng student (N) 8V  
 xuéwen learning, scholarship (N) 16V  
 xuéxiào school (N) 13V

yā(zi) duck (N) 21V  
 yǎn act (in), put on (a performance)  
 (TV) 20V  
 yánjiū study, make a study of, investi-  
 gate (TV); study, research (N) 14V  
 yánsè, yánshar color (N) 4V  
 yǎnyuán actor (N) 20V  
 yàng kind (M) 17V  
 yào want (to), order (V) 3V, 19N15  
 yàoburán otherwise (MA) 21V  
 yàojiǎn important (SV) 23V  
 yě also, too (AD) 1V, 14N14,  
 15N12, 19N5  
 yě (with lián) 16N11  
 yě (with jiùshí) 21N2  
 yě yet 19N4  
 yī one (NU) 3V, 3N15, 11N6  
 yī whole of 23N1  
 yí, yì as soon as 20V, 20N1  
 yī... cái as soon as... then 20N1  
 yī... jiù as soon as... then 20N1  
 yīdiǎr a little 10V, 10N1, 19N1  
 yídìng be certain (SV) 11V



yìgòng altogether, in all (MA) 3 V  
yìhuèr a moment (TW) 14 V  
yǐhòu after, afterwards (TW) 13 V,  
13 N 11  
yǐjīng already (AD) 13 V  
yìkuànr together 15 V  
yílù-píng'ān Bon voyage! 23 N 11  
yǐqián before, formerly 13 V, 13 N 11  
yìsi meaning (N) 11 V  
yǐwài except for 19 V, 19 N 5  
yíyàng same (SV) 17 V, 17 N 2-3, 5  
yìzhí(de) straight (AD) 9 V  
yīn sound (N) 22 V  
yīnjié syllable (N) 22 V  
yīnwei because, since (MA) 13 V  
yīng win (TV) 17 V  
Yīng-Měi British-American 4 N 2  
yīngdāng should, ought to (AV) 15 V,  
15 N 15  
yīnggāi should, ought to (AV) 15 V,  
15 N 15  
Yīngguo England (PW) 2 V, 2 N 1  
Yīngwén English language and litera-  
ture (N) 4 V  
Yīngyǔ English language (N) 22 N 5  
yòng use (TV); using, with (CV) 14 V,  
14 N 1  
yòngchu use (N) 22 N 5  
yònggōng studious, hard-working (SV) 13 V  
yóngyuǎn forever, always (AD) 23 V  
yǒu have (V) 4 V, 7 N 8, 8 N 2,  
13 N 10, 21 N 3  
yǒu (in expressions of similarity) 17 N 4  
yòu again (AD) 13 V, 15 N 12, 19 N 5  
yǒu míng famous 17 V  
yǒu xiē some 17 N 9  
yǒu yìdiǎr have a little; somewhat  
17 N 1  
yǒude some (before nouns) 16 V  
yóuqí(shì) especially, above all (MA)  
21 V  
yú fish (N) 19 V  
yǔ speech, language (N) 22 N 5, 15  
yǔfǎ grammar (N) 22 V, 22 N 14  
yùjian encounter, meet (TV) 11 V  
yǔyán language (N) 14 V  
yǔyánxué linguistics, linguistic science  
(N) 14 V  
yuǎn far (SV) 8 V  
Yuǎn-Dà Far Eastern University  
10 N 9  
Yuǎndōng Far East (PW) 10 V  
Yuǎndōng Dàxué Far Eastern Univer-  
sity 10 N 9  
yuánlái originally (MA) 14 V  
yuè month 15 V  
yuè month of the year (M) 11 V,  
15 N 1-2  
yuè . . . yuè the more . . . the more  
22 V, 22 N 1  
yuè lái yuè more and more 22 N 1  
zài again (AD) 9 V, 15 N 11  
zài occupy, be at (V); at, in, on (CV)  
7 V, 7 N 3, 6, 8  
zài (with zhèng) 22 N 12  
zài (postverb) 15 N 10  
zàijiàn good-bye 1 V  
zǎo early (SV) 23 V, 23 N 9  
zǎochen morning, forenoon (TV) 13 V  
zǎofān breakfast (N) 13 V  
zāngāo messed up (SV); Darn! 20 V,  
20 N 7  
zěnmó? how? how come that? (AD)  
9 V  
zěnmó so, thus (AD) 15 V  
zěnmóyàng? like what? how about it?  
well? 17 V  
zhàn stop, station (N) 9 V  
zhāng (measure for flat objects; also,  
a surname) 4 V  
zhǎng grow (IV) 17 V  
zhàng bill (N) 21 V  
zháo (suffix indicating accomplishment)  
19 V, 19 N 8  
zhǎo seek, look for (TV) 5 V  
zhè this (SP) 3 V, 3 N 7  
zhè (suffix indicating progressive ac-  
tion) 19 V, 19 N 2  
zhèi this (SP) 3 V, 3 N 7  
zhēn really (AD) 10 V  
zhènmó so, thus (AD) 15 V, 15 N 18  
zhèng just (now), precisely, exactly  
(AD) 22 V, 22 N 12  
zhèng zài just in the act of 22 N 11  
zhèr here (PW) 7 V  
zhī (measure for long slender objects)  
3 V, 3 N 4  
zhǐ only (AD) 14 V  
zhīdao know (that) (V) 7 V, 7 N 13  
zhōng clock (N) 5 V, 5 N 6  
zhǒng kind of (M) 21 V  
zhòng heavy (SV) 22 V  
Zhōng-Měi Chinese-American 4 N 2  
zhòng-yīn stress 22 N 9  
Zhōng-Yīng Chinese-English 4 N 2  
Zhōngguo China (PW) 2 V, 2 N 1, 4 N 1  
zhōngjiān middle (PW) 7 V  
Zhōngshān Sun Yatsen 7 V, 7 N 10,  
footnote, p. 380

Zhōngshān Lù Sun Yatsen Avenue

7 N 10

zhōngtóu hour (N) 15 V

Zhōngwén Chinese language 4 N 1

zhōngwǔ noon (TW) 23 N 8

zhōngxué middle school (N) 10 N 8

zhū pig (N) 19 V

zhù live (at) (TV) 15 V

zhù (suffix indicating firmness) 22 N 5

zhù wish 23 V

zhùyì pay attention to 22 V

zhǔn accurate (SV) 22 V

zì character (N) 8 V, 22 N 4

zì (suffix) 22 N 6

zìjǐ self 22 V

zuì most (AD) 14 V, 14 N 10-11

zuì hǎo best 14 N 12

zǒu walk, travel, depart, go (V) 9 V

zuǒ left (PW) 7 V

zuò ride (on a vehicle) (TV); by means  
of (a vehicle) (CV) 9 V, 9 N 5

zuò do, make (TV) 10 V

zuò as 17 V, 17 N 7

zuòfǎ way of doing something (N) 22 N 5

zuótiān yesterday (TW) 11 V







A complete revision, this new version, in *pīnyīn* romanization, is aimed at secondary school and college levels. It is an introduction to spoken Pekingese or standard Mandarin, the most widely used Chinese dialect.

Based on a vocabulary of some 600 items, the lessons include dialogues, pronunciation drills, sentence-building games, and substitution exercises. Two lessons are devoted to instruction in Chinese characters. There is a combined glossary-index, supplementary vocabulary, and a detailed suggested study guide.

John DeFrancis is research professor of Chinese at Seton Hall University.

*Yale Linguistic Series*

\$2.75

YALE UNIVERSITY PRESS NEW HAVEN AND LONDON

